ELEMENTA PRIMA

WHITTEMORE

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/elementaprima0000na

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

ARCUS TITĪ IMPERĀTŌRIS

ELEMENTA PRIMA

REVISED EDITION

By

LUTHER DENNY WHITTEMORE, A.M., LITT.D.
WASHBURN COLLEGE, TOPEKA, KANSAS

Assisted by

LAURA L. EWING, A.M.
HIGH SCHOOL, TOPEKA, KANSAS

Elementa velint ut discere prima.
—Horatius

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
CHICAGO SAN FRANCISCO PHILADELPHIA DALLAS TORONTO, CAN.

Copyright, 1925, by
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
Copyright, 1920, by
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
Entered at Stationers' Hall, London

All Rights Reserved

PRESS OF
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
PHILADELPHIA, PA., U. S. A.

P–8–25

PREFACE

Gratifying evidence of the renewed vitality of the classics has been brought to light by the recent investigations of the American Classical League, from which it appears that a new and progressive movement in the teaching of elementary Latin is well under way. This new movement, based on the conclusions of modern educational psychology, requires more varied materials for instruction, a reorganization of methods of teaching, and the creation of stronger incentives for study.

The writer of this book has long believed that the student's interest should be enlisted as an incentive; and this sound principle of pedagogy is suggested by the lines of Horace from which the title, ELEMENTA PRIMA, has been taken:

> Rīdentem dīcere vērum
> quid vetat? ut puerīs ōlim dant crūstula blandī
> doctōrēs, elementa velint ut discere prīma.

To attract the student's attention and to sustain his interest the acquisition of grammatical knowledge as such is not sufficient. It should be recognized from the very beginning that language is a medium for the expression of thought and not an arbitrary contrivance to illustrate grammar. Hence the immediate object in the study of Latin should not be to acquire information about the language, but to become acquainted with the language itself; and it should be self-evident that the portions of the language assigned for study should express comprehensible ideas. Each sentence should convey a meaning intelligible to the student, and the successive sentences should have a logical sequence. This is the first essential

in developing the power to read Latin understandingly and independently.

In this book all the material for study is based on the reading matter and the needed motive has been supplied by the introduction of content which appeals to the student's interest. The connected reading matter with Latin titles includes (1) miscellaneous topics, stories, and fables; (2) easy stories adapted from Horace, Ovid, and Vergil; (3) three short and simplified extracts from Cicero and Caesar; (4) stories of early Rome taken from *Viri Romae* and the first book of Livy; and (5) the stories of Perseus and Ulysses taken from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*. Thus the student is introduced to Roman ideas, Roman traditions and legends, biography, and classical mythology.

The amount of Latin reading is sufficient for three semesters, and the book has been definitely planned for a three-semester course in elementary Latin. All of the Latin reading matter has been carefully graded, and the transition should be easy to Caesar or to any other author selected for subsequent study.

On account of the amount and variety of the reading matter it is convenient and desirable to employ a vocabulary which is considerably larger than was formerly considered suitable in books for beginners. But it is not to be supposed that the student will be required to commit to memory all the Latin words in the book any more than a child when learning to talk is expected to memorize all the words which he hears. The Latin words which occur in the text are classified in three groups: (1) words which, because of the frequency of their occurence or their temporary value for illustrative purposes, are of prime importance; (2) words which occur somewhat frequently but not often enough to

justify an effort to commit them to memory; (3) words which occur rarely and which do not require much attention beyond their casual recognition.

One of the most distinctive features of this book is the method employed in the introduction of vocabulary, forms, and constructions. The Latin words are first introduced in the text rather than in lists of words to be studied or memorized. The forms of words, also, and syntactical constructions are first presented in the reading matter in anticipation of the explanations which follow. This enables the student to become acquainted with words, forms, idioms, and grammatical principles in their connection, not as isolated facts, and the assistance of association is employed throughout the study.

Neither in the reading exercises nor in the connected paragraphs is there any violation of Latin usage. There is a logical subject for every verb and an antecedent for every pronoun. Conjunctions and adverbs, also, are employed in such a manner as to make their correct use familiar. Thus the student cannot fail to acquire a feeling for the correct use of the language, which is one of the most desirable results of language study.

An important feature of this book is the treatment of the derivation of English words. This is introduced for formal study in connection with the review lessons, so that the student's attention may not be too much diverted from the new material which requires concentration when unfamiliar words, forms, and principles are under consideration. The subject of derivation is first introduced in a simple way with a minimum of explanation; but as the study proceeds, the typical processes of Latin word-formation and English derivation are explained and illustrated by numerous examples. All this study is based on words used in the text.

In addition to the methods mentioned above, this book employs repetition to an unusual extent. This applies, first, to the repeated use of words as such; second, to the copious illustrations of the forms of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs in the reading exercises; and third, to the introduction of numerous examples in all the reading matter to illustrate grammatical principles. It has been the author's definite purpose to give new matter, of whatever kind, a familiar setting, so that the student's mind may readily single out the item which, for the moment, requires concentrated attention. The effect of this repetition is to cause the feeling of strangeness and newness to disappear as quickly as possible after a new word, form, or construction has been introduced. The recognition of familiar items in new combinations encourages the student, gives him confidence in his own power, and helps to make his progress satisfactory.

The present edition of ELEMENTA PRIMA is a revision of the edition first published in 1920. While there has been no essential change in method, the book has been simplified somewhat by omissions and expanded by additional reading matter and by the introduction of Latin questions to be answered in Latin in connection with the Latin reading. Lists of new words, without definitions, have been provided at the end of each chapter, and a simple exercise for practice has been inserted in each chapter.

The author acknowledges with great appreciation the encouragement and assistance which he has received from many sources:

The Latin teachers of the Topeka high schools, who have used the book continuously from the time of its first publication, have encouraged the author by their continued and growing interest, and have made many

excellent suggestions based on the test of actual school conditions.

Dr. E. B. de Sauzé, Director of Foreign Languages in the Cleveland schools, and the Latin teachers of Cleveland have given most valuable constructive criticisms based on the use of the book in experimental classes.

Professor W. L. Carr, of the University of Michigan, has made exceedingly valuable contributions suggested by his comprehensive knowledge of the Latin situation throughout the country, and has assisted in reading the proof.

Dr. Henry W. Rolfe, of Chesham, N. H., formerly of Swarthmore College and Stanford University, has contributed the results of his profound and exact scholarship in criticism and proof-reading.

The assistance of Miss Laura L. Ewing, of the Topeka High School, in the preparation of the book, in its revision, and in the reading of the proof, has been invaluable.

Longmans, Green and Co., publishers of Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, have generously permitted the use of selections from that interesting book.

Topeka, Kansas. L. D. W.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

This book has been prepared for a three-semester course in accordance with the recommendations of the Classical Investigation.

If it is found desirable to abbreviate the course, certain portions may be omitted, but the stories from *Viri Romae* should not be omitted since they are so closely connected with the exercises for reading and writing.

Much of the introductory reading matter in each chapter is very simple and is intended for rapid reading or reading at sight. The mistake should not be made of giving the same time to these exercises as is given to the more difficult selections. Neither should all possible points of grammar be equally emphasized in every lesson; but the attention should be concentrated on the particulars selected for special consideration.

The best results will be secured from the use of this book if its method is consistently followed. Although the plan may seem different from that to which teachers have been accustomed, it will prove on trial to be natural, simple, interesting, and effective. Nothing should prevent the teacher, however, from using any original methods which may seem promising, for the book is intended to stimulate originality and initiative on the part of teachers and pupils. By all means dull and mechanical methods should be avoided and vivacity and freedom should be cultivated.

A suitable stopping place for the end of the first year will probably be somewhere between Chapter XL and Chapter XLV.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	INTRODUCTION	1
II.	PRONUNCIATION AND READING.—Rōma Antīqua.—SYLLABLES.—QUANTITY.—ACCENT	3
III.	THE FIRST DECLENSION: THE NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES.—Lūna et Stellae	10
IV.	THE FIRST DECLENSION (CONTINUED); THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.—Agricolae et Nautae	16
V.	THE FIRST DECLENSION (CONTINUED): THE DATIVE AND VOCATIVE CASES	21
VI.	THE FIRST DECLENSION (CONTINUED): THE LOCATIVE CASE.—Fābulae Poētārum.—GENDER.—THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.—TYPICAL NOUN	26
VII.	VERBS: PERSONAL ENDINGS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.—CONJUGATION OF sum, āmō, AND videō	33
VIII.	THE SECOND DECLENSION, MASCULINE NOUNS: THE NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE CASES.—THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE CASES.—GENDER.—TYPICAL NOUNS	37
IX.	NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—Deus Creātor et Deī Rōmānōrum.—GENDER.—TYPICAL NOUN	44
X.	THE IMPERFECT TENSE.—Colloquium inter Puerōs.—CONJUGATION OF sum, dō, AND timeō	49
XI.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.—TYPICAL ADJECTIVES	53
XII.	REVIEW.—DERIVATION OF ENGLISH WORDS.—Horātius Poēta. RELATED LATIN WORDS	60

CHAPTER PAGE

XIII. The Present Indicative Active, Four Conjugations.—Equus Ligneus.—Conjugation..... 68

XIV. Selections for Reading.—Quīdam Vir et Līberī.—Aenēās in Ītaliam Venit.—Principal Parts of Verbs..... 73

XV. The Present Indicative Passive.—Lūdus Quī "Spectō" Appellātur.—Rōmulus et Remus in Tiberim Mittuntur.—Conjugation..... 78

XVI. The Third Declension, Stems in c, d, g, p, and t.—Pāstor Puerōs Invenit.—Typical Nouns.... 85

XVII. The Third Declension (continued): Nominatives in l and r.—Remus ā Praedātōribus Est Captus.—Typical Nouns..... 92

XVIII. The Third Declension (continued): Stems in n.—Numitor Remum Nepōtem Agnōscit.—Typical Nouns..... 97

XIX. The Imperfect Indicative Active, Four Conjugations.—Aenēās Carthāginem Venit.—Conjugation..... 103

XX. The Imperfect Indicative Passive.—Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam Vocat.—Conjugation..... 109

XXI. The Third Declension (continued): Stems in s.—Incolae Urbī Novae De-erant.—Typical Nouns..... 114

XXII. The Third Declension (continued): Stems in i.—Rōmulus Societātem Populō Novō Petit.—Typical Nouns..... 120

XXIII. Review of the Third Declension.—Derivation of English Nouns.—Rōma et Carthāgō.—Classification of Nouns of the Third Declension.—Derivation of English Nouns from Latin Nouns of the Third Declension. 125

XXIV. The Future Tense.—Nēmō Sorte Contentus Est.—Conjugation of sum, dō, habeō..... 133

CHAPTER PAGE

XXV. The Future Indicative Active, Four Conjugations.—Discipulus ad Magistrum Epistulam Scrībit.—Rōmānī Virginēs Sabīnōrum Rapiunt.—Conjugation 139

XXVI. The Future Indicative Passive, Four Conjugations.—Daedalus Novās Artēs Parat.—Pater et Fīlius per Caelum Volant.—Sabīnī Tarpēiam Scūtīs Obruunt.—Conjugation 145

XXVII. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.—Īcarus in Mare Cadit.—Conjugation of Capiō. 152

XXVIII. The Present Infinitive.—The Present, Imperfect, and Future of possum.—Avēs.—Ad Certāmen Utrimque Prōcēdunt.—The Present Infinitive of Typical Verbs.—Conjugation of possum 157

XXIX. Adjectives of the Third Declension.—The Present Participle and the Present Imperative. — Puer Validus. — Imperātōrēs. — Iuppiter Rōmānīs Terrōrem Dēmit.—Typical Adjectives.—Declension of the Present Participle.—Conjugation of the Present Imperative.—The Present Stem 164

XXX. Numerals.—Adjectives with Genitive in -īus. —Numerī.—Mulierēs inter Tēla Veniunt.—Declension of Numerals 173

XXXI. The Perfect Indicative Active.—Cerēs Fīliam Petit.—Conjugation of sum, dō, and videō.... 180

XXXII. The Perfect Indicative Active, Four Conjugations.—Midās.—Ducēs Foedus Faciunt.—The Perfect Stem.—Principal Parts of Verbs.—Conjugation 185

XXXIII. The Past Perfect Indicative Active.—Magister et Discipulus.—Midās Mūnus Temptat.—Conjugation 192

CHAPTER PAGE

XXXIV. The Future Perfect Indicative Active.—Puer et Servus.—Tempestās ab Terrīs Rōmulum Aufert.—Conjugation 198

XXXV. The Perfect Active Infinitive.—Pater et Fīlius.—Midās Dīvitiās Effugit.—Typical Verbs. 204

XXXVI. Review of Nouns and Adjectives.—Gender.—Cornēlia Salūtem Dīcit Mātrī.—Gender in the First, Second, and Third Declensions.—Formation of Latin Nouns.—Derivation of English Nouns from Latin Nouns.—Formation of Latin Adjectives.—English Derivatives from Latin Adjectives 209

XXXVII. Pronouns, Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive.—Egestās et Dīvitiae.—Atalanta Coniugem Fugit.—Declension 219

XXXVIII. The Demonstrative Pronouns Hic, Iste, and Ille.—The Intensive Ipse.—Librī Poētārum.—Hippomenēs Spectātor Certāminis.—Numae Pompiliō Rēgnum Datur.—Declension 227

XXXIX. The Demonstrative Is and the Relative Quī.—Amātōrēs.—Tullus Hostīlius Rēx Creātur.—Declension 234

XL. The Perfect Passive Participle.—The Ablative Absolute.—Certāmen.—Victor Praemium Dūcit.—Inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs Bellum.—Principal Parts of Verbs.—Typical Verbs .. 240

XLI. The Fourth Declension.—Trigeminī Arma Capiunt.—Typical Nouns 248

XLII. The Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.—Ūnum Horātium Trēs Cūriātiī Circumstant.—Conjugation 254

XLIII. The Fifth Declension.—Rōmānī Horātium Victōrem Accipiunt.—Typical Nouns 261

CHAPTER PAGE

XLIV. Interrogative Pronouns Quis and Quī.—Scrīptōrēs Rōmānī.—Prīncipium Ōrātiōnis Prīmae in Catilīnam ā Cicerōne Habitae.—Movet Horātium Complōrātiō Sorōris.—Declension of Quis.... 267

XLV. Comparison of Adjectives.—Horātius apud Iūdicēs Condemnātus Est.—Comparison of Typical Adjectives.—Declension of the Comparative..... 273

XLVI. Superlatives in -limus and -rimus.—Audāx Gēns Hūmāna Est.—Horātius Poēta et Horātius Mīles.—Rōma Crēscit Albae Ruīnīs.—Special Forms of Comparison..... 279

XLVII. Irregular Comparison.—Gallia.—Comparison of Irregular Adjectives..... 284

XLVIII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.—Colloquium inter Patrem et Fīlium.—Bellum Helvēticum.—Formation of Adverbs.—Comparison of Adverbs..... 289

XLIX. The Supine Stem.—Ancus Mārcius Rēx Creātur.—Typical Verbs..... 295

L. Deponent Verbs.—Latīnīs Bellum Est Indictum.—Principal Parts of Deponent Verbs.—Idioms..... 302

LI. Irregular Verbs.—Dē Rūsticō Mūre atque Mūre Urbānō.—Conjugation..... 308

LII. Review of Verbs.—Urbs atque Ager Fīnēsque Crēscunt.—The Formation of Latin Verbs.—English Words Derived from Latin Verbs.—The Meanings of the Tenses..... 313

LIII. The Subjunctive Mood.—Final Clauses.—The Subjunctive in a Subordinate Clause.—Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.—Gallīna Impavida.—Tarquinius Rōmam Commigrat.—The Translation of the Subjunctive.—Conjugation..... 321

CHAPTER PAGE

LIV. Consecutive Clauses.—Vulpēs et Leō.—Tarquinius Rēgnum Petit 331

LV. The Subjunctive Perfect and Past Perfect.—Indirect Questions.—Mūrēs.—Magister cum Discipulō Loquitur.—Tarquinius Novāculā Cōtem Secat.—Conjugation 337

LVI. Clauses with cum.—Agricola et Fīliī.—Ancī Fīliī Rēgī Īnsidiās Parant 345

LVII. The Subjunctive in Independent Clauses.—Leō. 350

LVIII. Conditional Sentences.—Lupus Scelerātus.—Servius Tullius Rēgnat 354

LIX. The Future Passive Participle.—The Gerundive and the Gerund.—Tubicen.—Vīcus Scelerātus.—Typical Verbs 361

LX. The Periphrastic Conjugations.—The Dative of the Agent.—Tarquinius Superbus Rēgnum Occupat.—Conjugation 369

LXI. Īdem and the Indefinite Pronouns.—Rēge Expulsō Cōnsulēs Sunt Creātī.—Declension 375

LXII. Indirect Discourse.—Librī Sibyllīnī 379

LXIII. Reading and Translation.—Review of Forms and Syntax.—Senex et Mors.—Lārs Porsena Rōmam Īnfestō Exercitū Venit 386

LXIV. Reading and Translation.—Latin Word Formation.—Horātius Pontem Dēfendit.—Examples of Word Formation.—Prefixes 390

LXV. Review of Indirect Discourse.—Mārcus Rēgulus Redit Carthāginem.—Rēgulus.—Formation of Compound Words 397

LXVI. Review of Participles.—Scīpiō Āfricānus Hannibalem Vincit.—English Words from Latin Participles 402

CHAPTER PAGE

LXVII. General Review.—Gāius Iūlius Caesar.—Caesar Rubicōnem Trānsit.—Īdūs Mārtiae.—Defective Verbs 407

LXVIII. Certāmen Cursūs.—Praemia Dantur.—Metrical Reading.—Artēs Rōmānae 412

LXIX. Selections from Fābulae Facilēs.—Perseus:—Ācrisius Nepōtem Necāre Vult.—Iuppiter Fīlium Servat.—Polydectēs Perseum Dīmittit.—Perseus Medūsam Quaerit.—Caput Gorgonis.—Fīnēs Aethiopum.—Fātum Andromedae.—Impetus ex Āere.—Perseus Andromedam Uxōrem Ducit.—Polydectēs in Saxum Vertitur.—Ācrisius Fātum Frūstrā Vītat 417

LXX. Selections from Fābulae Facilēs (continued).—Ulixēs:—Ulixēs Domum Redīre Vult.—Graecī Lōtum Gustant.—Ulixēs Sociōs Reportat.—Cyclops.—Hominēs in Antrō Cēlantur.—Nūlla Spēs Salūtis.—Cōnsilium in Discrīmine.—Prō Beneficiō Grātia.—"Nēmō" Polyphēmum Vulnerat.—Salūs in Dolō.—Graecī Cursum Tenent.—Patria Ventōrum.—Venti Solvuntur.—Īnsula Circēs.—Convīvium.—Ars Magica.—Mercurius Auxilium Fert.—Ars Circēs Nihil Valet.—Ulixēs Amīcōs Agnōvit.—Solvitur Nāvis 422

Pronunciation 436

Tables of Declension and Conjugation 439

References to Rules of Syntax 470

Latin-English Vocabulary 473

English-Latin Vocabulary 529

Index 545

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

ARCUS TITĪ IMPERĀTŌRIS ..... *Frontispiece*

PAGE

RŌMA ANTĪQUA (*Map*) ..... *Facing* 34

ĪTALIA (*Map*) ..... *Facing* 74

MĀRCUS AURĒLIUS IMPERĀTOR ..... *Facing* 1

RŌMA ANTĪQUA 4

FLŪMEN TIBERIS ET ĪNSULA 6

VIA ANGUSTA URBIS POMPĒIŌRUM 7

COLOSSĒUM 11

TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS IN SICILIĀ 13

STATUA DIĀNAE 18

TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS 20

COLUMNA IN FORŌ TRĀIĀNŌ 22

PLAUSTRUM 23

PUELLAE CORŌNĀS FACIENTĒS 23

MINERVA DEA SAPIENTIAE 27

STATUA DEAE VENERIS 28

IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEĀRUM 29

ĀRA RŌMĀNA 36

HOMINĒS IN VIĀ APPIĀ 38

LŪDUS PUERŌRUM 40

PARTHENŌN 44

FORUM RŌMĀNUM 45

HORTUS RŌMĀNUS UT HODIĒ VIDĒTUR 49

PUER ET LIBER 50

VĪLLA RŌMĀNA 53

STATUAE IN MŪSĒŌ VĀTICĀNŌ 56

ATHĒNAE, URBS GRAECIAE CLĀRISSIMA 59

DOCTOR ET DISCIPULĪ IN URBE ATHĒNĪS 61

CASTRA RŌMĀNA IN BRITANNIĀ VĀLLŌ FOSSĀQUE MŪNĪTA 63

RĒS QUIBUS RŌMĀNĪ SCRĪBĒBANT 66

VIA APPIA NŌN LONGĒ AB URBE RŌMĀ 68

AENĒĀS CUM PATRE ET FĪLIŌ 75

"SPECTŌ" 79

FLŪMEN TIBERIS SUPER RĪPĀS 80

ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ 84

PAGE

Mīlitēs Rōmānī in Itinere ... 86
Casa Antīqua ... 87
Pāstor ... 93
Templum Fortūnae ... 95
Urbs et Flūmen ... 98
Speculum Argenteum ... 99
Papȳrus in Rīpā Flūminis ... 99
Frēnum ... 102
Nāvis Longa ... 104
Mīlitēs Pugnantēs ... 105
Mūrus Rōmulī ... 110
Lūcerna Etrūsca ... 113
Leō atque Hominēs in Arēnā ... 115
Forum Rōmānum et Templum Sāturnium ... 117
Lebēs Aēneus ... 119
Statua Lupae ... 120
Mare Īnferum nōn Longē ab Ōre Tiberis ... 121
Colossēum et Arcus Titī ... 125
Pugna Gladiātōrum ... 126
Certāmen inter Nāvīs Longās ... 128
Regiō Rūstica Ītaliae ... 134
Forum Rōmānum ut Quondam Erat ... 135
Arcus Cōnstantīnī et Mōns Palātīnus ... 140
Platēa Populī ... 143
Rūpēs Tarpēia ... 146
Armillae ex Aere Factae ... 148
Ānulī ... 149
Turris et Mūrus in Hispāniā ... 153
Acus Eburnea ... 156
Hortus ... 157
Porta Sebastiāna ... 159
Augustus Caesar Imperātor ... 165
Iuppiter Optimus Maximus ... 167
Porta Antīqua ... 169
Columnae Octō Templī Sāturniī ... 174
Currus et Equī ... 175
Antīquum Cereris Templum ... 182
Aquaeductus Nerōnis ... 184
Panthēum, Templum Iovis ... 185
Interior Pars Panthēī ... 187

PAGE

ARX ATHĒNĀRUM ET TEMPLUM THĒSĒUM ... 193
CERTĀMEN CURRUUM IN CIRCŌ ... 198
PUGIL ... 199
PLATĒA MONTIS CAPITŌLĪNĪ ET STATUA MĀRCĪ AURĒLĪ ... 205
CAPITŌLIUM UT HODIĒ EST ... 210
ŌRA ĪTALIAE ... 211
BALNEAE RŌMĀNAE IN BRITANNIĀ ... 215
PŌCULUM GRAECUM ... 218
IMĀGŌ AĒNA PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ ... 220
AMPHITHEĀTRUM POMPĒIĀNUM ET MŌNS VESUVIUS ... 223
MONTĒS SABĪNĪ ATQUE VIA AD VĪLLAM HŌRĀTĪ ... 228
ARCUS IĀNĪ, LOCUS MERCĀTŌRUM ... 230
MĪLES CUM SCŪTŌ ET HASTĀ ... 234
URBS RŌMA UT NUNC EST ... 238
LEŌNĒS CURRUM CYBELAE. TRAHENTĒS ... 242
MONĪLE EX AURŌ ET AMETHYSTĪS ... 244
PORTUS NEĀPOLIS ET MŌNS VESUVIUS ... 249
FORCEPS IGNIFER ... 253
VIA TRIUMPHĀLIS IN MONTIBUS ALBĀNĪS ... 254
GALLUS MORIĒNS ... 256
DOMUS TIBERĪ IMPERĀTŌRIS IN PALĀTIŌ ... 262
TITUS LĪVIUS ... 268
CICERŌ ... 269
PALŪDĀMENTUM ... 270
VERGILIUS ... 273
HOMĒRUS ... 274
LĪCTŌRĒS ... 275
HORĀTIUS POĒTA ... 279
PĪRAEUS, PORTUS ATHĒNĀRUM ... 280
CĪVIS RŌMĀNUS ... 284
C. IŪLIUS CAESAR ... 285
AMPULLA OLEĀRIA ... 288
TEMPLUM ROTUNDUM ... 290
RĒGIA CAESARUM IMPERĀTŌRUM ... 292
FLŪMEN ET PŌNS ... 296
CLĀVIS AEREA ... 301
CATAPULTA, MĀCHINA QUĀ RŌMĀNĪ PUGNĀBANT ... 303
CĒNA ... 308
LECTUS ... 309
MĒNSA ... 309

PAGE

FORCEPS IGNIFER ... 312
CŌNSPECTUS AB MONTE IĀNICULŌ ... 314
MONTĒS IN ETRŪRIĀ ... 325
CARPENTUM ... 326
CURRUS ETRŪSCUS ... 329
VĪCUS IN ĪTALIĀ HODIERNĀ ... 332
MAGISTRĀTUS RŌMĀNUS ... 333
TINTINNĀBULA ... 338
AUGUR ... 340
TEMPLUM APOLLINIS IN URBE POMPĒIĪS ... 342
TEMPLUM CONCORDIAE IN SICILIĀ ... 346
SECŪRĒS ... 347
THERMAE CARACALLAE ... 352
DOMUS MĀRCĪ LUCRĒTĪ IN URBE POMPĒIĪS ... 356
IMPLUVIUM—INTERIOR PARS AEDIUM ... 357
TUBAE ... 362
VĪCUS SCELERĀTUS ... 364
MEDIA ROTAE PARS CUM CAPITE MEDŪSAE ... 370
VIA APPIA AB RŌMĀ AD BRUNDISIUM ... 372
IŪNIUS BRŪTUS, CŌNSUL ... 376
SIBYLLA ... 380
FOCULUS ... 381
TEMPLUM SIBYLLAE ... 382
SIBYLLA CŪMAEA CUM LIBRĪS SIBYLLĪNĪS ... 384
VIA APPIA ET AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS ... 388
HORĀTIUS PONTEM DĒFENDIT ... 391
AGRICOLA ET ARĀTRUM ... 392
AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS ... 399
HANNIBAL ... 402
SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS ... 402
HANNIBAL EXERCITUM TRĀNS ALPĒS DŪCIT ... 403
ANTŌNIUS ŌRĀTIŌNEM DĒ CAESARE MORTUŌ HABET ... 409
IN HŌC LOCŌ ANTŌNIUS ŌRĀTIŌNEM HABUIT ... 410
FŌNS TRIUM VIĀRUM ... 415

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

MĀRCUS AURĒLIUS IMPERĀTOR

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

1. The study of the elements of a foreign language, like the study of any other branch of knowledge which the student approaches for the first time, is both easy and difficult. It is easy because the elementary facts are comparatively simple and readily comprehended; it is difficult because the elements, although simple, are fundamentally important.

In acquiring the knowledge of a language, every word which the student adds to his vocabulary, every grammatical principle learned, every inflected form remembered, and every idiom mastered, becomes a part of the material by means of which further progress is made. If the elementary principles are really mastered, the student will surely be conscious of increasing mental power and will enjoy the satisfaction which always comes as a result of successful endeavor.

Throughout the study, and particularly in the beginning, it is desirable that the student should recognize the value of Latin study as a definite opportunity for becoming acquainted with the wonderful Roman people, for whom Latin was everyday speech. This acquaintance is of immense value to us as English-speaking people, since it is only through a knowledge of the Latin language and the Roman people that we can fully understand our own language and literature or appreciate our social institutions.

More than one-half of the words in the English language have been derived directly or indirectly from Latin words.

For centuries, and especially during the Renaissance, Latin was the literary language of Europe. The early English authors wrote in Latin, and all "classical" English literature abounds in allusions to Latin literature and Roman customs.

We have been influenced by many of the social and intellectual traits of the Romans, such as their fortitude, heroism, sacrifice, patriotism, honor, friendship, imagination, sense of humor, respect for law and obedience thereto. Furthermore, many of our most cherished political institutions have been shaped by Roman precedents, and many of our laws are essentially Roman in origin.

Even the Christian religion has come down to us through the Romans and the Latin language. Rome was the first nation of Europe to accept Christianity, and the learned and devout Latin Fathers were the earliest interpreters of Christian doctrine. The Bible itself was translated into Latin long before it was translated into English; and the authorized King James translation contains many words whose meaning can hardly be understood without a knowledge of Latin. For example, in the thirteenth chapter of First Corinthians the word *charity* represents the Latin **cāritās**, which means, not *alms-giving* or *benevolence*, but *affection* or *love*, from **cārus**, *dear*. Hence the revised translation, "And now abideth faith, hope, love, ..."

The student of Latin should keep these important considerations before him, so that his study may reveal to him not the language only, but the people who used it—their nature, their ruling ideas, their institutions, their land, their great city, Rome, and the principal ways in which they impressed themselves upon the civilization of Europe and America.

CHAPTER II

PRONUNCIATION AND READING

2. In the study of Latin it should never be forgotten that language is primarily speech (**lingua,** *tongue*), and that spoken language always precedes written, or literary, language. A knowledge of the Latin language, therefore, must include familiarity with the sound of the words as they are spoken by others and fluency in reproducing them orally. Hence the Latin exercises and selections should be read aloud in Latin, as well as silently, so that the ideas may be conveyed to the mind of the reader as the words and sentences are presented in the Latin order.

Constant practice is the only way by which correct pronunciation of Latin can be acquired. The sound of the letters, the quantity of the vowels, the division of the words into syllables, and the proper placing of the accent may be learned by a careful study of the explanatory matter in sections 6 to 9 and 823 to 829; but imitation of one who reads and speaks correctly will be of the greatest assistance to the beginner.

3. The sentences in section 4 contain all the letters of the Latin alphabet except **K, Y,** and **Z,** which are not often used. They also contain examples of all the long and the short vowels and all varieties of accent.

Find the definitions of the words in the vocabulary, section 12, and after the meaning of each sentence is perfectly understood, translate the sentences into English.

The English articles, *a, an, the,* have no exact equivalent in Latin. They may be supplied in translating whenever necessary.

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

RŌMA ANTĪQUA

RŌMA ANTĪQUA

4. 1. Rō'ma est an-tī'qua urbs. 2. Urbs Rō'ma est in Ī-ta'li-ā. 3. Rō'ma est urbs pul'chra. 4. Urbs Rō'ma lon'gē ab nos'trā pa'tri-ā ab'est. 5. Flū'men Ti'be-ris est in Ī-ta'li-ā. 6. Flū'men Ti'be-ris per ur'bem Rō'mam flu'it. 7. In flū'mi-ne Ti'be-rī est mag'na īn'su-la. 8. Rō'ma e-rat pa'tri-a Rō-mā-nō'rum. 9. Rēx Ī-ta'li-ae est in ur'be. 10. Rē-gī'na quo'que est in ur'be. 11. Rēx et rē-gī'na sunt in ur'be. 12. In an-tī'quā ur'be e'rant vi'ae an-gus'tae. 13. Mag'nī la'pi-dēs in vi'īs vi-den'-tur. 14. Lin'gua Rō-mā-nō'rum est lin'gua La-tī'na. 15. Multī ho'mi-nēs lin'guam La-tī'nam a'mant. 16. Lin'gua La-tī'na est lin'gua pul'chra. 17. Pu'e-rī et pu-el'lae lin'guam La-tī'nam a'mant.

COLLOQUIUM

5. 1. Ubi est urbs Rōma? Rōma in Ītaliā est. 2. Nōn-ne pulchra Rōma est? Urbs pulchra Rōma est. 3. Est-ne Rōma nova urbs? Nōn nova sed antīqua urbs est Rōma. 4. Quod flūmen per urbem fluit? Flū-men Tiberis per Rōmam fluit. 5. Est-ne īnsula in flūmine? In Tiberī est īnsula magna. 6. Quōrum patria erat Rōma? Rōma erat patria Rōmānōrum. 7. Ubi est rēx Ītaliae? Ubi est rēgīna? Rēx et rēgīna sunt in urbe. 8. Erant-ne viae angustae in urbe antīquā? Viae angustae erant in urbe. 9. Lapidēs-ne in viīs sunt? Magnī lapidēs sunt in viīs. 10. Quae lingua est lingua Rōmānōrum? Lingua Latīna est lingua Rōmānōrum. 11. Amant-ne hominēs linguam Latīnam? Multī hominēs linguam Latīnam amant. 12. Tū-ne linguam Latīnam amās? Linguam Latīnam amō.

NOTE.—No marks of punctuation were used by the ancient Romans, and -ne, attached to nōn, est, erant, amant, and tū in the questions given above, is but little more than a substitute for the

SYLLABLES

6. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or vowels and diphthongs. The last syllable is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult.*

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

FLŪMEN TIBERIS ET ĪNSULA

A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second; as, **Rō′ma, La-tī′na.**

In combinations of two or more consonants the last consonant is generally pronounced with the following vowel; as, **an-tī′qua.**

The combinations **br, tr, gu** and **qu** are pronounced

mark of interrogation. A question in Latin is not ordinarily answered by a single word corresponding to *yes* or *no,* but by a sentence in which part of or all the question is repeated.

Other interrogative words used in section 5 are **ubi,** *where?* **quod,** *what?* **quōrum,** *whose?* **quae,** *what?*

with the following vowel; as, **li'brō, pa'tri-a, lin'gua, quo'que.**

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

7. Vowels are long or short in quantity; *i. e.*, in the time required for their pronunciation.

© *Publishers' Photo Service, N. Y.*

VIA ANGUSTA URBIS POMPĒIŌRUM

The sounds of the vowels are as follows:

ā as in *father.*	**a** as in *idea.*
ē as in *they.*	**e** as in *net.*
ī as in *machine.*	**i** as in *sin.*
ō as in *note.*	**o** as in *obey.*
ū as *oo* in *moon.*	**u** as in *full.*

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

8. A syllable is long or short in quantity according to the time occupied in its pronunciation. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; as, **Rō'ma, cae'lō.**

A syllable is long also if its vowel, whether long or

short, is followed by a consonant *in the same syllable*. Thus the first syllable is long in **lin'gua, ur'be, stel'la,** but short in **pa'tri-a.**

ACCENT

9. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable. In words of more than two syllables the penult is accented if it is long in quantity; if the penult is short, the antepenult is accented; as, **Rō'ma, an-tī'qua, Ti'be-ris.**

PRACTICE

10. 1. Divide the following Latin words into syllables and mark the accent.

Rōmānus	urbium	viārum	amāmus
patria	īnsula	Elementa	Prīma

2. Pronounce all the Latin words in the vocabulary in section 12, dividing the syllables and placing the accent properly. Prolong the sound of long vowels, giving them about twice as much time as is given to short vowels.

VOCABULARY

11. The Latin words which occur in the reading exercises are of three kinds: (1) words which, because of the frequency of their occurrence or their temporary value in illustrating grammatical principles, are of prime importance, and which, therefore, should be thoroughly learned; (2) words which occur somewhat frequently but not often enough to justify an effort to commit them to memory; (3) words which occur rarely and do not require much attention beyond their casual recognition. The words in the first group will naturally compose the student's working vocabulary.

The Latin words as they appear for the first time will be found at the end of each chapter, where they are arranged, with occasional repetition, in the three groups

just described. In the introductory chapters words whose forms have not previously been explained are generally given in the form or forms used in the text. The three groups will be designated by the numerals I, II, III. All the words in section 4 belong to Group I.

12. In this first vocabulary English definitions are given, but in the following chapters the translation of special forms only will be given, and definitions of the other Latin words may be found in the general Latin-English vocabulary at the end of the book.

Group I

ab, *from, by.*
abest, (*he, she, it*) *is distant.*
amō, *I love, like;* **amās**, *you love;* **amant**, (*they*) *love.*
angustae, **angustīs**, *narrow.*
antīqua, *old, ancient.*
erant, (*they*) *were.*
erat, (*he, she, it*) *was.*
est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*
et, *and.*
fluit, (*it*) *flows.*
flūmen, **flūmine**, *river.*
hominēs, *men, people.*
in, *in.*
īnsula, *island.*
Ītaliā, *Italy;* **Ītaliae**, *of Italy.*
lapidēs, *stones.*
Latīna, **Latīnam**, *Latin.*
lingua, **linguam**, *language.*
longē, *far.*
magna, **magnī**, *large.*
multī, *many,*
nōn, *not.*
nostra, *our.*
nova, *new.*
patria, *native city, country.*
per, *through.*
puellae, *girls.*
puerī, *boys.*
pulchra, *beautiful.*
quae, *what?*
quod, *what?*
quoque, *also.*
quōrum, *whose?*
rēgīna, *queen.*
rēx, *king.*
Rōma, **Rōmam**, *Rome.*
Rōmānōrum, *of the Romans.*
sed, *but.*
sunt, (*they*) *are.*
Tiberis, **Tiberī**, *the Tiber.*
tū, *you* (sing.).
ubi, *where?*
urbs, **urbe**, **urbem**, *city.*
videntur, (*they*) *are seen.*
viae, **viīs**, *streets.*

CHAPTER III

THE FIRST DECLENSION

The Nominative and Accusative Cases

13. Some nouns and adjectives have appeared in the preceding chapter in two or more forms; for example,

Lingua Latīna est lingua Rōmānōrum, *the Latin language is the language of the Romans.*

Multī hominēs linguam Latīnam amant, *many people love the Latin language.*

In the first sentence, **lingua Latīna** is used as the subject of the verb **est**; in the second sentence, **linguam Latīnam** is used as the direct object of the verb **amant.** These forms are different *cases* which appear in the declension of Latin nouns and adjectives, and they correspond to certain forms in English; for example, *he,* nominative; *him,* objective; *his,* possessive. The case of any noun or pronoun, in both Latin and English, depends upon its use in the sentence.

14. Two cases are introduced for study in section 16, *the Nominative,* used like the English nominative as the subject of a verb or as a predicate noun, and *the Accusative,* used like the English objective as the direct object of a verb or with certain prepositions.

These cases may be recognized partly by the position and use of the words in the sentences and partly by the forms of the words. In the nominative and accusative cases, singular and plural, the endings of nouns and adjectives of the first declension are as follows:

Singular	Plural
Nominative, **-a**	*Nominative,* **-ae**
Accusative, **-am**	*Accusative,* **-ās**

COLOSSĒUM

15. Read aloud the sentences in section 16, repeating them until all the Latin words are perfectly familiar. While reading in Latin, observe carefully each noun ending in **-a, -am, -ae,** or **-ās,** and from its use as subject or object determine the case. The adjective is always in the same case as the noun with which it is connected.

Find the definitions of new words in the vocabulary at the end of the book; and after the meaning of the sentences has become perfectly clear, give the English equivalent.

Pronounce **ae** like *ai* in *aisle;* **au** like *ou* in *out.* Consult sections 823 to 829 for further directions on pronunciation.

LŪNA ET STELLAE

16. 1. Lū'na est pul'chra. 2. Lū'na plē'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat. 3. Pu-el'la par'va lū'nam pul'chram vi'det. 4. Lū'na plē'na est in cae'lō. 5. Stel'lae clā'rae quo'que sunt in cae'lō. 6. A-gri'co-la lū'nam no'vam vi'det. 7. Nau'tae lū'nam no'vam et stel'lās clā'rās vi'dent. 8. Stel'lae vi'am mōn'strant. 9. Pu-el'lae par'vae stel'lās mul'tās in cae'lō vi'dent. 10. Stel'lae pul'chrae pu-el'lās par'vās dē-lec'tant. 11. U'bi est lū'na no'va? 12. U'bi sunt stel'lae clā'rae? 13. Nōn'ne lū'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat? 14. Nōn'ne stel'lae vi'am mōn'strant? 15. Lū'na ter'ram il-lūs'trat et stel'lae vi'am mōn'strant. 16. Nau'tae mul'tās stel'lās vi'dent. 17. Cas'tor et Pol'lūx sunt du'ae stel'lae. 18. Hae stel'lae nau'tīs (to sailors) vi'am mōn'strant. 19. Lūx stel-lā'rum (of the stars) ad ter'ram ve'nit. 20. Lūx lū'nae (of the moon) a-gri'co-lae (to the farmer) vi'am mōn'strat.

Colloquium

17. 1. Ubi est lūna? 2. Ubi sunt stellae? 3. Videt-ne puella lūnam novam? 4. Vident-ne puellae stellās clārās? 5. Nōn-ne lūna pulchra est? 6. Nōn-ne stellae pulchrae sunt? 7. Quid terram illūstrat? 8. Viam-ne stellae mōnstrant? 9. Quae stellae nautīs viam mōnstrant?

SYNTAX

18. One of the most important things to be considered in the study of language is the way in which words

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS IN SICILIĀ

are combined in sentences. The discussion of this subject belongs to the division of grammar which is called *syntax*. The rules of syntax have been derived from the

study of Roman literature and are convenient statements of the ways in which words were used by Roman writers. In many respects the syntax of the English language is similar to Latin syntax; and this is one of the reasons why the study of Latin helps so much in the understanding of English.

For convenience the rules of syntax are numbered consecutively by numbers in parentheses. They are arranged by titles in the same order in section 860.

19. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. (1)

Rōma est urbs antīqua, *Rome is an ancient city.*

20. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. (2)

Lūna terram illūstrat, *the moon lights up the earth.*

Practice

21. 1. Complete the following sentences by supplying the proper case-endings. Mark the long vowels.

(1) Nov— lūn— est pulchr—.
(2) Parv— puell— lūn— nov— videt.
(3) Lūn— plēn— terr— illūstrat.
(4) Stell— clār— sunt pulchr—.
(5) Puell— parv— stell— clār— vident.
(6) Stell— clār— vi— mōnstrant.

2. Pronounce carefully all of the Latin words in the vocabulary in section 23.

LATIN WRITING

22. Write in Latin the numbered sentences on page 15, using words and forms found in section 16.

With a singular subject of the third person the verb ends in -t; with a plural subject the verb ends in -nt.

Mark the quantity of the long vowels.

1. The moon is full and the stars are bright. 2. The full moon and the bright stars are seen in the sky. 3. The farmer sees the full moon and the bright stars. 4. The moon lights up the earth. 5. The stars show the way. 6. The beautiful stars please the little girls. 7. The new moon pleases the sailors. 8. The little girls see the sailors in the streets (in viīs).

VOCABULARY

23. All the words in this chapter belong to Group I.

ad	**hae**	**nauta**	**puella**
agricola	**lūna**	**nova**	**stella**
clāra	**lūx**	**parva**	**terra**
duae	**multae**	**plēna**	**via**

Special Forms

agricolae, *to the farmer.*
caelō, *sky.*
dēlectant, (*they*) *please.*
illūstrat, (*it*) *lights up.*
lūnae, *of the moon.*
mōnstrat, (*he, she,it*) *shows;* **mōnstrant** (*they*) *show.*
nautīs, *to sailors.*
quae, *what?*
quid, *what?*
stellārum, *of the stars.*
venit, (*he, she, it*) *comes.*
videt, (*he,she*) *sees.*
vident, (*they*) *see.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

24. 1. Write the words **puella parva** and **stella clāra** in the nominative and accusative cases, singular and plural.

2. What is the quantity of the vowel **a** in the ending of the accusative plural?

3. Write or copy Latin sentences to illustrate the use of the nominative singular and the nominative plural as subjects of verbs, and the accusative singular and plural as objects.

CHAPTER IV

THE FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

The Genitive and Ablative Cases

25. The cases which are presented for study in this chapter are the *Genitive* and the *Ablative.*

The genitive case is equivalent to the English possessive or to the English objective with the preposition *of.*

Fīlia agricolae, *the daughter of a farmer* or *a farmer's daughter;* **corōnae puellārum,** *the girls' wreaths;* **rēx Ītaliae,** *the king of Italy.*

The ablative case is very often used with certain prepositions, especially with **ā** or **ab,** *from, by;* **cum,** *with;* **dē,** *down from, from;* **ē** or **ex,** *from (out of);* **in,** *in* (not *into*).

Ab Ītaliā, *from Italy;* **ā nautīs,** *by the sailors;* **cum agricolā,** *with the farmer;* **in viīs,** *in the streets.*

The preposition **ā** is used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** may be used before vowels or consonants.

The ablative case may also be used without a Latin preposition. It then generally denotes that with which, or by means of which, anything is done.

Urbs statuīs ōrnātur, *the city is adorned with statues;* **terra lūnā et stellīs illūstrātur,** *the earth is lighted up by the moon and stars.*

In the genitive and ablative cases, singular and plural, the endings of nouns and adjectives of the first declension are as follows:

Singular	Plural
Genitive, -ae	*Genitive*, -ārum
Ablative, -ā (long a)	*Ablative*, -īs

Dea, and fīlia, have -ābus in the ablative plural. They are thus distinguished from the same cases of deus and fīlius.

26. Read the following sentences aloud in Latin. Follow the sense while reading the Latin and by the aid of the words previously learned get as much of the meaning as possible before consulting the vocabulary.

The article, *a, an*, or *the*, and the possessive *his, her, their*, or *your*, may be supplied where the sense requires them.

AGRICOLAE ET NAUTAE

27. 1. In Ī-ta'li-ā sunt a-gri'co-lae et nau'tae. 2. A-gri'co-la ter'ram a'rat; nau'tae a'rant a'quam. 3. Ter'ra a-gri'co-lam dē-lec'tat; a'qua nau'tās dē-lec'tat. 4. A-gri'co-la ter'ram a'mat; nau'tae a'quam a'mant. 5. Fī'li-a a-gri'co-lae sil'vam a'mat. 6. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum lū'nam et stel'lās a'mant. 7. Sil'va fī'li-am a-gri'co-lae dē-lec'tat. 8. Stel'lae fī'li-ās nau-tā'rum dē-lec'tant. 9. Fī'li-a a-gri'co-lae mēn'sam ro'sīs ōr'nat. 10. Ro'sae a-gri'co-lam et fī'li-am dē-lec'tant. 11. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum nā'vem co-rō'nīs ōr'nant.

12. Di-ā'na est de'a sil-vā'rum. 13. Lū'na est rē-gī'na stel-lā'rum. 14. Sta'tu-a Di-ā'nae est in ur'be Rō'mā. 15. Pu-el'lae sta'tu-am Di-ā'nae co-rō'nīs ōr'nant. 16. Sta'tu-a Di-ā'nae ā pu-el'līs ōr-nā'tur. 17. Sta'tu-ae de-ā'rum co-rō'nīs ōr-nan-tur. 18. Sunt'ne co-rō'nae pul'chrae? 19. Nau-tae sta'tu-ās de-ā'rum vi'dent. 20. Pul-chrae'ne sunt sta'tu-ae de-ā'rum et co-rō'nae Di-ā'nae? 21. Ab a-gri'co-lā sil'va a-mā'tur; ā nau'tīs stel'lae a-man'tur. 22. A-gri'co-la in sil'vā cum fī-li-ā'bus est. 23. Pu-el'lae in sil'vā cum a-gri'co-lā sunt. 24. Fī'li-ae nau-tā'rum lū'nam no'vam cum stel'līs in cae'lō vi'dent.

Colloquium

28. 1. Quid agit agricola? 2. Quid agunt nautae? 3. Nōn-ne aqua agricolam dēlectat? 4. Amat-ne nauta terram? 5. Quid agit agricolae fīlia? 6. Quid agunt nautārum fīliae? 7. Quis est dea silvārum? 8. Ubi est statua Diānae? 9. Quid in urbe nautae vident? 10. Sunt-ne statuae pulchrae? 11. Quid agricola amat? 12. Quid nautae amant? 13. Quid in caelō fīliae nautārum vident?

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

Statua Diānae

SYNTAX

29. A noun used to qualify another noun, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive case. (3)

Diāna est dea silvārum, *Diana is the goddess of the woods.*

a. This qualifying genitive frequently denotes possession. **Pecūnia agricolae,** *the farmer's wealth.*

30. The means or the instrument by which or with which anything is done is denoted by the ablative case. (4)

Puellae statuam corōnīs ōrnant, *the girls adorn the statue with garlands.*

a. The person by whom anything is done is expressed by a noun in the ablative case following the preposition **ā** or **ab.**

Statua ā puellīs ōrnātur, *the statue is adorned by the girls.*

Practice

31. 1. Complete the following sentences and phrases by supplying the proper words and case-endings. Mark the long vowels.

(1) Fīlia ——— (of the sailor).
(2) Fīliae ——— (of the farmers).
(3) Agricol— (the farmer's) silv— est parv—.
(4) Corōn— puell— (of the girls) sunt pulchr—.
(5) In silv— (sing.); in silv— (pl.).
(6) Ex silv— (sing.); ex silv— (pl.).
(7) Ab agricol— (sing.); ā naut— (pl.).
(8) Puell— statu— Diān— corōn— (sing.) ōrnat.
(9) Puell— statu— de— corōn— (pl.) ōrnant.

2. Divide into syllables, marking the accent, and pronounce all Latin words of two syllables or more in the vocabulary in section 33.

Latin Writing

32. Write the following sentences in Latin.

1. Diana is the goddess of the forest. 2. The forest pleases Diana. 3. The streets of Rome are adorned with statues. 4. Rome is adorned with the statues of goddesses. 5. Do statues please goddesses? 6. The statue of Diana is adorned with garlands. 7. The statue is adorned by the little girls. 8. Are not the garlands of the little girls beautiful? 9. Diana loves the forests. 10. Do goddesses love (amantne) little girls?

Vocabulary

33. All the words in this chapter belong to Group I.

ā	**corōna**	**fīlia**	**rosa**
ab	**cum**	**mēnsa**	**silva**
aqua	**dea**	**quis**	**statua**

Special Forms

agit, (*he, she*) *does, is doing.*
agunt, (*they*) *do, are doing.*
amantur, (*they*) *are loved.*
amat, (*he, she*) *loves.*
amātur, (*he, she, it*) *is loved.*
arant, (*they*) *plow.*
arat, (*he*) *plows.*
dēlectat, (*he, she, it*) *pleases.*
nāvem, *boat, ship.*
ōrnant, (*they*) *adorn.*
ōrnantur, (*they*) *are adorned.*
ōrnat, (*he, she, it*) *adorns.*
ōrnātur, (*he, she, it*) *is adorned.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

34. 1. Write the words **fīlia** and **corōna pulchra** in the nominative, genitive, accusative, and ablative cases, singular and plural.

2. In which of these four forms is a long vowel found in the last syllable? What vowel is long in the ending of the genitive plural?

3. What is the difference between the use of **corōnīs,** sentence 17, section 27, and **ā puellīs,** sentence 16?

4. Compose or copy Latin sentences, using nouns in the singular and in the plural, to illustrate the rules of syntax given in sections 29 and 30.

TEMPLUM CASTŌRIS ET POLLŪCIS IN FORŌ RŌMĀNŌ

CHAPTER V

THE FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

The Dative and Vocative Cases

35. The cases to be considered in this chapter are *the Dative* and *the Vocative.*

The dative case is used in Latin to show some of the relations which in English are denoted by the objective case following the preposition *to* or *for.* One of the most important of these relations is that of the indirect object of a verb; as,

Stellae nautīs viam mōnstrant, *the stars show the way to sailors* or *the stars show sailors the way.*

The most common use of the indirect object is to denote the person to whom, or the thing to which, anything is done. The verb may be active or passive; as,

Cornēlia Diānae corōnam dat, *Cornelia gives a wreath to Diana.*

Corōna ā Cornēliā Diānae datur, *a wreath is given to Diana by Cornelia.*

The relation expressed in English by the preposition *to* is not always represented in Latin by the dative case. With verbs which convey the idea of motion, the place to which, or towards which, the motion is directed is not denoted by the dative case, but by the preposition **ad** or **in** followed by the accusative case, **ad** meaning *to* or *towards,* and **in** meaning *to, into,* or *upon*; as,

Lūx stellārum ad terram venit, *the light of the stars comes to the earth;* **aqua dē caelō in terram venit,** *water comes down from the sky to* (or *upon*) *the earth.*

The dative case is also used with certain Latin adjectives; as,

Corōna est Diānae grāta, *the wreath is acceptable to Diana.*

The vocative case is the form of a noun or a pronoun used in addressing a person, or a thing personified; as,

Vidēsne, Cornēlia, statuam Diānae? *Cornelia, do you see the statue of Diana?*

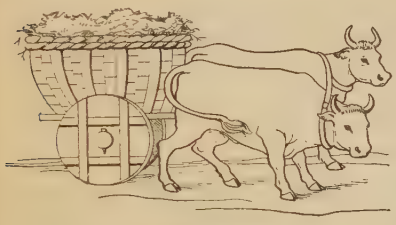
Quam clārae, stellae parvae, estis! *How bright you are, little stars!*

COLUMNA IN FORŌ TRĀIĀNŌ

36. In the dative and vocative, the endings of nouns and adjectives of the first declension are as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Dative,	**-ae**	*Dative,*	**-īs**
Vocative,	**-a**	*Vocative,*	**-ae**

In the singular the dative has the same form as the genitive; in the plural the dative and the ablative are alike. The vocative is like the nominative.



PLAUSTRUM

When a noun has the same form in two or more cases, the only way to determine which case is used in any instance is to consider the relation of the noun to other words in the sentence.

READING EXERCISE

37. 1. Agricola in terrā labōrat. 2. Terra agricolae pecuniam dat. 3. Unde, agricola, pecūnia venit? 4. Pecūnia agricolae ex terrā venit. 5. Fīlia agricolae Diānae corōnam dat. 6. Corōna ā fīliā agricolae Diānae datur. 7. Nōnne corōna, Diāna, pulchra est? 8. Nōnne corōna, puella, Diānae grāta est? 9. Casa agricolae proxima est aquae. 10. Nāvis nautārum est proxima ōrae. 11. Unde, nautae, dīvitiae veniunt? 12. Aqua nautīs dīvitiās dat.

PUELLAE CORŌNĀS FACIENTĒS

13. Rōma antīqua erat in Ītaliā. 14. Trōia quoque urbs antīqua erat. 15. Trōia antīqua erat in Āsiā. 16. Trōia longē ab ōrīs Ītaliae aberat. 17. Īnsulae multae proximae ōrīs Trōiae sunt. 18. Nautae ab ōrīs Trōiae ad īnsulās nāvigant. 19. Noctū stellae nautīs viam mōnstrant. 20. Noctū lūna incolīs terrae lūcem dat.

Colloquium

38. 1. Ubi agricola labōrat? 2. Quid agricolae terra dat? 3. Quid fīlia agricolae Diānae dat? 4. Ubi est casa agricolae? 5. Ubi est nāvis nautārum? 6. Eratne Trōia urbs antīqua? 7. Unde nautae nāvigant? 8. Nōnne stellae nautīs viam mōnstrant? 9. Quid noctū incolīs terrae lūcem dat? 10. Eratne Trōia proxima ōrīs Ītaliae?

SYNTAX

39. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. (5)

Stellae nautīs viam mōnstrant, *the stars show (to) sailors the way.*

40. The name of the person (or thing) addressed is in the vocative case. (6)

Nōnne stellae, nauta, viam mōnstrant? *Do not the stars show the way, O sailor?*

Practice

41. Complete the following sentences and phrases:

(1) Terr— agricol— (sing.) pecūni— dat.
(2) Puell— naut— (pl.) corōn— (pl.) dant.
(3) Silv— proxim— aqu— est.
(4) Corōn— de— (pl.) grāt— sunt.
(5) Puell— statu— (sing.) Diān— corōn— ōrnat.
(6) Puell— statu— (pl.) de— (pl.) corōn— ōrnant.
(7) Nōnne lūn—, agricol— (sing.), pulchr— est?
(8) Nōnne stell—, naut— (pl.), pulchr— sunt?
(9) Ex aqu—; in (into) aqu—; in (in) aqu—.
(10) Ex silv— (pl.); in (into) silv— (pl.); in (in) silv— (pl.).

LATIN WRITING

42. 1. The earth gives wealth to the inhabitants. 2. The moon and stars give light to the earth by night.

3. The inhabitants of Italy labor on the land. 4. A large island is near (to) the shore of Italy. 5. The inhabitants of the island are sailors. 6. The water gives the sailors wealth. 7. By night the stars show sailors the way. 8. Is the light of the moon welcome, sailors? 9. Are the girl's garlands acceptable, Diana?

VOCABULARY

43.

Group I

ex	**grātia**	**noctū**	**proxima**
grāta	**nāvis**	**ōra**	**unde**

Group II

casa	**dīvitiae**	**incola**	**pecūnia**

Special Forms

aberat, (*it*) *was distant.*	**labōrat,** (*he, she*) *labors.*
dant, (*they*) *give.*	**lūcem,** *light.*
dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives.*	**nāvigant,** (*they*) *sail.*
datur, (*it*) *is given.*	**venit,** (*he, she, it*) *comes.*
	veniunt, (*they*) *come.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

44. 1. Write the singular and plural of **corōna** and **īnsula magna** in the six cases which have been studied. Give the names of the cases and arrange them in the following order: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.*

2. In what cases is the vowel of the last syllable long?

3. What is the meaning of the Latin preposition in the phrases **in Ītaliā** and **in Ītaliam?**

4. When is the relation *to* expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative case rather than by the dative?

5. Compose or copy Latin sentences, using nouns in the singular and the plural, to illustrate the rules of syntax given in sections 39 and 40.

CHAPTER VI

THE FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

The Locative Case

45. The change in the form of a noun, pronoun, or adjective to denote case and number is called *declension.* Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are regularly declined in the six cases which have been discussed in the two preceding chapters.

Nouns are declined in five different ways, which are known as *the First, Second, Third, Fourth,* and *Fifth Declensions.* The nouns whose endings have thus far been considered belong to *the First Declension.*

46. Ordinarily the place in which anything is, or is done, is denoted in Latin by the preposition in and the ablative case; as,

Rōma est in Ītaliā, *Rome is in Italy.*
Puerī in viā sunt, *the boys are in the street.*

But a few nouns, especially names of cities, have a form called the locative case, which is used to denote place or location. In the first declension the locative case has in the singular the same form as the genitive, and in the plural the same form as the ablative; as,

Rōmae statuās pulchrās vidēmus, *in Rome we see beautiful statues.*
Athēnīs est statua Minervae, *in Athens there is a statue of Minerva.*

FĀBULAE POĒTĀRUM

47. 1. Urbs Rōma in Ītaliā est; in Graeciā est urbs Athēnae. 2. Rōmae et Athēnīs poētae habitant. 3. Poētae fābulās multās nārrant. 4. Dē nātūrā terrae et dē nātūrā stellārum fābulae poētārum nārrantur. 5. Dē deābus quoque poētae fābulās nārrant. 6. Diāna est dea silvārum. 7. Diāna silvās et stellās et lūnam amat. 8. Puellae statuam Diānae corōnīs ōrnant. 9. In pictūrā est statua Minervae. 10. Pulchrane, puellae, est statua Minervae? 11. Suntne statuae, dea, deābus grātae? 12. Minerva est sapientiae dea. 13. Minerva poētīs sapientiam dat; agricolīs scientiam agricultūrae dat. 14. Athēnīs est statua magna Minervae.

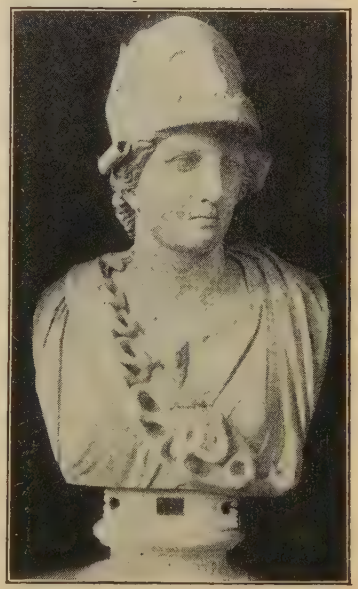


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

MINERVA, DEA SAPIENTIAE

15. Iūnō et Venus erant quoque deae antīquae. 16. Iūnō incolās Graeciae amābat; Venus incolās amābat Trōiae. 17. Inter hās deās discordia magna venit. 18. Propter discordiam deārum pugnae multae et magnae in ōrīs Trōiae erant. 19. Incolae Trōiae et Graeciae mīlitiae (loc., at war) erant. 20. Dēnique Trōia dēlēta est. 21. Aenēās, vir clārus, cum multīs Trōiae incolīs ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliam venit. 22. Venus dea erat Aenēae māter. 23. Dea Aenēae viam mōnstrat.

a. Repeat orally the declension of **Rōma** in the singular and of **Athēnae** in the plural; also the declension of **fābula** in the singular and plural.

b. Give the rule of syntax which applies to each of the following: **Statua** (sentence 10), **poētae** (3), **statuam** (8), **silvās** (7), **Diānae** (8), **deārum** (18), **corōnīs** (8), **Aenēae** (22), **poētīs** (13), **dea** (11), **puellae** (10), **mīlitiae** (19), **Athēnīs** (2).

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

STATUA DEAE VENERIS

COLLOQUIUM

48. 1. Ubi est urbs Athēnae? 2. Ubi poētae habitant? 3. Quid nārrant poētae? 4. Fābulāsne dē deābus poētae nārrant? 5. Estne Diāna sapientiae dea? 6. Quis est dea sapientiae? 7. Ubi est statua Minervae? 8. Nōnne hic liber pictūris deārum ōrnātur? 9. Quid propter (on account of what) Trōia dēlēta est? 10. Nōnne pugnae inter incolās Trōiae et Graeciae erant? 11. Quis Aenēae viam mōnstrat?

GENDER

49. Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter. The gender of Latin nouns is best learned by observation since the grammatical gender does not always correspond to the natural gender. In the general vocabulary the gender of each noun is indicated by the letter *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, as **stella, aqua, sapientia;** but nouns which denote males are masculine, as **nauta, agricola, incola.**

IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEĀRUM

THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS

50. In a Latin sentence the arrangement of the words differs somewhat from the English order. The subject is usually placed at the beginning and the verb at the end of the sentence. The indirect object generally precedes the direct object and the adjective generally follows the noun which it modifies. Considerable variety in the arrangement of words is possible in Latin because the relation of words to each other is shown by their form as well as by their position in the sentence.

Notice the variation in the following:

Stellae clārae nautīs viam mōnstrant.
Nautīs stellae clārae viam mōnstrant.
Viam stellae clārae mōnstrant nautīs.
Mōnstrant nautīs viam clārae stellae.

In the first sentence the words are arranged in the normal or usual order. The effect of placing any word except the subject first is to give that word more emphasis than it would have in its usual position. Thus the third sentence means, *The bright stars show the* ***way*** *to sailors.* The adjective is generally emphatic when it precedes its

noun. Thus the fourth sentence may be translated, *The stars when* ***bright*** *show sailors the way.*

The Roman writers display great skill in arranging the words so as to produce artistic effects, and the beauty of Latin style is due in part to the pleasing variety thus obtained.

TYPICAL NOUN

51. Nominative, **stella**; genitive, **stellae**; feminine gender; *star.*

SINGULAR

CASE	DECLENSION	CASE-ENDING	MEANING
Nom.	stella	-a	*a (the) star*
Gen.	stellae	-ae	*of a (the) star*
Dat.	stellae	-ae	*to, for a (the) star*
Acc.	stellam	-am	*a (the) star*
Voc.	stella	-a	*O star*
Abl.	stellā	-ā	*with, from, by a (the) star*

PLURAL

CASE	DECLENSION	CASE-ENDING	MEANING
Nom.	stellae	-ae	*(the) stars*
Gen.	stellārum	-ārum	*of (the) stars*
Dat.	stellīs	-īs	*to, for (the) stars*
Acc.	stellās	-ās	*(the) stars*
Voc.	stellae	-ae	*O stars*
Abl.	stellīs	-īs	*with, from, by (the) stars*

a. In the first declension the case-endings include the characteristic vowel ā, which is the ending of a form called the stem. Thus the stem of **stella** is **stellā-**.

b. Special forms. **Dea,** *goddess,* and **fīlia,** *daughter,* in the dative and ablative plural, have the forms **deābus** and **fīliābus.**

c. Locative case. In nouns of the first declension the locative case has in the singular the same form as the genitive; in the plural it has the same form as the ablative. **Rōmae,** *in Rome;* **mīlitiae,** *in war;* **Athēnīs,** *in Athens.*

SYNTAX

52. **The locative case, which occurs in a few nouns, denotes the place where.** (7)

Rōmae et Athēnīs multae deārum statuae sunt, *in Rome and in Athens there are many statues of goddesses.*

Practice

53. 1. Tell the case and number of the following nouns, naming all cases denoted by any one form.

agricolae	nautīs	viā	corōnam
Diāna	fābulās	stellārum	fīliābus

2. Supply the proper case-endings.

(1) In (into) Ītali—; in (into) Graeci—; in (into) Āsi—.

(2) In (in) Ītali—; in (in) Graeci—; in (in) Āsi—.

(3) Rōm— (in Rome); Athēn— (in Athens); mīliti— (in war).

(4) Singular endings: Diān— est de—; statu— Diān— videō; puell— Diān— corōn— dat; statu— corōn— ōrnātur; estne, Diān—, corōn— pulchr—?

(5) Plural endings: Poēt— puell— fābul— nārrant; fābul— poēt— puell— sunt grāt—; statu— poēt— corōn— ōrnantur.

LATIN WRITING

54. 1. Ancient Troy was in Asia. 2. Rome is far away from Troy. 3. Many islands are near (to) the shores of Troy. 4. A poet tells a story concerning Troy. 5. Discord comes between the goddesses. 6. On account of the quarrel of the goddesses Troy is destroyed. 7. Aeneas comes from the shores of Troy to Italy. 8. The goddess Venus shows (to) Aeneas the way. 9. In Athens there is a large statue of Minerva. 10. In Rome the streets are adorned with statues.

VOCABULARY

55.

Group I

clārus	fābula	māter	propter
dēnique	hic	nātūra	pugna
dē	inter	poēta	vir

Group II

dēlēta	mīlitia	sapientia	scientia

Group III

agricultūra	discordia	liber	pictūra

Special Forms

amābat, (*he, she*) *loved.*	nārrant, (*they*) *tell.*
habitant, (*they*) *live.*	nārrantur, (*they*) *are told.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

56. From what Latin words of the vocabulary in section 55 are the following English words derived?

agriculture	*discord*	*nature*	*poet*
clear	*fable*	*picture*	*science*

WRITTEN REVIEW

57. 1. Make a table to show the declension of nauta, similar to the table in section 51.

2. Write the declension of dea and of fīlia.

3. Mention one use of each of the Latin cases.

4. Write the sentence, Minerva poētīs sapientiam dat, in three different arrangements, and describe the effect of changing the position of the words.

Find in section 47 the Latin words to which the following English words are related: *demonstrate, magnitude, narration, ornament.*

CHAPTER VII

VERBS

Personal Endings in the Active Voice

58. In both Latin and English a verb agrees with its subject in person and number, but in the Latin this agreement is shown much more clearly than it is in English. The English verb, *love*, for example, in the present tense of the active voice has the same form in all the persons, singular and plural, except in the third person singular, *loves*, where the letter *s* is added. The same is true of all regular English verbs. The irregular verb, *I am*, however, has distinct forms for the first person singular and the third person singular, and the verb is conjugated thus:

I am	*we are*
you (sing.) *are*	*you* (pl.) *are*
he is	*they are*

In Latin verbs each person has a characteristic ending, and these have been observed in previous lessons, particularly the ending **-t** in the third person singular, and **-nt** in the third person plural.

In all the tenses of the indicative mood, except the perfect, the personal endings of Latin verbs in the active voice are as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
First person,	**-m, -ō,**	*I*	**-mus,** *we*
Second person,	**-s**	*you*	**-tis,** *you*
Third person,	**-t**	*he, she, it*	**-nt,** *they*

Sometimes the subject of a verb is not expressed by a separate word. The ending of the verb then tells whether

the subject is **ego**, *I;* **tū**, *you* (sing.); **ille**, *he;* **nōs**, *we;* **vōs**, *you* (pl.); or **illī**, *they*. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are regularly not expressed except for emphasis or contrast.

READING EXERCISE

59. 1. Ego fābulam nārrō. 2. Tū fābulam nārrās. 3. Poēta fābulam nārrat. 4. Nōs fābulās nārrāmus. 5. Vōs fābulās nārrātis. 6. Poētae fābulās nārrant.

7. Ego linguam Latīnam amō. 8. Tū urbem antīquam amās. 9. Diāna silvās amat. 10. Nōs statuam Diānae amāmus. 11. Vōs sapientiam amātis. 12. Nautae aquam amant.

13. (Ego) stellās videō. 14. (Tū) lūnam novam vidēs. 15. Puella statuam Minervae videt. 16. (Nōs) statuam Diānae vidēmus. 17. (Vōs) corōnam puellae vidētis. 18. Puellae Ursam Magnam in caelō vident.

19. Ego sum agricola. 20. Tū nauta es. 21. Horātius est poēta. 22. Nōs incolae Ītaliae sumus. 23. Vōs incolae Graeciae estis. 24. Lūna est plēna et stellae sunt clārae.

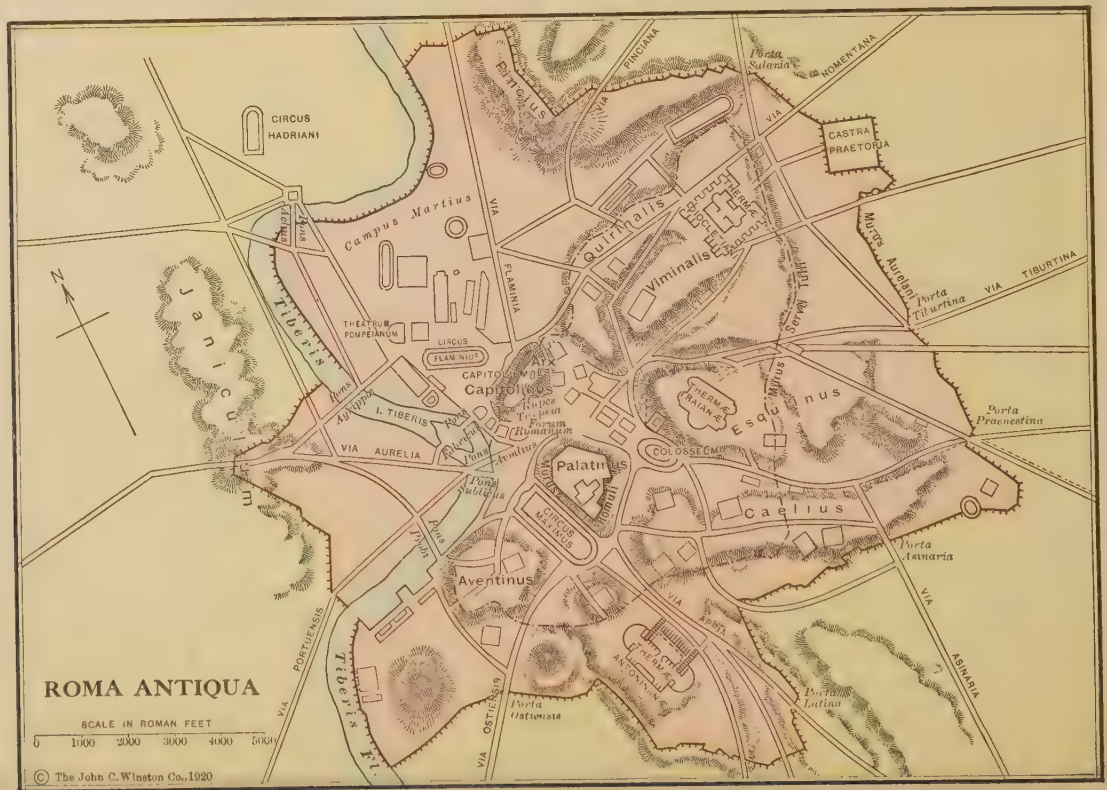
COLLOQUIUM

60. 1. Quid tū, Cornēlia, in caelō vidēs? 2. Nōnne lūna nova pulchra est? 3. Quid vōs, puellae, in caelō vidētis? 4. Puellaene Ursam Parvam vident? 5. Nārrantne poētae dē stellīs fābulās? 6. Tūne es poēta?

CONJUGATION

61. **Sum,** *I am;* **amō,** *I love;* **videō,** *I see.*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
sum,	*I am*	**sumus,**	*we are*
es,	*you are*	**estis,**	*you are*
est,	*he (she, it) is*	**sunt,**	*they are*


ROMA ANTIQUA
SCALE IN ROMAN FEET
0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000
© The John C. Winston Co., 1920
CIRCUS HADRIANI
Campus Martius
Pincius
VIA PINCIANA
Porta Salaria
VIA NOMENTANA
CASTRA PRAETORIA
Quirinalis
Viminalis
THERMÆ DIOCLETIANÆ
Murus Aurelani
Porta Tiburtina
VIA TIBURTINA
Servus Tullii
VIA FLAMINIA
THEATRUM POMPEIANUM
CIRCUS FLAMINIUS
Janiculum
Tiberis
Pons Aelius
Pons Agrippae
I. TIBERIS
Pons Fabricius
Pons Aemilius
VIA AURELIA
Capitolinus
Arx
Rupes Tarpeia
Forum Romanum
Palatinus
Murus Romanus
Pons Sublicius
CIRCUS MAXIMUS
Aventinus
Pons Probi
Esquilinus
THERMÆ TRAIANÆ
COLOSSEUM
Caelius
Porta Praenestina
Porta Asinaria
VIA ASINARIA
VIA APPIA
THERMÆ ANTONINIANÆ
Porta Latina
VIA OSTIENSIS
Porta Ostiensis
VIA PORTUENSIS
Tiberis Fl.

SINGULAR

amō,	*I love, am loving, do love*	**videō,**	*I see,* etc.
amās,	*you love, are loving, do love*	**vidēs,**	*you see,* etc.
amat,	*he loves, is loving, does love*	**videt,**	*he sees,* etc.

PLURAL

amāmus,	*we love, are loving, do love*	**vidēmus,**	*we see,* etc.
amātis,	*you love, are loving, do love*	**vidētis,**	*you see,* etc.
amant,	*they love, are loving, do love*	**vident,**	*they see,* etc.

a. In English the verb *am* (*are, is*) is used as an auxiliary in the formation of the so-called progressive forms of the present tense, as, *I am running, you are running,* etc.; and the verb *do* is also used thus, especially in negative forms, as, *I do not see;* and in questions, as, *do I see?* But the Latin present has only one form and this may be translated as the sense requires.

b. In the verb **dō** the vowel **a** is short in **damus** and **datis.**

SYNTAX

62. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (8)

Ego linguam Latīnam amō, *I love the Latin language;* **Diāna silvam amat,** *Diana loves the forest;* **quid vōs in caelō vidētis,** *what do you see in the sky?*

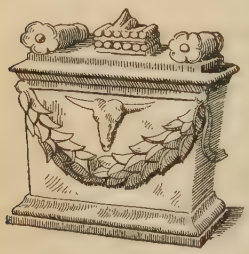
PRACTICE

63. Supply the proper verbs and endings. Mark the long vowels.

(1) Ego—— (am), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(2) Tū—— (are), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(3) Ille—— (is), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(4) Nōs—— (are), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(5) vōs—— (are), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(6) Illī—— (are), nārr—, am—, vid—.
(7) Ego lūn— vid—; tū stell— (pl.) vid—; poēt— (sing.) fābul— nārr—; nōs labōr—; vōs in vi— es—; naut— (pl.) aqu— am—.

LATIN WRITING

64. 1. I am a sailor. 2. You are a farmer. 3 Is Horace a poet? 4. We are inhabitants of America (Americae). 5. You are inhabitants of Rome. 6. Are not the stars bright and beautiful?



ĀRA RŌMĀNA

7. I love the ancient statue. 8. Do you (sing.) love wisdom? 9. The little girl loves the poet's story. 10. We do love the Latin language. 11. Do you love stories, little girls? 12. Sailors love the stars.

13. I see the Great Bear in the sky. 14. Do you see the Little Bear? 15. The little girl sees a bright star. 16. We see the land and the water. 17. Do you (pl.) see the beautiful statue of the goddess? 18. The girls see the full moon in the sky.

VOCABULARY

65. All the Latin words used for the first time in this chapter belong to Group I.

amō	illī	nōs	ursa
ego	labōrō	sum	videō
ille	nārro	tū	vōs

WRITTEN REVIEW

66. 1. Write the conjugation of mōnstrō similar to that of amō in section 61, giving the English meanings.

2. In what forms (persons) is a long vowel found in the last syllable in the conjugation given in section 61. What is the quantity of each vowel preceding the personal endings?

3. Make a list of the personal endings found in the verbs in section 59.

4. What is the principal difference between amō and videō in the conjugation of the present tense?

CHAPTER VIII

THE SECOND DECLENSION

Masculine Nouns

THE NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND VOCATIVE CASES

67. In the second declension the endings of masculine nouns in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nominative,	**-us, -er, -ir**	*Nominative,*	**-ī**
Accusative,	**-um**	*Accusative,*	**-ōs**
Vocative,	**-e, -er, -ir**	*Vocative,*	**-ī**

Most nouns whose nominative ends in **-us** have the ending **-e** in the vocative singular, but **fīlius**, *son,* has the vocative **fīlī**, *O son, my son;* and proper nouns ending in **-ius** in the nominative singular have the ending **-ī** in the vocative. **Cassius** (nom.), *Cassius;* **Cassī** (voc.), *O Cassius.* In the singular of all other nouns, and always in the plural, the vocative case has the same ending as the nominative. On account of this similarity the vocative case is sometimes omitted from the paradigms.

Many adjectives have the endings of the first and second declensions. Such adjectives, when used with a feminine noun, have the forms of the first declension; when used with a masculine noun, they have the forms of the second declension. Adjectives of the third declension will be discussed in connection with nouns of the third declension.

In the vocabulary the nominative singular of each noun is given, or the nominative plural if the singular is

lacking, and the ending of the genitive. If the ending of the genitive singular is **-ae**, the noun belongs to the first declension; if the genitive ending is **ī**, the noun belongs to the second declension.

DOMINUS ET SERVUS

68. 1. Cassius est agricola. 2. Cassius agricola est dominus. 3. Cassius est dominus bonus. 4. Dominus

HOMINĒS IN VIĀ APPIĀ

bonus malum servum habet. 5. Servus malus dominum bonum habet. 6. Cassius est amīcus nautae. 7. Dominus et nauta sunt amīcī. 8. Agricola et nauta sunt virī validī. 9. Vir validus validum fīlium habet. 10. Fīlius agricolae et servus malus sunt amīcī. 11. Fīlius agricolae est puer malus. 12. Dominus multōs agrōs habet. 13. Dominus fīlium et servum in agrōs mittit. 14. Puerī malī nōn in agrōs sed in viās veniunt. 15. Puer malus et servus saepe in viīs sunt. 16. Ubi, serve, est fīlius

agricolae? 17. Fīlius, domine, est in viā. 18. Ubi, fīlī, est servus? 19. Servus est in viā. 20. Suntne, Cassī, puerī in agrīs? 21. Nōn in agrīs sed in viīs puerī sunt. 22. Laudatne, puerī, dominus servum malum et malum fīlium? 23. Puerōs malōs dominus nōn laudat. 24. Servī malī dominōs bonōs nōn amant.

Colloquium

69. 1. Quālis (what kind of) dominus Cassius est? 2. Nōnne dominus bonus servum bonum habet? 3. Estne nauta amīcus Cassī? 4. Quālis vir validum fīlium habet? 5. Estne fīlius agricolae puer bonus? 6. Quō (whither, where) dominus fīlium et servum mittit? 7. Veniuntne in agrōs puerī? 8. Laudatne dominus puerōs malōs? 9. Nōnne servī malī bonōs dominōs amant?

THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ABLATIVE CASES

70. The endings of the genitive, the dative, and the ablative cases in the second declension are as follows:

Singular	Plural
Genitive, -ī	*Genitive*, -ōrum
Dative, -ō	*Dative*, -īs
Ablative, -ō	*Ablative*, -īs

The endings of the dative and ablative cases are the same; and in the plural these cases have the same endings as in the first declension. In any sentence if a noun has a case-ending which belongs to two or more different cases, the case is determined by the use of the noun, as in English.

For the use of the genitive, dative, and ablative cases, see sections 29, 39, and 30.

READING EXERCISE

71. 1. Mārcus est agricola Rōmānus. 2. Mārcus hortum pulchrum habet. 3. Līberī Mārcī in hortō cum

amīcīs lūdunt. 4. Lūdī līberōrum Mārcō sunt grātī. 5. Līberīs quoque lūdī sunt grātī. 6. Līberī Mārcī lūdōs amant. 7. Līberī ab amīcīs amantur. 8. Fīliī dominī nōn semper lūdunt; saepe in hortō labōrant. 9. Servī quoque in agrīs dominī labōrant. 10. Dominus magnum servōrum numerum habet. 11. Servī nōn semper in agrīs labōrant; saepe cum līberīs dominī lūdunt. 12. Lūdī servīs grātī sunt. 13. Bonī servī ā dominō laudantur. 14. Dominus bonō servō praemium dat.

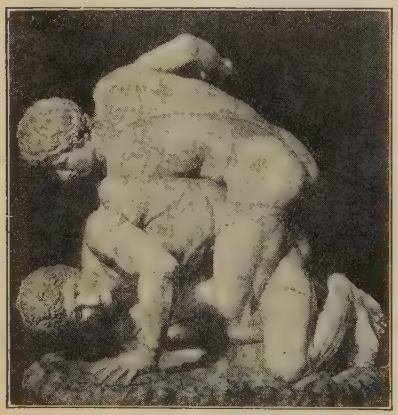


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

LŪDUS PUERŌRUM

15. Fīlius Mārcī est discipulus. 16. Puerī multī sunt discipulī. 17. Magister discipulīs bonīs librōs bonōs dat. 18. Ā discipulīs librī amantur. 19. Puerī et puellae librōs bonōs amant. 20. Magister magnum librōrum bonōrum numerum domī habet. 21. Magister discipulō bonō librum Latīnum dat. 22. Liber Latīnus est liber bonus. 23. Fābulae dē Rōmānīs in hōc librō sunt. 24. Poētae virōs bonōs in librīs laudant. 25. Horātius et Vergilius sunt poētae Rōmānī. 26. Fābulae Horātī et Vergilī discipulō grātae sunt.

COLLOQUIUM

72. 1. Ubi līberī Mārcī lūdunt? 2. Suntne Mārcō lūdī līberōrum grātī? 3. Nōnne fīliī dominī semper lūdunt? 4. Nōnne servī semper labōrant? 5. Fīliusne

Mārcī discipulus est? 6. Esne tū quoque discipulus? 7. Quid magister discipulō dat? 8. Amatne discipulus librum? 9. Quid poētae in librīs nārrant? 10. Ubi, discipule, liber est?

GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION

73. Most nouns of the second declension ending in **-us, -er,** and **-ir** are masculine.

Typical Nouns

74.

Nom., **amīcus**	gen., **amīcī**	m., *friend*
Nom., **puer**	gen., **puerī**	m., *boy*
Nom., **liber**	gen., **librī**	m., *book*
Nom., **fīlius**	gen., **fīlī**	m., *son*

	Singular				
Nom.	amīcus	puer	liber	fīlius	-us, —
Gen.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīlī	-ī
Dat.	amīcō	puerō	librō	fīliō	-ō
Acc.	amīcum	puerum	librum	fīlium	-um
Voc.	amīce	puer	liber	fīlī	-e, —
Abl.	amīcō	puerō	librō	fīliō	-ō

	Plural				
Nom.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīliī	-ī
Gen.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	fīliōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	amīcīs	puerīs	librīs	fīliīs	-īs
Acc.	amīcōs	puerōs	librōs	fīliōs	-ōs
Voc.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīliī	-ī
Abl.	amīcīs	puerīs	librīs	fīliīs	-īs

a. The stems of nouns of the second declension end in o; **amīco-, puero-, libro-, fīlio-.**

b. Special forms. **Fīlius,** *son,* and proper nouns whose nominatives end in **-ius** form the genitive singular with **-ī** instead of **-iī**; **fīlī** for **fīliī**; **Cassī** for **Cassiī.** These nouns also have the ending **-ī** instead of **-ie** in the vocative singular: **fīlī** for **fīlie**; **Horātī** for **Horātie.** The accent is retained on the same syllable as in the nominative; **Horā'tius** (nom.), **Horā'tī** (gen.), **Horā'tī** (voc.).

c. For the declension of **deus**, *god*, and **domus**, *home*, see section 835. **Domus** has the locative form **domī**, *at home*.

SYNTAX

75. A predicate noun or adjective describing the subject agrees with the subject in case. (9)

Horātius est poēta, *Horace is a poet;* **Corōna est deae grāta**, *the wreath is acceptable to the goddess;* **incolae īnsulārum sunt nautae**, *the inhabitants of the islands are sailors;* **puerī sunt amīcī**, *the boys are friends.*

PRACTICE

76. Fill the blanks with singular case-endings, and then change all nouns (except dom—, sentence 5), adjectives, and verbs to the plural.

1. Domin— bon— serv— bon— habet.
2. Serv— domin— bon— est bon—.
3. Fīli— domin— cum serv— est.
4. Magister discipul— libr— dat.
5. Puer valid— dom— est.
6. Amāsne, discipul—, libr— magistr—?
7. Amatne, fīl—, magistr— libr—?

LATIN WRITING

77. 1. The farmer's son has a bad friend. 2. The boy's friend is a bad slave. 3. The boy and his friend are often in the streets. 4. Marcus has large fields. 5. The strong sons of Marcus work in the fields. 6. The children play in the garden.

7. The master (magister) gives a good book to his pupil. 8. Master, does the pupil like the book? 9. (My) friend, the book is acceptable to the pupil. 10. Pupils, where are the master's books? 11. The master has the books at home.

12. In Rome and in Athens we see statues of famous men. 13. In their books poets praise famous men. 14. Horace and Vergil are famous poets. 15. The master loves the books of Horace and Vergil. 16. The master tells the poets' stories to his pupils. 17. They (Illī) love your stories, Vergil.

VOCABULARY

78.

Group I

ager	**grātus**	**mittō**	**saepe**
amīcus	**habeō**	**numerus**	**semper**
bonus	**laudō**	**praemium**	**servus**
domus	**lūdō**	**puer**	**veniō**
fīlius	**malus**	**Rōmānus**	**vir**

Group II

dominus	**līberī**	**pulcher**	**quō** (adv.)
liber (noun)	**lūdus**	**quālis**	**validus**

Group III

discipulus	**hortus**	**Latīnus**	**magister**

Special Forms

hoc, *this.*
laudantur, (*they*) *are praised.*
lūdunt, (*they*) *play.*
mittit, (*he, she, it*) *sends.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

79. 1. Write the declension of **hortus magnus** like **amīcus**; **miser** (gen., **miserī**) like **puer**; **ager** (gen., **agrī**) and **pulcher** (gen., **pulchrī**) like **liber**. (See section 74.)

2. Make out a table of the case-endings of the second declension, carefully marking the long vowels.

3. Write the conjugation in the present tense, active voice, of **laudō** (like **amō**, section 61) and **habeō** (like **videō**, section 61).

CHAPTER IX

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

80. Neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have the same endings as masculine nouns except in the nominative and vocative singular, where

© *Brown & Dawson, N. Y.*

PARTHENŌN

the ending is **-um**; and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, where the ending is **-a**.

In all neuter nouns the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike; and in the plural these three cases end in **-a**.

DEUS CREĀTOR ET DEĪ RŌMĀNŌRUM

81. 1. In prīncipiō creāvit Deus caelum et terram. 2. Deus caelum creāvit et omnia quae in caelō sunt. 3. Sōl atque lūna et stellae sunt in caelō. 4. Diē sōl incolīs

FORUM RŌMĀNUM

terrae lūcem dat. 5. Noctū lūna et stellae terrae lūcem dant. 6. Caelum est super; īnfrā est terra. 7. Aqua dē caelō in terram venit. 8. Caelum terrae aquam dat. 9. Deus terram creāvit et omnia quae in terrā sunt. 10. Argentum et aurum sunt in terrā. 11. Frūmentum

mātūrum est in agrīs. 12. Agricolae frūmentum ex agrīs in oppida portant. 13. Cōpia frūmentī mox in oppidīs erit. 14. Terra incolīs oppidōrum cōpiam frūmentī dat. 15. Estne in oppidō argentī et aurī cōpia? 16. Caelum glōriam Deī nārrat. 17. Silvae erant prīma Deī templa.

18. Rōmānī antīquī deōs multōs et deās multās habēbant. 19. Iuppiter deus maximus erat et in caelō habitābat. 20. Iuppiter erat pater deōrum et hominum. 21. Diāna et Minerva deae erant Rōmānōrum. 22. Diāna dea silvārum erat; Minerva sapientiae erat dea. 23. In oppidīs Ītaliae multa deōrum templa sunt. 24. Statuae deōrum et deārum in templīs antīquīs sunt. 25. Urbs Rōma templīs deōrum ōrnātur. 26. Templa pulchra columnīs ōrnantur. 27. Hominēs in templa dōna portant. 28. Castor et Pollūx templum in Siciliā habēbant. 29. In hoc templum nautae ex aquā servātī dōna portant. 30. Athēnīs erat Parthenōn, templum pulcherrimum. 31. In hōc templō erat statua Minervae.

Colloquium

82. 1. Quis caelum et terram creāvit? 2. Quid terrae lūcem dat? 3. Unde aqua in terram venit? 4. Creāvitne Deus aurum et argentum? 5. Estne in oppidō frūmentī cōpia? 6. Quid terra incolīs oppidōrum dat? 7. Quae prīma templa Deī erant? 8. Nōnne multōs deōs Rōmānī habēbant? 9. Quid in templa hominēs portant? 10. Quod templum est pulcherrimum?

GENDER

83. Nouns of the second declension whose nominative ends in **-um** are neuter, as **caelum, argentum, templum.**

TYPICAL NOUN

84. Nom., **templum**; gen., **templī**; neuter, *temple*.

	Singular			Plural	
Nom.	templum	-um	*Nom.*	templa	-a
Gen.	templī	-ī	*Gen.*	templōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	templō	-ō	*Dat.*	templīs	-īs
Acc.	templum	-um	*Acc.*	templa	-a
Voc.	templum	-um	*Voc.*	templa	-a
Abl.	templō	-ō	*Abl.*	templīs	-īs

a. The stem ends in **o**; **templo-**.

b. Nouns whose nominative ends in **-ium** have the genitive ending in **-ī** instead of **-iī**, with the accent on the syllable which is accented in the nominative case. **Inge′nium**, nom., **inge′nī** (for **ingeniī**), gen.

Practice

85. Fill the blanks with singular endings, and then change all nouns, adjectives, and verbs to the plural. Mark the long vowels.

1. Agricol— fīli— dōn— dat.
2. Dōn— grāt— fīli— est.
3. Magister templ— pulchr— am—.
4. Vir in templ— dōn— port—.
5. Templ— pulchr— ā magistr— am—.
6. Dōn— in templ— ā vir— port—.

LATIN WRITING

86. 1. There are many large towns in Italy. 2. In the towns of Italy there are ancient temples. 3. Columns adorn the ancient temples. 4. The goddess of wisdom has a temple in Athens. 5. The temple of Minerva is beautiful. 6. Men bring gifts into the temples of the gods. 7. An abundance of grain is in the fields. 8. Gold and silver are in the towns. 9. The farmers bring grain into the town. 10. The inhabitants of the town give the farmers gold.

VOCABULARY

87.

Group I

antīquus	caelum	dōnum	portō
argentum	cōpia	maximus	prīmus
atque	dē	oppidum	sōl
aurum	deus	pater	templum

Group II

creātor	glōria	Parthenōn	pulcherrimus
frūmentum	mātūrus	prīncipium	servātus

Group III

columna	īnfrā	mox	super

Special Forms

creāvit, (*he*) *created.*	habitābat, (*he*) *dwelt.*
diē, *by day.*	hominum, *of men.*
erit (*he, it*) *will be.*	omnia, *all things.*
habēbant, (*they*) *had.*	quae, *which, what.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

88. From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

column *creator* *glory* *temple*

a. Make a list of five or more common English words of which the Latin super is an element; *e. g., super-human, superstition.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

89. 1. Write the declension of caelum in the singular and of oppidum magnum in the singular and plural.

2. What cases of neuter nouns of the second declension have the ending -um? What cases have the ending -a? What three cases in the singular are alike? In the plural?

3. In what cases do most nouns of the first and second declensions have the ending -īs? What is the ending of dea and fīlia in these cases?

CHAPTER X

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

90. An act may be represented as taking place in the past, in the present, or in the future. Action may also be represented as going on or as completed. Latin verbs, like English verbs, have different forms to indicate

HORTUS RŌMĀNUS UT HODIĒ VIDĒTUR

differences in time, and the Latin tenses denote the completeness or the incompleteness of an act as well as the time of its occurrence. The present indicative represents the action as incomplete and the time as present; as,

Virī labōrant, *the men are working* (*work*).

The imperfect tense of the indicative represents the action as incomplete and the time as past; as,

Virī labōrābant, *the men were working* (*worked*).

In regular verbs the letters **-bā-** (**-ba-**) which precede the personal endings form the tense-sign of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood; as,

Labōrā-ba-nt, *they were working.*

The imperfect tense of **sum** is **eram,** *I was;* **erās,** *you were;* **erat,** *he was; etc.*

COLLOQUIUM INTER PUERŌS

91. 1. *Puer Prīmus.* Tū herī ubi erās? 2. *Puer Secundus.* Herī eram in hortō; hodiē domī sum. 3. *P.* Ubi Mārcus erat? Eratne tē-cum? 4. *S.* Ego et Mārcus in hortō erāmus. 5. *P.* Cūr nōn tū et Mārcus domī erātis? 6. *S.* Patrēs nostrī in hortō erant; nōs puerī cum iīs erāmus.

PUER ET LIBER

7. *P.* Quid herī, puer, magistrō dabās? 8. *S.* Ego magistrō nihil herī dabam; ille mihi librum Latīnum dabat. 9. *P.* Nōnne lūdīs tū et Mārcus operam dabātis? 10. *S.* Nōn lūdīs sed librīs operam dabāmus. 11. *P.* Herī fortasse puerī librīs operam dabant; hodiē lūdunt.

12. *S.* Tū herī ubi erās? 13. *P.* Ego herī in silvā eram, atque ibi magnam ursam vīdī et maximē timēbam. 14. *S.* Tū ursam timēbās atque ursa tē timēbat. 15. *P.* Pater meus erat mēcum; ego et ille ambō ursam timēbāmus. 16. *S.* Tūne atque pater tuus ursam timēbātis? Vēnātōrēs in silvā erant; illī ursam nōn timēbant. 17. *P.* Ego ursam nōn timeō sī nōn magna est; sed illa ursa erat maxima et mē maximē terrēbat.

CONJUGATION

92. **Eram,** *I was;* **dabam,** *I was giving, I gave;* **timēbam,** *I was fearing, I feared.*

		Singular		Tense-sign	Ending
eram,	*I was*	dabam	timēbam	-ba-	-m
erās,	*you were*	dabās	timēbās	-bā-	-s
erat,	*he was*	dabat	timēbat	-ba-	-t
		Plural			
erāmus,	*we were*	dabāmus	timēbāmus	-bā-	-mus
erātis,	*you were*	dabātis	timēbātis	-bā-	-tis
erant,	*they were*	dabant	timēbant	-ba-	-nt

a. The tense-sign of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood is -bā-, shortened to -ba- before -m, -t, and -nt.

b. Dō has a short vowel (a) before the tense-sign -bā- and in this respect differs from regular verbs.

Practice

93. 1. Supply the proper verbs and endings for the imperfect tense. Mark the long vowels.

(1) Ego—— (was), port——, vid——, am——.
(2) Tū —— (were), port——, vid——, am——.
(3) Ille —— (was), port——, vid——, am——.
(4) Nōs—— (were), port——, vid——, am——.
(5) Vōs—— (were), port——, vid——, am——.
(6) Illī —— (were), port——, vid——, am——.

2. Change the following present forms to the corresponding forms of the imperfect, and the imperfect forms to the present.

sum	dat	vidēbam	portābant
vidēs	timent	amābātis	timēbās

LATIN WRITING

94. 1. Yesterday Marcus was at home, but today he is in the field. 2. I was in the town yesterday and my friends were with me. 3. We (nōs) were in the streets of the town. 4. Were you (sing.) in the field with the men?

5. You and the men were not in the town. 6. I saw a statue of Diana. 7. The girls were bringing a wreath into the temple. 8. Did you (pl.) see the wreath? 9. We saw the wreath and the statue. 10. Yesterday the master was giving books to the pupils. 11. Today the master is telling stories. 12. Yesterday the boys were working; today they are playing.

VOCABULARY

95.

Group I

cūr	maximē	noster	sī
ibi	meus	opera	timeō
ille	nihil	prō	tuus

Group II

fortasse	hodiē	secundus	terreō

Group III

ambō	herī	maxima

Special Forms

iīs, *them.*	patrēs, *fathers.*
illa, *she, that.*	tē, *you* (sing.).
mē, *me.*	vēnātōrēs, *hunters.*
mihi, *to me.*	vīdī, *I saw.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

96. 1. Write out the conjugation of amō (amābam) and videō (vidēbam) in the imperfect tense.

2. In these verb forms what is the quantity of the vowel which precedes the letters -bā- or -ba-? What is the quantity of the vowels which precede the personal endings?

3. What is the principal difference between amābam and vidēbam in the conjugation of the imperfect tense?

4. Make a list of from five to ten common English words which have the Latin prō as an element; *e. g., produce, profess.*

CHAPTER XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

97. If an adjective of the first and second declensions is used with a masculine noun, it is declined like **amīcus, puer,** or **liber** (section 74); if the adjective is used with a feminine noun, it is declined like **stella** (section 51); if the adjective is used with a neuter noun, it is declined like **templum** (section 84).

VĪLLA RŌMĀNA

An adjective is always in the same case, number, and gender as the noun which it modifies, but it does not always have the same case-ending; for example, **agricola bonus,** nom., sing., masc.; **servus miser,** nom., sing., masc.; **nautam validum,** acc., sing., masc.

READING EXERCISE

98. 1. Rōma antīqua erat urbs pulchra. 2. Populus Rōmānus urbem Rōmam amat. 3. Ītalia est populī Rōmānī patria. 4. Ītalia populō Rōmānō cāra est. 5. Terra in Ītaliā agricultūrae est idōnea. 6. Vīlla agricolae proxima est oppidō. 7. Cōpia frūmentī mātūrī est in agrīs. 8. Virī validī frūmentum mātūrum in oppida

proxima portant. 9. Servus miser in agrō labōrat. 10. Malus servus est miser quod labōrat. 11. Servī bonī miserī sunt nōn quod labōrant sed quod nōn līberī sunt. 12. Dominus benignus servō bonō praemium dat. 13. Praemia dominōrum bonōrum servīs sunt grāta. 14. Fīliī parvī in hortō dominī lūdunt. 15. Nātūra puerōrum parvōrum est lūdīs apta. 16. In Ītaliā antīquā erant virī līberī et servī miserī. 17. Nunc nēmō servus est; omnēs sunt līberī. 18. Nōnne laetī sumus quod nēmō servus est?

Colloquium

99. 1. Nōnne Rōma urbs pulchra erat? 2. Amatne populus Rōmānus patriam? 3. Suntne agricolae in Ītaliā? 4. Ubi est vīlla agricolae? 5. Estne in agrīs frūmentum mātūrum? 6. Quō virī frūmentum mātūrum portant? 7. Cūr servus bonus miser est? 8. Cūr servī malī miserī sunt? 9. Cūr nōn semper puerī labōrant? 10. Quis nunc servus est?

TYPICAL ADJECTIVES

100. **Bonus, bona, bonum;** *good*

Singular

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. Bonus is declined like amīcus, bona like stella, and bonum like templum. The stems are bono-, bonā-, and bono-.

101. Miser, misera, miserum; *unhappy*

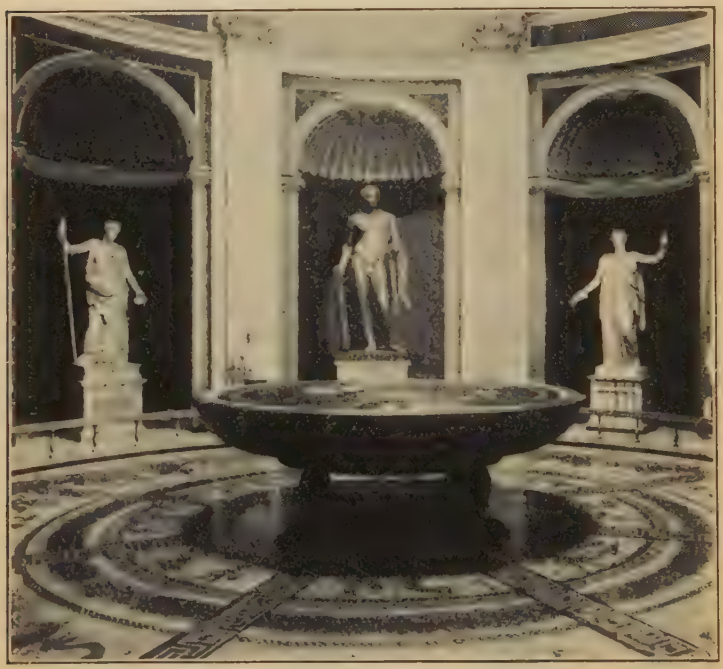
	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō
	Plural		
Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

a. Miser is declined like puer, misera like stella, miserum like templum. The stems are misero-, miserā-, and misero-.

102. Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum; *beautiful*

	Singular		
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
	Plural		
Nom.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Voc.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

a. Pulcher is declined like liber, pulchra like stella, pulchrum like templum. The stems are pulchro-, pulchrā-, and pulchro-.



STATUAE IN MŪSĒŌ VĀTICĀNŌ

SYNTAX

103. An adjective agrees with its noun in case, number, and gender. (10)

Populus Rōmānus, *the Roman people;* liber bonus, *a good book;* stellae clārae, *bright stars;* dōnīs pulchrīs, *with beautiful gifts.*

104. With adjectives denoting quality the dative is

used to designate the person toward whom, or thing toward which, the quality is directed. (11)

Lūdī līberīs grātī sunt, *sports are agreeable to children;* **Ītalia populō Rōmānō cāra est,** *Italy is dear to the Roman people;* **vīlla est proxima oppidō,** *the country-house is near the town;* **lūdī sunt nātūrae puerōrum aptī,** *games are adapted to the nature of boys.*

Practice

105. 1. Supply the proper endings for the following nouns and adjectives.

populus Rōmān—	de— pulchrīs
nauta valid—	poēt— magnus
serv— miser	lūna plēn—
dōnum pulchr—	magistr— bonī
vir bon—	stell— clārās

2. Give the Latin for the following phrases.

Ripe grain (nom. and acc.); (to) the miserable servant; in a large garden; the good master (nom. and acc.); of little children; the Roman people (nom. and acc.); (with) beautiful garlands; ancient towns (nom. and acc.).

LATIN WRITING

106. 1. The new moon is in the clear sky. 2. The sailor sees the new moon and the bright stars. 3. The city (of) Rome is praised by the Roman poets. 4. The poets love the language of the Roman people. 5. The language of the Roman people is the Latin language. 6. The books of the Roman poets please the master. 7. The farmer gives his son a large field. 8. The field is acceptable to the farmer's son. 9. Healthy boys love the fields. 10. The field is suitable for sports. 11. Sports are agreeable to strong boys.

VOCABULARY

107.

Group I

antīquus	idōneus	nēmō	quod (conj.)
aptus	līber	populus	validus

Group II

cārus	laetus	mātūrus	miser

Group III

benignus	nunc	pulcher	vīlla

SPECIAL FORM

omnēs, *all.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

108. 1. From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

apt *benign* *mature* *villa*

2. Find five or more English words related to Latin words in section 98; *e. g.*, *aptitude,* aptus; *maturity,* mātūrus, etc.

WRITTEN REVIEW

109. 1. Write the declension of amīcus bonus, oppidum magnum, vir līber, hortus pulcher, servus miser, puer parvus, puella pulchra, and nauta validus.

2. In what respects must adjectives agree with the nouns which they modify?

3. Why is the case-ending of an adjective sometimes different from that of the noun to which it belongs? For example, why is nauta validus correct?

© *Brown & Dawson, N. Y.*

ATHĒNAE, URBS GRAECIAE CLĀRISSIMA

CHAPTER XII

REVIEW

Derivation of English Words

110. The matter presented in the preceding chapters should be learned with absolute accuracy. Future progress will be far easier, more rapid, and much more satisfactory if these preliminary chapters are completely mastered. If there is any degree of uncertainty in the mind of the student, progress will be slow and difficult, and it will be necessary to interrupt the work continually and go back to the beginning in order to fix clearly in the mind the forms and principles which have been slighted.

111. In the study of the following section give particular attention to the points which have been emphasized in the preceding chapters; viz.,

(1) Reading aloud with due regard to pronunciation and expression.

(2) Recognition of the Latin words, if possible, without first consulting the printed vocabulary.

(3) Comprehension of the meaning without transposing the order of the Latin words.

(4) Translating into correct and expressive English.

(5) Recognition of the inflected forms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

(6) Application of the rules of syntax.

No special attention need be given to the words and phrases the translation of which is given in parentheses.

HORĀTIUS POĒTA

112. 1. In Ītaliā antīquā erat quondam puer parvus cuius (whose) nōmen erat Horātius. 2. Flaccus, pater

Horātī, quondam erat servus. 3. Posteā Flaccus erat līber et agrōs in Āpūliā habēbat. 4. Agrī Flaccī nōn longē ab Rōmā aberant.

5. Flaccus vīllam pulchram in Āpūliā habēbat. 6. Horātius agrōs lātōs et caelum clārum et silvās pulchrās amābat. 7. Vīlla quoque patris Horātiō erat cāra.

Doctor et Discipulī in Urbe Athēnīs

8. Diāna, dea silvārum, puerum amābat et cūrābat. 9. In silvā Āpūliae columbae quondam Horātium lūdō fessum (tired with play) foliīs novīs tēxērunt (covered). 10. Horātius decem annōs nātus (ten years old, at ten years of age) ad urbem portātur.

11. Pater ipse (the father himself) magister prīmus fīlī erat. 12. Posteā Flaccus paedagōgus erat et fīlium ad magistrum dūcēbat. 13. Saepe Flaccus cum fīliō sīc loquēbātur (used to talk). 14. Hic vir, fīlī, bonus est; ille (that) vir est malus. 15. Hoc factum (this deed),

Horātī, est bonum; illud (that) est malum. 16. Haec (this) statua antīqua est pulchra; illud templum novum nōn est pulchrum. 17. Haec doctrīna vēra est; illa (that) nōn vēra est. 18. Hic liber bonus, ille malus est. 19. Hōc modō (in this manner) puer discit quid sit pulchrum (what is beautiful), quid sit bonum, quid sit vērum.

20. Horātius iuvenis (when a young man) Athēnīs erat ibique optimōs doctōrēs habēbat. 21. In illā urbe clārā Parthenōnem, templum pulcherrimum orbis terrārum (of the world), vidēbat. 22. Adultus (when grown to manhood) Horātius ipse poēta clārus erat. 23. Librī Horātī poētae puerīs et puellīs grātī sunt.

Colloquium

113. 1. Quis Horātī poētae erat pater? 2. Quālis homō Flaccus erat? 3. Eratne Flaccus poēta? 4. Ubi Flaccus agrōs habēbat? 5. Nōnne agrī Flaccī Rōmae proximī erant? 6. Quālis puer erat Horātius? 7. Nōnne Diāna Horātium puerum amābat? 8. Quis erat Horātī magister prīmus? 9. Quō modō puer sapientiam discēbat? 10. Quid Horātius Athēnīs vidēbat?

DERIVATION OF ENGLISH WORDS

114. More than one-half of the words in the English language have been derived from the Latin. Some of these have been transferred from Latin to English with little or no change in form or meaning; as, **praemium** (Latin), *premium* (English). Sometimes the resemblance is not quite so obvious on account of a change in some of the letters or the dropping of a syllable or ending; as, **clārus** (Latin), *clear* (English); **templum** (Latin), *temple* (English). Other words have come into the English language through the French, into which they were first introduced from the

From an original photograph of Old Sarum by Henry V. Stearns

CASTRA RŌMĀNA IN BRITANNIĀ VĀLLŌ FOSSĀQUE MŪNĪTA

Latin; as, **lingua** (Latin), *langage* (French), *language* (English).

Even a limited knowledge of the Latin source of English words is an invaluable aid to a proper understanding of the English language; and it will be exceedingly profitable for the student to begin early to observe the relationship between the English and the Latin words whose resemblance is most apparent.

For example, all the words printed in *italics* in the following paragraph may be traced to Latin words.

In *connection* with the *review lessons material* is *provided* to *explain* and *illustrate* the *derivation* of English words from the *Latin;* and the *illustrations,* which are *necessarily restricted* in this book, may be *extended indefinitely* by the *aid* of an *unabridged* English *dictionary.*

DERIVED ENGLISH WORDS

115. Many English nouns and adjectives have been derived from Latin nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions, and some of these may be grouped in classes; as,

glōria, *glory;* **memoria,** *memory;* **miseria,** *misery.*

agricultūra, *agriculture;* **nātūra,** *nature;* **scrīptūra,** *scripture.*

validus, *valid;* **timidus,** *timid;* **humidus,** *humid.*

In the process of derivation the Latin case-endings have generally disappeared, and other modifications sometimes may be observed; but the derived English words closely resemble the Latin originals both in form and in meaning, as is shown by the following list.

agricultūra, *agriculture.*
antīquus, *antique.*
clārus, *clear.*
corōna, *crown.*
discipulus, *disciple.*
discordia, *discord.*
doctrīna, *doctrine.*
glōria, *glory.*
īnsula, *isle.*
lingua, *language.*

magister, *master.*
mātūrus, *mature.*
miser, *miser.*
modus, *mode.*
nātūra, *nature.*
numerus, *number.*
poēta, *poet.*
populus, *people.*
prīmus, *prime.*
statua, *statue.*
templum, *temple.*
validus, *valid.*

RELATED LATIN WORDS

116. In Latin there are many groups of related words which have been formed from a single original or primitive word; as,

discō, *learn;* **discipulus**, *learner;* **disciplīna**, *learning.*
doceō, *teach;* **doctor**, *teacher;* **doctrīna**, *teaching.*

From the Latin words thus formed English words have been derived; as, *disciple* from **discipulus**, *discipline* from **disciplīna**, *doctor* from **doctor**, *doctrine* from **doctrīna**. It may also be said that *discipline* is related to **discō**, *doctrine* to **doceō**, etc.; but it is of course more exact to say that *discipline* is derived from **disciplīna**, a Latin noun which is related to the Latin verb **discō**. While it is interesting and suggestive to observe the resemblance between English words and the Latin words to which they are more or less distantly related, it is much more profitable, when possible, to connect English words with the Latin words from which they are actually derived.

SYNTAX

117. Quote the proper rule in explanation of the case of **Flaccus** (section 112, sentence 3), **agrōs** (3), **Āpūliae** (9), **foliīs** (9), **bonus** (14), **antīqua** and **novum** (16), **puerīs** and **puellīs** (23), **fīlī** (14), **Horātī** (15).

Does any one of the rules given apply to **dea** (8)?

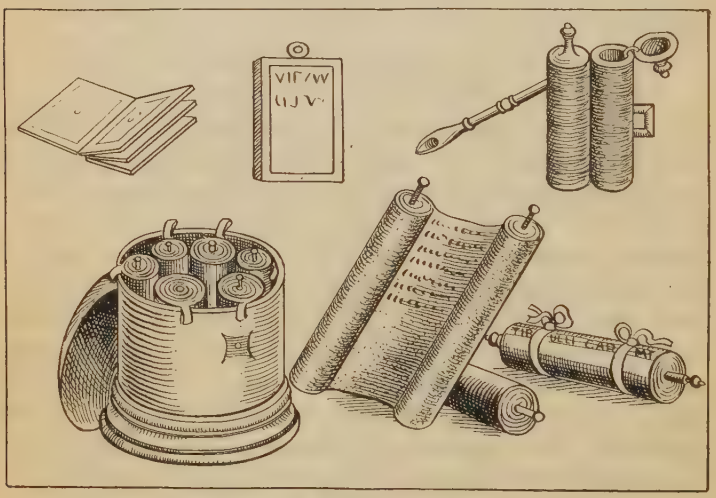
118. A noun used to describe another noun and denoting the same person or thing, if not a predicate noun, is an appositive and is in the same case as the noun which it describes. (12)

Diāna, dea silvārum, *Diana, the goddess of the woods;* **librī Horātī poētae,** *the books of Horace the poet.*

PRACTICE

119. 1. Recite and write the declension of the following nouns and adjectives: **silva magna, dea, fīlius, servus bonus, puer parvus, magister prīmus, vir bonus, folium novum.**

2. Go through section 112 rapidly and tell the case,



RĒS QUIBUS RŌMĀNĪ SCRĪBĒBANT

number, and gender of all the nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions found in the odd-numbered sentences.

LATIN WRITING

120. Write in Latin the following or a short original paragraph.

A ROMAN BOY

The home of a Roman boy is in a beautiful city. He sees ancient temples and statues of gods and great men.

Sometimes he plays with his friends in the streets. Sometimes he works with his teacher. He loves both sport and books. Horace was a Roman boy. He used to play (was playing) in the forests of Apulia.

VOCABULARY

121.

Group I

annus	fessus	lātus	orbis terrārum
cūrō	homō	modus	-que
decem	ipse	nōmen	sīc
factum	iuvenis	optimus	vērus

Group II

adultus	doctrīna	folium	posteā

Group III

columba	nātus	paedagōgus	quondam

Special Forms

aberant, (*they*) *were distant.*
cuius, *whose.*
discit, (*he*) *learns.*
doctōrēs, *teachers.*
ducēbat, (*he*) *conducted.*
haec, hoc, *this.*
ibique, *and there.*
illud, *that.*
loquēbātur, (*he*) *used to talk.*
Parthenōnem, *the Parthenon.*
patris, *of his father.*
portātur, (*he*) *is taken.*
sit, (*he, she, it*) *is.*
tēxērunt, (*they*) *covered.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

122. From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

adult *doctrine* *fact* *mode*

WRITTEN REVIEW

123. 1. Write the declension of **statua pulchra, Horātius** (sing.), **poēta clārus, ager lātus,** and **templum novum.**

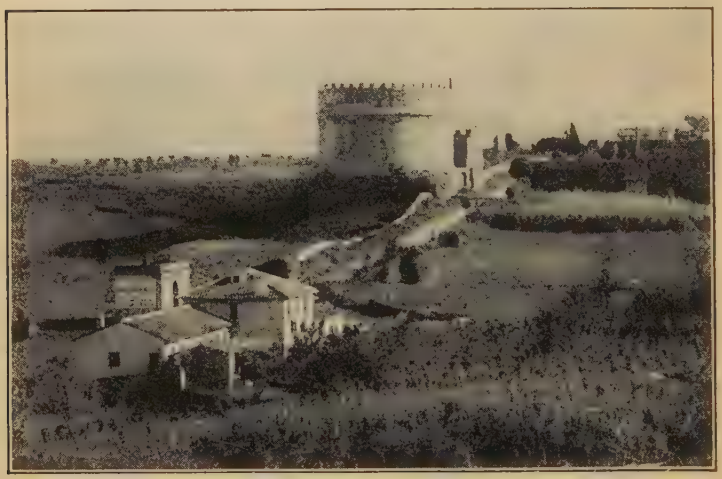
2. Explain the construction (use) of all the nouns and adjectives in the even-numbered sentences of section 112, to which the rules of syntax thus far given apply.

CHAPTER XIII

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Four Conjugations

124. In the conjugation of Latin verbs there are four types, which are designated as *the First, Second, Third,* and *Fourth Conjugations.* The four conjuga-



VIA APPIA NŌN LONGĒ AB URBE RŌMĀ

tions are distinguished from one another by the vowel in which the present stem ends. The present stem, which is the basis of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, is found by dropping the ending **-re** from the present active infinitive. In the general vocabulary

the present infinitive is given immediately following the present indicative to designate the conjugation to which a verb belongs. In the first conjugation the characteristic vowel is **ā**; in the second, **ē**; in the third **e** (short **e**); and in the fourth, **ī**.

Conjugation	Present Indicative	Present Infinitive	Present Stem	Stem Vowel
I.	amō, *I love*	amāre, *to love*	amā-	ā
II.	videō, *I see*	vidēre, *to see*	vidē-	ē
III.	mittō, *I send*	mittere, *to send*	mitte-	e
IV.	audiō, *I hear*	audīre, *to hear*	audī-	ī

125. The indicative mood includes the forms of verbs which are used in stating a fact or in asking a question. The present tense of the indicative mood represents the time as present and the action as incomplete.

EQUUS LIGNEUS

Fābula Vergilī Poētae

126. Graecī bellum cum Trōiānīs decem annōs gerunt. Multī virī in ōrīs Trōiae pugnant. Multī vītam prō patriā dant. Sed deī Graecīs victōriam nōn dant.

Dēnique Graecī longō bellō fessī īnsidiās parant. Equum magnum ex lignō aedificant et mōnstrum armātīs virīs complent. Tum ad īnsulam proximam abeunt et sē in ōrīs cēlant.

Trōiānī īnsidiās nōn timent sed omnēs extrā mūrōs veniunt atque castra dēserta et equum magnum vident. Incolae Trōiae mūrōs dīvidunt atque virī, fēminae, puerī, puellae mōnstrum etiam in urbem trahunt.

Noctū sub lūnā tacitā Graecī ab īnsulā ad ōrās Trōiae veniunt. Virī ex equō līberātī portās aperiunt et sociōs in urbem admittunt. Graecī in urbem admissī Trōiam expugnant. Ille diēs Trōiae erat ultimus.

Colloquium

127. 1. Quot annōs Graecī cum Trōiānīs bellum gerunt? 2. Ubi Graecī pugnant? 3. Quid bellō fessī Graecī agunt? 4. Quō Graecī abeunt? 5. Quid Graecī aedificant? 6. Timentne Trōiānī īnsidiās Graecōrum? 7. Quid extrā mūrōs Trōiānī vident? 8. Num Trōiānī mūrōs dīvidunt? 9. Quō modō Graecī in urbem Trōiam veniunt? 10. Quī portās aperiunt? 11. Quibus (to whom) deī victōriam dant?

READING EXERCISE

128. 1. Ego bellum parō, īnsidiās nōn timeō, mūrōs dīvidō, portās aperiō. 2. Tū īnsidiās cēlās, virōs armātōs timēs, sociōs in urbem admittis, ad īnsulam proximam venīs. 3. Vir armātus pugnat, mōnstrum nōn timet, bellum gerit, in castra venit. 4. Nōs urbem aedificāmus, castra Graecōrum vidēmus, mūrōs dīvidimus, portās aperīmus. 5. Vōs urbem expugnātis, victōriam magnam habētis, bellum longum geritis, ad ōrās Trōiae venītis. 6. Graecī īnsidiās parant, equum ligneum virīs armātīs complent, bellum cum Trōiānīs gerunt, ab īnsulā veniunt.

CONJUGATION

129. **Amō,** *I love;* **videō,** *I see;* **mittō,** *I send;* **audiō,** *I hear.*

Singular

amō	videō	mittō	audiō
amās	vidēs	mittis	audīs
amat	videt	mittit	audit

Plural

amāmus	vidēmus	mittimus	audīmus
amātis	vidētis	mittitis	audītis
amant	vident	mittunt	audiunt

a. In the first person singular of **amō** and **mittō** the characteristic stem vowel has disappeared by uniting with the

personal ending **-ō** (**āmā-ō, amaō amō; mitteō, mittō**). In **videō, audiō,** and **audiunt** the stem vowel is shortened. Before the endings **-t** and **-nt** the vowel is always short. In the third person plural of **mittō** the stem vowel becomes **u**; and before the other endings of **mittō** the vowel **i** is found instead of **e**. These phonetic changes were made unconsciously by the people who once used the words in their daily speech.

SYNTAX

130. The present tense is used (1) to represent an act as going on at the time of speaking; (2) to express a general truth; (3) like the historical present in English, to represent a past event vividly, as if it were present. (13)

(1) **Puer epistulam scrībit,** *the boy is writing (writes) a letter;* (2) **līberī lūdum amant,** *children love play;* (3) **Aenēās urbem aedificat,** *Aeneas builds a city.*

PRACTICE

131. Supply the proper stem vowels and personal endings of the active voice. Mark all the long vowels and pronounce the completed forms with careful attention to syllabication, quantity, and accent.

1. Ego admitt—, ven—, par—, hab—, ag—, pugn—.
2. Tū ven—, par—, hab—, ag—, pugn—, admitt—.
3. Ille par—, hab—, ag—, pugn—, admitt—, ven—.
4. Nōs hab—, ag—, pugn—, admitt—, ven—, par—.
5. Vōs ag—, pugn—, admitt—, ven—, par—, hab—.
6. Illī pugn—, admitt—, ven—, par—, hab—, ag—.

LATIN WRITING

132. 1. I fear a plot. 2. You (sing.) open the gates. 3. The armed man fights. 4. We are dividing the walls. 5. You (pl.) admit the armed men. 6. The Greeks come from the island. 7. The Greeks build a great wooden horse. 8. They fill the wooden horse with armed men.

9. The armed Greeks open the gates of Troy. 10. The men released from the horse admit their companions into the city.

VOCABULARY

133.

Group I

admittō	diēs	mūrus	socius
annus	dīvidō	parō	sub
bellum	equus	porta	tum
castra	gerō	prō	victōria
decem	longus	pugnō	vīta

Group II

abeō	cēlō	expugnō	tacitus
aedificō	dēsertus	īnsidiae	trahō
aperiō	etiam	mōnstrum	ultimus

Group III

admissus	compleō	fēmina	ligneus
armātus	extrā	līberātus	lignum

Derived English Words

admit	*divide*	*monster*	*tacit*

Related English Words

admission	*complement*	*decimal*	*insidious*

a. Find five English words which contain the Latin prō as a prefix, and five which contain sub.

WRITTEN REVIEW

134. 1. Write out the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, and the present stem of all the verbs in the preceding vocabulary, section 133, grouping together the verbs of each conjugation.

2. Write out the conjugation of at least one verb of each of the four conjugations in the present indicative active; *e. g.*, pugnō, compleō, trahō, aperiō.

3. Make a table to show the personal endings of the active voice.

CHAPTER XIV

SELECTIONS FOR READING

135. The student has now proceeded far enough in the study of the simplest elements of the Latin language to make it possible and profitable for him to apply his knowledge in reading connected paragraphs of greater difficulty and with greater variety in content. These selections will give the student an opportunity to become acquainted with some of the legends and mythological stories with which the Romans were familiar.

Under the title *Virī Rōmae* the stories of the legendary kings of Rome were selected from the first book of the Roman historian Livy, one of the most interesting of the Roman writers, and arranged for the use of beginners in Latin by Charles François Lhomond, a professor in the University of Paris, who died in 1794. In *Elementa Prima*, beginning with section 137, some of the same stories are used at intervals, with such modifications as are necessary to adapt them to the student's advancement.

Forms and constructions which have not been previously developed are occasionally introduced, but attention need not be directed especially to them. When the proper place for their discussion is reached, it will be found that partial familiarity, gained incidentally, has prepared the mind to receive the more complete explanation.

QUĪDAM VIR ET LĪBERĪ

136. 1. Quīdam vir ūnum fīlium et duās fīliās habet. 2. Fīlius virī epistulam ad amīcum scrībit. 3. "Quid

agis, fīlī?" pater fīlium rogat. 4. "Epistulam scrībō," fīlius respondet. 5. "Ad quem epistulam scrībis?" 6. "Ad amīcum scrībō, quem maximē amō." 7. "Quid in epistulā scrībis?" 8. "Multa dē librīs et dē lūdīs scrībō." 9. Pater laetus est quod memoria amīcī in animum fīlī venit. 10. Epistula amīcum puerī dēlectat.

11. Puer et puellae in hortō lūdunt. 12. Ventī magnī lūdōs līberōrum impediunt. 13. "Audīsne ventum, fīlī, timēsne ventum?" pater fīlium rogat. 14. "Ventum audiō sed nōn timeō," puer respondet. 15. Puer ventum audit sed nōn timet. 16. "Nōnne ventum audītis? nōnne ventum timētis?" pater fīliās rogat. 17. "Ventum audīmus et timēmus," puellae respondent. 18. "Nautae ventum audiunt; num ventum timent?" 19. "Nautae semper ventum audiunt et maximē amant; sed sī ventī magnī nāvēs impediunt, nautae ventōs nōn amant."

AENĒĀS IN ĪTALIAM VENIT

137. Aenēās, clārus Trōiae vir, sociōs ad arma vocat et fortiter pugnat. Sed Graecī mūrōs Trōiae habent et aedificia incendunt. Priamus, rēx Trōiae, interficitur et urbs antīqua ruit.

Aenēās ex Trōiā incēnsā patrem Anchīsam in umerīs portat. Ascanium, fīlium parvum, sēcum (sē-cum) dūcit. Creūsam coniugem in urbe incēnsā āmittit. Cum multīs sociīs Aenēās ōrās Trōiae relinquit et in Ītaliam venit.

Latīnus in hīs locīs rēgnat. Inter Latīnum et Aenēān (acc.) est amīcitia. Latīnus Aenēae fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dat. Aenēās urbem Lāvīnium aedificat. Posteā Ascanius, fīlius Aenēae, rēgnum habet. Ille Albam Longam condit. Ascanius prīmus rēx est Albānōrum.

a. For the declension of **Aenēās** see section 835; **Anchīsam, acc. of Anchīsēs.**

ITALIA
SCALE OF MILES
0 25 50 75 100
Alpes
GALLIA TRANSPADANA
Mediolanum
Cremona
Placentia
Parma
GALLIA CISPADANA
Mutina
Bononia
Ravenna
Ariminum
Aquileia
Verona
Patavium
VENETIA
ISTRIA
LIBURNIA
DALMATIA
Pola
MARE ADRIATICUM (SUPERUM)
Ancona
PICENUM
Asculum
Camerinum
Perusia
Clusium
UMBRIA
Faesulae
Pisae
Volterra
Sena
ETRURIA
Rusellae
ILVA
Forum Aurelium
Tarquinii
Ostia
Roma
Praeneste
LATIUM
Alba Longa
Tarracina
Caieta
Neapolis
PONTIAE I.
Misenum Pr.
Pompeii
Nuceria
Alfaterna
Capua
Beneventum
Venusia
SAMNIUM
APULIA
Salapia
Canusium
Barium
Brundisium
Tarentum
CALABRIA
Rudiae
Paestum
LUCANIA
Heraclia
Sinus Tarentinus
Buxentum
Lavinium
Thurii
Consentia
Croton
BRUTII
Messana
LIPARAEAE I.
Locri
Regium
Panormus
Aetna M.
SICILIA
Heraclea
Agrigentum
Syracusae
MARE TYRRHENUM (INFERUM)
MARE INTERNUM
Utica
Carthago
AFRICA
Zama
MELITA I.
Longitude 10 East from 12 Greenwich
© The John C. Winston Co., 1920

Colloquium

138. 1. Quālis vir Aenēās erat? 2. Quis māter Aenēae erat? Quis erat pater? Quis fīlius? Quis

From the painting by Raphael

Aenēās cum Patre et Fīliō

coniūnx? 3. Quid agit Aenēās cum Graecī Trōiam incendunt? 4. Quis erat Trōiae rēx? 5. Num rēx

Trōiae urbem incēnsam relinquit? 6. Quem ex Trōiā Aenēās portat? Quem sēcum dūcit? Dūcitne sēcum coniugem? 7. Quī cum Aenēā in Ītaliam veniunt? 8. Quis in Ītaliā rēgnat? 9. Estne rēx Ītaliae amīcus Aenēae? 10. Quem Latīnus in mātrimōnium Aenēae dat? 11. Aedificatne Aenēās urbem? 12. Quis posteā rēgnum habet? 13. Quam urbem Ascanius condit?

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

139. The first person singular of the present active indicative, by which the verb is generally named (*e. g.*, the verb **amō**), and the present infinitive are two of the four forms of Latin verbs which are called principal parts. These are the forms on which the entire conjugation of the verb is based. The present stem, found by dropping the ending **-re** from the present active infinitive, shows to which of the four conjugations a verb belongs, and is the basis of the conjugation in the present tense.

Practice

140. 1. Write the first two of the principal parts and the present stem of **āmittō, impediō, rēgnō, respondeō, scrībō, timeō.**

2. Fill the following blanks by supplying the proper endings of nouns and verbs.

(1) Puer epistul— scrīb—. (2) Ego amīc— am—. (3) Līberī in hort— lūd—. (4) Nōs vent— aud—. (5) Tū puer—(pl.) voc—. (6) Vōs vent— nōn tim—.

LATIN WRITING

141. 1. A boy is writing (writes) a letter. 2. He sends the letter to (ad) his friend. 3. We are sending gifts to our friends. 4. Our friends see and like the gifts. 5. You (pl.) are writing many letters. 6. The letters which (quās) you (sing.) write please your friends.

7. Aeneas leaves the shores of Troy and comes to Italy. 8. He brings (leads) many companions with him (sēcum). 9. Latinus has a kingdom in Italy. 10. Ascanius, the son of Aeneas, builds the city (of) Alba Longa.

VOCABULARY

142.

Group I

āmittō	cum (conj.)	rēgnō	rogō
animus	dūcō	rēgnum	scrībō
arma	impediō	relinquō	ventus
audiō	locus	respondeō	vocō

Group II

aedificium	condō	epistula	incendō
amīcitia	coniūnx	fortiter	umerus

Group III

incēnsus	mātrimōnium	quīdam	ruō

Special Forms

coniugem (coniūnx), *wife, husband.*
interficitur, *(he) is killed.*
nāvēs, *ships.*
patrem (pater), *father.*
quam, *what?*
quem (quī), *whom.*
quī, *who, what? who?*
sē, *him, himself.*

Derived English Words

edifice	*impede*	*reign* (verb)	*relinquish*

Related English Words

armament	*audience*	*incendiary*	*subscription*

WRITTEN REVIEW

143. 1. Write the first two of the principal parts of dūcō, veniō, rogō, habeō, condō.

2. Write the conjugation in the present tense of one verb of each of the four conjugations.

CHAPTER XV

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

144. Voice is the term which is applied to a certain relation between the subject of a verb and the action which the verb denotes. If the subject is represented as acting, the verb is said to be in the active voice; as

The boy calls his friend, **puer amīcum vocat.**

If the subject is represented as acted upon, the verb is said to be in the passive voice; as,

The boy is called by his friend, **puer ab amīcō vocātur.**

In the present indicative of Latin verbs, and also in the imperfect and future tenses, the passive voice is distinguished from the active by the passive personal endings; as,

voca-t, *he calls;* **vocā-tur,** *he is called.*

The personal endings of the passive voice with their meanings are as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
First person	-r	*I*	-mur	*we*
Second person	-ris, -re	*you*	-minī	*you*
Third person	-tur	*he, she, it*	-ntur	*they*

LŪDUS QUĪ "SPECTŌ" APPELLĀTUR

145. Līberī lūdum habent quī "Spectō" appellātur. Ūnus ex līberīs dēligitur quī dux appellātur. Dux oculōs vēlat dum reliquī discurrunt atque sē cēlant. Cum omnēs tacitī sunt dux clāmat, "Ūnus, duo, trēs! Mē cavēte! veniō! Vōs omnēs quī nōn parātī estis 'Ego!' clāmāte." Deinde sī

nihil audītur dux sociōs petit. Mox ūnum ex sociīs videt atque "Tē spectō!" clāmat. Alter quī nōn vidētur accurrit atque clāmat, "Adsum! Ipse mē spectō!" Mox omnēs aut spectantur aut sē spectant. Puer quī prīmus spectātur dux habētur. Reliquī iterum sē cēlant et ā duce iterum petuntur.

"SPECTŌ"

COLLOQUIUM

146. 1. Quid appellātur lūdus līberōrum? 2. Quis "dux" appellātur? 3. Quid reliquī agunt līberī cum dux oculōs vēlat? 4. Quid clāmat dux cum omnēs tacitī sunt? 5. Num līberī omnēs tacitī sunt? 6. Cum ūnus ex līberīs vidētur, quid audītur? 7. Num līberī omnēs spectantur? 8. Quid agunt līberī quī nōn spectantur? 9. Quis, cum omnēs aut spectantur aut sē spectant, dux habētur? 10. Habentne līberī Americānī lūdum quī "spectō" appellātur?

READING EXERCISE

NOTE.—These sentences should be read and translated rapidly, with attention directed chiefly to the forms of the verbs.

147. 1. Mārcus amīcum amat et ab amīcō amātur. 2. Ego amīcum amō et ab amīcō amor. 3. Tū amīcum amās et ab amīcō amāris (or amāre). 4. Nōs amīcōs amāmus et ab amīcīs amāmur. 5. Vōs amīcōs amātis et ab amīcīs amāminī. 6. Amīcī nōs amant et ā nōbīs amantur.

7. Ego tē videō et ā tē videor. 8. Tū mē vidēs et ā mē vidēris (vidēre). 9. Mārcus amīcum videt et ab amīcō vidētur. 10. Nōs līberōs vidēmus et ā līberīs vidēmur. 11. Vōs puerōs vidētis et ā puerīs vidēminī. 12. Puerī sociōs vident et ā sociīs videntur.

13. Mārcus ad Cornēliam servum mittit. 14. Servus ad Cornēliam mittitur. 15. Unde, serve, mitteris (mittere)? 16. Ā Mārcō dominō ad Cornēliam mittor. 17. Servum ad tē, Cornēlia, mittō. 18. Dominī servōs in agrōs mittunt. 19. Quō, servī, mittiminī? 20. Mittimur in agrōs. 21. Servī ā dominīs in agrōs mittuntur.

Flūmen Tiberis super Rīpās

22. Ventus nautam impedit. 23. Nauta ventō impedītur. 24. Nōnne ventō, nauta, impedīris (impedīre)? Ventō impedior. 25. Ventī nautās impediunt. 26. Nautae ventīs impediuntur. 27. Nōnne ventīs, nautae, impedīminī? Ventīs impedīmur.

28. Rēx Trōiae interficitur. 29. Trōia incēnsa ab Aenēā relinquitur. 30. Anchīsēs in umerīs fīlī portātur. 31. Creūsa in urbe āmittitur.

32. Multī sociī ab Aenēā in Ītaliam dūcuntur. 33. In ōrīs Ītaliae Latīnus rēx ab Aenēae sociīs vidētur. 34. Urbs Lāvīnium ab Aenēā aedificātur. 35. Aenēās vir clārus habētur. 36. Ab Ascaniō Alba Longa conditur.

RŌMULUS ET REMUS IN TIBERIM MITTUNTUR

148. Post multōs annōs Proca erat rēx Albānōrum. Proca duōs fīliōs habet, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnum relinquitur sed Amūlius rēgnum occupat atque fīliōs frātris obtruncat. Fīlia autem Numitōris, Rhēa Silvia, Rōmulum et Remum geminōs habet. Fīliī Silviae ab Amūliō timentur. Silvia in cūstōdiam datur atque puerī parvī in Tiberim mittuntur. Forte flūmen erat super rīpās. Aqua puerōs in siccō locō relinquit. Ā lupā puerī audiuntur et cūrantur.

Colloquium

149. 1. Quis prīmus rēx Albānōrum erat? 2. Eratne Proca quoque Albānōrum rēx? 3. Quam multōs fīliōs Proca habet? 4. Quis duōrum fīliōrum Procae maior nātū erat? 5. Nōnne rēgnum Numitōrī relinquitur? 6. Num rēgnum ab Amūliō occupātur? 7. Num fīliī frātris ab Amūliō obtruncantur? 8. Cūr fīliī Rhēae Silviae in Tiberim mittuntur? 9. Ubi puerī relinquuntur? 10. Quō modō Rōmulus et Remus cūrantur?

CONJUGATION

150. **Amor,** *I am loved;* **videor,** *I am seen;* **mittor,** *I am sent;* **audior,** *I am heard.*

Singular			
amor	videor	mittor	audior
amāris (-re)	vidēris (-re)	mitteris (-re)	audīris (-re)
amātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur
Plural			
amāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī
amantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur

a. The first person singular of the present passive is formed by adding r to the corresponding form of the active and shortening the vowel o. **Videō,** *I see;* **videor,** *I am seen.*

b. Except in the first person singular, the personal endings are joined directly to the present stem; but in the third person plural a long stem vowel becomes short, and in the fourth conjugation the vowel **u** is inserted before the ending **-ntur**.

c. In the third conjugation the stem vowel becomes **i** in the third person singular and in the first and second persons plural, and becomes **u** in the third person plural.

SYNTAX

151. **The agent or person by whom anything is done, when the verb is in the passive voice, is denoted by the ablative case with *ā* or *ab*. *Ab* is used before vowels and consonants, *ā* before consonants only.** (14)

Servī ā dominīs in agrōs mittuntur, *the slaves are sent into the fields by their masters;* **Silvia ab Amūliō in cūstōdiam datur,** *Silvia is put into custody by Amulius.*

a. Remember that the means or the instrument by which or with which anything is done is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition. **Nauta ventō impedītur,** *the sailor is hindered by the wind.* Animals personified may be regarded grammatically as persons. **Puerī ā lupā cūrantur,** *the boys are cared for by a she-wolf.*

PRACTICE

152. 1. Fill the following blanks by supplying the proper stem vowels and personal endings of **appellō, dēligō, impediō,** and **timeō** for the present tense of the passive voice.

(1) Nōs dēlig—, illī tim—, tū imped—, ille appell—, vōs dēlig—, ego appell—.

(2) Illī imped—, tū appell—, ille dēlig—, vōs appell—, ego dēlig—, nōs tim—.

(3) Tū dēlig—, ille tim—, vōs imped—, ego tim—, nōs imped—, illī appell—.

(4) Ille imped—, vōs tim—, ego imped—, tū tim—, nōs appell—, illī dēlig—.

2. In the following sentences change the active verbs to the passive and the passive verbs to the active and make any other changes necessary to preserve the sense.

(1) Proca Numitōrī rēgnum relinquit. (2) Fīliī Silviae ab Amūliō timentur. (3) Amūlius puerōs in Tiberim mittit. (4) Lupa puerōs audit. (5) Puerī ab Faustulō cūrantur.

LATIN WRITING

153. 1. Marcus is praised by his friend. 2. Beautiful temples are seen in the ancient city. 3. The sailors are hindered by the wind. 4. A letter is sent by the boy to his friend.

5. Many companions are led to Italy by the famous Aeneas. 6. Amulius and Numitor were sons of Proca. 7. The kingdom is not left to Amulius but Amulius reigns. 8. Silvia and her sons are feared by Amulius. 9. The twin sons are thrown (sent) into the Tiber (in Tiberim). 10. Romulus and Remus are heard and cared for by a she-wolf.

VOCABULARY

154.

Group I

appellō	**duo**	**occupō**	**rēgnum**
aut, aut . . . aut	**dux**	**oculus**	**reliquus**
autem	**interficiō**	**petō**	**trēs**
dēligō	**maior**	**post**	**ūnus**

Group II

alter	**cūstōdia**	**geminī**	**parātus**
clāmō	**deinde**	**lupa**	**rīpa**
cūrō	**forte**	**obtruncō**	**spectō**

Group III

accurrō	**discurrō**	**siccus**	**vēlō**

Special Forms

cavēte, *look out for*
clāmāte, *call out, shout.*
duce, *leader.*
frātris, *of (his) brother.*
mē, *me.*
nātū maior, *the elder.*
Numitōrem (acc.), *Numitor.*
Numitōrī (dat.), *to Numitor.*
Numitōris (gen.), *of Numitor.*
sē, *themselves.*

Derived English Words

cure *custody* *oculist* *reign* (noun)

Related English Words

appellation *exclaim* *occupation* *unity*

WRITTEN REVIEW

155. 1. Write the conjugation of **laudō**, **timeō**, **relinquō**, and **impediō** in the present indicative, active and passive, arranging the active and passive of each verb in parallel columns.

2. Make a comparative table to show the personal endings of the active and the passive voice.

3. Find five or more additional English words related to Latin words that occur in this chapter.

ARCUS CŌNSTANTĪNĪ

CHAPTER XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Stems in *c*, *d*, *g*, *p*, and *t*

156. The nouns in the following sections whose endings differ from those of the first and second declensions belong to the third declension. The stems of these nouns end in the consonant c, d, g, p, or t, and the different cases are formed by adding the case-endings to the stem.

The case-endings of the third declension are as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nominative,	-s	—	-ēs	-a
Genitive,	-is	-is	-um	-um
Dative,	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative,	-em	—	-ēs	-a
Vocative,	-s	—	-ēs	-a
Ablative,	-e	-e	-ibus	-ibus

READING EXERCISE

157. 1. Rēx est in urbe Rōmā. 2. Ubi est rēx? 3. Rēx in urbe est. 4. Rēgis fīlius est in viā. 5. Ubi est fīlius rēgis? 6. Fīlius rēgis est in viā. 7. Agricola rēgīnae rosās dat. 8. Rēgī poēta librum dat. 9. Quid poēta rēgī dat? 10. Poēta rēgī librum dat. 11. Nūntius rēgī et rēgīnae epistulās dat. 12. Videō rēgem in viā. 13. Iūstitiam tuam, magne rēx, videō et laudō. 14. Fīlius rēgis est cum rēge in urbe.

15. Multī rēgēs sunt in terrā. 16. Facta magnōrum rēgum nōn semper sunt bona. 17. Bonī virī rēgibus sunt grātī. 18. Bonōs rēgēs hominēs semper amant. 19. Vic-

tōriās vestrās, magnī rēgēs, laudāmus. 20. Rēgīnās cum rēgibus in viīs vidēmus.

READING EXERCISE

158. 1. In prīncipiō prīncipēs populī Rōmānī rēgēs appellābantur. 2. Rēgēs septem, quōrum (of whom) prīmus erat Rōmulus, rēgnum habēbant. 3. Rēx Rōmānus corōnam auream et togam purpuream habet. 4. Rēgēs Rōmānī mīlitēs multōs habēbant. 5. Virtūs rēgum et mīlitum magna erat. 6. Mīlitēs bella in multīs terrīs ge-

MĪLITĒS RŌMĀNĪ IN ITINERE

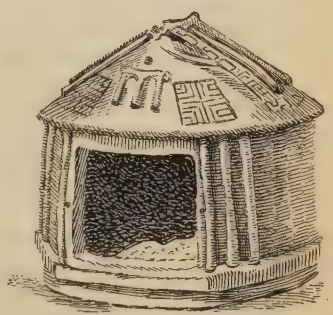
runt. 7. Arma mīlitum sunt hastae et scūta. 8. Mīlitēs scūta in sinistrīs, hastās in dextrīs portant. 9. Dux mīlitī bonō praemium dat. 10. Equus pulcher mīlitī ā duce datur. 11. Caput equī est album; pedēs quoque albī sunt. 12. Equus caput album et pedēs albōs habet. 13. Equī mīlitum capita alta tenent. 14. Mīlitēs mīlitiae, pāstōrēs domī, aetātem agunt. 15. Nunc mīlitēs bellum nōn gerunt. 16. Dux mīlitēs in oppidīs tenet. 17. Pāx et mīlitibus et populō grāta est. 18. Nōs pācem amāmus.

Colloquium

159. 1. Quī apud Rōmānōs antīquōs rēgnum habēbant? 2. Quam multī rēgēs Rōmam rēgnābant? 3. Quis prīmus rēx Rōmānōrum erat? 4. Quālis est virtūs mīlitum? 5. Quō modō mīlitēs scūta portant? Quō modō hastās portant? 6. Semperne pugnant mīlitēs? 7. Quid dux mīlitī bonō dat? 8. Ubi mīlitēs aetātem agunt? 9. Amantne mīlitēs pācem? 10. Vōsne pācem amātis?

PĀSTOR PUERŌS INVENIT

160. Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, puerōs cum lupā invenit, atque eōs in casam portat et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dat. Adultī deinde Rōmulus et Remus inter pāstōrēs aetātem agunt. Silvās peragrant et latrōnēs ā rapīnā prohibent. Apud sociōs illī (they) erant prīncipēs.



Casa Antīqua

a. **Aetātem agunt,** *spend their life, live.*

Colloquium

161. 1. Quis puerōs invenit? 2. Quō Faustulus puerōs portat? 3. Quis coniūnx Faustulī erat? 4. Ubi Rōmulus et Remus adultī aetātem agunt? 5. Quō modō aetātem agunt? 6. Quālēs virī apud sociōs frātrēs erant?

TYPICAL NOUNS

162.

Nom., **rēx;**	gen., **rēgis;**	m., *king.*
Nom., **prīnceps;**	gen., **prīncipis;**	m., *chief.*
Nom., **mīles;**	gen., **mīlitis;**	m., *soldier.*
Nom., **caput;**	gen., **capitis;**	n., *head.*

	Singular			
Nom.	rēx	prīnceps	mīles	caput
Gen.	rēgis	prīncipis	mīlitis	capitis
Dat.	rēgī	prīncipī	mīlitī	capitī
Acc.	rēgem	prīncipem	mīlitem	caput
Voc.	rēx	prīnceps	mīles	caput
Abl.	rēge	prīncipe	mīlite	capite
	Plural			
Nom.	rēgēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	capita
Gen.	rēgum	prīncipum	mīlitum	capitum
Dat.	rēgibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	capitibus
Acc.	rēgēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	capita
Voc.	rēgēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	capita
Abl.	rēgibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

a. For the case-endings of nouns of the third declension see section 156.

b. The stem of any noun of the third declension is found by dropping the case-ending -is in the genitive singular; for example, nom., rēx; gen., rēgis; stem, rēg-. Sometimes there is a variable vowel in the stem; as, caput, capit-is; mīles, mīlit-is.

c. When s is added to g or c, the two consonants are equivalent to x; as, rēgs, rēx; ducs, dux. When s is added to a stem ending in d or t, the d or t disappears and the preceding vowel is sometimes modified; as, mīle(t)s, mīlitis, pē(d)s, pedis.

d. In the neuter caput there is no case-ending in the nominative, accusative, or vocative singular; and the t of the stem is retained. In all other cases of caput the vowel i appears before the case-endings.

SYNTAX

163. **With verbs of motion, the place to which is regularly denoted by the accusative case with the preposition *ad* or *in*.** Domum, *homeward, home,* rūs, *to the country,* and names of towns and small islands are used in the accusative without a preposition to denote the place whither. (15)

Mīlitēs ad oppidum veniunt, *the soldiers come to the town;* **Aenēās sociōs in Ītaliam dūcit,** *Aeneas leads his companions to Italy;* **pater Horātī fīlium Rōmam portat,** *the father of Horace brings his son to Rome.*

164. **The place in which is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition *in*.** **Domī,** *at home,* **humī,** *on the ground,* **mīlitiae,** *in war,* **rūrī,** *in the country,* and names of towns and small islands are used in the locative case to denote the place where. (16)

Dux mīlitēs in oppidō tenet, *the leader keeps the soldiers in the town;* **Rōmae erant rēgēs,** *in Rome there were kings;* **pāstōrēs domī, mīlitēs mīlitiae, aetātem agunt,** *shepherds spend their time (life) at home, soldiers, in military service.*

165. **The place from which is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition *ā, ab, dē, ē,* or *ex*.** **Domō,** *from home,* **rūre,** *from the country,* and names of towns and small islands are used in the ablative without a preposition to denote the place whence. (17)

Servī ex oppidō in agrōs mittuntur, *the slaves are sent out of the town into the fields;* **Trōia longē ab Ītaliā abest,** *Troy is far away from Italy;* **aqua dē caelō in terram venit,** *water comes down from the sky to the earth;* **Aenēās Trōiā Rōmam venit,** *Aeneas comes from Troy to Rome.*

Practice

166. 1. Translate the following Latin expressions into English and the English into Latin, and name the case of each noun of the third declension.

(1) Hasta mīlitis, equī mīlitum, mīlitī bonō, cum mīlitibus.

(2) The deeds of kings, good kings (nom.), great kings (acc.), by kings, O great king.

(3) Caput equī album est, equus caput album habet.

(4) Peace is welcome, we love peace, a friend of peace.

2. Express the following in Latin:

At home, into the town, to the island, from Troy, in Rome, to Italy, out of the forest, in war, from home, to Athens, from Rome, (to) home, from the sky.

LATIN WRITING

167. 1. In the beginning kings ruled the Roman people. 2. Seven kings reigned in Rome. 3. Wars are waged by kings in many lands. 4. The leader of the soldiers is in the town. 5. A soldier comes from the camp to Rome. 6. The son of the king is sent to the camp. 7. We are at home but the soldiers are in military service. 8. Peace is loved by the leader and by the soldiers.

9. Romulus and Remus are thrown into the river. 10. The boys are found by Faustulus. 11. The shepherd Faustulus finds the little boys and gives them (eōs) to his wife Larentia. 12. The brothers pass their life in the forests.

VOCABULARY

168.

Group I

aetās	et . . . et	pāx	scūtum
altus	iūstitia	pēs	septem
caput	mīles	prīnceps	teneō
dextra	nūntius	prohibeō	virtūs

Group II

albus	hasta	pāstor	sinistra
aureus	inveniō	toga	vester

Group III

latrō	peragrō	purpureus	rapīna

Special Forms

appellābantur, (*they*) *were called.*

eōs, *them.*

frātrēs, *brothers.*

quōrum, *of whom.*

Derived English Words

justice	*peace*	*prince*	*virtue*

Related English Words

capital	*invention*	*pedestal*	*September*
dexterity	*military*	*prohibition*	*virtuous*

WRITTEN REVIEW

169. 1. Write the declension of **virtūs, aetās,** and **pēs.**

2. What three cases of **caput** and of all other neuter nouns are alike in the singular? in the plural? What is the ending of these three cases in the plural?

3. Write the declension of **dux,** separating the stem and case-endings; *e. g.*, **duc-s (dux), duc-is,** etc.

Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

SPECULUM ARGENTEUM

CHAPTER XVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Nominatives in *l* and *r*

170. In nouns whose stems end in l or r the nominative and vocative singular have the same form as the stem; as, nom., sōl; gen., sōlis; stem, sōl-; nom., pāstor; gen., pāstōris; stem, pāstōr-.

In nouns like pater (gen., patris; stem, patr-) e is developed before r in the nominative and vocative, pater being more easily pronounced than patr. Hence e is said to have been developed between t and r for the sake of euphony.

READING EXERCISE

171. 1. Lūna et stellae sunt in caelō. 2. Sōl quoque est in caelō. 3. Vidēsne sōlem in caelō? 4. Calor sōlis est magnus. 5. Calor dē sōle in terram incidit. 6. Sōl terrae lūcem et calōrem dat. 7. Aestāte calor sōlis est maximus. 8. Diē sōlem, noctū lūnam et stellās in caelō vidēmus. 9. Noctū sōlem vidēre nōn possumus.

10. Quīdam homō quattuor līberōs habet; duo fīliī, duae fīliae sunt. 11. Ūnus ex fīliīs frātrem ūnum, duās sorōrēs habet. 12. Quaeque (each) fīlia duōs frātrēs, sorōrem ūnam habet. 13. Neque frātrēs neque sorōrēs habeō; sed pater huius virī est meī patris fīlius. (Quis est "hic vir"?) 14. Pater et māter līberōs amant et ā līberīs amantur. 15. Līberī verba patris et mātris audiunt. 16. Verba nostrōrum patrum et mātrum audīre dēbēmus. 17. Bona facta līberōrum sunt patribus et mātribus grāta atque ā patribus et mātribus laudantur. 18. Memoria patrum est līberīs cāra.

19. In urbe Rōmā ā prīncipiō erant rēgēs. 20. Posteā Rōmae (loc.) erant cōnsulēs. 21. Ūnō annō (in one year) erant duo cōnsulēs. 22. Cōnsulēs erant imperātōrēs mīlitum. 23. Nōmen prīmī cōnsulis erat Iūnius Brūtus.

24. Fortūna parvōs puerōs servat et coniūnx pāstōris eōs cūrat. 25. Pāstōrēs silvās peragrant. 26. Pāstōrum aetās in silvīs agitur. 27. Rēgnum Numitōrī ā patre relinquitur. 28. Numitor erat Rhēae Silviae pater. 29. Inter pāstōrēs Rōmulus et Remus erant prīncipēs. 30. Remus erat mātrī similis.

Colloquium

172. 1. Vidēsne sōlem in caelō? 2. Quid in caelō noctū vidēs? 3. Unde calor in terram venit? 4. Unde lūx ad terram venit? 5. Nōnne calor sōlis magnus est? 6. Quandō calor sōlis maximus est? 7. Amantne līberī patrem et mātrem? 8. Amantne līberōs pater et māter? 9. Quae facta līberōrum parentibus grāta sunt? 10. Quam multī cōnsulēs Rōmae ūnō annō erant?

PĀSTOR

REMUS Ā PRAEDĀTŌRIBUS EST CAPTUS

173. Praedātōrēs cum Rōmulō et Remō in silvīs pugnant. Remus captus est; Rōmulus armīs sē (himself) dēfendit. Tum Faustulus pāstor, necessitāte compulsus, Rōmulō dīcit: "Numitor est tuus avus; Rhēa Silvia est tua māter." Rōmulus statim pāstōrēs armat et cum iīs (with them) Albam properat.

Colloquium

174. 1. Quid agunt in silvīs praedātōrēs? 2. Quis captus est? 3. Cūr nōn Rōmulus captus est? 4. Quis avus Rōmulī erat? Quis māter? 5. Quō Rōmulus cum pāstōribus properat?

TYPICAL NOUNS

175.

Nom., cōnsul;	gen., cōnsulis;	m., *consul.*
Nom., pāstor;	gen., pāstōris;	m., *shepherd.*
Nom., pater;	gen., patris;	m., *father.*

	Singular			
Nom.	cōnsul	pāstor	pater	—
Gen.	cōnsulis	pāstōris	patris	-is
Dat.	cōnsulī	pāstōrī	patrī	-ī
Acc.	cōnsulem	pāstōrem	patrem	-em
Voc.	cōnsul	pāstor	pater	—
Abl.	cōnsule	pāstōre	patre	-e
	Plural			
Nom.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	pāstōrum	patrum	-um
Dat.	cōnsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus	-ibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
Voc.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus	-ibus

a. The stems are cōnsul-, pāstōr-, and patr-.

SYNTAX

176. **The time when or the time within which an event occurs is denoted by the ablative case without a preposition.** (18)

Aestāte calor sōlis est magnus, *in the summer the heat of the sun is great.*

177. **Accompaniment is regularly denoted by the ablative case with the preposition *cum*.** (19)

Praedātōrēs cum Rōmulō pugnant, *the robbers fight with Romulus.*

Practice

178. Supply the proper words or terminations to fill the following blanks.

1. Pāstor in silv— aetāt— ag—; pāstōr— agunt.
2. Agrī pāstōr— ā praedātōr— vāst—.
3. Praedātōr— cum pāstōr— pugnant.
4. Noctū —, diē —, lūc— dat.
5. Verba patr— (sing.) ā līber— aud—.
6. Brūtus erat nōmen cōnsul— prīmī.
7. Fīlius patr— am— et ā patr— am—.
8. Bona facta līber— patr— sunt grāt—.

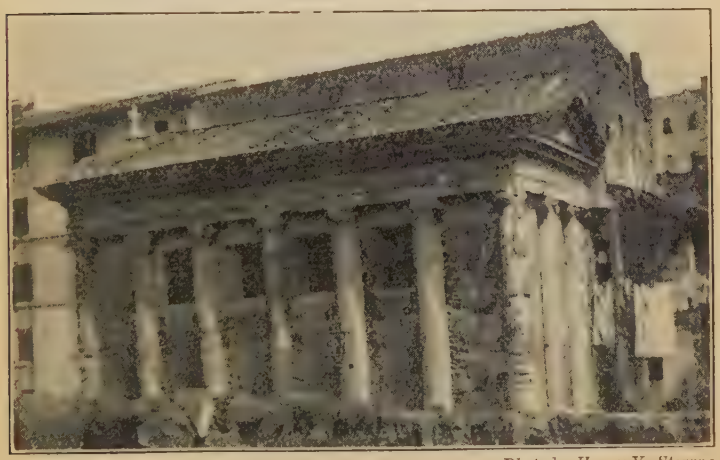


Photo by Henry V. Stearns

Templum Fortūnae

LATIN WRITING

179. 1. I see the sun and the moon in the sky. 2. The sun gives great heat. 3. At night we do not see the sun. 4. In the summer the heat of the sun is greatest. 5. The consul comes into the city with the soldiers. 6. The boys see the soldiers with the consul in the street. 7. Romulus and Remus are brothers. 8. The brothers

fight with the robbers in the woods. 9. The robbers capture (capiunt) the brother of Romulus. 10. The shepherds are armed at once by Romulus. 11. Romulus leads the shepherds to Alba. 12. The brothers are protected by Fortune.

VOCABULARY

180.

Group I

aestās	dēfendō	imperātor	properō
armō	dīcō	māter	quattuor
cōnsul	fortūna	neque ... neque	similis
dēbeō	homō	pater	soror

Group II

avus	captus	quandō	statim
calor	parēns	servō	verbum

Group III

compulsus	incidō	necessitās	praedātor

Special Forms

possumus, *we are able, can.* quaeque, *each.*

Derived English Words

arm (verb)	*defend*	*emperor*	*fortune*

Related English Words

compulsion	*fortunate*	*parental*	*predatory*

WRITTEN REVIEW

181. 1. Write the declension of sōl (sing.), soror, and frāter.

2. What is the case-ending of the nominative singular in nouns of the third declension? How is the stem found? How does the nominative case compare with the stem in sōl, calor, and pāstor? How does the nominative case differ from the stem in māter, pater, and frāter?

CHAPTER XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *n*

182. Many masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension have the nominative ending in **-ō**, with the genitive singular ending in **-ōnis** or **-inis**; as, **leō, leōnis; imāgō, imāginis.** The genitive form shows that the stem ends in **n**, but this letter does not appear in the nominative singular. There are many neuter nouns with stems in **n** which have the nominative in **n** also; as, **flūmen, flūminis** (stem, **flūmin-**).

READING EXERCISE

183. 1. Homō magnum leōnem in silvā videt. 2. Leō est rēx bēstiārum. 3. Leō hominem timet et ab homine timētur. 4. Nōn longē ā silvā est altum flūmen. 5. Cotīdiē leō ad flūmen venit. 6. Imāginem suam (his own) in aquā videt. 7. Sī leō vidētur, in silvam celeriter redit. 8. Timor hominum leōnem in silvam mittit. 9. In silvā leō aetātem agit et lībertātem amat. 10. Leōnēs carrum Cybelae, magnae deōrum mātris, trahēbant (were drawing, used to draw).

11. Urbs Rōma nōn longē ab flūmine abest. 12. Nōmen flūminis est Tiberis. 13. In Ītaliā sunt multa flūmina. 14. Multōs hominēs in viīs Rōmae videō. 15. Multī hominēs sunt agricolae, multī sunt nautae, multī sunt pāstōrēs, paucī sunt rēgēs.

16. Rōmulus et Remus frātrēs in flūmen Tiberim ab Amūliō rēge mittuntur. 17. Lupa saepe ad puerōs venit, atque pāstor eōs invenit. 18. Inter pāstōrēs frātrēs aetā-

tem agunt. 19. Dum silvās peragrant, latrōnēs cum pāstōribus pugnant. 20. Remus captus est; Rōmulus Albam properat. 21. Facta Faustulī pāstōris rēgis semper laudantur.

COLLOQUIUM

184. 1. Ubi homō leōnem videt? 2. Timetne leō hominem? 3. Timēturne ab homine leō? 4. Timentne

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

URBS ET FLŪMEN

hominēs rēgem bēstiārum? 5. Quid in aquā leō videt? 6. Num leō cum hominibus aetātem agit? 7. Amatne leō lībertātem? 8. Nōnne hominēs lībertātem amant? 9. Quis māter deōrum appellātur? 10. Quod flūmen per urbem Rōmam fluit?

NUMITOR REMUM NEPŌTEM AGNŌSCIT

185. Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūcunt. Ita eum accūsant: "Hic Numitōris agrōs

semper vāstat." Sīc Remus Numitōrī ad supplicium ā rēge datur. At Numitōris in animum, dum in cūstōdiā Remum habet, memoria nepōtum venit. Nam Remus mātrī similis erat. Repente Rōmulus cum armātīs pāstōribus venit et frātrem līberat. Amūlium rēgem obtruncat

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

PAPŸRUS IN RĪPĀ FLŪMINIS

et Numitōrem avum rēgem salūtat. Ita beneficiō nepōtum Numitor erat Albae rēx.

COLLOQUIUM

186. 1. Quī Remum ad rēgem perdūcunt? 2. Quō modō latrōnēs Remum accūsant? 3. Num Remus agrōs Numitōris vāstābat? 4. Quid in animum Numitōris

venit? 5. Quae nōmina erant Numitōris nepōtum? 6. Cūr in animum Numitōris memoria nepōtum venit? 7. Quis māter Remī erat? 8. Quis erat frāter Remī? 9. Quis Remum līberat? 10. Nōnne Amūlius erat rēx? 11. Quis Numitōrem rēgem salūtat?

TYPICAL NOUNS

187.

Nom., leō;	gen., leōnis;	m., *lion.*
Nom., imāgō;	gen., imāginis;	f., *image.*
Nom., flūmen;	gen., flūminis;	n., *river.*

	Singular			M. & F.	N.
Nom.	leō	imāgō	flūmen	—	—
Gen.	leōnis	imāginis	flūminis	-is	-is
Dat.	leōnī	imāginī	flūminī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	leōnem	imāginem	flūmen	-em	—
Voc.	leō	imāgō	flūmen	—	—
Abl.	leōne	imāgine	flūmine	-e	-e
	Plural				
Nom.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
Gen.	leōnum	imāginum	flūminum	-um	-um
Dat.	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
Voc.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
Abl.	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. The stems are leōn-, imāgin- and flūmin-.

SYNTAX

188. Verbs of making, calling, choosing, regarding, etc., may take two accusatives denoting the same person or thing. The second accusative may be an adjective. (20)

Numitōrem rēgem salūtat, *he salutes Numitor as king;* **hominēs Aenēān clārum habent,** *men regard Aeneas as famous.*

Practice

189. 1. Change the singular nouns to the plural and the plural nouns to the singular, and make corresponding changes in the verbs.

(1) Latrō agrum pāstōris vāstat. (2) Pāstōrēs ā latrōnibus accūsantur. (3) Hominēs leōnēs in silvīs vident. (4) Leō hominem timet et ab homine timētur.

2. Change the active verbs to the passive and the passive verbs to the active, and make appropriate changes in the nouns.

(1) Frātrēs Numitōrem rēgem salūtant. (2) Latrō agrōs vāstat. (3) Cybela māter deōrum ab hominibus appellātur. (4) Leōnēs currum Cybelae trahunt.

LATIN WRITING

190. 1. People call the lion king of wild beasts. 2. Men and beasts love freedom. 3. Lions fear men (people) and are feared by men. 4. Fear of lions drives (sends) people from the forest. 5. The car of Cybele is drawn by lions.

6. Amulius is the name of the king. 7. The names of the shepherds are Romulus and Remus. 8. The robbers accuse the shepherds. 9. Remus is set free by his brother. 10. Then the brothers salute Numitor as king.

VOCABULARY

191.

Group I

accūsō	flūmen	līberō	perdūcō
at	homō	lībertās	salūtō
beneficium	ita	nam	suus
currus	leō	paucī	timor

Group II

agnōscō	cotīdiē	intereā	supplicium
celeriter	imāgō	redeō	vāstō

Group III

bēstia	fluō	nepōs	repente

Special Forms

eum (is), *him.* **hic**, *this man, he.*

Derived English Words

accuse *image* *liberty* *salute*

Related English Words

benefit *celerity* *devastation* *salutation*

WRITTEN REVIEW

192. 1. Write the declension of **latrō**, **homō**, and **nōmen.**

2. In the declension of **n**-stems, what case-endings are omitted?

3. How does the nominative singular of such nouns as **homō** and **latrō** differ from the stem?

4. What phonetic changes in vowels are observed in the declension of **imāgō**, **imāginis**, and **flūmen**, **flūminis**?

Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

FRĒNUM

CHAPTER XIX

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Four Conjugations

193. The imperfect tense of the active voice, formed in the same manner in each of the four conjugations, is composed of three elements: (1) the present stem, with the characteristic vowel changed from **e** to **ē** in the third conjugation, and from **ī** to **iē** in the fourth conjugation; (2) the tense-sign **-bā-**, shortened to **-ba-** before **-m, -t,** and -nt; (3) the personal endings **-m, -s, -t,** etc. **Amā-bā-s, vidē-ba-t, mittē-bā-tis, audiē-ba-nt.**

READING EXERCISE

194. 1. Herī librōs ad magistrum portābam. 2. Quid trāns viam herī portābās? 3. Nihil portābam; ego cum Mārcō eram; ille rosās ad fīliās Cornēliae portābat. 4. Certē! hodiē librōs portāmus; herī rosās ad puellās portābāmus. 5. Ego vōs spectābam; tū et Mārcus rosās trāns viam ad fīliās Cornēliae portābātis. 6. Portābant puerī rosās ad puellās.

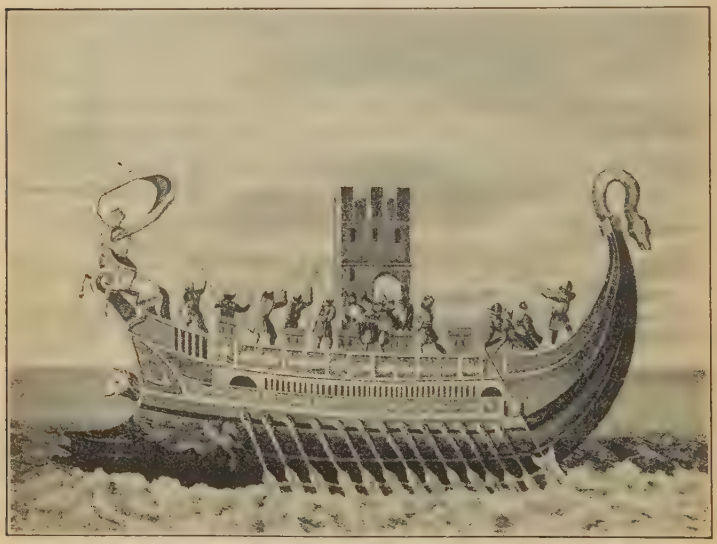
7. In antīquīs urbibus erant multa templa deōrum. 8. Hominēs in templa deōrum multa dōna portābant. 9. Multās deōrum imāginēs in templīs pulchrīs vidēbāmus. 10. Multī līberī in viīs lūdēbant. 11. Multī hominēs in Ītaliā antīquā prō patriā pugnābant.

12. Latrōnēs in agrīs Numitōris erant. 13. Cum latrōnibus Rōmulus et Remus saepe pugnābant. 14. Rōmulus fortiter sē armīs dēfendēbat. 15. Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium perdūcēbant. 16. Ita eum accūsābant. 17. "Rēgis agrōs vāstābās." 18. Sīc rēx Remum

ad supplicium Numitōrī dabat. 19. Rōmulus cum armātīs pāstōribus veniēbat. 20. Rōmulus magnum amīcōrum numerum habēbat. 21. Amīcī Rōmulī Numitōrem rēgem salūtābant.

Colloquium

195. 1. Quid herī ad magistrum portābās? 2. Quid Mārcus ad fīliās Cornēliae portābat? 3. Nōnne puerī



Nāvis Longa

rosās ad puellās portābant? 4. Quid hominēs in templa portābant? 5. Quid in templīs vidēbāmus? 6. Quid hominēs in Ītaliā prō patriā agēbant? 7. Quibuscum (with whom) Rōmulus et Remus pugnābant? 8. Quō modō Rōmulus sē dēfendēbat? 9. Quō modō latrōnēs Remum accūsābant? 10. Quī Numitōrem rēgem salūtābant?

AENĒĀS CARTHĀGINEM VENIT

Vergilī Fābula

196. Aenēās ōrās Trōiae vīgintī nāvibus relinquit et cum sociīs multīs novam terram novumque rēgnum in Ītaliā petēbat. Septem annōs Trōiānī errābant. Venus māter viam Aenēae mōnstrābat. Ab deīs inimīcīs nāvēs

MĪLITĒS PUGNANTĒS
IMĀGINĒS IN ARCŪ CŌNSTANTĪNĪ FICTAE

impediēbantur. Tempestās ab Iūnōne missa Trōiānōs ad ōrās Āfricae pellit. Septem nāvēs supererant; reliquae āmissae sunt.

Dīdō, pulcherrima rēgīna, urbem Carthāginem in hīs locīs aedificābat. Aenēās in urbem atque in magnum Iūnōnis templum venit. In hōc templō pictūrae mīrae erant. In pictūrīs Trōiānī et Graecī pugnābant. Aenēās

imāginem Priamī rēgis et imāginēs prīncipum populī Trōiānī agnōscit. Sē (himself) quoque apud prīncipēs in pictūrā vidēbat.

Dīdō in templum venit et cum Aenēā loquitur. Aenēān in rēgiam dūcit atque mūnera ad sociōs mittit. Fīdus Achātēs Aenēae socius ad nāvēs venit et Ascanium ad patrem dūcit. Rēgīna Aenēān et Ascanium ad epulās vocat. Postquam mēnsae remōtae sunt, Dīdō multa dē errōribus Trōiānōrum rogābat et fābulās ab Aenēā nārrātās laeta audiēbat.

a. **Loquitur,** passive form with active meaning, *talks.* (See section 607.)

Colloquium

197. 1. Quō modō Aenēās ōrās Trōiae relinquit? 2. Quam terram petēbat? 3. Quis viam mōnstrābat? 4. Quot annōs Trōiānī errābant? 5. Quid nāvēs impediēbat? 6. Cūr Iūnō tempestātem mittēbat? 7. Amābatne Iūnō Trōiānōs? 8. Quam multae nāvēs supererant? 9. Ubi urbs Carthāgō erat? 10. Unde Aenēās Carthāginem venit? 11. Quid in templō Aenēās vidēbat? 12. Quō rēgīna Aenēān dūcit? 13. Quid ad sociōs mittēbat? 14. Eratne Ascanius cum patre? 15. Quid Dīdō audiēbat?

CONJUGATION

198. **Amābam,** *I was loving, I loved;* **vidēbam,** *I was seeing, I saw;* **mittēbam,** *I was sending, I sent;* **audiēbam,** *I was hearing, I heard.*

Singular

amābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
amābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
amābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat

Plural

amābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
amābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

a. The vowel preceding the tense-sign **-bā-** is always long except in the verb **dō**. **Amābat, dabat.** (See section 92, *b*.)

In the imperfect tense of the active voice the vowel **a** in the tense-sign **-bā-** becomes short when it is followed by the endings **-m, -t,** or **-nt.**

SYNTAX

199. The imperfect tense represents action as incomplete and as going on in the past; it sometimes denotes habitual or attempted action. (21)

Frātrēs cum latrōnibus pugnābant, *the brothers were fighting (fought) with the robbers;* **Rōmulus cum pāstōribus veniēbat,** *Romulus was coming (came) with the shepherds;* **cum latrōnibus saepe pugnābant,** *they used to fight often with robbers;* **librīs operam dabāmus,** *we tried to give (were giving) attention to our books.*

PRACTICE

200. Write in a single column all the verbs (except **loquitur**) in section 196. In a second parallel column change all present forms to the imperfect and all imperfect forms to the present. Then add for each verb the first person singular of the present indicative active, the present infinitive, and a number to designate the conjugation. For example,

relinquit	**relinquēbat**	**relinquō**	**relinquere**	**3**
mōnstrābat	**mōnstrat**	**mōnstrō**	**mōnstrāre**	**1**

LATIN WRITING

201. 1. Aeneas was seeking Italy. 2. Unfriendly gods were hindering the ships. 3. Dido was building a new city in Africa. 4. Aeneas was looking at (was seeing) wonderful pictures in the temple of Juno. 5. In Dido's palace Aeneas was telling the story of (concerning) his wanderings.

6. Robbers used to fight (were fighting) with Romulus and Remus. 7. Romulus tried to defend (was defending)

himself (sē) with his arms. 8. Numitor was the grandfather of Romulus and Remus. 9. Numitor had Remus in custody. 10. By the kindness of the shepherds Numitor was king.

VOCABULARY

202.

Group I

fīdus	mōnstrō	pellō	tempestās
inimīcus	mūnus	postquam	trāns

Group II

āmissus	errō	missus	remōtus
certē	error	nārrātus	supersum
epulae	mīrus	rēgia	vīgintī

Special Forms

impediēbantur, (*they*) *were hindered.* loquitur, (*he, she*) *talks, speaks.*

Derived English Words

error *narrate* *remote* *tempest*

Related English Words

demonstrate *expel* *mission* *transmission*

a. Find five or more English words in which the Latin preposition trāns is an element; *e. g.*, *transmit.* Observe whether the second part of the words selected is of Latin origin.

WRITTEN REVIEW

203. 1. Write in the imperfect tense the conjugation of errō (errābam), timeō (timēbam), petō (petēbam), and impediō (impediēbam). Separate the verbs into their elements; as, errā-ba-m, petēbā-mus.

2. Write the declension of error, tempestās, and Carthāgō (sing.).

3. Find five additional English words related to Latin words in this chapter.

CHAPTER XX

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

204. The imperfect indicative passive is formed from the same tense of the active by changing the personal endings from **-m, -s, -t,** etc., to **-r, -ris (-re), -tur,** etc. (See section 144.) Before the endings **-r** and **-ntur** the tense-sign **-bā-** is shortened to **-ba-**. This tense is formed in the same manner in verbs of all the conjugations.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dabam, *I was giving, I gave.*	**dabar,** *I was given.*
timēbat, *he was fearing, he feared.*	**timēbātur,** *he was feared.*
mittēbāmus, *we were sending, we sent.*	**mittēbāmur,** *we were sent.*
impediēbant, *they were hindering, hindered.*	**impediēbantur,** *they were hindered.*

READING EXERCISE

205. 1. Herī ego lūdīs operam dabam; tū librīs operam dabās. 2. Tū ā magistrō laudābāris (-re); ego ā patre culpābar. 3. Puerī in hortō labōrābant; servī in agrīs lūdēbant. 4. Ā puerīs labōrī, lūdō ā servīs, opera dabātur. 5. Servī ā dominō vidēbantur dum in agrīs lūdēbant. 6. Posteā servī in supplicium dabantur; puerī ā patribus in urbem mittēbantur. 7. Quō, puerī, mittēbāminī? In urbem mittēbāmur. 8. Puerī beātī habēbantur sed clāmōrēs servōrum audiēbantur. 9. Discipulī librōs noctū lūce lūcernae legēbant; sed lūcerna lūcem nōn clāram dabat. 10. Itaque discipulī in viās veniēbant et in viīs cum amīcīs lūdēbant.

11. Remus ad rēgem perdūcēbātur et ab latrōnibus

accūsābātur. 12. Remus ad supplicium Numitōrī dabātur. 13. Repente frāter venit et eum (him) līberat. 14. Ā pāstōribus armātīs Numitor rēx statim salūtābātur. 15. Beneficiō nepōtum Numitor erat rēx.

Colloquium

206. 1. Quid tū herī agēbās? 2. Tūne ā magistrō culpābāris? 3. Dabantne servī labōrī operam? 4. Librīsne puerī operam dabant? 5. Nōnne puerī vidēbantur dum in hortō labōrābant? 6. Num servī laudābantur quod in agrīs lūdēbant? 7. Num puerī semper labōrant? Num servī semper lūdunt? 8. Quā dē causā Remus ad supplicium Numitōrī dabātur? 9. Ā quō (by whom, sing.) Remus līberābātur? 10. Ā quibus (pl.) Numitor rēx salūtābātur?

Mūrus Rōmulī

RŌMULUS URBEM RŌMAM VOCAT

207. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem aliam in Palātiō condunt. Sed inter frātrēs certāmen ā parvō prīncipiō erat. Uterque novae urbī nōmen dare volēbat. Itaque auspicium cōnstituunt adhibēre. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim videt. Sīc Rōmulus victor auguriō urbem suō nōmine Rōmam vocat. Ad novae

urbis tūtēlam vāllum satis esse vidēbātur. Remus angustum vāllum inrīdēbat et id trānsiliēbat. Propterea frātrem īrātus Rōmulus obtruncat. Itaque sōlus Rōmulus rēgnābat.

a. **Suō nōmine,** *from his own name;* **vidēbātur,** *seemed.*

Colloquium

208. 1. Ubi alia urbs conditur? 2. Ā quō prīncipiō inter frātrēs certāmen erat? 3. Quis novae urbī nōmen dare volēbat? 4. Cūr auspicium adhibēbat? 5. Quam multōs vulturēs uterque frāter vidēbat? 6. Quis urbī novae nōmen dabat? 7. Num magnum vāllum urbis erat? 8. Cūr Rōmulus īrātus erat? 9. Num ā frātre Remus obtruncātur? 10. Nōnne rēgnum Rōmulī prīncipium malum habēbat?

CONJUGATION

209. **Amābar,** *I was (being) loved;* **vidēbar,** *I was (being) seen;* **mittēbar,** *I was (being) sent;* **audiēbar,** *I was (being) heard.*

Singular

amābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
amābāris (-re)	vidēbāris (-re)	mittēbāris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)
amābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur

Plural

amābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

a. The vowel preceding the tense-sign **-bā-** is long.

SYNTAX

210. **The active voice represents the subject of the verb as acting or being. The passive voice represents the subject of the verb as acted upon.** (22)

Remus vāllum trānsiliēbat, *Remus was leaping over the rampart;* **Remus ab īrātō frātre obtruncātur,** *Remus is killed by his angry brother.*

211. A transitive verb represents the action as directed toward some person or thing which is called the direct object. An intransitive verb represents an action or a state which is not directed toward a direct object. (23)

Urbem aedificat, *he builds a city;* **Rōmulus sōlus rēgnat,** *Romulus reigns alone.*

Practice

212. 1. Change the following passive verbs to the corresponding active forms.

Tū laudābāris, vōs appellābāminī, ego culpābar, ille salūtābātur, nōs impediēbāmur, illī perdūcēbantur.

2. Change the following active verbs to the corresponding passive forms.

Vōs accūsābātis, ego admittēbam, ille relinquēbat, nōs līberābāmus, illī pellēbant, tū impediēbās.

LATIN WRITING

213. 1. Yesterday I was praised by my teacher. 2. You were giving attention to your books. 3. Marcus was working in the field. 4. Books were read by the pupils at night. 5. Your companions were unhappy because they were sent to the fields while you were playing at home.

6. Augury was employed by the brothers. 7. Six vultures were seen by Remus, twelve by Romulus. 8. Thus the city was called Rome by Romulus. 9. Remus was laughing at the small rampart. 10. On this account he is slain by his angry brother.

VOCABULARY

214. **Group I**

alius	**duodecim**	**proptereā**	**vāllum**
causa	**itaque**	**sex**	**veniō**
certāmen	**labor**	**sōlus**	**victor**
cōnstituō	**lūx**	**uterque**	**volō (velle)**

Group II

adhibeō	beātus	īrātus	prior
angustus	clāmor	legō	satis

Group III

augurium	culpō	lūcerna	tūtēla
auspicium	inrīdeō	trānsiliō	vultur

Special Forms

adhibēre, *to employ.*
dare, *to give.*
esse, *to be.*
id (is), *this, it.*
quā (quī), *what?*
quibus (quis), *whom* (pl.)*?*
quō (quis), *whom* (sing.)*?*

Derived English Words

augury *sole* (only) *victor* *wall*

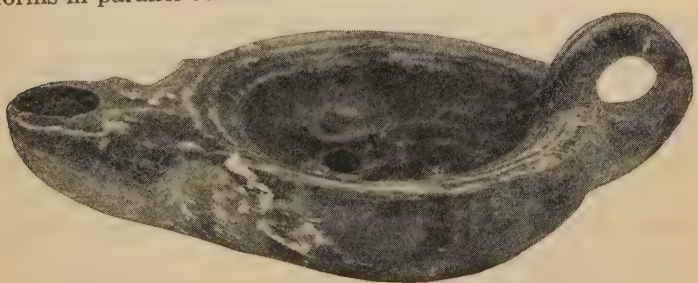
Related English Words

beatitude *constitution* *culpable* *solitude*

WRITTEN REVIEW

215. 1. Write the conjugation of dō (dabar), habeō (habēbar), dūcō (dūcēbar), and audiō (audiēbar) in the imperfect indicative passive.

2. Write the conjugation of some verb, *e. g.*, vocō, in the imperfect indicative, both active and passive, arranging the forms in parallel columns.



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

LŪCERNA ETRŪSCA

CHAPTER XXI

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *s*

216. In most of the nouns of the third declension the case-endings are joined directly to the stem; as, **rēx** (**rēg-s**), **mīlit-is, cōnsul-em, sorōr-ēs,** etc. But in the declension of nouns whose stems end in s the case-ending is omitted in the nominative singular, which, therefore, has the same ending as the stem; and whenever the s of the stem occurs between two vowels it is changed to r, the sound of which in this position is more agreeable. Thus **flōs** instead of **flōss** is the nominative, and **flōris** instead of **flōsis** is the genitive of **flōs**; **temporis** instead of **temposis** is the genitive of **tempus**; and **mōribus** rather than **mōsibus** is the ablative plural of **mōs.**

The declension of any of these nouns can easily be completed by joining the usual case-endings to that form of the stem which appears in the genitive case.

READING EXERCISE

217. 1. Rosa est flōs pulcher. 2. Color flōris est albus. 3. Puella flōrem album habet. 4. Puella parva flōre pulchrō dēlectātur. 5. Nōmina multōrum flōrum puellae sunt nōta. 6. In hortō agricolae sunt multī flōrēs. 7. Flōrēs multōrum generum sunt in hortō. 8. Multa genera flōrum sunt in terrā. 9. Herī nostra mēnsa flōribus pulchrīs ōrnābātur.

10. Antīquīs temporibus multī hominēs erant barbarī. 11. Nostrō tempore nōn omnēs hominēs sunt urbānī.

12. Tempora patrum nostrōrum erant clāra. 13. Nostra tempora sunt quoque bona. 14. Senex tempora patrum laudat; nostrum tempus culpat. 15. Rōmae antīquīs temporibus hominēs cum leōnibus in arēnā pugnābant. 16. Multī Rōmānōrum mōrēs bonī erant, sed nōn omnēs eōrum mōrēs laudāmus. 17. Multa dē mōribus hominum antīquōrum audīmus.

From the painting by Gerome

LEŌ ATQUE HOMINĒS IN ARĒNĀ

18. Rōma in Palātiō ā Rōmulō et Remō condēbātur. 19. Ā Remō sex, ā Rōmulō duodecim vulturēs vidēbantur. 20. Auguriō Rōmulus erat victor. 21. Remus parvum vāllum novae urbis inrīdēbat. 22. Propterea Rōmulus īrātus frātrem obtruncat.

a. For the declension of **senex** see section 835.

COLLOQUIUM

218. 1. Quālis flōs est rosa? 2. Nōnne rosa flōs colōris pulchrī est? 3. Flōrēsne pulchrōs puellae amant?

4. Quandō hominēs barbarī erant? 5. Num omnēs nunc urbānī sunt? 6. Quod tempus senex culpat? 7. Quod tempus ā sene laudātur? 8. Eratne Rōma antīqua urbs bonōrum mōrum? 9. Num hominēs omnēs temporibus antīquīs barbarī erant? 10. Quam multī vulturēs ā Remō vidēbantur? 11. Quam multōs Rōmulus vidēbat? 12. Quā dē causā Rōmulus frātrem obtruncat?

INCOLAE URBĪ NOVAE DE-ERANT

219. Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem habēbat; incolae de-erant. Erat in proximō lūcus. In hōc locō asȳlum aperit. Eō multitūdō multōrum generum, latrōnum pāstōrumque, līberōrum atque servōrum, venit. Id erat prīncipium magnitūdinis populī Rōmānī.

a. **De-erant,** *were lacking.*

Colloquium

220. 1. Utrum urbem an imāginem urbis Rōmulus habēbat? 2. Cūr urbem nōn habēbat? 3. In quō locō Rōmulus asȳlum aperit? 4. Quī in asȳlum veniunt? 5. Multīne erant incolae in urbe quam Rōmulus condēbat?

TYPICAL NOUNS

221.

Nom., flōs;	gen., flōris;	m., *flower.*
Nom., tempus;	gen., temporis;	n., *time.*
Nom., genus;	gen., generis;	n., *kind.*

	Singular		
Nom.	flōs	tempus	genus
Gen.	flōris	temporis	generis
Dat.	flōrī	temporī	generī
Acc.	flōrem	tempus	genus
Voc.	flōs	tempus	genus
Abl.	flōre	tempore	genere

		Plural	
Nom.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Gen.	flōrum	temporum	generum
Dat.	flōribus	temporibus	generibus
Acc.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Voc.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Abl.	flōribus	temporibus	generibus

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

Forum Rōmānum et Templum Sāturnium

a. The stems of these nouns are **flōs-**, **tempos-**, and **genus-** (**genos-**). The final **s** of the stem appears only in the nominative singular, where the case-ending is omitted (section 216). In the genitive, and all cases following, **r** is substituted for **s** in accordance with the general law of phonetic change, the sound of **r** being easier to pronounce between two vowels.

b. In the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of **tempus** and **genus** the vowel **o** is weakened to **u**; and in all other cases of **genus** **o** is weakened to **e**. Thus we find **tempus** for **tempos**, and **generis** for **genosis** or **genoris**.

SYNTAX

222. **A noun in the genitive case, if modified by an adjective, may denote kind or quality.** (24)

Multitūdō multōrum generum, *a multitude of many kinds.*

PRACTICE

223. Select all nouns of the third declension from the vocabulary in section 225 and write the nominative, the genitive, and the accusative case of each in the singular number. Also indicate the gender. For example,

color, colōris, colōrem, m.

LATIN WRITING

224. 1. Rome is a city of many temples. 2. In the time of the ancient Romans men fought with lions in the arena. 3. Many customs of ancient people (men) were not good. 4. Our fathers were men of good customs. 5. Customs are of many kinds. 6. Many kinds of flowers are in the farmer's garden.

7. Romulus was the first king of Rome. 8. A multitude of slaves and freemen was coming to the new city. 9. The number of the Roman people was not large. 10. The beginning of Rome was small.

VOCABULARY

225. **Group I**

barbarus	**genus**	**mōs**	**proximus**
dēsum	**magis**	**multitūdō**	**quam** (adv.)
eō (adv.)	**magnitūdō**	**nōtus**	**tempus**

Group II

flōs	lūcus	senex	utrum...an

Group III

arēna	asȳlum	color	urbānus

Special Forms

eōrum (is), *of them, their.* omnēs, *all.*
quam (quī), *which.*

Derived English Words

color	*flower*	*magnitude*	*urban*

Related English Words

floral	*interurban*	*moral*	*temporary*

WRITTEN REVIEW

226. 1. Write the declension of mōs, mōris, and mūnus, mūneris.

2. When is the consonant s replaced by r in the declension of these nouns?

3. Find five additional English words related to Latin words in this chapter.

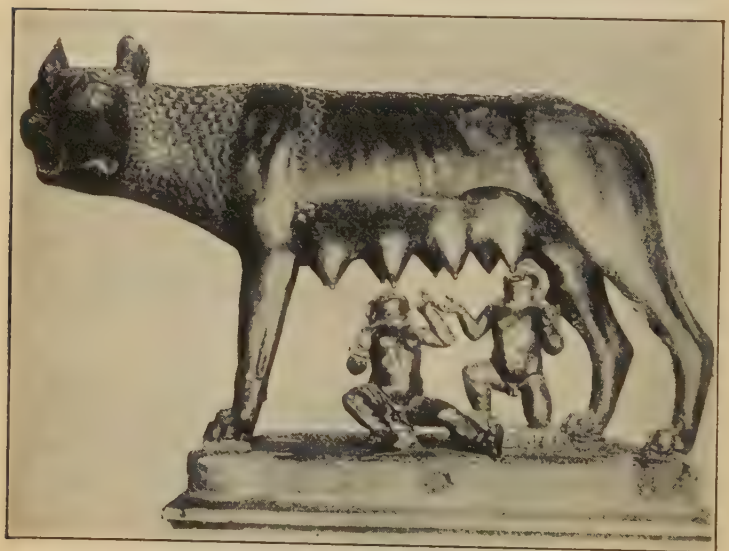
Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.
LEBĒS AĒNEUS

CHAPTER XXII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *i*

227. Most nouns of the third declension whose stems end in i have the ending **-ium** in the genitive plural. Masculine and feminine nouns with i-stems have either **-ēs** or **-īs** in the accusative plural, and a few have the ending



STATUA LUPAE © *Brown Bros., N. Y.*

-im instead of **-em** in the accusative singular and **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular. Most neuter nouns with i-stems have **-ī** in the ablative singular, and all of them have **-ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative

plural. These endings, which at first seem peculiar, are due to the presence of the vowel i in the stem.

READING EXERCISE

228. 1. Urbs Rōma est in Ītaliā. 2. Rōma est nōmen urbis antīquae. 3. Multae urbēs sunt in Ītaliā. 4. Rōma est maxima urbium Ītaliae. 5. Hostēs saepe cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. 6. Hostēs Rōmānōrum

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

MARE ĪNFERUM NŌN LONGĒ AB ŌRE TIBERIS

multās nāvīs habēbant. 7. Magnō cum numerō nāvium hostēs veniēbant. 8. Cīvēs Rōmānī cum mīlitibus hostium terrā marīque pugnābant.

9. Ītalia est inter duo maria, quōrum Mare Īnferum et Mare Superum sunt nōmina. 10. Flūmen Tiberis in Mare Īnferum īnfluit. 11. In Ītaliā sunt altī montēs. 12. Alpēs sunt montēs magnae altitūdinis. 13. Urbs Rōma est in septem collibus sita. 14. Urbs septem collium Rōma est. 15. Mōns Iāniculum nōn longē ab flūmine Tiberī abest. 16. In flūmen Tiberim fīliī Rhēae Silviae mittēbantur.

17. In prīncipiō incolae urbis novae erant paucī. 18. Multī autem in asylum veniēbant. 19. Latrōnēs pāstōrēsque erant prīmī cīvēs Rōmānī. 20. In prīncipiō urbis animālia quoque partem habēbant. 21. Lupa Rōmulum Remumque servābat et vulturēs Rōmulō rēgnum dabant. 22. Est in urbe statua lupae.

RŌMULUS SOCIETĀTEM POPULŌ NOVŌ PETIT

229. Rōmulus ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habēbant. Itaque lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mittit. Societātem et uxōrēs novō populō petit. Nusquam benignē audītur lēgātiō. Fīnitimī novam urbem et spernēbant et timēbant. Ā multīs rogābātur, "Cur nōn fēminīs quoque asylum aperīs?" Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns lūdōs parat. Indīcī (to be announced) fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī undique conveniunt. Sabīnōrum omnis multitūdō cum līberīs ac coniugibus venit.

Colloquium

230. 1. Utrum multī an paucī erant incolae novae urbis? 2. Quī in asylum Rōmulī veniēbant? 3. Habēbantne Rōmulus populusque uxōrēs? 4. Quō Rōmulus lēgātōs mittit? 5. Quid lēgātī petunt? 6. Quō modō fīnitimī lēgātiōnem audiunt? 7. Cūr nōn benignē lēgātiō audītur? 8. Quid ā multīs rogābātur? 9. Quid Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns parat. 10. Quid Rōmulus fīnitimīs indīcī iubet? 11. Utrum paucī an multī conveniunt? 12. Quī cum Sabīnīs ad spectāculum veniēbant?

TYPICAL NOUNS

231.

Nom., **urbs**;	gen., **urbis**;	f., *city*.
Nom., **hostis**;	gen., **hostis**;	m., *enemy*.
Nom., **nāvis**;	gen., **nāvis**;	f., *ship*.
Nom., **mare**;	gen., **maris**;	n., *sea*.

	Singular			
Nom.	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
Gen.	urbis	hostis	nāvis	maris
Dat.	urbī	hostī	nāvī	marī
Acc.	urbem	hostem	nāvem	mare
Voc.	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
Abl.	urbe	hoste	nāvī (-e)	marī
	Plural			
Nom.	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
Gen.	urbium	hostium	nāvium	marium
Dat.	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus
Acc.	urbīs (-ēs)	hostīs (-ēs)	nāvīs (-ēs)	maria
Voc.	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
Abl.	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus

a. The stems are **urbi-**, **hosti-**, **nāvi-**, and **mari-**.

b. Nouns ending in **-ēs**, gen., **-is**, are declined like **hostis**.

c. Most nouns with **i**-stems are included in the following classes:

(1) Nouns whose nominative ends in **-ēs** or **-is** and whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative. **Hostis**, **nāvis**, and **nubēs**, *cloud*, belong to this class.

(2) Neuter nouns whose nominative ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**. **Mare** and **animal** belong to this class.

(3) Nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**, **fraus**, **nox**, and monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant. **Mōns**, **pars**. and **urbs** are examples.

Practice

232. Select all the nouns of the third declension from the Reading Exercise in section 228 and write, or give orally, the nominative singular, the genitive singular, the genitive plural, and the accusative plural of each. Also indicate the gender. Designate the nouns whose stems end in **i**.

LATIN WRITING

233. 1. The Romans were carrying on war with their enemies. 2. The ships of the enemy (pl.) were coming to Italy. 3. The Romans did not have a large number of

ships. 4. Rome is not far away from the sea into which (in quod) the Tiber flows. 5. In Italy there are mountains of great height. 6. Across the Tiber is Mount Janiculum. 7. In the river Tiber there is a small island.

8. The neighboring tribes were not giving wives to the men of the new city. 9. Games are prepared and announced to the neighbors. 10. The wives and children of the Sabines were coming to the spectacle.

VOCABULARY

234.

Group I

cīvis	hostis	mare	quartus
collis	iubeō	mōns	societās
conveniō	lēgātiō	nāvis	urbs
gēns	lēgātus	pars	uxor

Group II

altitūdō	fīnitimī	nusquam	superus
animal	īnferus	spectāculum	undique

Group III

aegritūdō	circā	īnfluō	spernō
benignē	dissimulāns	situs	vīcīnus

Derived English Words

altitude	*legation*	*part*	*society*

Related English Words

civilization	*gentle*	*hostile*	*mariner*

WRITTEN REVIEW

235. 1. Write the declension of **mōns, collis, nāvis, mare,** and **Tiberis** (sing.).

2. What cases of the nouns with i-stems differ from the same cases of other nouns of the third declension?

CHAPTER XXIII

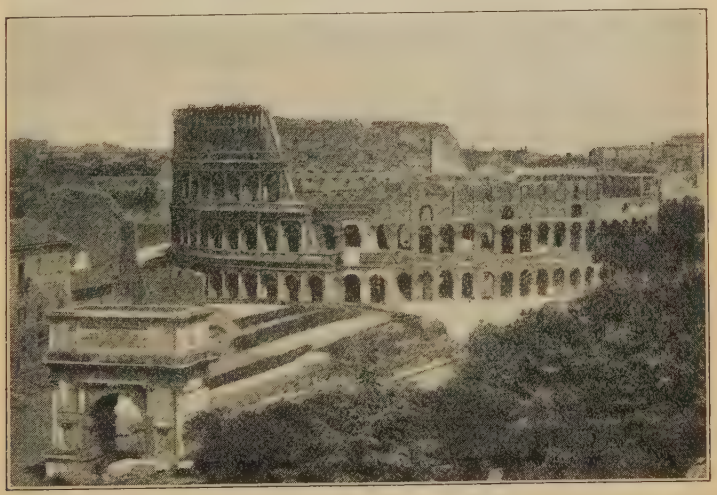
REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Derivation of English Nouns

236. Nouns of the third declension are classified in groups according to the endings of their stems. The characteristics of each group have been pointed out in connection with the paradigms in sections 162, 175, 187, 221, and 231. Generally, however, a knowledge of the nominative and genitive singular and the gender, which may be gained from the vocabulary, is sufficient to enable the student to decline any noun and to recognize any case form.

READING EXERCISE

237. 1. Rōma est caput Ītaliae. 2. Antīquīs temporibus Rōma erat caput orbis terrārum. 3. Flūmen



Colossēum et Arcus Titī

Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. 4. In flūmine Tiberī est īnsula. 5. Multī pontēs super flūmen sunt. 6. Urbs Rōma in septem collibus est sita. 7. Nōmina collium sunt haec: Mōns Capitōlīnus, Palātīnus, Aventīnus, Quirīnālis, Vīminālis, Esquilīnus, Caelius. 8. In monte Capitōlīnō

PUGNA GLADIĀTŌRUM

Rōmulus asȳlum aperit quod (because) incolae urbī novae de-erant. 9. In hōc monte quoque erat arx atque templum Iovis. 10. Ab ūnā parte huius montis erat rūpēs Tarpēia, unde scelerātī ad mortem mittēbantur. 11. Inter Capitōlium et Palātium erat forum Rōmānum. 12. In forō Rōmānō ruīnae templōrum magnōrum videntur. 13. Columnae octō templī Sāturnii etiam nunc ā viātōre videntur.

14. Nōn longē ā forō est Colossēum. 15. In hōc locō antīquīs temporibus ferae cum hominibus pugnābant. 16. Hominēs cum leōnibus et hominēs cum hominibus contendēbant. 17. Cōnsulēs lūdīs et spectāculīs populum dēlectābant. 18. Rōmānī semper bellum et glōriam amābant. 19. Virī Rōmānī erant magnae virtūtis. 20. Et domī et mīlitiae virtūs erat populō Rōmānō cāra. 21. Rōmānī in extrēmās partēs orbis terrārum terrā marīque mīlitēs mīsērunt (sent) atque Iūlius Caesar mīlitēs etiam ad īnsulam Britanniam dūxit (led). 22. Urbs Rōma monumentīs gentium victārum et imāginibus imperātōrum clārōrum ōrnātur. 23. Cum nōs iter in Ītaliam faciēmus (shall make), urbem, flūmen, pontēs, montēs, forum, templa, Colossēum, imāginēs vidēbimus (we shall see).

a. For the declension of **Iuppiter, iter,** and **vīs** see section 835.

Colloquium

238. 1. Quae sunt nōmina septem Rōmae collium? 2. Quō in monte Rōmulus asȳlum aperit? 3. In quō monte erat arx? 4. Unde scelerātī ad mortem mittēbantur? 5. Inter quōs collēs erat forum Rōmānum? 6. Num forum nunc vidētur? 7. Utrum templa an ruīnae templōrum nunc ā viātōre videntur? 8. Quid in Colossēō hominēs agēbant? 9. Quid Rōmānī maximē amābant? 10. Num cīvēs Rōmānī ad Britanniam veniēbant? Num in Americam? 11. Nōnne tū Rōmam vidēre vīs?

RŌMA ET CARTHĀGŌ

239. Antīquīs temporibus Rōmānī bellum cum reliquīs Ītaliae gentibus gerēbant. Dēnique Rōma caput Ītaliae erat. Carthāgō antīqua, in Āfricā condita, cīvitās clāra erat. Carthāgō prōvinciās in Hispāniā habēbat atque īnsulās Corsicam et Sardiniam regēbat. In Siciliā, quae īnsula proxima Ītaliae est, et Rōmānī et Carthāgini-

ēnsēs urbēs habēbant. Populus Rōmānus tōtam īnsulam habēre volēbat et urbem Messānam occupat.

Carthāginiēnsēs īrātī bellum cum Rōmānīs terrā marīque gerunt. Nam magnum nāvium numerum habēbant. Rōmānī autem illō tempore neque nāvīs neque scientiam nāvium habēbant. Sed brevī spatiō temporis nāvīs longās aedificant et certāmine novī generis hostēs

CERTĀMEN INTER NĀVĪS LONGĀS

superant. Mīlitēs Rōmānī in nāvibus vehēbantur et fortiter cum hostibus prō patriā pugnābant. Multae nāvēs hostium captae sunt; reliquae in ōrās Āfricae pelluntur. Hōc modō bellum multōrum annōrum fīnītur et Rōmānī victōrēs sunt.

a. **Terrā marīque,** *by land and sea,* the ablative denoting place with preposition omitted; **certāmine novī generis,** *in an encounter of a new kind.*

Colloquium

240. 1. Cum quibus Rōmānī antīquīs temporibus bellum gerēbant? 2. Quae urbs caput Ītaliae erat? 3. Ubi erat Carthāgō? 4. Quālis urbs Carthāgō erat? 5. Quis Cathāginem condidit? (See section 196.) 6. Ubi Carthāgō prōvinciās habēbat? 7. Quās īnsulās regēbat? 8. Ubi est Sicilia? 9. Quis Siciliam regēbat? Nōnne Rōma et Carthāgō? 10. Cūr Rōmānī Messānam occupābant? 11. Cūr īrātī Carthāginiēnsēs erant? 12. Quā dē causā Carthāginiēnsēs in marī bellum gerēbant? 13. Nōnne Rōmānī quoque magnum nāvium numerum habēbant? 14. Quō modō Rōmānī pugnābant? 15. Eratne bellum longum? 16. Quō modō bellum fīnītur?

CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

241. Nouns of the third declension are classified in the following groups according to the ending of the stems.

(1) Mute stems ending in c, g, d, t, or p. **Dux (duc-), rēx (rēg-), pēs (ped-), mīles (mīlit-), caput (capit-), prīnceps (prīncip-).**

(2) Liquid stems ending in l or r. **Cōnsul (cōnsul-), pāstor (pāstōr-), pater (patr-).**

(3) Nasal stems ending in n. **Leō (leōn-), imāgō (imāgin-), flūmen (flūmin-).**

(4) Stems ending in s. **Flōs (flōs-, flōr-), tempus (tempos-, tempor-), genus (genos-, gener-).**

(5) Stems ending in i. **Urbs (urbi-), hostis (hosti-), nāvis (nāvi-), mare (mari-).**

(6) Irregular nouns. **Iuppiter, iter,** and **vīs** are examples.

DERIVATION OF ENGLISH NOUNS FROM LATIN NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

242. Many English nouns have been derived from Latin nouns of the third declension. It is very important to understand that these derivatives are based on the stem

of the Latin noun rather than on the nominative case. In many instances the English noun has the exact form of the Latin stem, which is conveniently found by omitting the case-ending in the genitive singular; as,

lēgātiō, lēgātiōn-is, *legation.*
pars, part-is, *part.*

In some Latin nouns the nominative case has the same form as the stem, and then, of course, the English derivative is identical with the Latin nominative; as,

cōnsul, cōnsul-is, *consul.*
pāstor, pāstōr-is, *pastor.*

Certain characteristic types of derivation occur with remarkable frequency.

(1) English nouns ending in *-ion* from Latin nouns ending in **-iō** (stem, **-iōn-**); as,

lēgātiō, lēgātiōn-is, *legation.*
nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōn-is, *navigation.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, *oration.*

(2) English nouns ending in *-ty* from Latin nouns ending in **-tās** (stem, **-tāt-**); as,

cīvitās, cīvitāt-is, *city* (for *civity*).
hūmānitās, hūmānitāt-is, *humanity.*
societās, societāt-is, *society.*

(3) English nouns ending in *-tude* from Latin nouns ending in **-tūdō** (stem, **-tūdin-**); as,

altitūdō, altitūdin-is, *altitude.*
fortitūdō, fortitūdin-is, *fortitude.*
multitūdō, multitūdin-is, *multitude.*

The number of such derivatives is very great, as the student will discover when he begins to notice them.

The English noun frequently illustrates the general tendency to simplify words by substituting sounds easier to pronounce for those which are more difficult; as, *city*

from **cīvitās, cīvitāt-is**; *virtue* from **virtūs, virtūt-is**, *multitude* from **multitūdō, multitūdin-is**.

243. Another point to be considered is the formation of Latin words from other Latin words. For example, the noun **magnitūdō** has been formed from the adjective **magnus**; **tempestās** from **tempus**; **lībertās** from **līber**; **hūmānitās** from **hūmānus**, and **hūmānus** from **homō**. A single Latin word often forms the basis for the formation of several other Latin words, from each of which English words may have been derived. An example of such a series is the following: **līber**; **lībertās**, *liberty;* **līberālis**, *liberal;* **līberālitās**, *liberality*. This explains the meaning of the terms "derived from" and "related to," as they are used in this book. For example, *liberty* is derived from **lībertās** and related to **līber**.

244. The following list shows additional examples of English nouns derived from Latin nouns of the third declension.

animal, *animal*.
cōnstitūtiō, *constitution*.
fīnis, *fine*.
flōs, *flower*.
hostis, *host*.
hostīlitās, *hostility*.
imāginātiō, *imagination*.
īnfīnitās, *infinity*.
leō, *lion*.
magnitūdō, *magnitude*.
mōns, *mount*.
nāvis, *nave, navy*.
necessitās, *necessity*.
orbis, *orb, orbit*.
partitiō, *partition*.
pāstor, *pastor*.
pāx, pācis, *peace*.
prīnceps, *prince*.

NOTE.—An unabridged English dictionary will furnish additional material for studies of this kind. Practice in observing the connection between Latin and English words in the lists given will develop an intelligent interest in the subject of Latin word-formation and English derivation, and will prepare the way for more extended study.

LATIN WRITING

245. 1. The city of Rome was situated on seven hills. 2. The citadel was on the Capitol. 3. Between the Capitol and the Palatine was the Roman forum. 4. In the Colosseum the ancient Romans used to see (were seeing) games and exhibitions. 5. Beautiful temples of the gods were in the city. 6. In the temples people used to give gifts to the gods. 7. In ancient times Rome was the capital of the world. 8. The Roman citizens were men of great valor. 9. At first kings, afterwards consuls, ruled the Roman people. 10. Romulus was the first king of Rome.

VOCABULARY

246.

Group I

arx	faciō	octō	regō
capiō	forum	neque	spatium
cīvitās	iter	pōns	superō
contendō	mors	prōvincia	tōtus

Group II

brevis	extrēmus	rūpēs	vehō
conditus	monumentum	scelerātus	victus

Group III

fera	fīniō	ruīna	viātor

Special Forms

condidit, (*he, she*) *built.*	mīsērunt, (*they*) *sent.*
dūxit, (*he, she*) *led.*	quōs (quī), *whom.*
faciēmus, (*we*) *shall make.*	vidēbimus, (*we*) *shall see.*
haec (hic), *these;* huius, *of this.*	vīs, (*you,* sing.) *wish.*

CHAPTER XXIV

THE FUTURE TENSE

247. The future tense has the same significance in Latin as in English, but in Latin it is used with somewhat greater exactness; for example,

Discipulus laetus erit sī magister eum laudābit, *the pupil will be happy if the master shall praise (praises) him.*

In the first and second conjugations the future tense is distinguished by the tense-sign **-bi-** (changed to **-bō** in the first person singular, and to **-bu-** in the third person plural).

laudā-bi-t, *he will praise;* **habē-bu-nt,** *they will have;* **da-bō,** *I will (shall) give.*

The future tense of **sum** is **erō,** *I shall be;* **eris,** *you will be;* **erit,** *he will be,* etc.

READING EXERCISE

248. 1. Herī eram in agrīs; hodiē sum domī; crās iterum in agrīs erō. 2. Ubi tū crās eris? 3. Ego cum Mārcō in hortō erō. 4. Eritne Mārcus tēcum? 5. Ego et Mārcus in hortō erimus. 6. Eritisne tū et Mārcus in hortō? 7. In hortō erimus; amīcī nostrī nōbīscum in hortō erunt.

8. Hodiē magister discipulōs laudat; herī eōs culpābat; crās fortasse eōs iterum laudābit. 9. "Nōnne nōs laudābis," discipulī magistrum rogant, "sī dīligenter labōrābimus?" 10. "Lībenter vōs laudābo," magister respondet, "sī dīligenter labōrābitis." 11. Sī discipulī dīligenter labōrābunt, magister eōs lībenter laudābit.

12. Quid, puer, in dextrā habēs? 13. Pilam nunc habeō, sed mox eam nōn habēbō. 14. Cūr nōn diūtius pilam habēbis? Quis eam habēbit? 15. Magister pilam

mox habēbit. Mē in poenam dabit sī nōn librum Latīnum in dextrā habēbō. 16. Fortasse pilam parvīs puerīs dabō; magister nōn īrātus erit sī puerī parvī pilam habēbunt. 17. Eritisne laetī, puerī, sī pilam habēbitis? 18. "Laetī erimus," puerī respondent, "sī pilam habēbimus."

Colloquium

249. 1. Tū herī ubi erās? Ubi crās eris? 2. Ubi Mārcus erit? 3. Eritisne vōs, discipulī, domī? 4. Ubi crās amīcī vestrī erunt? 5. Quōs hodiē magister culpat?

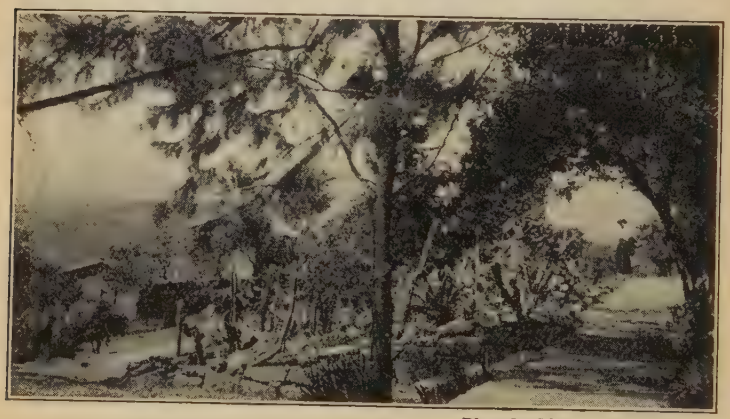


Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

Regiō Rūstica Ītaliae

Nōnne eōs crās laudābit? 6. Nōnne magister discipulōs laudābit sī dīligenter labōrābunt? 7. Vōsne magister laudābit sī nōn librōs in dextrīs habēbitis? 8. Sī puer pilam habēbit nōnne magister eum culpābit?

NĒMŌ SORTE CONTENTUS EST

Sententia Horātī

250. Quā dē causā, Horātius poēta rogat, nēmō sorte contentus est. Mīles, labōre fessus, mercātōrem

laudat. Sed mercātor, ubi ventī nāvem impediunt, mīlitem laudat. Nam ad mīlitem aut mors aut victōria hōrae spatiō venit. Iūris-cōnsultus, ubi cōnsultor prīmā lūce portam pulsat, agricolam laudat. Agricola autem hominēs sōlōs quī in urbe vīvunt laetōs appellat.

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM UT QUONDAM ERAT

Sed sī Iuppiter dīcat, "Vōbīs facultātem dabō quam vultis: tū quī mīles erās mercātor eris; tū quī iūris-cōnsultus erās agricola eris; mūtāte partēs! este beātī!" nēmō sortem mūtāre velit. Numquam posthāc Iuppiter īrātus vōta hominum audiet.

a. **dīcat,** *should say;* **mūtāre,** *to change;* **mūtāte, este,** imperative, *change, be;* **velit,** *would be willing;* **audiet,** *will hear.*

Colloquium

251. 1. Quid Horātius rogat? 2. Quem mīles laudābit ubi labōre fessus erit? 3. Cūr mercātor mīlitem laudābit? 4. Utrum mortem an victōriam mīles vult? 5. Quōs agricola laudat? 6. Nōnne mercātor et mīles partēs mūtābunt sī Iuppiter facultātem dabit? 7. Mūtābuntne iūris-cōnsultus et agricola partēs? 8. Nōnne Iuppiter īrātus erit sī nēmō sortem mūtābit? 9. Vōsne, discipulī, sortem mūtābitis sī Iuppiter facultātem dabit?

CONJUGATION

252. **Erō,** *I shall be;* **dabō,** *I shall give;* **habēbō,** *I shall have.*

Singular

				TENSE-SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
erō,	*I shall be*	dabō	habēbō	-bō	(-ō)
eris,	*you will be*	dabis	habēbis	-bi-	-s
erit,	*he will be*	dabit	habēbit	-bi-	-t

Plural

erimus,	*we shall be*	dabimus	habēbimus	-bi-	-mus
eritis,	*you will be*	dabitis	habēbitis	-bi-	-tis
erunt,	*they will be*	dabunt	habēbunt	-bu-	-nt

a. The tense-sign -bi- (-bō, -bu-) belongs to the first and second conjugations only.

b. In dō the vowel a is short before the tense-sign.

SYNTAX

253. **The future indicative represents action as going on in the future.** (25)

Rōmulus novae urbī nōmen dabit, *Romulus will give a name to the new city.*

Practice

254. Change the following sentences by substituting successively for the tense given each of the other two

tenses which have been studied; as, **In agrīs sum (eram, erō); puer pilam habēbat (habet, habēbit).**

(1) Nēmō contentus est; magister rogābat; discipulī respondēbunt; puerī puellīs pilam dabant; ubi tū erās?

(2) Ego pilam habeō; nēmō sortem amābit; mercātōrēs ventum timēbunt; tūne labōrābās?

(3) Mīles mercātōrem laudābit; cōnsultor portam pulsābat; agricola incolās urbis laetōs appellat; vōs beātī erātis.

(4) Hominēs in urbe sunt; sapientiam amābāmus; nōnne discipulī sunt beātī?

LATIN WRITING

255. 1. Yesterday I was in the forest; today I am at home; tomorrow I shall be in the city. 2. If you are (shall be) in the city tomorrow, you will see the soldiers in the streets. 3. The general will be in the city with a large number of soldiers. 4. We shall be happy when we see (shall see) our friends again. 5. The boys will be happy if they see (shall see) the soldiers. 6. Boys, will you be happy if you see the soldiers?

7. Who will give a name to the new city? 8. Will the neighbors give wives to Romulus and the Roman people? 9. The messengers of Romulus ask, "Will you (pl.) give wives to Romulus and the Romans?" 10. The neighbors reply, "We will not give wives to the Romans."

VOCABULARY

256. **Group I**

dīligenter	**hōra**	**mercātor**	**sors**
facultās	**iūs**	**numquam**	**ubi (when)**

Group II

contentus	**libenter**	**posthāc**	**vīvō**
crās	**mūtō**	**poena**	**vōtum**

Group III

cōnsultor	**cōnsultus**	**diūtius**	**pulsō**

Derived English Words

content	*faculty*	*sort*	*vote*

Related English Words

contentment	*diligence*	*jurist*	*penalty*

a. Find five or more English words in which the Latin preposition **cum** (**con-**) is an element.

WRITTEN REVIEW

257. 1. Write out the conjugation of **sum** (**erō**), **mūtō** (**mūtābō**), and **timeō** (**timēbō**) in the future tense, giving the meaning of each form. How does the quantity of **a** in the future of **dō** differ from the quantity of **a** in the future of **mūtō**?

2. If **audiet** is the future of **audiō**, a verb of the fourth conjugation, what is the corresponding form of **veniō**? of **impediō**?

3. Find five or more additional English words related to, or derived from, Latin words in this chapter.

CHAPTER XXV

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Four Conjugations

258. In the first and second conjugations the sign of the future tense is **-bi-** (**bō, -bu-**); in the third and fourth conjugations the tense-sign of the future is **-ē-** (long **e**), which is changed to **-a-** in the first person singular and to **-e-** (short **e**) in the third person singular and plural.

The future tense is formed by adding the future tense-sign and the personal endings to the present stem, omitting the stem vowel in the third conjugation and shortening it in the fourth conjugation. **Amā-bō, dēlē-bi-t, mitt(e)-ē-s, veni-ē-mus.**

DISCIPULUS AD MAGISTRUM EPISTULAM SCRĪBIT

259. 1. Multa, magister, tū mihi dē Rōma semper dīcis, et in animum meum memoria verbōrum tuōrum saepe venit. 2. Tū Rōmam magnopere amās, atque ego illam urbem pulchram amō et semper amābō. 3. Rectē hominēs Rōmam "aeternam urbem" semper appellābunt. 4. Neque vīs hostium neque ignis, spērō, Rōmam dēlēbit. 5. Ab extrēmīs orbis terrārum regiōnibus hominēs Rōmam venient atque templa forumque et imāginēs clārōrum virōrum vidēbunt. 6. Ego fortasse aliquandō Rōmam veniam et monumenta temporum antīquōrum vidēbō. 7. Nōnne tū, magister, mēcum in Ītaliam aliquandō veniēs? 8. Fortasse tū et pater meus ūnā veniētis. 9. Sī ego paterque atque tū ipse ad illam terram clārissimam veniēmus, laetissimus erō. 10. Sī mox epistulam ad mē scrībēs, verba tua libenter legam. Valē.

Colloquium

260. 1. Quid in animum discipulī venit? 2. Quō nōmine hominēs Rōmam vocant? 3. Dēlēbitne vīs hostium urbem aeternam? 4. Unde Rōmam hominēs veniunt? Venientne semper? 5. Quid in urbe discipulus vidēbit? 6. Tūne, discipule, beātus eris sī aliquandō Rōmam veniēs?

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

Arcus Cōnstantīnī et Mōns Palātīnus

READING EXERCISE

261. 1. In urbe quam Rōmulus regēbat erant paucī incolae. 2. Unde urbs incolās habēbit? 3. Rōmulus populusque uxōrēs nōn habēbant. 4. Num vīcīnae gentēs fīliās uxōrēs mittent? 5. Fīliās nōn mittent quod novam urbem timent. 6. Lēgātī circā vīcīnās gentēs mittuntur. 7. Nusquam benignē audītur lēgātiō. 8. Itaque ā Rō-

mulō lūdī parantur. 9. Sabīnī fīnitimī cum fīliīs atque fīliābus ad spectāculum veniunt. 10. Nōnne Rōmānī fīliās Sabīnōrum uxōrēs habēbunt? Fortasse.

Colloquium

262. 1. Unde Rōmulus populusque uxōrēs habēbunt? 2. Cūr nōn vīcīnae gentēs fīliās mittent? 3. Quī circā vīcīnās gentēs mittuntur? 4. Quō modō lēgātī audiuntur? 5. Quī ad spectāculum Rōmulī veniunt?

RŌMĀNĪ VIRGINĒS SABĪNŌRUM RAPIUNT

263. Ubi spectāculī tempus venit et in lūdōs conversae mentēs cum oculīs sunt, tum signum datur et Rōmānī discurrunt atque virginēs rapiunt. Haec (this) erat statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmunt. Dum Rōmae appropinquant Tarpēiam virginem vident, quae aquam extrā mūrōs petēbat. Tarpēiae pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae dīcit, "Tibi optiōnem dabō mūneris sī Sabīnōs in Capitōlium dūcēs."

a. **Ob virginēs raptās,** *on account of the seized maidens, on account of the seizing of the maidens;* **praeerat arcī,** *was in command of the citadel.*

Colloquium

264. 1. Quae erat causa bellī inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs? 2. Quam virginem Sabīnī extrā mūrōs vidēbant? 3. Quis Rōmānae arcī praeerat? 4. Quid Tarpēiae dux Sabīnōrum dīcēbat? 5. Cūr Tarpēia hostēs in arcem dūcet? Nōnne optiōnem mūneris habēbit?

CONJUGATION

265. **Amābō,** *I shall love;* **vidēbō,** *I shall see;* **mittam** *I shall send;* **audiam,** *I shall hear.*

		Singular	
amābō	vidēbō	mittam	audiam
amābis	vidēbis	mittēs	audiēs
amābit	vidēbit	mittet	audiet
		Plural	
amābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis	audiētis
amābunt	vidēbunt	mittent	audient

a. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the tense-sign **-bi-**, is changed to **-bō** in the first person singular and to **-bu-** in the third person plural.

b. In the third and fourth conjugations the sign of the future tense is **-ē**, which becomes **-a-** in the first person singular and **-e-** before the endings **-t** and **-nt**. In the third conjugation the stem-vowel **ē** is combined with the tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the stem-vowel **ī** is shortened.

SYNTAX

266. **The dative case is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,* or *super.*** (26)

Rōmae appropinquant (ad-propinquant), *they approach (to) Rome;* **Tarpēiae pater arcī prae-erat,** *Tarpeia's father was in command of the citadel.*

PRACTICE

267. For each of the four verbs, **spērō, dēleō, sūmō,** and **veniō,** give orally or in writing the first person singular in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, then the second personal singular, the third person singular and the three plural forms, thus making a synopsis of each verb in each person, singular and plural, through the three tenses, according to the following model:

amō	amās	amat
amābam	amābās	amābat
amābō	amābis	amābit
amāmus	amātis	amant
amābāmus	amābātis	amābant
amābimus	amābitis	amābunt

LATIN WRITING

268. 1. The Sabines fear the inhabitants of the new city, but they will come to the sports. 2. The Romans will have wives from the Sabines. 3. When the time for (of)

PLATĒA POPULĪ

the spectacle comes (shall come), Romulus will give the signal. 4. The Romans will have the maidens as wives. 5. This (haec) will be a cause for (of) war. 6. The Sabines will undertake the war. 7. They will approach (to) the city. 8. The Sabines see Tarpeia outside the walls. 9. Tarpeia will have (her) choice of a reward if she will lead the Sabines into the city. 10. Tarpeia, you will not lead the Sabines into the city, will you?

VOCABULARY

269.

Group I

adversus	ignis	ob	sūmō
dēleō	magnopere	regiō	virgō
enim	mēns	signum	vīs

Group II

aeternus	appropinquō	praesum	raptus
aliquandō	conversus	rapiō	spērō

Group III

laetissimus	optiō	rēctē	ūnā

Derived English Words

option	*region*	*sign*	*virgin*

Related English Words

adversity	*eternity*	*mental*	*signal*

a. With the aid of an English dictionary find at least ten English words of which the Latin preposition **ob** is an element; *e. g.*, *object* (**obiectus**); *observe* (**observō**). Notice whether the part of the English word which follows the preposition is of Latin origin.

WRITTEN REVIEW

270. 1. Write in parallel columns the conjugation of **dō**, **vocō**, **timeō**, **petō**, and **veniō** in the future indicative active. Observe carefully the distinction between the forms that have the tense-sign **-bi-** and those that have **-ē-** as the sign of the future tense. Notice the short vowel **a** in the future of **dō**.

2. Write in parallel columns the present tense of **videō** (**-ēre**) and the future tense of **mittō** (**-ere**) and **audiō** (**-īre**).

3. Before words beginning with **c** the Latin preposition **ob** is changed to **oc-** in compounds, as **occurrō** for **ob-currō**; and the same form appears in English derivatives, as in *occur*. Find five or more English words in which this form of the Latin **ob** appears.

CHAPTER XXVI

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

Four Conjugations

271. The passive forms of the future tense differ from those of the active chiefly in the personal endings.

Active		Passive	
amābō,	*I shall love*	**amābor,**	*I shall be loved*
tenēbit,	*he will hold*	**tenēbitur,**	*he will be held*
mittēs,	*you will send*	**mittēris,**	*you will be sent*
impedient,	*they will hinder*	**impedientur,**	*they will be hindered*

Any modifications in the vowel of the tense-sign are due to the laws of phonetic change. Future active, **amābis**; passive, **amāberis** (for **amābiris**), **e** being the favorite vowel before **r**.

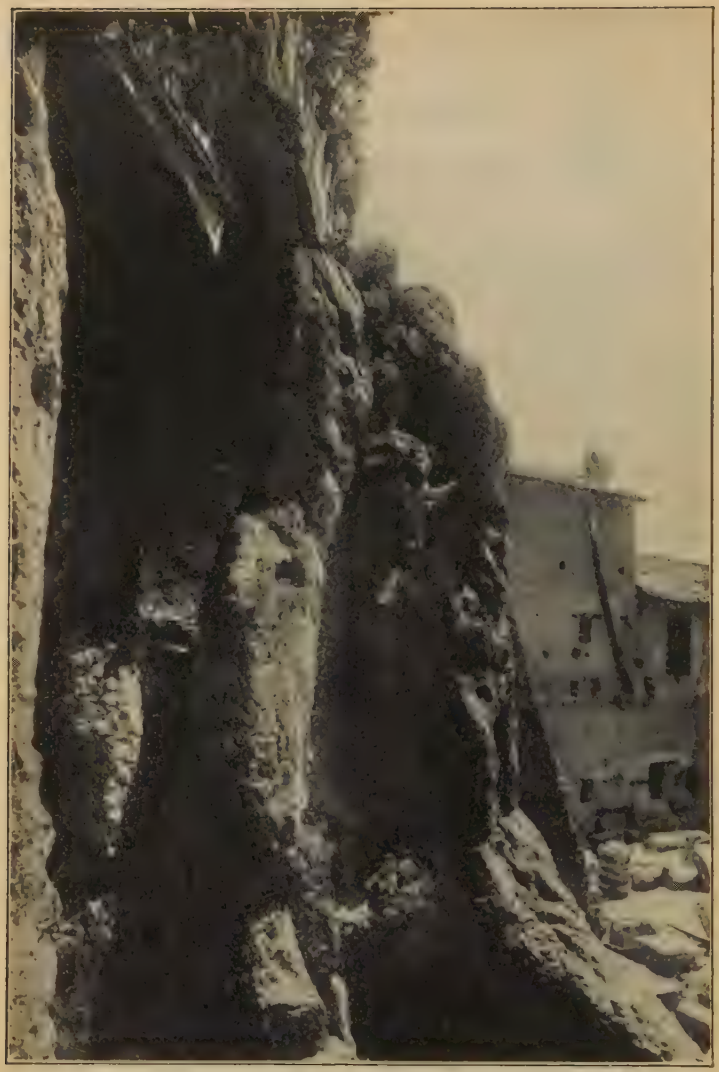
READING EXERCISE

272. 1. Servus ā dominō ad flūmen mittētur. 2. Ex flūmine aqua ad dominum portābitur. 3. In viīs fortasse servus ā puerīs malīs impediētur. 4. Puerī malī ā patribus in poenam dabuntur. 5. Dum bonī cum amīcīs in campō lūdent, vōs, malī puerī, tenēbiminī domī.

6. Cum in lūdōs mentēs erunt conversae, fīliae Sabīnōrum ā Rōmānīs rapientur. 7. Rōmānī discurrent atque virginēs rapient. 8. Ob fīliās raptās erit statim bellum. 9. Bellum adversus Rōmānōs ā patribus raptārum fīliārum sūmētur. 10. Sī Tarpēiae optiō mūneris dabitur, Sabīnī in Capitōlium dūcentur. 11. Num dūcet Tarpēia in urbem Sabīnōs? 12. Quod mūnus Tarpēiae dabitur?

Colloquium

273. 1. Quō servus mittētur? 2. Quid ex flūmine ab servō portābitur? 3. Quī servum impedient? 4. Quō



RŪPĒS TARPĒIA

modō puerī malī poenam dabunt? 5. Quid Rōmānī agent cum mentēs in lūdōs conversae erunt? 6. Quid Tarpēiae dabitur sī Sabīnōs in urbem dūcet?

DAEDALUS NOVĀS ARTĒS PARAT

Fābula Ovidī Poētae

274. Daedalus artifex clārus in cūstōdiā ab rēge Crētae tenēbātur. Longō exsiliō fessus et amōre patriae mōtus artēs novās parat. "Mīnōs rēx," Īcarō fīliō dīcit, "terram et mare regit sed nōn regit caelum. Per caelum igitur effugiēmus."

Tum pennās in ōrdine pōnit et cērā alligat. Ālās facit quae similēs erant ālīs avium. Puer Īcarus aderat et pennās captābat quās ventus movēbat. Cēram digitīs parvīs molliēbat et lūdō opus patris impediēbat.

Colloquium

275. 1. Quālis vir Daedalus erat? 2. Ā quō Daedalus in cūstōdiā tenēbātur? 3. Quis rēx Crētae erat? 4. Quā dē causā Daedalus novās artēs parat? 5. Cūr nōn terrā aut marī Daedalus effugit? 6. Regēbatne Mīnōs caelum? 7. Quid Mīnōs regēbat? 8. Quō modō Daedalus ālās faciēbat? 9. Quid agēbat Īcarus? 10. Impediēbatne puer patris opus?

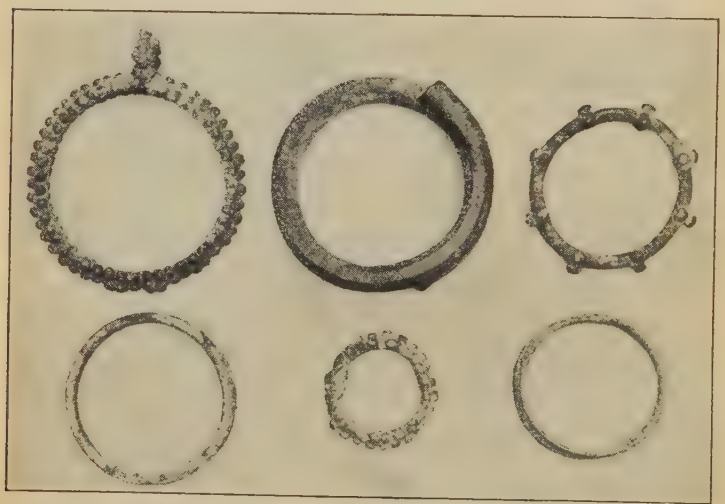
PATER ET FĪLIUS PER CAELUM VOLANT

276. Postquam opus factum est, Daedalus ālās induit et per caelum volat. Īcarō quoque ālās dat et fīliō dīcit, "Mē ducem, fīlī, mediā viā sequere. Sī īnferior volābis, ālae aquā impedientur; sī superior volābis, ignī sōlis pennae exūrentur." Tum pater fīliō viam mōnstrat et ambō ab Crētā per caelum volant.

a. **mediā viā,** *midway (between the earth and the sun);* **sequere** (imperative of **sequor**), *follow;* **īnferior,** *too low;* **superior,** *too high.*

Colloquium

277. 1. Postquam ālae factae sunt, quid Daedalus agit? 2. Volābatne homō per caelum? 3. Quō modō Daedalus volābat? Nōnne ālīs? 4. Ālāsne Īcarō Daedalus dat? 5. Quid pater fīliō dīcit? 6. Quid ālās impediet sī Īcarus īnferior volābit? 7. Exūrenturne pennae ignī sōlis? 8. Nōnne Daedalus fīliusque ab rēge Crētae effugient? 9. Quis aviātor prīmus erat?



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

Armillae ex Aere Factae

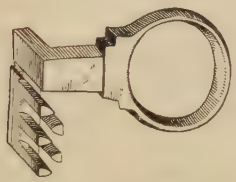
a. **Aviātor** is not a classical Latin word.

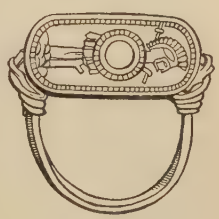
SABĪNĪ TARPĒIAM SCŪTĪS OBRUUNT

278. Tarpēia petit quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant; nam aureōs ānulōs et armillās magnī ponderis gerēbant. Deinde Sabīnōs in arcem perdūcit, ubi mīlitēs scūtīs eam (her) obruunt. Nam scūta quoque in sinistrīs habēbant.

Colloquium

279. 1. Quis Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dabat? 2. Quid Tarpēia petēbat? 3. Quid Sābīnī in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant? 4. Nōnne Sabīnī Tarpēiae ānulōs et armillās dant? 5. Quod mūnus Tarpēiae dabātur?





Anulī

CONJUGATION

280. Amābor, *I shall be loved;* vidēbor, *I shall be seen;* mittar, *I shall be sent;* audiar, *I shall be heard.*

Singular

amābor	vidēbor	mittar	audiar
amāberis (-re)	vidēberis (-re)	mittēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
amābitur	vidēbitur	mittētur	audiētur

Plural

amābimur	vidēbimur	mittēmur	audiēmur
amābiminī	vidēbiminī	mittēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	vidēbuntur	mittentur	audientur

a. The future passive contains the present stem, the tense-sign of the future, and the personal endings of the passive.

b. Notice the difference between **mitteris** (present), *you are being sent,* and **mittēris** (future), *you will be sent.*

SYNTAX

281. Conjunctions are used to connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences. (27)

a. **Et** is a simple connective; **-que** is joined to the second of two connected words, or to the first word in the second

group when two groups of words are connected, and denotes close relationship between the parts; **atque** and **ac** often give prominence to the word or expression which follows the conjunction.

b. A word attached to another word, like **-que** in **terrā marīque**, *by land and sea*, is called an enclitic.

Practice

282. In the following sentences change the active verbs to the corresponding tense of the passive, and the passive verbs to the active. Make any other changes necessary to preserve the sense.

1. Dominus servum ad flūmen mittet. 2. Fīliae Sabīnōrum ab Rōmānīs petentur. 3. Quod mūnus Tarpēiae ā Sabīnīs dabitur? 4. Dūcetne Tarpēia hostium ducem in arcem? 5. Novae artēs ā Daedalō parābuntur. 6. Puer opus patris impediet. 7. Daedalus ab rēge in cūstōdiā tenēbitur.

LATIN WRITING

283. 1. If Tarpeia shall ask for that which (quod) the Sabines are bearing in their left hands, shields will be given to her (eī). 2. The enemies of her father will be led by Tarpeia to the citadel. 3. The Sabines were coming to the citadel and they had (were having) shields in their left hands. 4. When your reward is given (shall be given), Tarpeia, you will be buried by the shields of the enemy. 5. For rings, and shields also, are carried by the Sabines. 6. Tarpeia was asking for gold rings and bracelets, but shields were given to her.

VOCABULARY

284. Group I

ars	**factus**	**mōtus**	**ōrdō**
campus	**igitur**	**moveō**	**pondus**
effugiō	**medius**	**opus**	**pōnō**

Group II

āla	digitus	induō	sinister
amor	exūrō	īnferior	superior
avis	exsilium	penna	volō (-āre)

Group III

alligō	armilla	captō	molliō
ānulus	artifex	cēra	obruō

Derived English Words

art *move* *order* *pen*

Related English Words

aviator *ordinary* *pennant* *ponderous*

a. With the aid of an English dictionary find five English words related to ars (art-is). Are English derivatives based on the nominative case or on the stem of Latin nouns?

b. Find five or more English words derived from Latin words in which the preposition ē or ex is an element.

WRITTEN REVIEW

285. 1. Write the conjugation of portō, teneō, regō, and impediō in the future passive indicative. For one verb give the English meanings throughout the conjugation.

2. How do verbs of the first and the second conjugations differ from verbs of the third and the fourth conjugations in forms of the future tense?

3. Find five English words related to ōrdō (ōrdin-is).

CHAPTER XXVII

VERBS IN *-iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

286. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in **-iō** in the present indicative active. The ending of the present infinitive, **-ere**, shows that these verbs belong to the third conjugation; but they have forms similar to those of the fourth conjugation wherever in a verb of the fourth conjugation the **i** of the stem is followed by another vowel. With this exception the verbs in **-iō** of the third conjugation are conjugated like **mittō**.

Thus **capere** is like **mittere**, **capit** like **mittit**, **capimus** like **mittimus**, etc.; while **capiō** is like **audiō**, **capiunt** like **audiunt**, **capiēbam** like **audiēbam**, **capiam** like **audiam**, etc.

READING EXERCISE

287. 1. Latrōnēs Remum capiunt. 2. Remus ā latrōnibus capitur. 3. Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem faciēbat. 4. Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapiunt. 5. Virginēs Sabīnōrum ā Rōmānīs rapiuntur. 6. Fīliae Sabīnōrum rapiēbantur. 7. Lēgātī ad vīcīnās gentēs mittēbantur. 8. Lēgātiō nōn benignē audiēbātur. 9. Tarpēia hostēs ad arcem dūcet. 10. Capientne hostēs arcem? 11. Hostēs ad arcem venient sed urbem nōn capient. 12. Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerent sed nova urbs nōn capiētur.

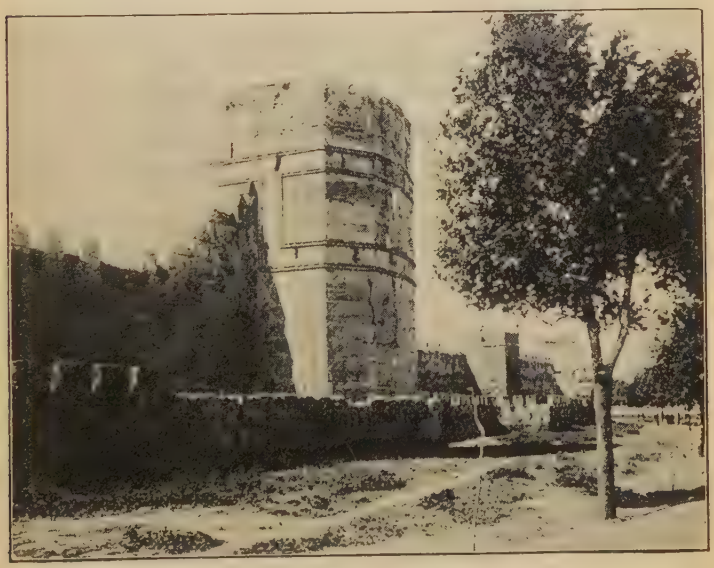
COLLOQUIUM

288. 1. Quī Remum capiunt? Ā quibus Remus capitur? 2. Utrum urbem an imāginem urbis Rōmulus faciēbat? 3. Cūr Rōmānī virginēs Sābīnōrum rapiēbant? 4. Quō lēgātī mittēbantur? 5. Cūr nōn lēgātī benignē

audiēbantur? 6. Quis mīlitēs hostium in urbem dūcēbat? 7. Capiēbantne hostēs urbem?

ĪCARUS IN MARE CADIT

289. Daedalus ālīs levātus ante Īcarum volat et timidus ālās fīlī respicit. Pāstōrēs et arātōrēs eōs per āera volantēs vident et crēdunt esse deōs.



TURRIS ET MŪRUS IN HISPĀNIĀ

Nunc Samos et Dēlos Parosque relinquuntur cum puer patrem relinquit et altius volat. Rapidus sōl cēram mollit et ālae āmittuntur. Īcarus nūdos lacertōs quatit et cadit in mare, quod nōmine Īcarī nunc Mare Īcarium appellātur.

Pater miser, "Īcare," clāmat, "Īcare, ubi es?" Mox pennās in aquā videt. Corpus fīlī in sepulcrō pōnit et īnsulam "Īcariam" vocat.

a. **Eōs . . . crēdunt esse,** *believe them to be;* **āera,** acc. sing.; **altius,** *too high.*

Colloquium

290. 1. Quō modō Daedalus volābat? 2. Quī Daedalum et Īcarum per āera volantēs vidēbant? 3. Īcarusne patrem relinquit? 4. Nōnne mediā viā volābat? 5. Quid agit Īcarus cum ignis sōlis cēram ālārum mollit? 6. Ubi erat Īcarus cum pater "Īcare, ubi es?" clāmābat?

CONJUGATION OF CAPIŌ

Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses

291. **Capiō, capere;** *take.*

Active		Passive	
		Present	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
		Imperfect	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
		Future	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

a. Capiō is like mittō except in those forms in which two vowels occur in succession. Wherever two vowels come together in the endings of the fourth conjugation, the verbs in -iō of the third conjugation are conjugated like audiō.

b. In the compounds of capiō and faciō the vowel a of the simple verb is weakened to i; as, accipiō, concipiō, efficiō, cōnficiō, perficiō.

Practice

292. 1. For each of the following verbs write, or give orally, the present active infinitive and designate by number the conjugation to which each verb belongs.

agō	crēdō	iubeō	pōnō
mūtō	volō (fly)	appellō	aspiciō
capiō	faciō	molliō	vīvō
moveō	impediō	quatiō	vocō

2. Complete the conjugation of agō, faciō, and veniō in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the active voice, writing the verbs in parallel columns. Then show by arrows what forms of faciō are like the corresponding forms of agō and what forms of faciō are like those of veniō.

agō		faciō	⟶	veniō
agis	⟵	facis		venīs
agit	⟵	facit	⟶	venit

LATIN WRITING

293. 1. Romulus and the people seize the maidens of the Sabines. 2. When the time of the sports comes, the maidens are seized. 3. This was a cause of war between the fathers of the maidens and the Romans. 4. The Romans were doing that which (id quod) was a cause of war. 5. The Sabines will come to the citadel but they will not take the city. 6. Tarpeia was doing that which the Sabines wished (volēbant), but the city will not be taken. 7. Thus the Romans will keep (will have) the daughters of the Sabines whom (quās) they were seizing.

VOCABULARY

294.

Group I

altius	capiō	crēdō	rapidus
ante	corpus	faciō	timidus

Group II

āēr	nūdus	respiciō	sepulchrum

Group III

arātor	lacertus	levātus	quatiō

Derived English Words

creed *rapid* *sepulcher* *timid*

Related English Words

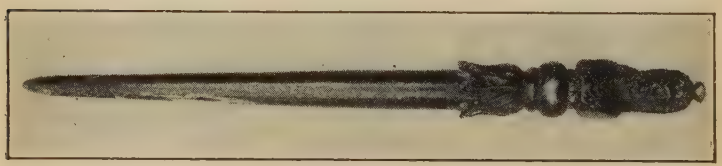
altitude *capture* *corporal* *elevator*

a. The adjective **rapidus** comes from the verb **rapiō**, *to seize,* and the primary meaning of **rapidus** is *seizing, devouring;* but **rapiō** also means *to seize quickly, to carry away swiftly,* and hence **rapidus** acquired the meaning *swift,* which has been preserved in the English derivative *rapid.* How does the meaning of *timid* compare with the original meaning of **timidus,** which comes from **timeō**?

WRITTEN REVIEW

295. 1. How is it determined whether a verb ending in **-iō** belongs to the third or to the fourth conjugation?

2. Write the conjugation of **mittō, capiō,** and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the passive voice, arranging the verbs according to the model in section 292. Show by arrows what forms of **capiō** are like those of **mittō** and what forms are like those of **audiō.**



Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

ACUS EBURNEA

CHAPTER XXVIII

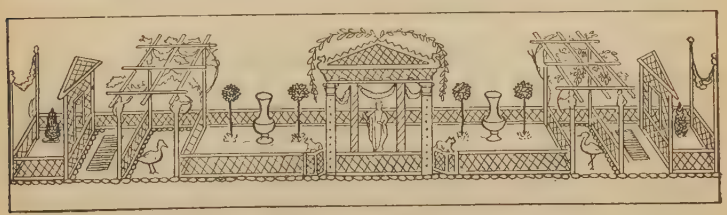
THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

The Present, Imperfect, and Future of *Possum*

296. The present active infinitive is formed by the addition of the ending **-re** to the present stem. It contains the present stem in its unmodified form and is given in the vocabulary to indicate the conjugation to which a regular verb belongs: as, **pugnā-re**, *to fight;* **prohibē-re**, *to prevent;* **intellege-re**, *to understand;* **sentī-re**, *to feel.* (See section 124.)

297. The present passive infinitive is formed in verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations by adding **-rī** to the present stem, and in verbs of the third conjugation by changing the final vowel of the stem to **-ī**; as, **laudā-rī**, *to be praised;* **movē-rī**, *to be moved;* **regī**, *to be ruled;* **mollī-rī**, *to be softened.*

298. **Possum**, *I am able, I can,* is an irregular verb composed of **potis**, *able,* and **sum**, *I am.* The present, imperfect, and future tenses are formed by combining **pos-** with those forms of **sum** which begin with **s**, and **pot-** with the forms of **sum** which begin with a vowel; as, **pos-sumus**, **pot-estis.**



HORTUS

Possum is generally used in connection with the infinitive of some other verb.

Sabīnī urbem capere nōn possunt, *the Sabines cannot take the city;* **arx capī nōn poterat,** *the citadel could not be taken.*

AVĒS

299. 1. In hortō nostrō arborēs multōrum generum vidērī possunt. 2. Potesne in rāmīs arborum illās avīs vidēre? 3. Avīs ipsās nōn videō sed carmina eārum (their) audīre possum. 4. Cotīdiē ante lūcem audīrī possunt. 5. Nōn tālia carmina hominēs canere possunt. 6. Mihi est grātum avīs in arboribus vidēre atque vōcēs eārum audīre. 7. Quid, tenerae avēs, prō carminibus vestrīs vōbīs dare poterimus? 8. Amīcī vestrī saltem esse poterimus. 9. Vōbīs grātiās agere possumus et ab hortō puerōs malōs prohibēre. 10. Num nostra verba intellegere potestis? 11. Verba nostra intellegere avēs nōn possunt sed amīcitiam nostram sentīre possunt. 12. Amīcī avium esse dēbēmus.

Colloquium

300. 1. Potesne arborēs in hortō vidēre? 2. Quid in rāmīs arborum vidēre potes? 3. Quō tempore carmina avium audīrī possunt? 4. Suntne carmina avium hominibus grāta? 5. Quid avibus tenerīs prō carminibus dare possumus? 6. Nōnne avēs puerōs malōs timent? 7. Possuntne avēs nostra verba intellegere? 8. Cūr avium amīcī esse dēbēmus?

READING EXERCISE

301. 1. Et Rōmulus et Remus novae urbī nōmen dare volēbant. 2. Itaque auspicium cōnstituunt adhibēre. 3. Beneficiō avium Rōmulus urbī nōmen dare poterat. 4. Ad tūtēlam novae urbis vāllum satis esse vidēbātur (seemed). 5. Remus vāllum trānsilīre poterat.

6. Rōmulus societātem cum vīcinīs gentibus facere nōn poterat. 7. Itaque lūdōs fīnitimīs indīcī iubet. 8. Facile erat spectāculum parāre. 9. Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāre poterat. 10. Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum

PORTA SEBASTIĀNA

rapere poterunt. 11. Proptereā Sabīnī bellum cum Rōmānīs sūment (future). 12. Sed arx capī nōn poterit. 13. Prōditiō Tarpēiae laudārī nōn potest.

COLLOQUIUM

302. 1. Quī urbī novae nōmen dare volēbant? 2. Quid propter (propter quid) Rōmulus urbī nōmen dare

poterat? 3. Nōnne vāllum ad tūtēlam urbis satis erat? 4. Cūr Rōmulus lūdōs parārī volēbat? 5. Poteruntne Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapere? 6. Nōnne bellum Sabīnī sūment?

AD CERTĀMEN UTRIMQUE PRŌCĒDUNT

303. Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcēdit, et in eō locō ubi nunc forum Rōmānum est pugnam committit. Prīncipēs utrimque pugnābant, ab Sabīnīs Mettius Curtius, ā Rōmānīs Hostius Hostīlius. Hostīlius fortissimē dīmicāns cadit. Cōnsternātī Rōmānī fugiēbant. Mettius Curtius, ab Sabīnīs prīnceps, clāmitābat, "Vincimus perfidōs hospitēs, imbellīs hostēs; longē aliud est virginēs rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs."

a. **Aliud . . . aliud,** *one thing . . . another thing; different . . . than.*

Colloquium

304. 1. Ubi Rōmulus pugnam committit? 2. Quis ab Sabīnīs erat prīnceps? Quis ab Rōmānīs? 3. Quis in certāmine prīmus cadit? 4. Quō modō Rōmānī fugiunt? 5. Quī perfidī hospitēs, imbellēs hostēs erant?

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE OF TYPICAL VERBS

305. **Four Conjugations**

Conjugation	Active	Passive
I.	**amāre,** *to love*	**amārī,** *to be loved*
II.	**vidēre,** *to see*	**vidērī,** *to be seen, to seem*
III.	**mittere,** *to send*	**mittī,** *to be sent*
IV.	**audīre,** *to hear*	**audīrī,** *to be heard*

Sum and Verbs in -iō

esse,	*to be*	
capere,	*to take*	**capī,** *to be taken*

a. The present infinitive of **sum** has the ending **-se,** which is an irregular termination, and perhaps older than the regular ending, **-re.**

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

306. Possum, *I am able, I can;* poteram, *I was able, I could;* poterō, *I shall be able, I can.*

SINGULAR

Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*
possum	poteram	poterō
potes	poterās	poteris
potest	poterat	poterit

PLURAL

possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt

SYNTAX

307. The infinitive may be used with an intransitive verb to complete the predicate. (28)

Carmina avium audīre possum, *I can hear the songs of the birds.*

308. The infinitive may be used as the subject of the verb *est;* a predicate adjective generally follows. (29)

Avīs audīre est grātum, *to hear the birds is pleasant.*

309. The infinitive with a subject in the accusative case may be used as the direct object of another verb. (30)

Lūdōs indīcī iubet, *he orders the games to be proclaimed.*

310. The time denoted by the present infinitive is present with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends. (31)

Societātem facere nōn poterat, *he was not able to make an alliance;* arx capī nōn potest, *the citadel cannot be taken;* Rōmānī virginēs rapere poterunt, *the Romans will be able to seize the maidens.*

311. **The infinitive may have an accusative as its subject.** (32)

Lūdōs indīcī iubet, *he orders the games to be proclaimed.*

Practice

312. Complete the infinitives in the following exercises.

1. Avēs vid— possum; avēs (nom.) aud— possunt.
2. Aliud est pugnam committ—; aliud hostēs vinc—.
3. Mīlitēs pugn— iubet; pugnam committ— iussit.
4. Societātem fac— volēbat; uxōrēs hab— volēbant.
5. Arx cap— nōn poterit; malī puerī laud— nōn dēbent.

LATIN WRITING

313. 1. I can see the birds in the trees. 2. Can you hear the birds in the trees of the garden? 3. The songs of the birds can be heard before daylight. 4. Boys and girls ought to be friends of the birds. 5. Yesterday we could (were able to) hear the birds in the branches of the trees. 6. Tarpeia ought not to be praised. 7. The leader orders the soldiers to bury Tarpeia with their shields. 8. When Hostilius falls, the panic-stricken Romans flee. 9. The Sabines call out, "You are treacherous hosts, cowardly enemies. 10. It is easy to seize maidens. 11. It is hard (difficile) to fight with men." 12. It is one thing (aliud) to look at the sports, very different (longē aliud) to begin battle.

VOCABULARY

314. Group I

alius	**facilis**	**intellegō**	**tālis**
arbor	**fugiō**	**possum**	**vincō**
committō	**hospes**	**prōcēdō**	**vōx**

Group II

clāmitō	dissimulō	indīcō	sentiō
dīmicāns	fortissimē	rāmus	utrimque

Group III

canō	cōnsternātus	perfidus	saltem
carmen	imbellis	prōditiō	tener

Derived English Words

arbor	*proceed*	*vanquish*	*voice*

Related English Words

fugitive	*hospitality*	*intelligence*	*sentiment*

a. In an English dictionary from words beginning *in-*, *im-* find five English words which contain the Latin preposition **in** (*in, into, upon*), and five words which contain the Latin **in-** (*not*); for example, *impose* (**in-pōnō**), *incredible* (**in-crēdibilis**).

WRITTEN REVIEW

315. 1. With **potis** as a prefix write the conjugation of **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Then inclose in parentheses the letters which are omitted in the conjugation of **possum** in the same tenses; as, **po(ti)ssum, pot(is)eram,** etc. Why are any letters omitted?

2. Select all the infinitives from sections 299 and 301 and arrange them according to the conjugations to which the verbs belong, giving the translation of each infinitive.

CHAPTER XXIX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The Present Participle and the Present Imperative

316. Adjectives of the third declension are declined like nouns of the third declension, and with few exceptions they have the same endings as nouns with stems in i: **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

317. The present participle has the form of an adjective of the third declension. It is formed by adding to the present stem of the verb the suffix **-nt** (**-ent** for verbs of the fourth conjugation and verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-iō**), plus the case endings. The nominative singular ends in **-ns**. The vowels are long before **-ns** and short before **-nt**. **Amāns, amantis,** *loving;* **vidēns, videntis,** *seeing;* **mittēns, mittentis,** *sending;* **audiēns, audientis,** *hearing.*

318. The present active imperative in the singular has the form of the present stem; in the plural the ending is **-te**. **Laudā,** *praise thou;* **mitte,** *send thou;* **vidēte,** *see ye;* **audīte,** *hear ye;* **dā,** *give thou;* **date,** *give ye.*

PUER VALIDUS

319. Validus puer lūdēns in viā parvam puellam vidēbat quae onus magnum portābat. Statim ad eam venit et ipse onus usque ad fīnem itineris prō eā portat. Magister forte puerum onus portantem vidēbat. Posteā audiēbam magistrum puerum laudantem.

Colloquium

320. 1. Quid puer validus in viā videt? 2. Quid puella portābat? 3. Quid agit puer? 4. Quis puerum onus portantem vidēbat? 5. Laudatne puerum magister? 6. Audiēbāsne magistrum puerum laudantem?

IMPERĀTŌRĒS

321. 1. Imperātor est vir quī scientiam bellī habēns est mīlitum dux. 2. Imperātor est audāx et mīlitēs audācēs dūcit. 3. Imperātōrēs imperant; mīlitēs parent. 4. Imperātor mīlitem audācem laudat sed timidum culpat. 5. Neque ab imperātōre audācī neque ab audācibus mīlitibus hostis timētur. 6. Virtūs imperātōris audācis et mīlitum audācium patriam servābit. 7. Omnēs hominēs imperātōrem audācem et audācēs mīlitēs laudant. 8. Bellum imperātōrī nōn semper est grātum; pāx quoque grāta est. 9. Bellum est trīste; omnia bella sunt trīstia. 10. Artium pācis scientiam imperātor habet. 11. Vir quī cīvitātī praeest imperātor quoque appellātur. 12. Augustus Caesar erat

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

Augustus Caesar Imperātor

populī Rōmānī imperātor maximus. 13. Aetāte Augustī Caesaris apud omnēs gentēs erat pāx. 14. Pācem, imperātōrēs magnī, et petite et servāte. 15. Sī pāx sempiterna erit, hominēs omnium gentium laetissimī erunt.

Colloquium

322. 1. Quam scientiam imperātor habet? 2. Quālēs mīlitēs imperātor habet? 3. Quem laudat imperātor? Quem culpat? 4. Timetne imperātor hostēs? 5. Quōrum virtūte patria servātur? 6. Ā quibus imperātor mīlitēsque laudantur? 7. Semperne bellum imperātōrēs gerunt? 8. Nōnne bella omnia trīstia sunt? 9. Nōnne pācis artium imperātōrēs scientiam habent? 10. Quis imperātor maximus Rōmānus erat? 11. Quandō apud omnēs gentēs pāx erat? 12. Estne hodiē pāx apud omnēs gentēs?

READING EXERCISE

323. 1. Rōmulus populusque Rōmānus circā vīcīnās gentēs lēgātōs mittunt. 2. Sed lēgātiō, quod incolae urbis novae ab vīcīnīs gentibus timēbantur, nusquam benignē audītur. 3. Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns lūdōs parābat. 4. Sabīnōrum omnis multitūdō cum līberīs et coniugibus ad lūdōs veniunt. 5. Ubi omnēs mentēs cum oculīs in lūdōs conversae erant, subitō Rōmānī virginēs omnēs rapiunt. 6. Ācrēs Sabīnī ob raptās virginēs bellum cum Rōmānīs gerunt. 7. Cum omnibus cōpiīs ad novam urbem contendunt. 8. Ducem Sabīnōrum cum ācribus mīlitibus Tarpēia in arcem perdūcit. 9. Audāx Hostīlius, ab Rōmānīs prīnceps, fortiter dīmicāns cadit.

Colloquium

324. 1. Quō lēgātī mittuntur? 2. Cūr nōn lēgātiō benignē audītur? 3. Quid Rōmulus parābat? 4. Quī ad lūdōs veniunt? 5. Quandō Rōmānī virginēs rapiēbant? 6. Quō modō Hostīlius cadit?

IUPPITER RŌMĀNĪS TERRŌREM DĒMIT

325. Iam Rōmānī ad veterem portam Palātī fugiēbant. Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, "Iuppiter," inquit, "arcem iam Sabīnī tenent; inde hūc armātī tendent. At tū, pater deum (deōrum) hominumque, hinc saltem arcē (arceō) hostēs, dēme terrōrem Rōmānīs fugamque foedam siste. Hīc ego tibi templum Statōrī Iovī voveō." Post precēs, "Hinc," inquit, "Rōmānī, Iuppiter optimus maximus vōs resistere atque redintegrāre pugnam iubet."

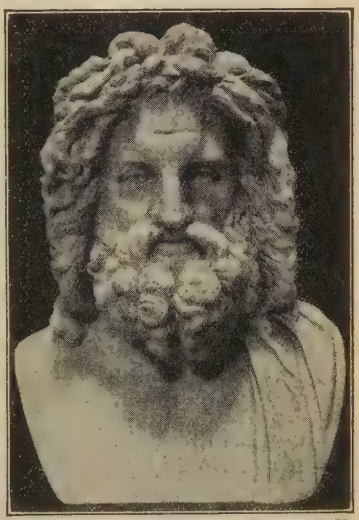


Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.
IUPPITER OPTIMUS MAXIMUS

a. For the declension of **deus** and **Iuppiter, Iovis,** see section 835.

COLLOQUIUM

326. 1. Quō Rōmānī fugiēbant? 2. Quem deum Rōmulus vocat? 3. Quis pater deōrum hominumque vocātur? 4. Dēmitne Iuppiter terrōrem Rōmānīs? 5. Quid Rōmulus Iovī vovet?

TYPICAL ADJECTIVES

327. **Audāx,** *daring.* **Omnis, omne,** *all.*

	SINGULAR			
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
Gen.	audācis	audācis	omnis	omnis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	omnem	omne
Voc.	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
Abl.	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī

		PLURAL		
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	omnium	omnium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	omnīs (-ēs)	omnia
Voc.	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus

a. Vetus, veteris, has one form in the nominative singular. It is declined like the nouns with consonant stems; gen. plu., veterum.

328. Ācer, ācris, ācre, *eager.*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	PLURAL		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

329. Amāns, *loving.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
Voc.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Abl.	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

a. Adjectives of the third declension ending in -ns are declined like amāns except in the ablative singular, where the adjective has the ending -ī. The participle also has the ending -ī in the ablative singular when it is used as an adjective; but when it is used strictly as a participle, it has the ending -e.

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

PORTA ANTĪQUA

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE

330. **Amā,** *love thou;* **vidē,** *see thou;* **mitte,** *send thou;* **audī,** *hear thou;* **es,** *be thou;* **cape,** *take thou.*

ACTIVE

Sing.	**amā,** *love thou*	**vidē**	**mitte**	**audī**
Pl.	**amāte,** *love ye*	**vidēte**	**mittite**	**audīte**

PASSIVE

Sing.	**amāre,** *be thou loved*	**vidēre**	**mittere**	**audīre**
Pl.	**amāminī,** *be ye loved*	**vidēminī**	**mittiminī**	**audīminī**

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Sing.	es, *be thou*	cape	capere
Pl.	este, *be ye*	capite	capiminī

a. The present imperative is used in the second person only.

b. The present imperatives of dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō are dīc, dūc, fac, and fer, the final vowel being dropped.

c. The conjugation of the future imperative may be found in sections 849–858, where the conjugation of the verb is given in full.

THE PRESENT STEM

331. All of the forms of the verb which have thus far been described are based on the present stem. The present stem is that part of the verb which remains the same, except for the modifications in the final vowel, throughout the conjugation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These tenses in all the moods, both active and passive, comprise the present system in the conjugation of verbs, and they represent action as incomplete, or as going on, in present, past, or future time.

SYNTAX

332. The participle is a verbal adjective. It agrees in case, number, and gender with the substantive to which it belongs, and it may govern the same case as any other form of the verb. (33)

Vidēbam puerum onus portantem, *I saw the boy carrying the burden.*

a. The time denoted by the present participle is present with reference to the time of the verb upon which the participle depends.

333. The imperative is used in commands. (34)

Arcē hostēs, *keep off the enemy;* **redintegrāte, Rōmānī, pugnam,** *Romans, renew the fight.*

334. With verbs of separation, especially with verbs compounded with *ā, ab, dē, ē,* or *ex,* the person concerned is denoted by the dative case. (35)

Dēme terrōrem Rōmānīs, *take away fear from the Romans.*

Practice

335. 1. Write in parallel columns the declension of **hostis** and **omnis, mare** and **omne, hostis** and **pugnāns, mare** and **ingēns** (gen., **ingentis**).

2. By dropping the ending **-re** (**-se**) from the following infinitives find the second person singular of the present active imperative (identical with the present stem). Then form the second person plural by adding the ending **-te** and changing the stem vowel **e** (short **e**) to **i**. Translate each form as it is given.

capere	**esse**	**laudāre**	**servāre**
dēmere	**habēre**	**petere**	**venīre**

LATIN WRITING

336. 1. All the Sabines were coming to the sports. 2. Romulus sees the Sabines coming to the games. 3. The daughters of the Sabines are seized (while) looking at the games. 4. The Romans fight with the daring chiefs of the Sabines. 5. When the Romans see Hostilius falling, they flee panic-stricken to the old gate of the Palatine.

6. Romulus, raising his arms toward the sky, vows a temple to Jupiter. 7. "Keep away the enemy from the old gate," said Romulus. 8. "Take away fear from the Romans (dat.). 9. Stop the shameful retreat." 10. Romans, be brave and renew the fight. 11. Jupiter is called the father of gods and men. 12. The father of the gods commands the Romans to renew the fight.

VOCABULARY

337.

Group I

ācer	**hīc**	**imperō**	**teneō**
audāx	**hinc**	**omnis**	**terror**
fīnis	**hūc**	**resistō**	**tollō**
fuga	**iam**	**tendō**	**trīstis**

Group II

foedus	**onus**	**prex**	**sistō**
inde	**pareō**	**redintegrō**	**subitō**

Group III

arceō	**inquam**	**stator**	**vetus**
dēmō	**sempiternus**	**usque**	**voveō**

Derived English Words

audacious *omnibus* *resist* *terror*

Related English Words

onerous *tenacious* *tendency* *tenement*

a. Notice the English adjectives ending in *-acious*. These are derived from Latin adjectives ending in **-āx** (stem, **-āci-**), and the Latin adjectives are formed from Latin verbs; as, **pugnāx** from **pugnō**, **tenāx** from **teneō**, *etc.* These Latin adjectives and their English derivatives signify *having a tendency to perform the act denoted by the verb.* Thus *tenacious* means having a tendency to hold; *pugnacious*, having a tendency to fight.

b. Find several English words of which the Latin **omni-** is a prefix; *e. g., omnipotent.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

338. 1. Write the declension of the adjective **tenāx**, remembering that in the neuter gender the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike.

2. Write the declension of **trīstis pugna**, **trīste bellum**, **puer lūdēns**, and **animal lūdēns**.

CHAPTER XXX

NUMERALS

Adjectives with Genitive in -īus

339. The only cardinal numerals which are declined are **ūnus, -a, -um,** *one;* **duo, duae, duo,** *two;* **trēs, tria,** *three;* the hundreds from **ducentī, -ae, -a,** *two hundred,* to **nōngentī, -ae, -a,** *nine hundred;* and **mīlia, mīlium,** *thousands.*

Ūnus is one of nine irregular or pronominal adjectives which have the ending **-īus** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular in all genders. **Alius,** *other, another,* has the form **aliud** in the nominative and accusative singular in the neuter gender.

Alius and **alter** when repeated have special meanings. **Alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another* (of an indefinite number); **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others;* **alter . . . alter,** *one . . . the other* (of two); **alterī . . . alterī,** *some* (*one party*) . . . *the others* (*the other party*).

NUMERĪ

340. 1. Homō ūnum caput, duās manūs, duōs pedēs, duōs oculōs, decem digitōs habet. 2. Dextra et laeva sunt duārum manuum nōmina. 3. Dextra manus quīnque digitōs habet. 4. Ambae manūs habent digitōs decem. 5. Ūnus digitus et alter digitus sunt duo digitī. 6. Duo et ūnus sunt trēs; trēs et ūnus sunt quattuor; quattuor et ūnus sunt quīnque; quīnque et quīnque decem sunt. 7. Sī ūnī digitō quīnque digitī adduntur, summa est sex. 8. Sī ūnī digitō sex adduntur, septem sunt. 9. Duo dē decem octō, ūnus dē decem novem sunt.

10. Parvī discipulī ita numerant: 11. Ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem,

© *Underwood & Underwood, N .Y.*

COLUMNAE OCTŌ TEMPLĪ SĀTURNĪ

ūndecim, duodecim, tredecim, quattuordecim, quindecim, sēdecim, septendecim, duodēvigintī, ūndēvigintī, vigintī.

12. Ūnius corporis sunt multae partēs. 13. Ūnius partis nōmen est caput; alterius partis nōmen est manus; aliī partī corporis nōmen pēs datur. 14. In ūnō corpore

sunt multa membra. 15. Omnia membra nōn idem nōmen habent. 16. Alia (one) pars corporis aliud (one) nōmen habet, alia (another) pars aliud (another) nōmen habet. 17. Alia pars aliud, alia pars aliud nōmen habet. 18. Alia pars corporis aliud nōmen habet. 19. Equus pedēs quattuor habet. 20. Duo equī currum trahunt.

Colloquium

341. 1. Quam multōs pedēs, quam multās manūs homō habet? 2. Quae sunt duārum manuum nōmina?

Currus et Equī

3. Quam multōs digitōs homō habet? 4. Quam multī sunt digitī decem et decem? Trēs et quattuor? Sex et duo? Quīnque et septem? 5. Numerā, sī vīs, ab ūnō ad decem; ab ūndecim ad vīgintī. 6. Nōnne multa membra corpus ūnum habet? 7. Nōnne alia pars corporis aliud nōmen habet? 8. Quot pedēs equī duo habent?

READING EXERCISE

342. 1. Urbs Rōma ab ōre Tiberis circiter mīlia passuum vīgintī abest. 2. Rōma in septem collibus aedificātur. 3. Inter duōs montēs, Capitōlium et Palātium, erat forum Rōmānum. 4. Forum Rōmānum erat sescentōs trīgintā pedēs longum et centum pedēs lātum. 5. Duo frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, erant urbis Rōmae conditōrēs. 6. Duōrum frātrum uterque novae urbī nōmen dare volēbat. 7. Uter frātrum urbī nōmen dedit (gave)? 8. Rōmulus erat prīmus Rōmānōrum rēx. 9. Rōmulus et Remus erant duo nōmina apud Rōmānōs clāra.

Colloquium

343. 1. Quam longē Rōma ab ōre Tiberis abest? 2. In quot collibus urbs est sita? 3. Inter quōs montēs est forum Rōmānum? 4. Quam longum est forum? Quam lātum? 5. Uter duōrum frātrum rēx prīmus erat?

MULIERĒS INTER TĒLA VENIUNT

344. Resistunt Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iussī. Rōmānī Sabīnīque in mediā valle duōrum montium proelium redintegrant. Tum Sabīnae mulierēs crīnibus passīs inter tēla volantia veniunt, dirimere īrās hinc patrēs hinc virōs ōrantēs. "In nōs vertite īrās; nōs causa bellī, nōs (causa) vulnerum ac caedium virīs ac parentibus sumus; sine alterīs vestrum viduae aut orbae vīvēmus."

a. **Crīnibus passīs,** *with dishevelled hair;* **sine alterīs vestrum,** *without one or the other of you.*

Colloquium

345. 1. Quis Rōmānōs resistere iubet? 2. Ubi Rōmānī Sabīnīque proelium redintegrant? 3. Quae inter tēla veniunt? 4. Mulierēsne īrās in sē vertī volēbant? 5. Erantne mulierēs causa vulnerum? 6. Quō modō sine virīs vīvent? Quō modō sine parentibus?

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

346. **Ūnus, -a, -um,** *one.*

Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

a. In the plural ūnus is declined like bonus, and is used in the sense of *only, alone.*

347. **Duo, duae, duo,** *two.*

Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

a. Ambō, ambae, ambō, *both,* is declined like duo.

348. **Trēs, tria,** *three;* **mīlia, mīlium,** *thousands.*

	M. & F.	N.	N.
Nom.	trēs	tria	mīlia
Gen.	trium	trium	mīlium
Dat.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Acc.	trēs (īs)	tria	mīlia
Abl.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

a. In the singular mīlle, *a thousand,* is not declined. In the plural it is used as a noun and is followed by another noun in the genitive case. Mīlle hominēs, *a thousand men;* duo mīlia hominum, *two thousands of men, two thousand men.*

349. **Alter, altera, alterum,** *the other.*

Nom.	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. The ending -īus is sometimes shortened to -ius, especially in alterīus (alterius).

b. The nine adjectives which have **-īus** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative are:

alius, *other, another*	**nūllus**, *no*	**alter**, *the other*
sōlus, *alone*	**ūllus**, *any*	**uter**, *which (of two)*
tōtus, *whole*	**ūnus**, *one*	**neuter**, *neither (of two)*

a. In the plural these adjectives are declined like **bonus**.

b. **Alius** has **aliud** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

SYNTAX

350. Extent in space is denoted by the accusative case. (36)

Centum pedēs lātum, *one hundred feet wide;* **vīgintī mīlia passuum ab marī**, *twenty thousands of paces (twenty miles) from the sea.*

PRACTICE

351. 1. Express in Latin: one mile, five miles, sixteen miles, thirty-six miles.

2. Express the following in Latin sentences and complete the equations.

5—1 = ——.	15 + 2 = ——.	8 + 10 = ——.
6 + 3 = ——.	12—7 = ——.	13— 6 = ——.

LATIN WRITING

352. 1. Italy is between two seas. 2. The mouth of the Tiber is twenty miles (thousands of paces) from Rome. 3. Of the two sons of Proca one was king, the other was driven away (pulsus est) by his brother. 4. Each of the brothers wished to give a name to the new city. 5. Remus saw six vultures; Romulus saw twelve. 6. On account of the augury (auguriō) Romulus called the city Rome.

7. Romulus commands the Romans to renew the battle. 8. The Sabine women with dishevelled hair come between the fighting men. 9. On this side (hinc) they entreat their fathers, on the other side (hinc) their hus-

bands, to put away their wrath. 10. Without one or the other (alterīs) of you (vestrum) we shall be widows or orphans.

VOCABULARY

353.

Group I

centum	iussus	ōs	sine
duo	mīlia	passus (noun)	tēlum
īdem	ōrō	proelium	vulnus

Group II

addō	circiter	membrum	uter
caedēs	īra	mulier	vallēs
caelestis	manus	passus (part.)	vertō

Group III

conditor	dirimō	orbus	tamquam
crīnis	numerō	summa	vidua

a. For other numerals see section 842.

Derived English Words

add *cent* *member* *valley*

Related English Words

enumerate *orator* *vertical* *vulnerable*

a. Find an English word related to each of the Latin numerals from **ūnus** to **decem**.

WRITTEN REVIEW

354. 1. Write the Roman cardinal numerals to twenty and, by reference to section 842, to thirty.

2. Write the Roman ordinal numerals, **prīmus, secundus,** *etc.*, to **decimus**.

3. Write the nominative, the genitive, and the dative singular of the nine adjectives with irregular endings.

CHAPTER XXXI

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

355. The present, imperfect, and future tenses represent action as incomplete or as *going on* in present, past, and future time, respectively; as,

Rōmulus et Remus urbem novam aedificābant, *Romulus and Remus were building a new city.* (The work of building was going on.)

The perfect tense represents action as completed now or as completed at the time of speaking: as,

Vīdī urbem quam Rōmulus aedificāvit, *I have seen the city which Romulus built.* (Both verbs represent completed action.)

The perfect tense, indicative active, is formed by joining the personal endings of the perfect tense to the perfect stem.

Vīd-ī, aedificāv-it, fu-istī (sum).

In the vocabulary the third form of a regular verb is the first person singular of the perfect tense. From this the perfect stem is found by dropping the ending **-ī**; as,

amō, amāre, amāvī (amāv-ī); perfect stem, **amāv-.**
videō, vidēre, vīdī (vīd-ī); perfect stem, **vīd-.**
sum, esse, fuī (fu-ī); perfect stem, **fu-.**

The personal endings of the perfect indicative active are,

SINGULAR		PLURAL
First person,	**-ī**	**-imus**
Second person,	**-istī**	**-istis**
Third person,	**-it**	**-ērunt (-ēre)**

READING EXERCISE

356. 1. Quondam ego Rōmae fuī; tūne umquam ibi fuistī? 2. Pater meus quondam in Ītaliā fuit, sed ego et frātrēs meī numquam ibi fuimus. 3. Domī, spērō, nōn miserī fuistis; multī hominēs sunt quī numquam in Ītaliā fuērunt.

4. Ubi sunt librī quōs herī tibi dedī? 5. Librōs quōs mihi dedistī domī habeō. 6. Aliōs librōs quoque habeō quōs magister mihi dedit. 7. Quis istōs librōs scrīpsit? 8. Līvius et Ovidius scrīptōrēs fuērunt. 9. Lēgistīne librōs quōs Līvius et Ovidius scrīpsērunt? 10. Nōn omnēs librōs sed partem eōrum (of them) lēgī. 11. Quam partem Līvī librōrum lēgistī? 12. Eam partem lēgī quae dē antīquā Rōmā est scrīpta. 13. Quibus dē rēbus (on what subjects) Ovidius librōs scrīpsit? 14. Ovidius fābulās mīrās dē deīs et deābus scrīpsit.

15. Ubi sunt imāginēs quās puellae tibi frātribusque herī dedērunt? 16. Imāginēs quās puellae nōbīs dedērunt sorōribus dedimus. 17. Quid! Num sorōribus dedistis imāginēs quās puellae vōbīs dederant (had given)?

18. Herī in silvīs leōnem vīdī. 19. Num tū leōnem vīdistī? Fuistīne sōlus? Nōnne leō tē terruit? 20. Pater erat mēcum; ille leōnem vīdit; nōs ambō leōnem vīdimus; vēnātōrēs quoque quī nōbīscum erant leōnem vīdērunt. 21. Quid faciēbat leō quem vīdistis? 22. Vīdimus leōnem aquam ex flūmine bibentem.

CERĒS FĪLIAM PETIT

Fābula Ovidī

357. Cerēs, dea agricultūrae, fīliam pulchram habuit. Nōmen puellae Proserpina erat. Plūtō, deus quī regiōnēs īnferiōrēs regit, Proserpinam amāvit et eam sub terram in rēgnum suum portāvit. Māter pavida fīliam in omnibus terrīs atque in maribus omnibus diē noctūque petēbat.

Dea fessa labōre aquam cupiēbat. Forte casam parvam vīdit et portam pulsāvit. Mulier vetus audīvit et deae aquam dedit. Dum dea bibit puer audāx quī aderat rīsit et deae, "Tū es avida," dīxit. Īrāta dea in ōs puerī

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

ANTĪQUUM CERERIS TEMPLUM

aquam mīsit et puerum audācem in parvam lacertam mūtāvit. Cauda corporī mūtātō additur. Ille quī duo bracchia et duo crūra habuit nunc habet crūra quattuor.

Dēnique Cerēs in Siciliam vēnit. Hīc Plūtō mātrī fīliam reddit, et posteā, ut dīcitur, Proserpina partem annī in terrā partem in regiōnibus īnferiōribus manēbat. Aestāte cum mātre hieme cum coniuge aetātem agēbat.

COLLOQUIUM

358. 1. Quis dea agricultūrae erat? 2. Quod erat nōmen Cereris fīliae? 3. Quās regiōnēs Plūtō regēbat?

4. Quō modō Cerēs fīliam āmīsit? 5. Ubi māter fīliam petēbat? 6. Invēnitne fīliam? 7. Quis deae aquam dedit? 8. Quid puer audāx dīxit? 9. Quō modō Cerēs puerum mūtāvit? 10. Ubi Cerēs fīliam invēnit? 11. Quis Proserpinam mātrī reddit? 12. Ubi aestāte Proserpina aetātem agēbat? 13. Quam partem annī Proserpina cum coniuge manēbat?

CONJUGATION

359. **fuī,** *I was, I have been;* **dedī,** *I gave, I have given;* **vīdī,** *I saw, I have seen.*

	SINGULAR		
fuī, *I was*	dedī	vīdī	-ī
fuistī, *you were*	dedistī	vīdistī	-istī
fuit, *he was*	dedit	vīdit	-it
	PLURAL		
fuimus, *we were*	dedimus	vīdimus	-imus
fuistis, *you were*	dedistis	vīdistis	-istis
fuērunt (-ēre), *they were*	dedērunt (-ēre)	vīdērunt (-ēre)	-ērunt (-ēre)

PRACTICE

360. In the following exercises change the verbs from the present or the imperfect tense to the perfect and give the English translation of both forms.

1. Cerēs fīliam habet quam Plūtō amat. 2. Plūtō Proserpinam sub terram portābat; Cerēs eam petēbat. 3. Dea casam videt; portam pulsābat. 4. Mulier audit; deae aquam dabat. 5. Poētae fābulās nārrābant; librōs scrībunt. 6. Puerī fābulās audiēbant; librōs legunt.

LATIN WRITING

361. 1. Pluto seized Proserpina and carried her to the lower regions. 2. Ceres sought her beautiful daughter by day and by night. 3. An old woman gave water to the goddess seeking her daughter. 4. An audacious boy

called the goddess greedy. 5. Finally in Sicily Pluto gave Proserpina back to her mother. 6. Afterwards Proserpina lived part of the year on the earth.

VOCABULARY

362.

Group I

cupiō	**iste**	**petō**	**rīdeō**
hiems	**maneo**	**reddō**	**scrīptor**

Group II

avidus	**mūtātus**	**tangō**	**ut** (adv.)

Group III

bibō	**cauda**	**lacerta**	**pavidus**
bracchium	**crūs**	**umquam**	**vēnātor**

WRITTEN REVIEW

363. Take from the vocabulary the first three forms of **mūtō, habeō,** and **dīcō**; find the perfect stem and attach the personal endings of the perfect active indicative. Write the translation of each form given.

AQUAEDUCTUS NERŌNIS

CHAPTER XXXII

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Four Conjugations

364. In the perfect tense verbs of the four conjugations, and irregular verbs also, are conjugated in exactly the same way by the use of the characteristic personal endings. The tense of a verb can generally be identified by the personal endings and by the form to which the endings are attached; but there is often something

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

PANTHĒUM, TEMPLUM IOVIS

in the context, *i. e.*, in the connection with other parts of the sentence, which shows what tense is appropriate. The perfect tense represents the action as now completed.

READING EXERCISE

365. 1. Aenēās ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliam vēnit. 2. Multōs comitēs in Ītaliam dūxit. 3. Fīlius Aenēae Albam Longam condidit. 4. Posteā Proca fuit rēx Albānōrum. 5. Ille Numitōrī rēgnum relīquit, sed Amūlius rēgnum̃ occupāvit. 6. Amūlius rēx fīliōs Silviae in Tiberim mīsit. 7. Aqua in siccō locō puerōs relīquit atque lupa eōs cūrāvit. 8. Faustulus puerōs invēnit coniugīque eōs dedit. 9. Adultī Rōmulus et Remus novam urbem condidērunt, quam Rōmulus Rōmam vocāvit. 10. Posteā Rōmulus frātrem obtruncāvit sōlusque rēgnāvit. 11. Rōmānī uxōrēs nōn habēbant; itaque virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuērunt. 12. Haec (this) fuit statim causa bellī. 13. Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit. 14. Mīlitēs eam scūtīs obruērunt. 15. Ubi Hostīlius, ab Rōmānīs prīnceps, cecidit, Mettius Curtius, "Vīcimus," clāmitāvit. 16. Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī templum vōvit et Rōmānōs pugnam redintegrāre iussit (iubeō).

Colloquium

366. 1. Quibus ab ōrīs Aenēās vēnit? 2. Quōs in Ītaliam dūxit? 3. Quis Albam Longam condidit? 4. Cui rēgnum ab Procā relinquitur? 5. Quis rēgnum occupāvit? 6. Quis fīliōs Silviae in Tiberim mīsit? 7. Ubi aqua puerōs relīquit? 8. Quis puerōs invēnit? 9. Quam urbem frātrēs adultī condidērunt? 10. Quō modō Rōmulus rēgnum occupāvit? 11. Cūr Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuērunt? 12. Quandō Mettius Curtius "Vīcimus" clāmāvit? 13. Quid Rōmulus Rōmānōs facere iussit?

MIDĀS

Fābula Ovidī

367. Bacchus deus vīnī atque sociī ōlim ad rīpās Pactōlī convēnērunt. Sed Sīlēnus magister Bacchī aberat.

INTERIOR PARS PANTHĒĪ

Eum titubantem aetāte vīnōque pāstōrēs invēnērunt atque corōnīs ōrnātum ad Midān rēgem dūxērunt.

Midās ubi magistrum Bacchī agnōvit, per decem diēs decemque noctēs hospitem līberāliter tractat. Ūndecimō diē in agrōs Lȳdiōs vēnit et Sīlēnum ad Bacchum alumnum dūxit. Bacchus adventū gaudēns rēgī optiōnem mūneris

dedit. Midās, "Quidquid corpore meō contingam," inquit, "in fulvum aurum mūtārī volō." Bacchus mūnus prōmissum sed male rogātum dedit. "Quidquid corpus tuum continget aurum erit," inquit.

a. **Adventū gaudēns,** *rejoicing at his coming.*

Colloquium

368. 1. Quis deus vīnī erat? 2. Quem in locum Bacchus et sociī convēnērunt? 3. Quis aberat? 4. Quō modō pāstōrēs Sīlēnum invēnērunt? 5. Ad quem eum dūxērunt? 6. Quid Midās fēcit ubi Sīlēnum agnōvit? 7. Ad quem Sīlēnum dūxit? 8. Quā dē causā Bacchus rēgī optiōnem mūneris dedit? 9. Quod mūnus Midās rogāvit? 10. Quid Bacchus Midae dīxit? 11. Midāsne mūnus bene rogāvit?

DUCĒS FOEDUS FACIUNT

369. Precēs mulierum et multitūdinem et ducēs movent. Repentīnum silentium est. Deinde foedus ducēs faciunt; nec pācem modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt. Ex bellō tam trīstī laeta pāx cāriōrēs Sabīnās virīs et parentibus et ante omnēs Rōmulō ipsī fēcit. Centum deinde ex senibus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Eōrum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat. Trēs equitum centuriās cōnstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Inde commūne rēgnum duōbus rēgibus fuit.

a. **Cāriōrēs,** comparative degree of **cārus; pāx cāriōrēs Sabīnās fēcit,** *peace made the Sabine women dearer;* **Rōmulō ipsī,** *to Romulus himself.*

Colloquium

370. 1. Quid multitūdinem et ducēs mōvit? 2. Quibus lēgibus (on what terms) ducēs foedus fēcērunt? 3. Quid mulierēs Sabīnās cāriōrēs fēcit? 4. Quam multōs senātōrēs Rōmulus ēlēgit? 5. Quōrum cōnsiliō Rōmulus

omnia agēbat? 6. In quot cūriās Rōmulus populum distribuit? 7. Equitum quot centuriās cōnstituit? 8. Utrum Sabīnī an Rōmānī victōrēs erant? 9. Quis inde erat rēx?

THE PERFECT STEM

371. The perfect stem is found by dropping the ending **-ī** of the perfect active indicative.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

372. The following table contains the first three of the principal parts and the perfect stems of typical verbs of the four conjugations:

Conj.	Pres.	Inf.	Per.	Per. Stem
I.	amō	amāre	amāvī	amāv-
II.	videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīd-
III.	mittō	mittere	mīsī	mīs-
IV.	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audīv-

CONJUGATION

373. **Amāvī,** *I loved, have loved;* **vīdī,** *I saw, have seen;* **mīsī,** *I sent, have sent;* **audīvī,** *I heard, have heard.*

Singular			
amāvī	vīdī	mīsī	audīvī
amāvistī	vīdistī	mīsistī	audīvistī
amāvit	vīdit	mīsit	audīvit
Plural			
amāvimus	vīdimus	mīsimus	audīvimus
amāvistis	vīdistis	mīsistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)	vīdērunt (-ēre)	mīsērunt (-ēre)	audīvērunt (-ēre)

SYNTAX

374. **The definite perfect, or the present perfect tense, represents action as completed at the present time, or at the time of speaking.** (37)

Librōs Līvī lēgī, *I have read the books of Livy.*

375. The indefinite perfect, or the historical perfect tense, represents action as completed at some indefinite time in the past. (38)

Pāx mulierēs cāriōrēs fēcit, *peace made the women dearer.*

376. The ablative case is used to denote that because of which, on account of which, or in accordance with which anything is done. (39)

Senātōrum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat, *he did (was doing) everything according to the advice of the senators;* titubantem aetāte vīnōque, *staggering from age and wine (because of age and drinking).*

377. The dative case with the verb *sum* is used to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject. (40)

Commūne rēgnum duōbus rēgibus fuit, *two kings had the kingdom in common (the common kingdom was to two kings).*

Practice

378. Add the endings -it and -ērunt to the following perfect stems, and translate the verbs into English; *e. g.,* vocāv-it, *he called, has called;* vocāv-ērunt, *they called, have called.*

amāv-	fu-	ded-	fēc-
vīd-	portāv-	habu-	dūx-
mīs-	vēn-	scrīps-	invēn-
audīv-	mūtāv-	lēg-	dēbu-

LATIN WRITING

379. 1. The entreaties of the Sabine women have moved the multitude. 2. The leaders of the Romans and the Sabines make peace. 3. Out of two states they made one. 4. After so sad a war peace made the leaders glad.

5. Peace was acceptable (grāta) to Romulus above (ante) all. 6. Romulus selected one hundred senators. 7. He was conducting all things in accordance with the advice of the senators. 8. Romulus and Tatius had the kingdom in common (to Romulus and Tatius there was a common kingdom).

VOCABULARY

380.

Group I

adventus	conveniō	lēx	ōrnātus
comes	distribuō	modo (adv.)	rogātus
commūnis	eques	nec	senātor
cōnsilium	foedus	nox	tam

Group II

alumnus	gaudeō	prōmissus	senectūs
bene	male	prōmittō	silentium
cārior	nōminō	repentīnus	vīnum

Group III

centuria	ēligō	ōlim	tractō
contingō	fulvus	quidquid	tunc
cūria	līberāliter	titubō	ūndecimus

Derived English Words

advent	*common*	*counsel*	*silence*
century	*convene*	*ornate*	*wine*

Related English Words

adventure	*community*	*federation*	*nomination*

WRITTEN REVIEW

381. 1. Arrange the verbs occupō, moveō, agō, veniō, faciō, and possum in a table similar to that in section 372 and add the English translation of each form given.

2. Write out the conjugation of the same verbs in the perfect active indicative.

3. Explain the difference between movet and mōvit; videt and vīdit; venit and vēnit.

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

382. The past perfect tense (sometimes called the pluperfect), like the corresponding tense in English, represents action as completed at some time in the past.

Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnās quās rapuerant uxōrēs habēbant, *the Romans kept as wives the Sabine maidens whom they had seized.*

The past perfect tense of the indicative mood, active voice, contains the perfect stem, the tense-sign **-erā-** (**-era-**), and the personal endings **-m, -s, -t,** etc.

Amāv-era-m, vīd-era-t, mīs-erā-mus, audīv-era-nt, fu-erā-s.

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS

383. 1. *Magister.* Herī tē in viā ambulantem vīdī. Ubi fuerās?

2. *Discipulus.* Apud amīcum Mārcum fueram; namque ille erat aeger.

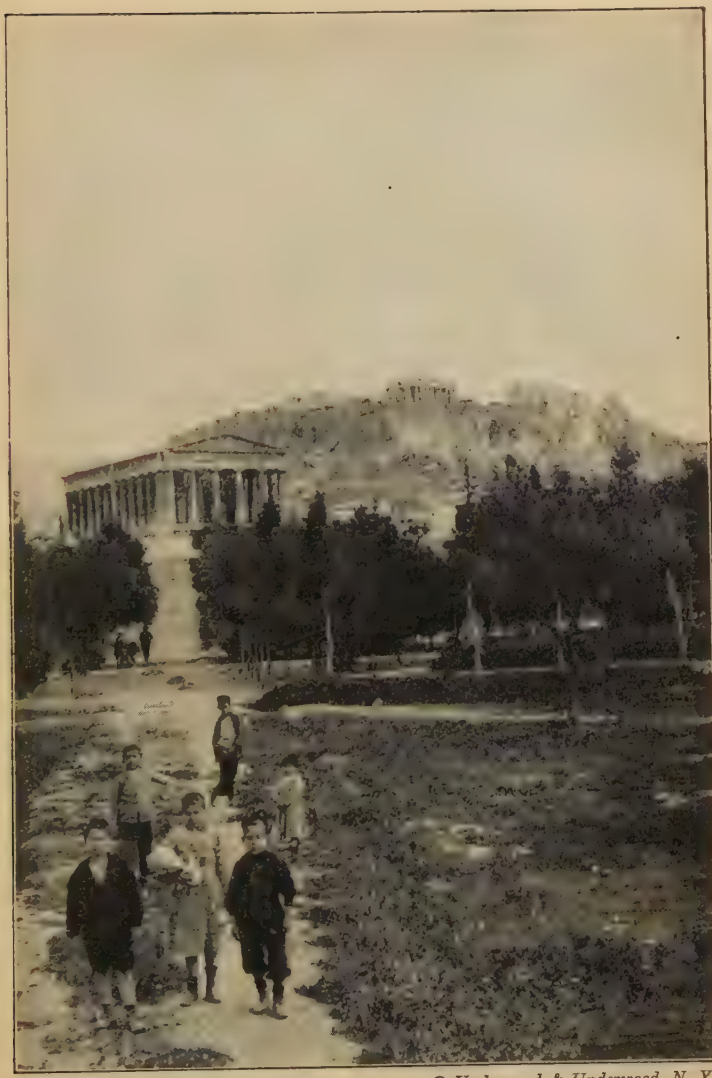
3. *M.* Ita timēbam; namque eum cum cēterīs puerīs nōn vīderam. Nempe Mārcus nimis dīligenter librīs operam dederat.

4. *D.* Nōn librīs sed lūdīs operam dederat; namque in flūmine Tiberī Mārcus fuerat dum frīgus erat magnum.

5. *M.* Num tū atque frāter cum Mārcō in flumine fuerātis?

6. *D.* In aquā cum eō nōn fuerāmus; namque omnēs quī illō diē in flūmine fuerant herī erant aegrī.

7. *M.* Multōs diēs sōlem nōn vīderāmus. Nōnne aqua gelida erat?



© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

ARX ATHĒNĀRUM ET TEMPLUM THĒSĒUM

8. *D.* Gelida erat. Maximōs imbrēs quoque habuerāmus atque mēnsis est Aprīlis.

9. *M.* Ego valēns tē valentem videō.

10. *D.* Et ego laetus sum tē valentem vidēns.

Colloquium

384. 1. Ubi fuerat discipulus cum magister eum vīdit? 2. Eratne Mārcus cum puerīs cēterīs? 3. Nōnne Mārcus operam librīs dederat? 4. Fueratne Mārcus in Tiberī gelidō? 5. Cūr puerī aegrī erant? 6. Cūr aqua gelida erat? 7. Tūne, discipule, laetus es et valēns?

READING EXERCISE

385. 1. Prīncipēs utrimque pugnābant. 2. Iam ad veterem portam Palātī vēnerant. 3. Vōx caelestis Rōmānōs resistere iussit; itaque proelium redintegrābant. 4. Mulierēs quae causa bellī fuerant proelium vidēbant. 5. Inter tēla volantia mulierēs vēnērunt. 6. Neque viduae neque orbae esse volēbant; itaque dirimere īrās et patrēs et virōs ōrābant.

7. Precēs mulierum ducēs mōvērunt. 8. Deinde ducēs cōnsiliō mulierum foedus et pācem fēcērunt. 9. Ex duābus cīvitātibus ūnam fēcērunt atque commūne rēgnum duōbus rēgibus fuit. 10. Sabīnae virīs ac parentibus et ante omnēs Rōmulō ipsī erant cārae.

Colloquium

386. 1. Quī utrimque pugnābant? 2. Cūr Rōmānī proelium redintegrābant? 3. Quae causa bellī fuerat? 4. Cūr mulierēs patrēs et virōs dirīmere īrās ōrābant? 5. Cūr ducēs foedus et pācem fēcērunt? 6. Nōnne precēs mulierum ducēs mōverant? 7. Nōnne Sabīnae virīs ac parentibus cārae fuerant? 8. Quid eās cāriōrēs fēcit? 9. Cūr cīvitās duōs rēgēs habuit?

MIDĀS MŪNUS TEMPTAT

387. Midās laetus ab Lȳdiā abit et mūnus temptāns singula tangit. Virentem virgam ab arbore dētrāxit; virga aurea facta est. Tollit humō saxum; saxum quoque aurum est. Contigit glaebam; glaeba fit māssa aurī. Avidus aristās Cereris cēpit; frūmentum erat aurum. Tenet in manū pōmum; pōmum est simile pōmīs Hesperidum. Ubi manūs aquā lavit, aqua in aurum fluentem mūtātur.

Ubi domum gaudēns vēnit, servōs splendidās dapēs in mēnsā pōnere iussit. Sed sī dextrā mūnera Cereālia contigerat, Cereālia mūnera rigēbant. Sī dapēs dente avidō dīvidere parābat, aureās dapēs dēns premēbat. Sī aquam bibit liquidum aurum in ōs fluit.

a. **Singula,** *things one by one;* **facta est,** *became;* **humō,** *from the ground;* **fit,** *becomes;* **Cereris,** *of grain,* Ceres being the goddess of grain; **mūnera Cereālia,** *the gifts of Ceres,* i. e., *bread.*

Colloquium

388. 1. Quod mūnus Bacchus Midae dederat? 2. Sī Midās virgam ab arbore dētrāxerat, quid factum est? 3. Saxumne in aurum mūtātur? 4. Sī aristās cēperat, aureaene aristae erant? 5. Quō modō mūtātur pōmum? Quō modō aqua? 6. Quid servī in mēnsā pōnunt? 7. Nōnne dapēs Midās dente dīvidere poterat? 8. Poteratne liquidum aurum bibere?

CONJUGATION

389. **Fueram,** *I had been;* **amāveram,** *I had loved;* **vīderam,** *I had seen;* **mīseram,** *I had sent;* **audīveram,** *I had heard.*

Singular	Plural
fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus,** *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	**fuerātis,** *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant,** *they had been*

Singular

amāveram	vīderam	mīseram	audīveram
amāverās	vīderās	mīserās	audīverās
amāverat	vīderat	mīserat	audīverat

Plural

amāverāmus	vīderāmus	mīserāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	vīderātis	mīserātis	audīverātis
amāverant	vīderant	mīserant	audīverant

a. The quantity of a in the tense-sign **-era-** is short when followed by a final **m, t,** or **nt,** and long before the other endings.

b. The past perfect tense in the indicative active is inflected in the same way in all the conjugations.

SYNTAX

390. The past perfect tense is used to represent action as completed at some time in the past. (41)

Senēs quōs ēlēgerat Rōmulus senātōrēs nōmināvit, *the old men whom he had selected Romulus called senators.*

Practice

391. Change the following verbs from the tense given to the past perfect, and translate both forms into English.

1. Prīncipēs pugnābant. 2. Ducēs pācem fēcērunt. 3. Vocem caelestem audīvī. 4. Midās singula tangit. 5. Ad portam veniunt. 6. Contigit glaebam. 7. Precēs animōs movent. 8. Dēns aurum premēbat.

LATIN WRITING

392. 1. The boy Marcus was sick because he had been in the river. 2. The water was cold because it was the month of April. 3. The boys had given their attention too much to sport. 4. The master had told (ordered) the boys to give attention to their books. 5. The master had been a boy himself and had loved the water. 6. Therefore the sports of the boys were pleasing to the master.

7. The seizing of the maidens (the maidens seized) had been the cause of war. 8. The Sabine women had come between the weapons of their husbands and fathers. 9. The entreaties of the women had moved the leaders. 10. The women had been dear to their parents and husbands, but peace made them dearer.

VOCABULARY

393.

Group I

aeger	dētrahō	premō	singulus
Aprīlis	fīō	resistō	temptō
dēns	mēnsis	saxum	valeō

Group II

ambulō	gelidus	liquidus	pōmum
daps	humus	namque	splendidus
frīgus	imber	nimis	virga

Group III

arista	glaeba	māssa	rigeō
cēterus	lavō	nempe	virēns

Derived English Words

liquid *mass* *splendid* *tempt*

Related English Words

dentist *frigid* *rigid* *temptation*

a. What is the ending of the Latin adjectives from which the English adjectives *liquid* and *splendid* are derived? From what Latin adjectives, then, are *frigid* and *rigid* derived?

WRITTEN REVIEW

394. 1. Write the conjugation of possum, parō, moveō, ēligō, veniō, and faciō in the past perfect tense.

2. Write the conjugation of some verb, *e. g.*, habeō, in the past perfect tense, separating the perfect stem, the tense-sign, and the personal endings throughout; as, habu-era-m, habu-erā-s, etc. Mark all the long vowels.

CHAPTER XXXIV

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

395. The future perfect tense in Latin, if translated literally, is equivalent to the same tense in English.

Cum Tarpēia hostēs in arcem perdūxerit, mūnus habēbit, *when Tarpeia shall have conducted the enemy to the citadel, she will have her reward.*

The tenses are used with less exactness in English than in Latin, and hence the Latin future perfect may sometimes be translated by the English present.

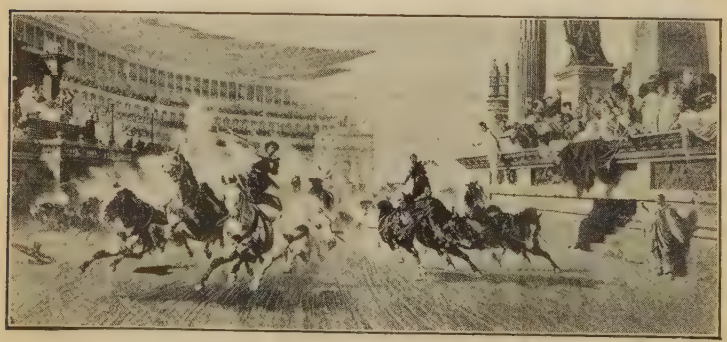
Sī mulierēs inter tēla vēnerint, patrēs et virī īrās diriment, *if the women come* (literally, *shall have come*) *between the weapons, their fathers and husbands will put away their wrath.*

The future perfect tense of the indicative active contains the perfect stem, the tense-sign **-eri-** (changed to **-erō** in the first person singular), and the personal endings; as,

Fu-erō, ded-eri-t, vīd-eri-mus.

PUER ET SERVUS

396. 1. Fīlius cuiusdam (a certain) oppidānī erat malī servī amīcus. 2. Pater id intellēxit sed amīcitiam



CERTĀMEN CURRUUM IN CIRCŌ

eōrum prohibēre nōn poterat. 3. Fīlium monēbat, servum terrēbat. 4. Servus minās dominī timēbat et haec (this) amīcō dīxit: 5. "Sī tuōrum cōnsiliōrum fuerō particeps, pater tuus mē in poenam dabit; 6. sī mē in poenam dederit, erō miserrimus." 7. Tum fīlius "Sī pater," inquit, "propter mē tibi fuerit saevus, prō tē ego poenam dabō. 8. Numquam, cum mihi fīdus fueris, tē miserum vidēbō. 9. Sī autem ambō in maleficiō fuerimus, aut ūnā supplicium dabimus aut ūnā perīculum vītābimus." 10. Posteā pater puerōs in agrōs mīsit. 11. "Sī impigrī," inquit, "hodiē fueritis, crās in circō lūdōs vidēbitis." 12. Nempe ita putāvit: "Sī hodiē puerī dīligentēs fuerint, iīs (to them) praemium dabō." 13. Sīc in agrōs veniunt. 14. Vesperī cum pater nihil factum vīderit, quid puerī spērābunt?

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

PUGIL

COLLOQUIUM

397. 1. Quem fīlius oppidānī amīcum habēbat? 2. Cūr pater puerī amīcitiam nōn prohibuit? 3. Nōnne servus dominum timēbat? 4. Nōnne servus, sī cōnsiliōrum amīcī particeps fuerit, in poenam dabitur? 5. Fīli-

usne, sī pater servō fuerit saevus, prō servō poenam dabit? 6. Sī fīlius servusque in maleficiō fuerint, uter poenam dabit? 7. Sī puerī impigrī fuerint, quod mūnus eīs dabitur? 8. Sī puerī nihil fēcerint, nōnne pater eōs in poenam dabit?

READING EXERCISE

398. 1. Cum mulierēs inter pugnantēs mīlitēs vēnerint, repentīnum silentium erit. 2. Sī ducēs Rōmānī cum hostibus foedus fēcerint, ex duābus cīvitātibus erit ūna. 3. Cum Rōmulus senātōrēs ēlēgerit, eōrum cōnsiliō omnia aget. 4. Omnibus pāx erit laeta. 5. Duo rēgēs commūne rēgnum habēbunt.

TEMPESTĀS AB TERRĪS RŌMULUM AUFERT

399. Post aliquot annōs Tatius, alter rēgum, interficitur. Rōmulus, sōlus iterum rēx, multitūdinī et patribus grātus fuit atque maximē acceptus mīlitum animīs. Posteā dum cōntiōnem in campō habet, subita tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque dēnsō rēgem operuit nimbō; nec inde in terrīs Rōmulus fuit. Proculus Iūlius, gravis vir, in cōntiōnem vēnit. "Rōmulus," inquit, "Quirītēs, parēns huius urbis, prīmā hodiernā lūce caelō repente dēlāpsus sē mihi obvium dedit. 'Mea Rōma,' inquit, 'caput orbis terrārum erit; nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere poterunt.' " Deinde deum et rēgem parentemque urbis Rōmae salvēre ūniversī Rōmulum iubent.

a. **Cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque,** *with a great peal of thunder* (literally, *with a great noise and thunder*); **prīmā hodiernā lūce,** *at dawn today* (lit., *at today's first light*); **sē mihi obvium dedit,** *met me* (lit., *put himself in the way to me, in my way*); **salvēre ūniversī Rōmulum iubent,** *all hail Romulus* (lit., *all bid Romulus hail*).

Colloquium

400. 1. Quō modō Rōmulus sōlus rēgnum accēpit? 2. Quibus Rōmulus grātus erat? Quibus maximē acceptus? 3. Quālis tempestās rēgem operuit? 4. Quālis vir Proculus fuit? 5. Quid Proculus Iūlius dīxit? 6. Eratne Rōma orbis terrārum caput? 7. Nōnne Rōma caput Ītaliae est? 8. Utrum deus an rēx fuit Rōmulus?

CONJUGATION

401. **Fuerō,** *I shall have been;* **amāverō,** *I shall have loved;* **vīderō,** *I shall have seen;* **mīserō,** *I shall have sent;* **audīverō,** *I shall have heard.*

Singular	Plural
fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

Singular			
amāverō	vīderō	mīserō	audīverō
amāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit
Plural			
amāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint

a. Both vowels in the tense-sign -eri- are short; in the first person singular o in -erō is long.

b. In the future perfect tense, as in the other tenses which contain the perfect stem, all verbs are conjugated alike.

SYNTAX

402. **The future perfect tense represents action as completed at some future time.** (42)

Sī dīligentēs fueritis, vōbīs praemium dabitur, *if you shall have been (are) diligent, a reward will be given to you.*

Practice

403. Make out synopses of **putō, moneō, ēligō, operiō, faciō,** and **possum** by giving the third person singular and the third person plural, with the English translation, in the six tenses of the indicative mood, active voice; for example,

timet, *he fears.*	**timent,** *they fear.*
timēbat, *he was fearing.*	**timēbant,** *they were fearing.*
timēbit, *he will fear.*	**timēbunt,** *they will fear.*
timuit, *he feared, has feared.*	**timuērunt,** *they feared, etc.*
timuerat, *he had feared.*	**timuerant,** *they had feared.*
timuerit, *he will have feared.*	**timuerint,** *they will have feared.*

LATIN WRITING

404. 1. When the prayers of the women shall have moved the multitude, there will be silence. 2. When the leaders make (shall have made) a treaty, there will be peace. 3. When Romulus chooses (shall have chosen) one hundred senators, he will do all things according to their advice. 4. If the leaders make (shall have made) a treaty, two kings will have the kingdom in common (a common kingdom will be to two kings).

5. When a thick cloud covers (shall have covered) Romulus, he will not be longer on earth. 6. "If my Rome," said Romulus, "shall be the capital of the world, no human power will be able to withstand Roman arms."

VOCABULARY

405. **Group I**

acceptus	**gravis**	**moneō**	**prohibeō**
accipiō	**hūmānus**	**nūllus**	**putō**
auferō	**miserrimus**	**perīculum**	**ūniversus**

Group II

circus	dīligēns	obvius	salveō
dēlāpsus	hodiernus	oppidānus	subitus
dēnsus	nimbus	saevus	vesper

Group III

aliquot	impiger	operiō	terreō
cōntiō	maleficium	ops	tonitrus
fragor	minae	particeps	vītō

Derived English Words

accept	*diligent*	*human*	*peril*
dense	*grave*	*obvious*	*universe*

Related English Words

admonish	*density*	*gravity*	*university*

a. What are the Latin nouns from which *density*, *gravity*, and *university* are derived? Compare **cāritās**, *charity;* **societās**, *society*.

b. In an English dictionary from words beginning *ad-*, *ac-* find five or more English words which contain the Latin preposition **ad**; for example, *admit* (**ad-mittō**), *accept* (**ad-capiō**).

WRITTEN REVIEW

406. 1. Write the conjugation of **pugnō**, **habeō**, **agō**, **operiō**, **faciō**, and **possum** in the future perfect tense.

2. Write the conjugation of one verb, *e. g.*, **ēligō**, in the future perfect tense, separating the perfect stem, the tense-sign, and the personal endings; as, **ēlēg-erō**, **ēlēg-eri-s**, etc.

CHAPTER XXXV

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

407. The perfect active infinitive is formed by joining the ending **-isse** to the perfect stem; as,

Fu-isse, *to have been;* **rēgnāv-isse,** *to have reigned.*

The present and the perfect tenses of the infinitive denote, respectively, time relatively present and relatively past; that is, time that is present or past with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends.

Magister dīcit Rōmam esse urbem pulchram, *the master says that Rome is* (*says Rome to be*) *a beautiful city.*

Magister dīcit Rōmam caput orbis terrārum fuisse, *the master says that Rome was* (*says Rome to have been*) *the capital of the world.*

PATER ET FĪLIUS

408. 1. Vesperī pater fīlium ad sē vocat. 2. "Quid hodiē," pater rogat, "ā magistrō didicistī?" 3. "Plūrima," puer respondet. 4. "Didicī Rōmam fuisse urbem antīquam Ītaliae, atque multa alia mihi magister dīxit." 5. "Quid aliud dīxit?" 6. "Dīxit Rōmulum et Remum frātrēs urbem condidisse atque posteā Rōmulum frātrem interfēcisse sōlumque rēgnāvisse. 7. Fābulam autem dēlectantissimam magister mihi nārrāvit." 8. "Quae est ista fābula?" 9. "Dīxit sē quondam in silvā fuisse magnumque leōnem ibi vīdisse atque eum ad flūmen vēnisse." 10. "Nōnne magister leōnem timuit?" 11. "Dīxit sē prīmō magnopere timuisse, sed mox leōnem ex cōnspectū suō in silvam effūgisse." 12. "Eratne fābula vēra?"

13. "Nesciō, sed suspīciōnem habeō magistrum fābulam fīnxisse."

COLLOQUIUM

409. 1. Quem pater ad sē vocat? 2. Quid pater fīlium rogat? 3. Quid puer respondet? 4. Quid magister dē Rōmā puerō dīxerat? 5. Quid dē Rōmulō et Remō

PLATĒA MONTIS CAPITŌLĪNĪ ET STATUA MĀRCĪ AURĒLĪ

dīxerat? 6. Nōnne fābulam magister nārrāvit? 7. Quid in silvā magister vīderat? 8. Nōnne magister leōnem timuit? 9. Dīxitne puer fābulam magistrī vēram esse? 10. Dīxitne magistrum fābulam fīnxisse?

READING EXERCISE

410. 1. Dīcitur Rōmulum multitūdinī et patribus grātum fuisse. 2. Līvius scrībit subitam tempestātem

rēgem dēnsō operuisse nimbō. 3. Proculus Iūlius dīxit sē parentem urbis caelō dēlapsum vīdisse. 4. Omnēs clāmitābant, "Rēx parēnsque urbis, salvē."

MIDĀS DĪVITIĀS EFFUGIT

411. Cōnsternātus novō malō Midās et dīves et miser dīvitiās effugere optat atque nunc ōdit ea quae rogāverat. Nūlla cōpia famem relevat; ārida sitis guttur ūrit.

Ad caelum manūs tollēns, "Dā veniam, Pater Bacche, peccāvī," inquit; "sed mihi ignōsce, precor, et dōnum tuum mihi dēme."

Bacchus audīvit et rēgī, "Vāde ad flūmen Pactōlon," inquit. "Cum ad fontem flūminis vēneris, caput et corpus in aquā lavā. Ita crīmen et supplicium effugiēs."

Midās ad flūmen venit et mandāta facit. Vīs aurea dē corpore hūmānō in flūmen cadit. Arēnae illīus flūminis etiam nunc, ut dīcitur, aureae sunt.

a. **Pactōlon,** a Greek form of the accusative; **vīs aurea,** *the power of creating gold,* "*the golden touch.*"

Colloquium

412. 1. Midāsne dīvitiās effugere volēbat? 2. Quid Midās ōdit? 3. Nōnne cōpia famem relevat? 4. Quid Midās Bacchō dīxit? 5. Cūr vim auream dēmī volēbat? 6. Veniamne Bacchus Midae dedit? 7. Quō Midās ā Bacchō iussus vādit? 8. Quō modō Midās crīmen effugit? 9. Quō vīs aurea dē corpore Midae cadit? 10. Nōnne arēnae flūminis aureae sunt?

TYPICAL VERBS

413. The perfect active infinitive of typical verbs of the four conjugations, of the irregular verb **sum,** and of verbs in **-iō,** is shown in the following table:

	Present	Perfect Stem	Perfect Infinitive
I.	amō	amāv-	amāvisse
II.	videō	vīd-	vīdisse
III.	mittō	mīs-	mīsisse
IV.	audiō	audīv-	audīvisse
Sum	sum	fu-	fuisse
Verb in -iō	capiō	cēp-	cēpisse

SYNTAX

414. The infinitive with a subject in the accusative case is used after verbs of saying and thinking, and after expressions which imply saying or thinking. (43)

Dīxit frātrēs urbem condidisse, *he said that the brothers had founded the city;* suspīciōnem habeō fābulam nōn vēram esse, *I have a suspicion that the story is not true.*

415. The time denoted by the perfect infinitive is past with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends. (44)

Dīcit leōnem vēnisse, *he says that a lion came (has come);* dīxit leōnem vēnisse, *he said that a lion had come (came).*

Practice

416. In the following exercise, for **Rēx vim auream rogāvit**, etc., substitute **Ovidius dīxit rēgem vim auream rogāvisse**, etc., changing all the verbs to the perfect active infinitive. Translate each expression into English before and after changing the form of the verb.

Rēx vim auream rogāvit; mūnus temptāvit; singula tetigit; glaebam contigit; tenuit pōmum in manū; dapēs in mēnsā pōnī iussit; dīvitiās effugere optāvit; ad flūmen vēnit; corpus in aquā lāvit; crīmen effūgit.

LATIN WRITING

417. 1. What have you learned today? 2. I have learned that after the death of Tatius, Romulus reigned

alone again. 3. Livy says that Romulus was very acceptable to the soldiers. 4. It is said (dīcitur) that Romulus descending from the sky met Proculus at dawn. 5. It is said that Rome was the capital of the world. 6. I have heard that the Romans called (vocāvisse) Romulus a god and king and the father of the city.

VOCABULARY

418.

Group I

discō	**fōns**	**interficiō**	**plūrimus**
dīves	**ignōscō**	**malum**	**prīmō**

Group II

āridus	**effugiō**	**mandātum**	**optō**
cōnspectus	**famēs**	**nesciō**	**suspīciō**
crīmen	**fingō**	**ōdī**	**precor**

Group III

dēlectantissimus	**peccō**	**sitis**	**vādō**
guttur	**relevō**	**ūrō**	**venia**

Derived English Words

arid	*crime*	*famine*	*suspicion*

Related English Words

criminal	*fountain*	*guttural*	*odious*

WRITTEN REVIEW

419. 1. Write the first three of the principal parts, and the perfect active infinitive, of **possum, rēgnō, timeō, condō, operiō,** and **interficiō.**

2. Make a list of the verbs and other expressions in section 408 which are followed by infinitives with subjects in the accusative case. Then change the infinitives to the indicative and their subjects to the nominative; for example,

Didicī Rōmam fuisse; Rōma fuit. Dīxit sē vīdisse; ego vīdī.

CHAPTER XXXVI

REVIEW OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Gender

420. In Latin the gender of names of persons and animals is the same as in English, nouns denoting males being masculine and nouns denoting females being feminine. Other nouns may be masculine, feminine, or neuter in Latin, although the corresponding nouns in English are neuter.

The gender of some Latin nouns may be determined by the following general rules, although there are exceptions:

(1) Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

Tiberis, *the Tiber;* **Auster,** *the south wind;* **Aprīlis,** *April.*

(2) Names of cities, countries, islands, and trees are feminine.

Rōma, *Rome;* **Ītalia,** *Italy;* **Sicilia,** *Sicily;* **ulmus,** *the elm.*

(3) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, clauses, *etc.*, are neuter.

Nihil, *nothing;* **audīre avīs grātum est,** *to hear the birds is pleasing.*

The gender of nouns is also indicated by the ending of the nominative singular, certain endings being generally found in masculine nouns, certain others in feminine nouns, and still others in neuter nouns.

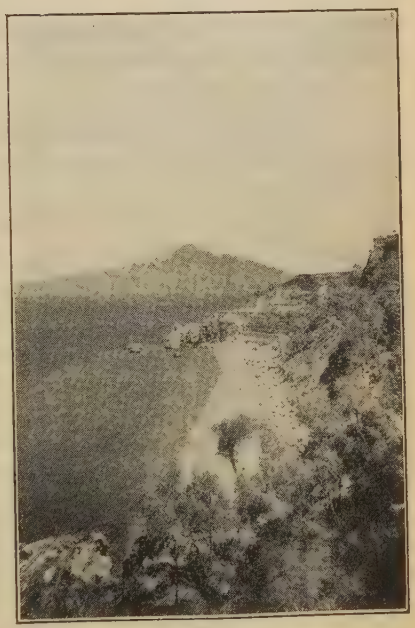
© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

CAPITŌLIUM UT HODIĒ EST

CORNĒLIA SALŪTEM DĪCIT MĀTRĪ

(A letter of Cornelia to her mother)

421. 1. Ex longā nāvigātiōne ego et pater Rōmam pervēnimus. 2. Nāvis quae nōs hūc vexit erat bona et pulchra. 3. Mare, dum per fretum Siciliae vehēbāmur, erat placidum. 4. Lēnis Auster vēla tendēbat. 5. Nūllae nūbēs sed interdiū sōl, nocte lūna et stellae in caelō vidēbantur. 6. Pater comitēsque longōs sermōnēs habuērunt, quōs libenter audīvī. 7. Alius dē animālibus flōribusque omnium generum multa nārrābat. 8. Ab aliō multa dē bellīs atque dē virtūte mīlitum Rōmānōrum dīcēbantur. 9. Magnae partis sermōnēs erant dē tempestāte; nunc calōrem nunc frīgus culpābant. 10. Nihil eōs dēlectābat. 11. Nautae saepe carmina canēbant.



ŌRA ĪTALIAE

12. Dēnique ōrās Ītaliae ac portum Neāpolis montemque Vesuvium vīdimus. 13. Iam nāvem relinquimus et ad urbem Rōmam properāmus. 14. Iam in viīs antīquīs vēstīgia pōnimus. 15. Magnā cum voluptāte urbem antīquam videō. 16. Flūmen et pontēs atque forum et templa vidērī possunt. 17. Sunt quoque imāginēs multae clārōrum cīvium et imperātōrum audācium atque deōrum

et deārum. 18. Mihi certum est Rōmānōs antīquōs urbem suam maximē amāvisse. 19. In collibus et in hortīs sunt arborēs pulchrae, et ulmī altae et lātae quercūs. 20. Hominum multitūdinem omnium gentium in urbe inveniō. 21. Pompēiī, illud oppidum clārum quod ēruptiōne Montis Vesuvī opertum est, nōn longē absunt; id quoque vidēbimus. 22. Rōmam vīdisse semper erit grātum. 23. Mox iterum scrībam. Valida sum. Valē. Rōmae Aprīlī scrīpsī.

a. Learn the nominative and genitive, singular and plural, and the gender of all the nouns in the section.

Colloquium

422. 1. Quis hanc epistulam scrīpsit? 2. Quī Rōmam pervēnērunt? Nōnne Cornēlia paterque? 3. Quālis nāvis viātōrēs vehēbat? 4. Utrum perīculōsa an facilis erat nāvigātiō? 5. Quid pater Cornēliae comitēsque in nāvī faciēbant? 6. Quibus dē rēbus hominēs sermōnēs habēbant? 7. Nōnne tempestās omnēs dēlectābat? 8. Eratne nāvigātiō labōriōsa? Semperne labōrābant nautae? 9. Quī mōns ab urbe Neāpolī vidērī potest? 10. Quid hominēs in urbe Rōmā vidēre possunt? 11. Quōrum imāginēs sunt in urbe? 12. Nōnne Rōmānī et pācem et bellum amābant? 13. Erantne in hortō arborēs multōrum generum? 14. Quod oppidum ēruptiō Vesuvī operuit? 15. Nōnne tū, discipule, epistulam Latīnam scrībere potes?

GENDER IN THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS

423. The gender of nouns, if not determined by the rules in section 420, must be learned by observation. The following general statements may be made, but there are exceptions.

(1) In the first declension nouns ending in **-a**, except names of males and words which refer to males, are feminine. **Stella**, *star.*

(2) In the second declension nouns ending in **-er**, **-ir**, **-us** are masculine. **Puer**, *boy;* **vir**, *man;* **amīcus**, *friend.* Nouns in **-um** are neuter. **Templum**, *temple.*

(3) In the third declension nouns ending in **-or** (gen., **-ōris**, long o), **-ō** (**-ōnis**), **-er** (**-ris**), **-es** (**itis**), are masculine. **Scrīptor** (**scrīptōris**), *writer;* **sermō** (**sermōnis**), *speech;* **pater** (**patris**), *father;* **mīles** (**mīlitis**), *soldier.*

Nouns ending in **-tās** (**-tātis**), **-tūs** (**-tūtis**), **-ēs** (**-is**), **-gō** or **-dō** (**-inis**), **-iō** (**-iōnis**), and **-is** (**-is**) are feminine. **Tempestās** (**tempestātis**), *weather;* **virtūs** (**virtūtis**), *valor;* **nūbēs** (**nūbis**), *cloud;* **imāgō** (**imāginis**), *image;* **multitūdō** (**multitūdinis**), *multitude;* **nāvigātiō** (**nāvigātiōnis**), *voyage;* **nāvis**, *ship.* **Collis** (**-is**), *hill;* **ignis** (**-is**), *fire;* **mēnsis** (**-is**), *month;* and **orbis** (**-is**), *circle,* are masculine.

The most common endings of neuter nouns of the third declension are **-en**, **-us**, **-e**, **-al.** **Flūmen**, *river;* **genus**, *kind;* **mare**, *sea;* **animal**, *animal.*

FORMATION OF LATIN NOUNS

424. Latin nouns have been formed by the use of certain suffixes from verbs, from other nouns, and from adjectives; and many Latin nouns thus formed have been transferred with little or no change into the English language.

(1) Nouns denoting the *agent* or the *doer* of an act are formed by adding the suffix **-tor** to roots or to stems of verbs.

audītor (audiō), *auditor.*
ōrātor (ōrō), *orator.*

(2) Nouns denoting *action* or *the result of action* are formed by the suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tūra**, **-ium.**

legiō, legiōnis (legō), *legion.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (ōrō), *oration.*
scrīptūra (scrībō, scrīptum), *scripture.*
imperium (imperō), *empire.*

(3) Nouns denoting *state* or *condition* are formed by the suffix **-or.**

terror (terreō), *terror.*

(4) Nouns denoting *quality* or *condition* are formed from nouns and adjectives by the suffixes **-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō.**

cūstōdia (cūstōs, cūstōdis), *custody.*
iūstitia (iūstus), *justice.*
societās (socius), *society.*
multitūdō (multus), *multitude.*

DERIVATION OF ENGLISH NOUNS FROM LATIN NOUNS

425. The following list contains examples of the derivation of English nouns from Latin nouns. Notice the Latin nouns which have been formed from Latin verbs, adjectives, and nouns, as explained in section 424. Review the statements relating to derivation in sections 114–116 and 242. Remember that an English noun derived from a Latin noun of the third declension is based on the stem of the Latin noun rather than on the nominative case.

agricultūra (agrī and cultūra), *agriculture.*
ars, art-is, *art*
auctor, *author.*
augurium (augur), *augury.*
captor (capiō), *captor.*
cāritās, -ātis (cārus), *charity.*
causa, *cause.*
cīvitās, -ātis (cīvis), *city.*
corpusculum (diminutive of corpus), *corpuscle.*
cūrātor (cūrō), *curator.*
discipulus (discō), *disciple.*
doctor (doceō), *doctor.*
doctrīna (doctor), *doctrine.*
dux, duc-is (dūcō), *duke.*
error (errō), *error.*
fābula, *fable.*
lībertās, -ātis (līber), *liberty.*
magnitūdō, -dinis (magnus), *magnitude.*
mōnstrum (moneō), *monster.*
nātūra (nāscor), *nature.*
nāvigātiō -ōnis (nāvis and agō), *navigation.*
rēgnum (rēx), *reign.*
scientia (sciō), *science.*
sermō, -ōnis (serō), *sermon.*
similitūdō, -dinis (similis), *similitude.*
tempestās, -ātis (tempus), *tempest.*
victōria (victor), *victory.*
vōx, vōcis (vocō), *voice.*

FORMATION OF LATIN ADJECTIVES

426. Latin adjectives have been formed from verbs and nouns by the use of certain suffixes; and from many

Photo by F. Frith & Co., Ltd., Reigate

BALNEAE RŌMĀNAE IN BRITANNIĀ

Latin adjectives thus formed corresponding English adjectives have been derived.

(1) Adjectives denoting *tendency* are formed by add-

ing the suffix **-āx** (stem ending in **-āci-**) to roots or stems of verbs. The corresponding English ending is *-acious.*

audāx, audācis (audeō), *audacious.*
loquāx, loquācis (loquor), *loquacious.*
rapāx, rapācis (rapiō), *rapacious.*

(2) Adjectives denoting *quality* are formed by the suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis.** The English endings are *-ile* and *-ble.*

facilis (faciō), *facile.*
crēdibilis (crēdō), *credible.*
stabilis (stō), *stable.*

(3) Adjectives denoting *condition* are formed by the suffix **-idus.** The English ending is *-id.*

candidus (candeō), *candid.*
placidus (placeō), *placid.*
rapidus (rapiō), *rapid.*
validus (valeō), *valid.*

(4) Adjectives denoting *belonging to* are formed from nouns by the use of the suffixes **-ticus, -īvus, -ānus, -ālis, -īlis,** and **-āris.** The English endings are similar but abbreviated.

rūsticus (rūs), *rustic.*
captīvus (captus), *captive.*
urbānus (urbs), *urban.*
mortālis (mors), *mortal.*
cīvīlis (cīvis), *civil.*
mīlitāris (mīles), *military.*

(5) Adjectives denoting *fullness* are formed by the suffix **-ōsus.** The corresponding English adjective ends in *-ose* or *-ous.*

bellicōsus (bellum), *bellicose.*
iniūriōsus (iniūria), *injurious.*
laboriōsus (labor), *laborious.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES

427. In the following list find illustrations of the formation of Latin adjectives according to the types given in section 426.

adōrābilis (ad-ōrō), *adorable.*
āridus (āreō), *arid.*
atrōx, *atrocious.*
brevis, *brief.*
ferōx (ferus), *ferocious.*
habilis (habeō), *able.*
hostīlis (hostis), *hostile.*
līberālis (līber), *liberal.*
memorābilis (memor), *memorable.*
perīculōsus (perīculum), *perilous.*
ponderōsus (pondus), *ponderous.*
populāris (populus), *popular.*
pūblicus (populus), *public.*
rēgālis (rēx), *regal.*
tenāx (teneō), *tenacious.*
terribilis (terreō), *terrible.*
vītālis (vīta), *vital.*

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

428. Review the rules of syntax, 1-44.

LATIN WRITING

429. Write a short original letter, or a letter in imitation of that in section 421, referring to a few of the objects mentioned or shown in the illustrations. For example,

The ship in which (quā) we made the voyage to Italy brought us to the city of Naples. From there (unde) we came to Rome. Here we can see the forum, the temples, and the bridges of the river Tiber. People come to Italy from all parts of the world. Some like the ancient temples; others like the new buildings. The city does not now lack inhabitants (inhabitants are not lacking to the city).

VOCABULARY

430. Group I

ēruptiō	**nāvigātiō**	**perveniō**	**salūs**
facilis	**perīculōsus**	**portus**	**sermō**

Group II

ac	labōriōsus	placidus	vēlum
certus	nūbēs	vehō	vēstīgium

Group III

auster	interdiū	opertus	ulmus
fretum	lēnis	quercus	voluptās

Derived English Words

laborious *navigation* *placid* *sermon*

Related English Words

facility *navigable* *salubrious* *voluptuous*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

ēruptiō facilis perīculōsus vēstīgium

b. What part of the Latin noun appears in *navigation* and *sermon?*

c. From what Latin nouns are labōriōsus and perīculōsus formed?

d. From what verb is the Latin adjective placidus formed?

Courtesy of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y

PŌCULUM GRAECUM

CHAPTER XXXVII

PRONOUNS

Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive

431. The Latin personal pronouns are the following:

First person: **ego** (**meī**), *I;* **nōs** (**nostrum** or **nostrī**), *we.*
Second person: **tū** (**tuī**), *you* (sing.); **vōs** (**vestrum** or **vestrī**), *you* (pl.).

There is no special personal pronoun of the third person in Latin, but its place is supplied by the demonstrative **is**, *he;* **ea**, *she;* **id**, *it;* or by some other demonstrative pronoun. The subject of a verb, when it is not expressed, is implied in the personal ending, which thus becomes a substitute for a personal pronoun.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person is **suī** (gen.), *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves,* the singular and plural forms being the same.

For each personal and reflexive pronoun there is a corresponding possessive:

meus (**-a, -um**), *my, mine;* **noster** (**nostra, nostrum**), *our.*
tuus (**-a, -um**), *your* (sing.); **vester** (**vestra, vestrum**), *your* (pl.).
suus (**-a, -um**), *his, her, its;* **suus** (**-a, -um**), *their.*

EGESTĀS ET DĪVITIAE

432. 1. Meus pater est egēns sed tuus pater est dīves. 2. Ego sum egēns sed tū es dīves. 3. Mihi sunt paucae rēs, tibi sunt multae. 4. Omnēs (hominēs) mē meāsque fortūnās spernunt; tē tuāsque fortūnās laudant. 5. Hominēs immemorēs meī, tuī memorēs sunt. 6. Tēcum cōpia, mēcum inopia est. 7. Nōnne tū ex tuīs bonīs mihi aliquid dabis?

8. Nōs in adversīs fortūnīs sumus sed nōn sumus miserī. 9. Vōs in fortūnīs estis secundīs sed nōn estis beātī. 10. Vōbīs sunt et dīvitiae et cūrae; nōbīs neque dīvitiae neque cūrae sunt. 11. Nōs saepe, vōs nōn semper, bonī laudant. 12. Nōn ā nōbīs sed ā vōbīs commūtātiō fortūnārum timētur. 13. Quis nostrum (gen.) fortūnam vestram laudat? Quis vestrum (gen.) laudat fortūnam nostram? 14. Vestrī amīcī, dum in secundīs fortūnīs eritis, vestrī (gen. pl.) erunt memorēs. 15. Nostrī amīcī semper, nostrī (gen. pl.) memorēs erunt. 16. Vestrī (gen. pl.) dum in secundīs fortūnīs eritis, nostrī (gen. pl.) semper, amīcī erunt memorēs.

The Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.
IMĀGŌ AĒNA PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ

17. Avārus homō suī est amātor. 18. Sē suāsque fortūnās semper laudat. 19. Sibi est cārus et ab sē amātur. 20. Avārī hominēs sunt amātōrēs suī. 21. Sē suāsque fortūnās semper laudant. 22. Sibi sunt cārī et ab sēsē amantur.

Colloquium

433. 1. Tūne dīves an egēns es? 2. Egone egēns an dīves sum? 3. Utrum paucae rēs an multae tibi sunt? 4. Laudantne hominēs an spernunt fortūnās adversās? 5. Hominēsne, sī egēns sum, meī memorēs erunt? 6. Nōnne tuī, sī dīves es, hominēs memorēs erunt? 7. Vōsne miserī estis quod in adversīs fortūnīs estis? 8. Suntne vōbīs dīvitiae et cūrae? 9. Nōnne commūtātiō fortūnārum ā vōbīs timētur? 10. Quam diū vestrī memorēs erunt amīcī? 11. Quis nostrum fortūnās adversās laudat? 12. Quem avārus homō maximē amat?

ATALANTA CONIUGEM FUGIT

Fābula Ovidī

434. Ovidius poēta dīcit Atalantam, pulcherrimam rēgis fīliam, vēlōcēs virōs certāmine cursūs superāvisse. Neque haec fābula est nam vērō superābat.

Ubi Atalanta ōrāculum dē coniuge rogāvit, deus respondit, "Tū, Atalanta, coniugem fuge; nec tamen coniugem effugiēs. Sed sī tibi coniūnx erit, fōrmam tuam āmittēs."

Territa respōnsō deī Atalanta per opācās silvās innūpta vīvit et īnstantem procōrum multitūdinem hāc condiciōne fugat: "Is quī mē uxōrem petit numquam," inquit, "mē in mātrimōnium dūcet nisi prius mē cursū vīcerit. Pedibus mēcum contendite. Praemium vēlōcī mātrimōnium dabitur; tardīs pretium erit mors. Ea lēx certāminis erit."

Lēx certāminis saeva erat sed tamen multitūdō audācium procōrum ad certāmen vēnit. Tanta est potentia fōrmae.

a. **Certāmine cursūs,** *in a contest in running, i. e., in running;* **cursū,** *in running;* **pedibus,** *in a foot-race.*

Colloquium

435. 1. Quid poēta dē Atalantā dīcit? 2. Eratne

fābula vēra? 3. Quid Atalanta ōrāculum rogāvit? 4. Respōnsum deī utrum benignum erat an saevum? 5. Āmittetne Atalanta fōrmam sī coniugem habēbit? 6. Nōsne ōrācula intellegere possumus? 7. Ubi Atalanta territa vīvit? 8. Quō modō Atalanta procōs fugat? 9. Quod praemium vēlōcī dabitur? 10. Quid tardīs dabitur? 11. Nōnne virī audācēs erant quī eā condiciōne uxōrem petēbant? 12. Quanta est potentia fōrmae? Nōnne maxima est?

DECLENSION

436. Ego, *I;* tū, *you;* suī, *of himself, of herself,* etc.

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing. & Pl.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
Dat.	mihi, mī	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
Voc.	—	—	tū	vōs	—
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

a. The reflexive suī has the same forms in the singular and in the plural.

b. The possessive pronouns are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions. **Meus, -a, -um** (vocative masculine, mī); **noster, nostra, nostrum; tuus, -a, -um; vester, vestra, vestrum; suus, -a, -um.**

c. With the ablative of the personal and reflexive pronouns the preposition **cum** is an enclitic. **Mēcum,** *with me;* **tēcum,** *with you;* **nōbīscum,** *with us;* **vōbīscum,** *with you;* **sēcum,** *with himself, with themselves.*

SYNTAX

437. The personal pronouns are generally used like nouns, but the nominative case is not expressed as the subject of a verb except for emphasis or contrast. (45)

a. The genitives **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī, suī,** are generally used as objective genitives (sec. 441); **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as genitives of the whole (sec. 442).

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

AMPHITHEĀTRUM POMPĒIĀNUM ET MŌNS VESUVIUS

b. The demonstrative, is, ea, id, or some other demonstrative pronoun, supplies the place of a personal pronoun of the third person, which is lacking in Latin; and the genitive case of the same pronoun supplies the place of a possessive of the third person. **Eius,** *of him, of her, of it (his, her, its);* **eōrum, eārum,** *of them (their).*

438. The reflexive pronoun and the corresponding possessive refer to the subject of the verb. (46)

Avārus homō sē laudat, *the selfish man praises himself;* **Omnēs suōs amīcōs amant,** *all love their own friends.*

a. The personal pronouns may be used reflexively; as, **ipse mē laudō,** *I praise myself.*

439. The possessive pronouns are used like adjectives and agree with the nouns which they modify, not with their antecedents, in case, number, and gender. (47)

Meus pater, *my father;* **tua māter,** *your mother;* **nostrae fortūnae,** *our fortunes;* **pater noster,** *our father.*

a. The possessive pronoun is often omitted if the meaning is clear without it; as, **parentēs līberōs amant,** *parents love their children.*

440. Some adjectives, generally in the plural, are used as substitutes for nouns. In the masculine and feminine such adjectives denote persons; in the neuter they denote things. (48)

Omnēs, *all (people);* **bonī,** *the good;* **bona,** *good (things), goods;* **nostrī,** *our friends;* **nostra,** *our possessions.*

441. With nouns denoting action or feeling, and with adjectives denoting desire, memory, participation, skill, etc., the genitive is used to represent the object of the action or feeling. (49)

Amātor suī, *a lover of himself;* **amīcī sunt nostrī** (gen.) **memorēs,** *our friends are mindful of us.*

a. This is known as the objective genitive.

442. **The genitive of the whole is used to modify a word denoting a part.** (50)

Quis nostrum, *who of us?* **Rōma est maxima urbium Ītaliae,** *Rome is the largest of the cities of Italy.*

a. This is sometimes called the partitive genitive.

Practice

443. 1. Supply the proper personal pronouns as subjects:

—— rogābam; —— respondētis; —— vēnimus; —— amittēs.

2. Supply the proper reflexive pronouns.

Tū —— laudās; ille —— laudat; ego —— laudō; illī —— laudant.

3. Supply in each blank successively the proper possessive pronouns meaning (1) friends and (2) things, possessions.

Nōs —— amāmus; tū —— amās; illī —— amant; ille —— amat; ego —— amō; vōs —— amātis.

LATIN WRITING

444. 1. I am a brave soldier but you are not brave. 2. The leader will praise me but you he will blame. 3. To me a reward will be given, to you punishment.

4. While we are playing ball (pilā, abl.), you (pl.) are reading your books. 5. One (alter) of us throws (sends) the ball; the other catches (accipit) it (eam). 6. Some (alterī) of you are reading the stories of Ovid, the others (alterī) are reading Vergil's (Vergi'lī). 7. The master tells (orders) us to read our Latin books.

8. Romulus sought a wife for himself. 9. The Romans were bravely defending themselves. 10. The brave do not praise themselves. 11. The good are praised by all. 12. Our own (things) are dear to us, yours to you.

VOCABULARY

445.

Group I

adversus	is	rēs	tamen
condiciō	meus	secundus	tantus
ego	nisi	suī	tū
inopia	petō	suus	tuus

Group II

commūtātiō	egēns	memor	respōnsum
cūra	fōrma	ōrāculum	tardus
cursus	immemor	pretium	territus

Group III

aliquis	egestās	īnstāns	procus
amātor	fugō	opācus	vēlōx
avārus	innūptus	potentia	vērō

Derived English Words

commutation *course* *oracle* *response*

Related English Words

adversity *egotist* *quantity* *velocity*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

adversus condiciō fōrma secundus

b. Explain the formation of the Latin words from which *copious*, *terrible*, and *velocity* are derived.

WRITTEN REVIEW

446. 1. Write from memory the declension of ego, tū, and suī.

2. Why is it not always necessary to employ the nominatives ego, tū, nōs, and vōs as subjects of verbs of the first and second persons? Why is it necessary in English to employ the pronouns *I*, *you*, and *we* as subjects?

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC*, *ISTE*, AND *ILLE*

The Intensive *Ipse*

447. The demonstrative pronouns **hic**, *this*, **iste**, *that*, and **ille**, *that*, are used chiefly to designate some definite person or thing. They may be used as adjectives agreeing in case, number, and gender with the nouns defined, or they may be used as substantives.

Hic generally refers to something connected in time, place, or thought with the person speaking; **iste** refers to something connected with the person addressed; **ille** refers to something remote from both.

The intensive **ipse** (**ipsa**, **ipsum**), *himself* (*herself*, *itself*), is used for emphasis and should be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **suī**.

LIBRĪ POĒTĀRUM

448. 1. Hic liber est meus, iste liber est tuus, ille liber est magistrī. 2. Huius librī Horātius, istīus Vergilius, illīus Ovidius erat scrīptor. 3. In hōc librō Horātius multa dē sapientiā et dē amīcīs scrīpsit. 4. Plūrimōs amīcōs Horātius habēbat. 5. Huic Maecēnās, amīcus Augustī Imperātōris, agrōs in montibus Sabīnīs dedit. 6. In hīs locīs Horātius vīllam pulcherrimam habēbat atque hīc maximā cum voluptāte partem aetātis vīxit.

7. Istīus librī Vergilius erat scrīptor. 8. Vergilius fābulās scrīpsit dē errōribus Aenēae atque sociōrum, quī ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliam per multa perīcula vēnērunt.

9. Illīus librī scrīptor erat Ovidius. 10. Ille fābulam

scrīpsit dē rēge quī omnia in aurum mūtārī optābat. 11. Multa dē deīs et deābus quoque dīxit. 12. Dīxit deōs ipsōs in terrā apud hominēs vīxisse.

READING EXERCISE

449. 1. Ego epistulam habeō ā patre meō scrīptam. 2. Verba huius epistulae mihi sunt cāra. 3. In hāc epistulā multa Latīnīs verbīs scrīpta sunt.

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

MONTĒS SABĪNĪ ATQUE VIA AD VĪLLAM HŌRĀTĪ

4. Tūne epistulam habēs ā patre tuō scrīptam? 5. Suntne verba istīus epistulae tibi cāra? 6. Suntne in istā epistulā verba Latīna?

7. Lēgistīne epistulam Cornēliae ad mātrem scriptam? 8. Nōnne verba illīus epistulae cāra erant mātrī Cornēliae? 9. In illā epistulā multa dē urbe Rōmā scrīpta sunt.

10. Nōnne tū ipse epistulam Latīnīs verbīs scrībere potes? 11. Fortasse Latīnam epistulam scrībere poteris cum Rōmam ipsam vīderis.

12. Rōmulus ipse populusque virginēs Sabīnās rapuērunt. 13. Haec fuit statim causa bellī. 14. Virgō Rōmāna ipsa hostēs ad arcem perdūxit. 15. Huic enim dux hostium optiōnem mūneris dederat. 16. Sed Sabīnī ipsī illam scūtīs obruērunt; nam haec in sinistrīs habēbant. 17. Inter volantia tēla virginēs ipsae vēnērunt. 18. Hae virōs ac parentēs īrās dirimere ōrābant. 19. Et bellō et pācī Rōmulus operam dedit; illud (the former) trīste, haec (the latter) laeta fuit.

Colloquium

450. 1. Quae causa bellī inter Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs erat? 2. Quae hostēs ad arcem perdūxit? 3. Quod huic mūnus hostēs dedērunt? 4. Virginēsne ipsae inter tēla vēnērunt? 5. Nōnne virī ac parentēs īrās dirēmērunt? 6. Nōnne trīste bellum pāx laeta fuit?

HIPPOMENĒS SPECTĀTOR CERTĀMINIS

451. Hippomenēs iuvenis spectātor huius certāminis inīquī erat. "Quis coniugem," inquit, "per tanta perīcula petit?" et amōrēs iuvenum culpābat. Ubi autem faciem ipsam fōrmamque Atalantae vīdit, tollēns manūs, "Mihi ignōscite," inquit, "vōs quōs culpābam. Ista praemia quae petēbātis nōndum mihi nōta erant. Cūr nōn ego ipse quoque fortūnam huius certāminis temptābō? Deus ipse audācēs iuvat."

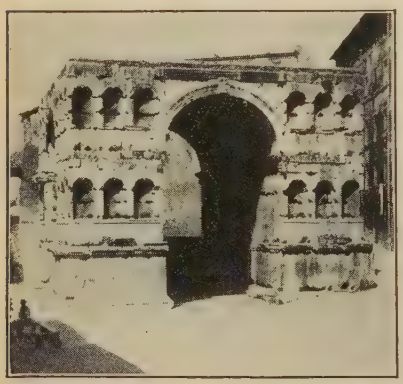
Dum haec sēcum cōgitat virgō ipsa ante oculōs celerius quam sagitta praeter volat et iuvenī pulchrior vidētur.

Nunc Atalanta ad mētam pervēnit et victrīx fēstā corōnā ōrnātur. Victī poenās pendunt.

a. **celerius quam sagitta,** *more swiftly than an arrow;* **pulchrior,** *more beautiful.*

Colloquium

452. 1. Quis spectātor certāminis erat? 2. Quid rogat Hippomenēs? 3. Laudatne iuvenēs quī virginem amant? 4. Illōsne culpābat ubi faciem virginis vīdit? 5. Cūr "Ignōscite mihi" dīxit? 6. Cūr fortūnam certāminis temptāre Hippomenēs volēbat? 7. Quam celeriter virgō volābat? 8. Nōnne Atalanta iuvenēs superāvit certāmine? 9. Quid victīs pretium erat?



Arcus Iānī, Locus Mercātōrum

NUMAE POMPILIŌ RĒGNUM DATUR

453. Inclita iūstitia religiōque illō tempore Numae Pompilī erat. Curibus Sabīnīs habitābat, cōnsultissimus vir omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī iūris. Huic patrēs Rōmānī omnēs rēgnum darī volēbant. Numa rēx creātus urbem novam, vī et armīs conditam, iūre lēgibusque ac mōribus dē integrō condere parat. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae dēscrīpsit. Iānum indicem pācis bellīque fēcit; apertus in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus pācātōs circā omnēs populōs significābat. Legēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs alius aliā viā, ille bellō hic pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

a. **Curibus Sabīnīs** (loc.), *in Cures of the Sabines;* **Numa . . . parat,** *When Numa had been elected king* (lit., *Numa elected king*), *the new city founded by force and arms he prepared to found anew with justice and laws and good morals also;* **alius**

aliā viā, *one in one way, the other in another.* (See section 339.)

b. For the declension of vīs see section 835.

Colloquium

454. 1. Eratne Numa iūstus et religiōsus? 2. Ubi habitābat Numa? 3. Quālis vir erat Numa? 4. Quī Numam rēgem creāvērunt? 5. Quis urbem vī et armīs condiderat? 6. Quō modō Numa urbem condere parat? 7. In quot mēnsēs annus dīviditur? 8. Quid Iānus apertus significat? Quid clausus? 9. Quālēs lēgēs Numa tulit? 10. Quā viā Rōmulus et Numa cīvitātem auxērunt? 11. Quot annōs ille rēgnāvit? Quot annōs hic?

DECLENSION

455. Hic, haec, hoc, *this;* ille, illa, illud, *that.*

Singular

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. Iste, *that of yours,* is declined like ille. Ipse, *self,* is declined like ille except in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, where ipse has ipsum, the regular form.

SYNTAX

456. Demonstrative pronouns may be used as substantives or as adjectives in agreement with nouns. (51)

Hic, *this (man), he;* **haec**, *these things;* **ista epistula**, *that letter (of yours);* **illa tempora**, *those times;* **virginēs ipsae**, *the maidens themselves.*

a. **Hic** and **ille** are sometimes contrasted, **ille** meaning the former and **hic** the latter of two objects. **Duo rēgēs, ille bellō, hic pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt**, *two kings, the former by war the latter by peace, advanced the state.*

457. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative case. (52)

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.*

Practice

458. 1. Supply the correct forms of **hic, iste,** and **ille.**

—— liber quem magister mihi dedit est bonus; —— fābulae antīquōrum poētārum mīrae sunt; —— praemia quae petitis pulchra sunt; magister —— librum mihi dedit; quis —— mūnus tibi dedit? quis —— fābulam dē certāmine Atalantae nārrāvit?

2. Supply the correct forms of the intensive **ipse.**

Hippomenēs ——; faciem ——; virginis ——; Rōmānōrum ——; ego ——; tēla ——; pāx Rōmulō —— erat cāra.

LATIN WRITING

459. 1. The new king is Numa Pompilius. 2. The piety of this king was celebrated. 3. He was not living in the city of Rome itself, but at Cures (loc.). 4. That (man) was very learned in divine and human law. 5. For this reason (hāc dē causā) the Romans themselves gave the kingdom to Numa. 6. He founded the city anew by means of right, laws, and morals. 7. That plan of yours, Numa, advanced the state. 8. Romulus advanced the state by war, Numa Pompilius by peace. 9. The former reigned thirty-seven years, the latter forty-three.

VOCABULARY

460.

Group I

creātus	hic	iūstus	religiōsus
creō	ille	iuvō	scrīptus
dīvīnus	ipse	pulchrior	spectātor
habitō	iste	religiō	ūtilis

Group II

augeō	faciēs	pācātus	quadrāgintā
celerius	integer	pendō	sagitta
cōgitō	mēta	praeter	tulit (ferō)

Group III

apertus	deinceps	inclitus	nōndum
clausus	dēscrībō	index	significō
cōnsultissimus	fēstus	inīquus	victrīx

Derived English Words

create *describe* *face* *religion*

Related English Words

creation *habitation* *significant* *utility*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

dīvīnus iūstus religiōsus index

WRITTEN REVIEW

461. 1. Write the names of the cases, singular and plural, in a vertical column and then enter in tabular form classified by genders all the forms of hic, iste, ille, and ipse which occur in sections 448, 449, 451, and 453.

2. How would *himself* be expressed in the following sentences if they were written in Latin? (1) Hippomenes blamed himself. (2) Hippomenes himself tries his fortune in the race.

CHAPTER XXXIX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS* AND THE RELATIVE *QUĪ*

462. The demonstrative pronoun **is, ea, id,** *this, that* (*he, she, it*), and the relative **quī, quae, quod,** *who, which,* are the pronouns which occur most frequently in Latin, and many of their forms have already been used.

MĪLES CUM SCŪTŌ ET HASTĀ

Is may be used as a substitute for a personal pronoun of the third person; and the genitive singular, **eius,** *his, her, its,* and the genitive plural, **eōrum, eārum, eōrum,** *their,* are used in the place of possessives of the third person.

READING EXERCISE

463. 1. Ad spectāculum quod Rōmulus indīcī fīnitimīs iusserat (iubeō) Sabīnī cum mulieribus suīs vēnērunt. 2. Sabīnōrum fīliās quae ad spectāculum vēnerant Rōmānī rapuērunt. 3. Sabīnī. quōrum fīliās Rōmānī rapuerant, arma cēpērunt et ad novam urbem contendēbant. 4. Tarpēia, cuius pater arcī praeerat, Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit. 5. Sabīnī scūta quae in sinistrīs habēbant eī dedērunt. 6. Sabīnae mulierēs dē quibus bellum erat inter armātōs vēnērunt. 7. Tum Rōmānī cum iīs quibuscum bellum gesserant pācem fēcērunt.

8. Post bellum cum Sabīnīs erant duo rēgēs, quōrum alter Tatius Sabīnus, alter Rōmulus erat. 9. Post mortem Tatī Rōmulus sōlus iterum fuit rēx; is omnibus, patribus

atque mīlitibus, fuit acceptus. 10. Post aliquot annōs tempestās Rōmulum dēnsō nimbō operuit. 11. Proculus, cui Rōmulus sē obvium dederat, haec in cōntiōne dīxit: 12. "Rōmulus, quī parēns fuit huius urbis, est in caelō. 13. Eius Rōma caput orbis terrārum erit. 14. Nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere poterunt."

COLLOQUIUM

464. 1. Quī ad spectāculum vēnērunt quod Rōmulus parāverat? 2. Quās mulierēs Rōmānī rapuērunt? 3. Cum quibus Rōmānī pācem fēcērunt? 4. Quae nōmina erant duōrum rēgum? 5. Eratne Rōmulus sōlus rēx? Nōnne is acceptus fuit mīlitibus? 6. Quis Rōmulum esse in caelō dīxit?

AMĀTŌRĒS

465. Hippomenēs hōrum morte nōn dēterritus oculōs in virgine fīxit. "Aliud est tardōs superāre," inquit, "longē aliud mē superāre. Mēcum contende. Sī fortūna mihi victōriam dederit, nōn īrāta eris; nam pater meus est nepōs Neptūnī, quī deus aquam rēgit. Sī mē vīceris, magnum et memorābile nōmen habēbis."

Atalanta, "Quis deus," inquit, "inīquus hunc iuvenem perdere vult? Nōn fōrma eius, quamquam fōrmōsus est, sed aetās mē movet; nam adhūc puer est. Magnam virtūtem habet atque mentem quae mortem nōn timet. Amat mē sed vītam āmittet sī fortūna illī mē coniugem nōn dederit."

Atalanta iuvenem amat et certāmine cum illō contendere nōn vult.

a. **Quī deus,** *the god who;* **mē coniugem,** *me as wife.*

COLLOQUIUM

466. 1. Nōnne Hippomenēs morte procōrum dēterritus erat? 2. Eritne facile illum superāre? 3. Cūr nōn

virgō īrāta erit sī Hippomenēs eam superāverit? 4. Sī iuvenem vīcerit, quid habēbit? 5. Quis Neptūnus est? 6. Quid Atalantam movet? 7. Quālem mentem iuvenis habet? 8. Nōnne iuvenis virginem et iuvenem virgō amat? 9. Cūr nōn Atalanta cum puerō certāmine contendere vult?

TULLUS HOSTĪLIUS RĒX CREĀTUR

467. Numae morte Tullum Hostīlium, nepōtem Hostīlī cuius pugna adversus Sabīnōs fuerat clāra, rēgem populus creāvit. Hic nōn sōlum proximō rēgī dissimilis, sed ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Cum aetās vīrēsque tum avīta quoque glōria animum stimulāvit. Māteriam igitur bellī undique quaerēbat. Forte pāstōrēs Rōmānī ex Albānō agrō, Albānī ex Rōmānō, praedās agēbant. Utrimque lēgātī missī sunt sed Tullus ferōx pācem facere nōlēbat. Bellum igitur parātum est.

a. **Numae morte,** *at the death of Numa;* **proximō rēgī dissimilis,** *unlike the last king* (sec. 104); **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.*

Colloquium

468. 1. Numae morte quem populus rēgem creāvit? 2. Cuius nepōs Tullus Hostīlius erat? 3. Eratne Hostīlius proximō rēgī similis? 4. Quid animum rēgis stimulābat? 5. Unde māteriam bellī invēnit? 6. Quid ferōx Tullus volēbat? Nōnne bellum?

DECLENSION

469. **Is,** *this, he;* **quī,** *who, which.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. With quibus the preposition cum is an enclitic. **Quibuscum,** *with whom.*

SYNTAX

470. The pronoun ***is*** may be used (1) as a definitive adjective; (2) as a demonstrative to supply the place of a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning ***he, she, it, they;*** or (3) as the antecedent of the relative ***quī***. (53)

(1) **In eō locō urbem aedificant,** *they build a city in this place;* (2) **populus Numam rēgem creāvit; is pāce cīvitātem auxit,** *the people made Numa king; he advanced the state by peace;* (3) **is quem populus rēgem creāvit cīvitātem auxit,** *he whom the people made king advanced the state.*

471. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; its case is determined by its use in the sentence. (54)

Urbs quam Rōmam vocāvit, *the city which he called Rome.*

Practice

472. 1. In the following exercises supply the proper forms of the relative pronoun.

Spectāculum —— Rōmulus parat; is —— rēx sōlus fuit; Sabīnī —— fīliās Rōmānī rapuērunt; mulierēs —— causa bellī fuerant; Atalanta —— fortūna fōrmam dederat; iī —— deus erat inīquus; Hippomenēs —— virtūs erat magna; mēns —— mortem nōn timet; iuvenēs —— cum Atalanta contendēbat.

2. Substitute the correct forms of is for the following pronouns.

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

URBS RŌMA UT NUNC EST

He, they (masc.), these (things), in this contest, her (of her), with him, to them, their, them (fem.), to him.

LATIN WRITING

473. 1. On the death (abl. of time) of Numa the people made Tullus Hostilius king. 2. He was the grandson of Hostius Hostilius who had fought against the Sabines. 3. Tullus was different from (to) Numa, who had been the last king. 4. He was even more warlike (ferōcior) than Romulus. 5. The king, whose age and strength aroused his spirit, was seeking an occasion for war. 6. The renown of his grandfather aroused the spirit of Hostilius.

VOCABULARY

474.

Group I

cum . . . tum	**ferōx**	**praeda**	**quī**
ferōcior	**is**	**quaerō**	**sōlum**

Group II

adhūc	**māteria**	**nōlō**	**quamquam**

Group III

avītus	**dissimilis**	**fōrmōsus**	**perdō**
dēterreō	**fīgō**	**memorābilis**	**stimulō**

Derived English Words

dissimilar	*ferocious*	*memorable*	*stimulate*

Related English Words

ferocity	*inquiry*	*perdition*	*stimulant*

WRITTEN REVIEW

475. 1. Write from memory the declension of **is** and **quī**.

2. In any sentence what determines the gender and the number of the relative pronoun? What determines the case? Find illustrative examples.

CHAPTER XL

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The Ablative Absolute

476. The perfect passive participle has the form of an adjective of the first and second declensions. In the vocabulary it is given as the fourth of the principal parts of a regular verb. Like an adjective a participle agrees with the noun which it modifies in case, number, and gender.

The time denoted by the perfect passive participle is relatively past; that is, it is past with reference to the time of the main verb in the clause containing the participle.

Raptae mulierēs ērant causa bellī, *the seized women (the women who had been seized) were the cause of the war.*

A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns are often used together in the ablative case to express some such adverbial relation as may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case or by a clause; as,

Numā rēge, *Numa (being) king, while Numa is (was) king.*

Numā rēgnante, *Numa reigning, while Numa is (was) reigning.*

Numā sepultō, *Numa having been buried, after Numa had been buried, when Numa had been buried.*

This use of the ablative case is called the ablative absolute. It is somewhat like the nominative absolute in English.

READING EXERCISE

477. 1. Sabīnī statim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt. 2. Armātī hostēs Rōmae

appropinquābant. 3. Mīlitēs in arcem perductī Tarpēiam scūtīs obruunt. 4. Deinde prīncipēs utrimque fortissimē pugnābant. 5. Sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs inter tēla volantia vēnērunt. 6. Et hinc patrēs hinc virōs ōrantēs multitūdinem mōvērunt. 7. Foedere ā ducibus factō mulierēs et virīs et patribus erant cāriōrēs.

8. Urbe septem et trīgintā annōs ab Rōmulō rēgnātā populus Numam rēgem creāvit. 9. Quī urbem, vī et armīs conditam, lēgibus ac mōribus dē integrō condere volēbat. 10. Iānum indicem pācis bellīque fēcit. 11. Iānus apertus bellum clausus pācem esse significābat. 12. Morte Numae audītā populus Tullō rēgnum dedit. 13. Tullus animō avītā glōriā stimulātō māteriam bellī quaerēbat.

Colloquium

478. 1. Quā dē causā Sabīnī bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt? 2. Quō modō mulierēs raptae inter tēla vēnērunt? 3. Nōnne mulierēs, foedere factō, cāriōrēs erant? 4. Quot annōs Rōmulus rēgnāverat cum populus Numam rēgem creāvit? 5. Quis urbem vī et armīs condidit? Quis lēgibus et mōribus? 6. Quō modō Iānus index erat bellī et pācis? 7. Morte Numae audītā quem populus rēgem creāvit? 8. Cūr Tullus bellum quaerēbat?

CERTĀMEN

479. Iam populus paterque Atalantae certāmen poscunt. Hippomenēs deam Venerem invocat. "Ades, dea," inquit, "et adiuvā amōrem quem dedistī." Dea audīvit et ab nūllō vīsa iuvenī tria aurea pōma dedit quae suā manū dē arbore sacrā dēcerpta ex īnsulā Cypriā portāverat.

Tum sīgnō datō uterque ēmicat et celeriter per arēnam currit. Tam celeriter currentēs siccīs pedibus per summum mare currere posse videntur. Clāmōrēs animōs iuvenis stimulant verbaque amīcōrum quī clāmant, "Nunc, nunc

tempus est incumbere! Nunc vīribus tōtīs properā, Hippomenē! Vincēs!" Sed virgō invīta eum relinquit longēque erat mēta.

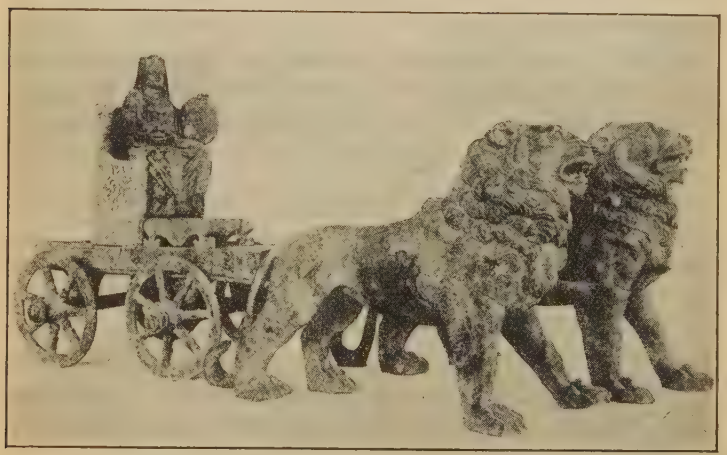
a. **Siccīs pedibus,** *with dry feet;* **per summum mare,** *along the surface of the sea;* **vīribus tōtīs,** *with all your might.*

Colloquium

480. 1. Quī certāmen poscunt? 2. Quem Hippomenēs invocat? 3. Quō modō Venus iuvenem adiuvat? 4. Unde aurea pōma dēcerpta sunt? 5. Quam celeriter Atalanta et Hippomenēs currunt? 6. Quid animōs iuvenis stimulat? 7. Quid amīcī Hippomenae clāmant? 8. Volēbatne virgō Hippomenēn superāre?

VICTOR PRAEMIUM DŪCIT

481. Tum dēnique Hippomenēs ūnum ex tribus pōmīs aureīs mīsit. Id virgō vīdit et cupīdine pōmī cursum dēclīnat aurumque ab humō tollit. Hippomenēs praeterit, sed illa celeriter iuvenem iterum post tergum relinquit.



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

Leōnēs Carrum Cybelae Trahentēs

Secundō pōmō remorāta virgō virum rūrsus cōnsequitur et trānsit.

Ultimā cursūs parte relictā, "Nunc, dea, ades," inquit Hippomenēs, et tertium pōmum in latus campī iēcit. Virgō dubitāre vīsa est sed Venus eam pōmum tollere coēgit. Ita et morā et onere impedīta superāta est. Hippomenēs victor praemium dūxit.

Posteā, ut dīcitur, Cybele māter deōrum īrāta amātōrēs in leōnēs mūtāvit et eōs suum currum trahere coēgit.

a. **Cōnsequitur,** *pursues.*

COLLOQUIUM

482. 1. Quō modō Hippomenēs Atalantam impedit? 2. Cūr virgō dēclīnat cursum? 3. Quot pōma Hippomenēs prīmō iēcit? 4. Quid virgō, ūnō ex tribus pōmīs missō, fēcit? 5. Nōnne tum iuvenis virginem superāvit? 6. Quō tertium pōmum Hippomenēs iēcit? 7. Quis virginem pōmum tollere coēgit? 8. Quid eam impedīvit? 9. Quod praemium Hippomenēs dūxit? 10. Posteā quō modō amātorēs mūtātī sunt?

INTER ALBĀNŌS ET RŌMĀNŌS BELLUM

483. Tullō Hostīliō rēgnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs erat. Ducibus Hostīliō et Fūfetiō placuit certāmen paucōrum pugnā fīnīrī. Forte erant apud Rōmānōs trigeminī frātrēs Horātiī, trēs apud Albānōs Cūriātiī. Cum hīs agunt rēgēs ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicent ferrō. Foedus hīs lēgibus Rōmānī et Albānī faciunt: ibi imperium erit unde victōria fuerit; cuius populī cīvēs hōc certāmine vīcerint, is alterī populō cum bonā pāce imperābit.

a. **Ducibus,** dative, indirect object of **placuit**; **certāmen,** acc., subject of **fīnīrī**; **Horātiī, Cūriātiī,** apposition with **frātrēs**; **ut . . . dīmicent,** *that they fight each for his own country;* **hīs lēgibus,** *under these conditions;* **cuius . . . imperābit,** *the people whose citizens shall have conquered in this contest shall rule over the other in peace.*

Colloquium

484. 1. Tullō rēgnante cum quibus Rōmānī bellum gerēbant? 2. Quid ducibus placuit? 3. Quī prō Rōmānīs pugnābunt? Quī prō Albānīs? 4. Quibus lēgibus ducēs foedus faciunt? 5. Uter populus imperium habēbit?

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

Monīle ex Aurō et Amethystīs

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

485. Regular verbs have four principal parts: the present indicative active, the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active, and the perfect passive participle. Certain verbs lack the perfect passive participle; and of these the future active participle, when there is such a form, is given as the fourth of the principal parts.

These forms are called the principal parts because they contain the stems upon which is based the conjugation of the verb in all the moods and tenses.

TYPICAL VERBS

486. Amō, videō, mittō, audiō, sum, capiō.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Inf.	Per. Indic.	Per. Part.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus
sum	esse	fuī	futūrus (future)
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus

a. The present indicative is the form under which the verb is found in the vocabulary.

b. The present infinitive shows to what conjugation the verb belongs and contains the present stem, upon which are based the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

c. The perfect indicative active contains the perfect stem, upon which are based the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the active voice.

d. The perfect passive participle (or the future active participle) contains the participial or supine stem. This stem is found by dropping the case-ending -us of the perfect participle (or -ūrus of the future participle). The tenses of the indicative which are based upon the participial or supine stem are discussed in sections 504–517.

SYNTAX

487. The perfect passive participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs; and it represents action as completed at the time of the verb upon which the participle depends. (55)

Morte Numae audītā populus Tullō rēgnum dedit, *the death of Numa having been heard of (having heard of the death of Numa, after they had heard of the death of Numa), the people gave the kingdom to Tullus.*

a. The Latin perfect passive participle is often best translated into English by a clause or by the active past participle, which is lacking in Latin.

488. A noun or a pronoun in the ablative case, with a participle, adjective, or noun in agreement, may be used in an undefined adverbial relation with the predicate. This construction is called the ablative absolute. (56)

a. The following examples will suggest various ways of translating the ablative absolute.

Numā rēge, *Numa (being) king, while Numa is (was) king.*

Tullō rēgnante, *Tullus reigning, while Tullus is (was) reigning, during the reign of Tullus.*

Foedere factō ducēs bellum fīniunt, *a treaty having been made (when a treaty has been made, having made a treaty), the leaders end the war;* or, *the leaders make a treaty and end the war.*

Alterō populō victō alter populus imperium habēbit, *one people having been conquered (when one people has been conquered, if one people shall have been conquered), the other will have dominion.*

Frātre interfectō Rōmulus sōlus rēgnāvit, *his brother having been killed (having killed his brother, when he had killed his brother), Romulus reigned alone;* or, *Romulus killed his brother and reigned alone.*

b. In a Latin sentence the main thought is presented in the principal clause and thoughts of secondary importance are often made subordinate by the use of participles, as in the examples above. In English such subordination is generally indicated by the use of dependent clauses.

Practice

489. 1. Write or recite the principal parts of the following verbs, giving the English translation of each form; as, **vocō,** *I call;* **vocāre,** *to call;* **vocāvī,** *I have called, I called;* **vocātus,** *having been called, called.*

agō	**dō**	**impediō**	**relinquō**
cōgō	**iaciō**	**moveō**	**vincō**

2. Translate the following expressions according to the models in section 488.

(1) Hippomene procō Atalanta invīta properat. (2) Virgine dubitante iuvenis praeterit. (3) Ūnō ex pōmīs missō iuvenis tōtīs vīribus properat. (4) Pōmō aureō vīsō Atalanta impedītur.

LATIN WRITING

490. 1. In the reign of Tullus (Tullus reigning) there was war. 2. An occasion for (of) war having been sought, Tullus undertook war against the Albans. 3. Hostilius and Fufetius (being) leaders, there was war between the Romans and the Albans. 4. When an agreement has been made (an agreement having been made), the Horatii and the Curiatii fight with swords.

5. Each one (quisque) fights for his own country. 6. The supremacy will be there where (whence) the victory shall have been. 7. If the Curiatii shall have conquered, the Albans will rule over the Romans. 8. If the Curiatii are conquered (the Curiatii having been conquered), the Romans will have the supremacy.

VOCABULARY

491.

Group I

agō	dubitō	poscō	summus
cōgō	iaciō	quisque	tertius
currō	imperium	rūrsus	trānseō

Group II

adiuvō	ferrum	invocō	placeō
cupīdō	incumbō	latus (noun)	sacer
dīmicō	invītus	mora	trigeminī

Group III

cōnsequor	dēclīnō	hinc . . . hinc	remorātus
dēcerpō	ēmicō	praetereō	tergum

Derived English Words

act *empire* *invoke* *please*

Related English Words

action *declension* *invocation* *transition*

a. Many English words are derived from Latin perfect passive participles by the omission of the case-ending; as, *debit* from dēbeō, dēbit-us: *fact* from faciō, fact-us.

WRITTEN REVIEW

492. 1. Write the principal parts of parō, habeō, dūcō, aperiō, and rapiō, giving the English translation of each form.

2. Write the perfect passive participles of the following verbs and an English word derived from each participle.

accipiō	creō	distribuō	scrībō
crēdō	dētrahō	intellegō	veniō

CHAPTER XLI

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

493. In the fourth declension the nominative singular of masculine nouns ends in **-us**, and the nominative singular of neuter nouns in **-ū**. The genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. The case-endings are not very different from those of the third declension except as they are modified by the characteristic stem vowel **u**.

READING EXERCISE

494. 1. Salvē, amīce, quid agis hodiē? 2. Tē ipsum salvēre iubeō. Dā mihi manum tuam. 3. Unde venīs? Quid in manū habēs? 4. Ā portū veniō. Habeō in manū librōs quōs Athēnīs portāvī. 5. Ex longā nāvigātiōne iterum domī nox eris. Tuō adventū gaudeō.

6. Urbs Rōma ab ōre Tiberis circiter mīlia passuum vīgintī abest. 7. Flūmen Tiberis erat urbī Rōmae mūnīmentō. 8. Rōmae nūllus portus erat. 9. Urbs Ōstia erat portus Rōmae; eum portum Ancus Mārcius aedificāvit. 10. Ōstia erat Rōmānīs portuī. 11. Portus Ōstiae erat magnō ūsuī Rōmānīs. 12. Nāvēs ā portū solvunt atque in portum ex longā nāvigātiōne veniunt. 13. Ex longā nāvigātiōne cōnspectus portūs est grātissimus. 14. Rōmānī scientiam portuum Britanniae nōn habēbant dum Caesar īnsulam explōrāvit. 15. Per ōrās Ītaliae sunt multī portūs. 16. Viātōrēs ē portibus Graeciae solvunt et in portūs Ītaliae veniunt.

17. Rōmānī bellum saepe gerēbant. 18. Magnōs exercitūs habēbant. 19. Rēgēs ipsī Rōmānōs exercitūs dūcēbant. 20. Posteā cōnsulēs erant exercituum Rōmānōrum ducēs. 21. In exercitū Rōmānō erant et peditēs et

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

PORTUS NEĀPOLIS ET MŌNS VESUVIUS

equitēs. 22. In itinere exercitus agmen appellābātur. 23. Exercituī īnstrūctō nōmen aciēs dabātur. 24. Exercitūs īnstrūctī erant partēs trēs, quārum ūna aciēs, alia cornū dextrum, tertia sinistrum cornū appellābātur.

Colloquium

495. 1. Quam longē Rōma ab ōre Tiberis aberat? 2. Ubi erat Rōmae portus? 3. Quis urbem Ōstiam aedificāvit? 4. Unde nāvēs solvunt? Quō veniunt ex nāvigātiōne? 5. Estne portus grātus viātōrī? 6. Nōnne Rōmānī semper scientiam portuum Britanniae habēbant? 7. Quī exercitūs Rōmānōs dūcēbant? 8. Quae erant partēs exercitūs? 9. Quid erat agmen? 10. Quod nōmen exercituī īnstrūctō dabātur? 11. Exercitūs īnstrūctī quae erant trēs partēs?

TRIGEMINĪ ARMA CAPIUNT

496. Foedere ictō trigeminī arma capiunt et in medium inter duōs exercitūs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque prō castrīs duo exercitūs, perīculī magis praesentis quam cūrae expertēs; nam imperium in tam paucōrum virtūte erat positum. Datur signum īnfestīsque armīs ternī iuvenēs, magnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs, concurrunt. Ut prīmō concursū increpuērunt arma micantēsque fulsērunt gladiī, horror ingēns spectantēs perstringit, et neutrīs erat vōx spīritusque.

a. **Foedere ictō**, ablative absolute (translate several ways); **in medium**, *into the midst;* **perīculī . . . expertēs**, *free from immediate danger rather than from anxiety;* **neutrīs . . . spīritusque**, *neither (side) had voice or breath (to neither was there voice and breath).*

Colloquium

497. 1. Foedere ictō quid trigeminī agunt? 2. Ubi exercitūs duo cōnsēderant? 3. Nōnne duo exercitūs expertēs erant perīculī praesentis? 4. Cūr nōn cūrae

quoque expertēs erant? 5. Quōrum in virtūte imperium erat positum? 6. Quō modō ternī iuvenēs concurrunt? 7. Cūr neutrīs erat vōx spīritusque? 8. Quī mūnīmentō exercituī erant?

TYPICAL NOUNS

498. Nom., portus; gen., portūs; m., *harbor.*
Nom., cornū; gen., cornūs; n., *horn, wing* (of an army).

	Singular		M.	N.
Nom.	portus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	portūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	portuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Acc.	portum	cornū	-um	-ū
Voc.	portus	cornū	-us	-ū
Abl.	portū	cornū	-ū	-ū
	Plural			
Nom.	portūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	portuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	portibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	portūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Voc.	portūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	portibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. The stems of nouns of the fourth declension end in u.

b. Most nouns of the fourth declension ending in -us are masculine; all ending in -ū are neuter. **Manus,** *hand,* **domus,** *house,* and a few others are feminine.

c. **Domus** is declined like **portus,** but it has also some forms which belong to the second declension. For the complete declension of **domus** see section 835. The following forms are most frequently used: Nom. **domus,** *house;* acc., **domum,** *homeward;* abl., **domō,** *from home;* loc., **domī,** *at home.*

SYNTAX

499. A noun in the dative case is sometimes used to denote purpose; a second noun in the dative, denoting the

person affected, often accompanies the dative of purpose. (57)

Portus Ōstiae erat magnō ūsuī Rōmānīs, *the harbor of Ostia was of great use (for great use) to the Romans.*

Practice

500. Complete the following forms by supplying the proper case-endings of the fourth declension.

Tuō advent—, cōnspectus port—, man— tuam, ā corn— dextrō, magnus exercit—, magnōs exercit—, exercit— magnīs, mīlle pass—, decem mīlia pass—, magnō ūs— Rōmānīs.

LATIN WRITING

501. 1. The Horatii and the Curiatii take arms and advance between the two armies. 2. The brothers, having taken arms, advance. 3. The armies were free from danger rather than from anxiety. 4. When the signal had been given (the signal having been given), the youths, three-on-each-side, rushed together. 5. The arms clash and the flashing swords gleam. 6. The spectators were speechless and breathless (to the spectators was neither voice nor breath). 7. Neither side (neutrī) was (were) free from danger. 8. The supremacy depended upon the valor of the three chiefs. 9. The three young men were (for) a protection to the Roman army.

VOCABULARY

502. Group I

aciēs	**cornū**	**manus**	**portus**
adventus	**dexter**	**mīlia**	**positus**
agmen	**exercitus**	**neuter**	**praesēns**
concurrō	**explōrō**	**passus**	**spīritus**
concursus	**gladius**	**pedes**	**ūsus**

Group II

cōnsīdō	ingēns	īnstrūctus	spectāns
grātissimus	īnfestus	solvō	ternī

Group III

expers	horro	increpō	mūnīmentum
fulgeō	īcō	micāns	perstringō

Derived English Words

concourse	*infest*	*solve*	*spirit*

Related English Words

exercise	*exploration*	*manual*	*neutral*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

adventus	īnstrūctus	portus	ūsus

b. Many Latin nouns of the fourth declension are formed from the perfect passive participles of verbs, and from many of the Latin nouns thus formed English nouns have been derived; as, adveniō, adventus (part.), adventus (noun), *advent;* currō, cursus (part.), cursus (noun), *course.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

503. In parallel columns write the declension of servus, prīnceps, and portus. In what cases are masculine nouns of the fourth declension like those of the second? In what cases are they like nouns of the third declension? What cases of cornū are alike in the singular? in the plural? What is the ending of all neuter nouns in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural?

CHAPTER XLII

THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

504. In English certain tenses are formed by the use of auxiliary verbs; as, *I am praised, you have been advised.* In a similar way the Latin perfect, past perfect (or pluperfect), and future perfect tenses in the passive voice

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

VIA TRIUMPHĀLIS IN MONTIBUS ALBĀNĪS

are formed by combining respectively the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the verb sum with the perfect passive participle.

Tullus rēx creātus est, *Tullus was elected king.*

Māteria bellī quaesīta erat, *an occasion for war had been sought.*

Sī Horātiī victī erunt Albānīs imperium erit, *if the Horatii shall have been conquered the supremacy will belong to the Albans.*

In these tenses the participle agrees in case, gender, and number with the subject of the verb.

READING EXERCISE

505. 1. Numae morte Tullus Hostīlius rēx creātus est. 2. Hostius Hostīlius, avus eius, apud Rōmānōs clārus fuerat. 3. Tullus dissimilis Numae atque ferōcior quam Rōmulus fuit. 4. Cum aetāte vīribusque tum avītā glōriā animus stimulātus erat. 5. Māteria igitur bellī undique quaesīta est. 6. Utrimque lēgātīs missīs Tullus ferōx pācem facere nōlēbat. 7. Bellum igitur utrimque parātum est. 8. Ducibus tamen placuit certāmen sine magnā clāde paucōrum pugnā fīnīrī.

9. Hīs lēgibus igitur foedus factum est. 10. Utrimque trigeminī frātrēs, apud Rōmānōs Horātiī apud Albānōs Cūriātiī, prō suā quisque patriā dīmicābunt ferrō. 11. Sī Horātiī victī erunt, Albānī Rōmānīs imperābunt; sī Cūriātiī victī erunt, Rōmānī Albānīs imperābunt. 12. Foedere ictō frātrēs arma capiunt. 13. Imperium in eōrum virtūte erat positum. 14. Ubi signum datum est, increpuērunt arma et fulsērunt gladiī. 15. Spectantibus erat neque vōx neque spīritus.

Colloquium

506. 1. Numae morte quis rēx creātus est? 2. Quālis vir erat Tullus? 3. Quibus rēbus animus Tullī stimulātus est? 4. Cūr Tullus pācem facere nōlēbat? 5. Bellō parātō quid ducibus placuit? 6. Quibus lēgibus foedus factum est? 7. Sī Horātiī victī erunt, quī Rōmānīs imperābunt? 8. Sī Cūriātiī victī erunt, quī Albānīs imperābunt? 9. Signō datō quid factum est?

ŪNUM HORĀTIUM TRĒS CŪRIĀTIĪ CIRCUMSTANT

507. Cōnsertīs deinde manibus statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium exspīrantēs cecidērunt; trēs Albānī

vulnerātī sunt. Ad cāsum Rōmānōrum conclāmāvit gaudiō exercitus Albānus. Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. Ūnum Horātium trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit; sed quia tribus impār erat, ut distraheret hostēs, fugere coepit. Iam aliquantum spatī ex eō locō ubi pugnātum est aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt

Photo from Gramstorff Bros., Malden, Mass.

GALLUS MORIĒNS

ūnum Cūriātium nōn longē ab sēsē abesse. In eum magnō impetū redit, et dum Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiīs ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius caesō hoste victor secundam pugnam petēbat.

a. **Cōnsertīs manibus,** abl. abs.; **alius super alium,** *one upon another;* **gaudiō,** abl. of cause, *for joy;* **ut distraheret hostēs,** *that he might separate the enemy;* **aliquantum spatī,** *somewhat of space, a considerable distance;* **magnō impetū,** *with great fury;* **ut opem ferant frātrī,** *that they should bring aid to*

their brother; **caesō hoste,** *the enemy having been slain, having slain his enemy, after slaying his enemy.*

Colloquium

508. 1. Cōnsertīs manibus quī statim cecidērunt? 2. Erantne Albānī integrī? 3. Quō modō cāsus Rōmānōrum ab exercitū Albānō acceptus est? 4. Habēbantne Rōmānī spem victōriae? 5. Cūr Horātius integer fugere coepit? 6. Quid respiciēns Horātius vīdit? 7. Quō modō Horātius in prīmum Cūriātium redit? 8. Impetū in ūnum ex Curiātiīs factō quid exercitus Albānus inclāmāvit? 9. Ūnō hoste caesō quid Horātius fēcit?

CONJUGATION

Perfect Tense

509. **Amātus sum,** *I was (have been) loved;* **vīsus sum,** *I was (have been) seen;* **missus sum,** *I was (have been) sent;* **audītus sum,** *I was (have been) heard.*

Singular

amātus sum	vīsus sum	missus sum	audītus sum
amātus es	vīsus es	missus es	audītus es
amātus est	vīsus est	missus est	audītus est

Plural

amātī sumus	vīsī sumus	missī sumus	audītī sumus
amātī estis	vīsī estis	missī estis	audītī estis
amātī sunt	vīsī sunt	missī sunt	audītī sunt

Past Perfect Tense

510. **Amātus eram,** *I had been loved;* **vīsus eram,** *I had been seen;* **missus eram,** *I had been sent;* **audītus eram,** *I had been heard.*

Singular

amātus eram	vīsus eram	missus eram	audītus eram
amātus erās	vīsus erās	missus erās	audītus erās
amātus erat	vīsus erat	missus erat	audītus erat

PLURAL

amātī erāmus	vīsī erāmus	missī erāmus	audītī erāmus
amātī erātis	vīsī erātis	missī erātis	audītī erātis
amātī erant	vīsī erant	missī erant	audītī erant

Future Perfect Tense

511. **Amātus erō,** *I shall have been loved;* **vīsus erō,** *I shall have been seen;* **missus erō,** *I shall have been sent;* **audītus erō,** *I shall have been heard.*

SINGULAR

amātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō.	audītus erō
amātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris	audītus eris
amātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit	audītus erit

PLURAL

amātī erimus	vīsī erimus	missī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	vīsī eritis	missī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	vīsī erunt	missī erunt	audītī erunt

a. The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive voice are conjugated alike in all the conjugations.

b. In the compound tenses of the passive voice the participle agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number.

SYNTAX

512. **In the third person singular of the passive voice a verb is sometimes used impersonally, with no subject except that which is implied in the meaning of the verb.** (58)

Pugnātur, *there is fighting, a battle is going on.*

a. If the impersonal verb is in a compound tense of the passive, the participle is neuter. **Pugnātum est,** *a (the) battle took place.*

513. **The manner of an action may be denoted by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition *cum*. With certain nouns in very common use, (*modō vī, certāmine,* etc.) and with nouns modified by adjectives, the preposition may be omitted.** (59)

Magnā cum voluptāte, *with great pleasure;* **magnō impetū,** *with great fury;* **quō modō,** *in what manner? how?* **certāmine contendere,** *to strive in a contest.*

Practice

514. In the blanks below supply in succession the perfect passive participles of the following verbs, giving each verb a suitable subject. In this way complete the third person singular and the third person plural of the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. Give the English translation of each completed sentence. Taking the verb **dēterreō** for example:

Iuvenis dēterritus est, erat, erit: *the youth was deterred, had been deterred, will have been deterred.*

Iuvenēs dēterritī sunt, erant, erunt; *the youths were deterred, had been deterred, will have been deterred.*

dēcerpō	**faciō**	**moveō**	**vincō**
distrahō	**fīniō**	**quaerō**	**vulnerō**

——(subject) ——(participle) est, erat, erit.
——(subject) ——(participle) sunt, erant, erunt.

LATIN WRITING

515. 1. War had been prepared by the Romans and the Albans. 2. An agreement has been made between the leaders. 3. These (hae) are the terms (laws) of the treaty which was made between the two kings. 4. That people whose citizens shall have been conquered by the sword shall give the supremacy to the other (dative of alter). 5. When hand to hand fighting began (hands having been joined), two Romans fell. 6. The fight took place (it was fought) a considerable distance (somewhat of space) from the city. 7. Horatius flees, but one Curiatius is not far from him. 8. Him with great fury Horatius attacks

(seeks). 9. Now one enemy had been slain and Horatius was victor (one enemy having been slain).

VOCABULARY

516.

Group I

coepī	impetus	quaerō	vincō
ferō	pōnō	spēs	vulnerō

Group II

aufugiō	cāsus	distrahō	inclāmō
caedō	conclāmō	gaudium	redeō

Group III

aliquantum	clādēs	dēserō	impār
circumstō	cōnserō	exspīrō	quia

Derived English Words

case *distract* *impetus* *quest*

Related English Words

circumstance *expiration* *inquire* *invincible*

a. From what part of the Latin verb are *distract* and *quest* derived? What English word is derived from the same form of dēserō.

WRITTEN REVIEW

517. Make out synopses of parō, moveō, pōnō, and impediō in the third person singular and the third person plural through the six tenses of the indicative passive and give the English translation of each form. Assume a masculine subject of moveō, a feminine subject of impediō, and neuter subjects of parō and pōnō.

CHAPTER XLIII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

518. In nouns of the fifth declension the nominative singular ends in **-ēs** and the genitive in **-ēī** or **eī**. The other case-endings are similar to those of the third declension, except the ending of the genitive plural (**-ērum**), which more closely resembles the genitive plural of the first and second declensions (**-ārum, -ōrum**).

The similarity of the cases in the different declensions, *e. g.*, the final **s** in the nominatives **hortus, hostis, portus, diēs,** and the final **m** in the accusatives **stellam, hortum, templum, hostem, portum, diem,** is an indication that the five declensions are only variations of a single type.

HŌRAE ET DIĒS

519. 1. Ūnus diēs quattuor et vīgintī hōrās habet. 2. In ūnō diē sunt hōrae vīgintī quattuor. 3. Apud Rōmānōs diēs duodecim hōrās habēbat. 4. Nox quoque duodecim habēbat hōrās. 5. Hōrae diēī ab oriente sōle ad occāsum sōlis pertinēbant. 6. Noctis hōrae ab occāsū sōlis ad orientem sōlem pertinēbant. 7. Aestāte hōrae diēī longae, noctis hōrae brevēs erant. 8. Hieme noctis hōrae longae, diēī brevēs erant. 9. Hieme brevēs, aestāte longī, sunt diēs. 10. Diem sōl, lūna noctem regit. 11. Hōrae diēī erant prīma, secunda, tertia, quārta, quīnta, sexta, septima, octāva, nōna, decima, ūndecima, duodecima. 12. Noctis hōrae iīsdem (same) nōminibus vocātae sunt. 13. Nox est dīvīsa in vigiliās quattuor, quārum quisque (each) trēs hōrās habēbat.

14. In ūnō mēnse sunt diēs trīgintā aut trīgintā ūnus. 15. Februārius minōrem diērum numerum habet. 16. Annus duodecim mēnsīs habet. 17. Sunt in annō diēs trecentī sexāgintā quīnque. 18. Apud Rōmānōs nōmina diērum nōn eadem erant quae nōbīs sunt nōta. 19. Rōmānī prīmō mēnsis diēī nōmen Kalendās dedērunt.

DOMUS TIBERĪ IMPERĀTŌRIS IN PALĀTIŌ

20. Ultimus diēs mēnsis prīdiē Kalendās vocātus est. 21. In mēnsibus Mārtiō, Māiō, Iūliō, Octōbrī, septimus diēs Nōnae, quīntus decimus Īdūs est vocātus. 22. In reliquīs mēnsibus, Iānuāriō, Februāriō, Aprīlī, Iūniō, Augustō, Septembrī, Novembrī, Decembrī, Nōnae in diem quīntum, Īdūs in diem tertium decimum incidērunt.

NOTE.—The Romans designated the days of the months by numbers, counting backward from the *Nones*, the *Ides*, and the *Kalends*, respectively. The day immediately preceding the Nones (Ides, Kal-

ends) was called **prīdiē Nōnās (Īdūs, Kalendās) Iānuāriās, Septembrēs,** *etc.*, (the name of the month being used as an adjective). The second day (as we count) before the Nones (Ides, Kalends) was called by the Romans **ante diem tertium Nōnās (Īdūs, Kalendās) Iūliās, Decembrēs,** *etc.* In counting backward the Romans, contrary to our custom, called the Nones, the Ides, or the Kalends number one; and hence the twentieth day of March (the twelfth day before the first of April as we count) in the Roman calendar is **ante diem tertium decimum Kalendās Aprīlēs.**

In dates we should expect to find the ablative case, **diē tertiō decimō ante Kalendās;** but the Latin idiom is **ante diem tertium decimum Kalendās Aprīlēs,** which is usually abbreviated as follows: **a. d. XIII Kal. Apr.** The Nones, Ides, and Kalends used as dates are in Latin **Nōnīs, Īdibus, Kalendīs.**

The Romans designated the year by counting from the founding of Rome, **ab urbe conditā,** or by using the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute with the noun **cōnsulibus: Brutō et Tarquiniō cōnsulibus.** We use the calendar prescribed by Julius Caesar and modified by Pope Gregory XIII.

A table of Roman numerals is given in section 842.

Colloquium

520. 1. Quot hōrās ūnus diēs habet? 2. Apud Rōmānōs quot hōrās diēs habēbat? Quot hōrās nox? 3. Quam diū hōrae diēī pertinēbant? Quam diū hōrae noctis? 4. Quandō diēs longī sunt? 5. Quandō longae noctēs sunt? 6. Quibus nōminibus hōrae vocātae sunt? 7. Quot in partēs nox dīvīsa est? 8. Quot diēs mēnsis habet? Quot diēs annus? 9. Quī diēs Kalendae vocātus est? Quī diēs prīdiē Kalendās? 10. In quem diem Nōnae incidērunt? In quem diem Īdūs?

READING EXERCISE

521. 1. Duōbus Horātiīs caesīs Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. 2. Rōmānīs caesīs Albānī gaudiō conclāmāvērunt. 3. In ūnum Horātium trēs Cūriātiī impetum faciunt. 4. Ille sēnsit sē tribus esse imparem.

5. Fugiēns vīdit hostem nōn longē ab sēsē abesse. 6. Ūnō Cūriātiō caesō Horātius secundum hostem petit.

Colloquium

522. 1. Quanta spēs, duōbus mīlitibus caesīs, Rōmānīs erat? 2. Quā dē causā Albānī conclāmāvērunt? 3. Quī in Horātium impetum fēcērunt? 4. Quid Horātius sēnsit? 5. Quid Horātius fugiēns vīdit? 6. Ūnō hoste caesō quid Horātius fēcit?

RŌMĀNĪ HORĀTIUM VICTŌREM ACCIPIUNT

523. Tunc clāmōre Rōmānī adiuvant mīlitem suum, et ille alterum Cūriātium cōnficit. Iamque aequātō Mārte singulī supererant sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. Alter erat intāctus ferrō et geminātā victōriā atrōx; alter fessum vulnere, fessum cursū trahēbat corpus. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns male sustinentem arma Cūriātium cōnficit; iacentem spoliat. Rōmānī ovantēs Horātium accipiunt et domum dēdūcunt.

a. **Clāmōre**, abl. means (sec. 30); **aequātō Mārte**, abl. abs. (sec. 488); **spē**, *in hope;* **vīribus**, *in strength* (sec. 526); **victōriā, vulnere, cursū**, abl. of cause (sec. 376); **iacentem**, in agreement with pronoun not expressed referring to **Cūriātium**; **domum**, place to which (sec. 163).

Colloquium

524. 1. Quō modō Rōmānī mīlitem suum adiuvant? 2. Alterō Cūriātiō cōnfectō nōnne singulī mīlitēs spē et vīribus parēs erant? 3. Uter intāctus ferrō et victōriā atrōx erat? 4. Uter fessus cursū, fessus vulnere erat? 5. Quō modō Rōmānī Horātium accipiunt?

TYPICAL NOUNS

525.

Nom., **diēs**;	gen., **diēī**;	m., *day.*
Nom., **rēs**;	gen., **reī**;	f., *thing.*

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī (-eī)	-ērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī (-eī)	-ēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

a. Diēs and rēs are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are found in all the cases. Some others have the singular entire and the nominative and the accusative plural.

b. The nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is regularly masculine in the singular and always masculine in the plural; but diēs may be feminine in the singular when it means *time* or *an appointed day.*

c. In the fifth declension the stem ends in ē.

d. In the genitive and dative singular -ēī (long e) is found after a vowel, and -eī (short e) after a consonant. Diēī, reī.

SYNTAX

526. **A noun in the ablative case may specify in what respect the meaning of a verb or an adjective applies. This is called the ablative of specification.** (60)

Nec spē nec vīribus parēs, *equal neither in hope nor in strength.*

Practice

527. Make a table to show the Roman names of all the days in the month in which this chapter is studied, observing the statements made in section 519 and in the note following the same. Refer to section 842 for the Roman numerals.

LATIN WRITING

528. 1. This month has thirty-one days. 2. The next month (proximus) will have thirty days. 3. All the months do not have the same (eundem) number of days. 4. The months are not equal in the number of days.

5. In one day three Albans were slain. 6. That was a sad day for the Albans. 7. Horatius and Curiatius were not equal in hope. 8. They were not equal in strength. 9. One was uninjured by the sword; the other was weak from a wound. 10. His enemies having been slain, Horatius was conducted home by the Romans.

VOCABULARY

529.

Group I

cōnficiō	diēs	pār	quīntus
decimus	nōnus	pertineō	septimus
dēdūcō	octāvus	quārtus	sextus

Group II

aequō	Īdūs	Nōnae	prīdiē
atrōx	Kalendae	occāsus	sustineō
iaceō	minor	oriēns	vigilia

Group III

duodecimus	geminātus	ovāns	spoliō
exsultāns	intāctus	sexāgintā	trecentī

Derived English Words

atrocious	*exult*	*octave*	*orient*

Related English Words

calendar	*confectionary*	*occasion*	*quartet*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

intāctus	spoliō	sustineō	vigilia

WRITTEN REVIEW

530. 1. Write the declension of diēs and rēs from memory.

2. Make a table showing the Roman names of all the days in the months of January and March.

3. Write the Latin for July fourth, December twenty-fifth, and the day on which this work is done.

CHAPTER XLIV

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quis and *Quī*

531. The interrogative, **quis**, *who?* **quid**, *what?* is generally used as a substantive, *i. e.*, as a noun, and **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *what?* as an adjective.

Quis fābulam dē Atalantā nārrāvit, *who told the story of Atalanta?*

Quid victīs datum est, *what was given to the vanquished?*

Quod praemium victor accēpit, *what prize did the victor receive?*

The interrogative **quī** is declined like the relative **quī** (section 469). In the declension of **quis** there is no distinction in the singular between the masculine and the feminine; in the neuter the form in the nominative and the accusative is **quid**. In the plural **quis** and **quī** are declined like the relative **quī**.

SCRĪPTŌRĒS RŌMĀNĪ

532. 1. *Pater.* Quis venit?

2. *Filius.* Ego, fīlius tuus, veniō.

3. *P.* Unde venīs, fīlī?

4. *F.* Ā magistrō veniō.

5. *P.* Quid est quod in manibus tē habēre videō? Librōsne habēs?

6. *F.* Librōs habeō quōs magister mihi hodiē dedit.

7. *P.* Quot librōs habēs?

8. *F.* Habeō librōs quīnque.

9. *P.* Quī sunt istōrum librōrum scrīptōrēs?

10. *F.* Ūnīus Caesar, alterīus Cicerō, tertiī Vergilius, quārtī Līvius, quīntī Ovidius est scrīptor.

11. *P.* Quibus dē rēbus istī librī scrīptī sunt?

12. *F.* Caesaris liber est dē bellō Gallicō; Cicerōnis liber habet ōrātiōnēs quattuor dē coniūrātiōne Catilīnae; Vergilius duodecim librōs scrīpsit dē illō virō quī prīmus ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliam vēnit; Līvius multa dē Rōmā antīquā scrīpsit; Ovidius fābulās mīrās nārrāvit.

13. *P.* Quī vir prīmus ab ōrīs Trōiae in Ītaliam vēnit?

14. *F.* Aenēās cum multīs comitibus in Ītaliam vēnit atque ibi urbem Lāvīnium aedificāvit.

TITUS LĪVIUS

15. *P.* Num tū istōs librōs omnēs lēgistī?

16. *F.* Nōn omnēs sed partem eōrum magnā cum voluptāte lēgī; mox reliquōs legam.

17. *P.* Cuius librōs maximā cum voluptāte lēgistī?

18. *F.* Illī librī mihi optimī esse videntur quī ā Līviō scrīptī sunt.

19. *P.* Nōnne Caesaris librī quoque bonī sunt?

20. *F.* Caesar est scrīptor bonus sed Līvius mihi melior esse vidētur.

21. *P.* Uter est melior scrīptor, Cicerō an Vergilius?

22. *F.* Nesciō. Cicerō clārus ōrātor, Vergilius magnus poēta fuit.

23. *P.* Quālis poēta Ovidius fuit?

24. *F.* Imāginēs rērum eum magis quam rēs ipsae dēlectābant.

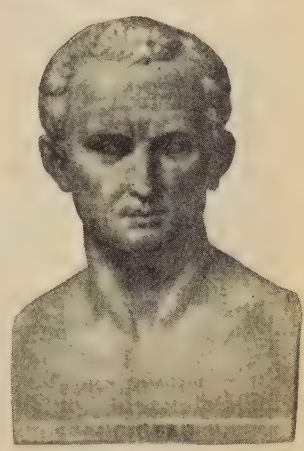
PRĪNCIPIUM ŌRĀTIŌNIS PRĪMAE IN CATILĪNAM Ā CICERŌNE HABITAE

(Adapted)

533. Catilīna impius cīvis cum sociīs scelerātīs coniūrātiōnem contrā rem pūblicam fēcit. Posteā in senātum

vēnit. Tum Cicerō cōnsul ōrātiōnem in (against) eum habuit, cuius hoc erat prīncipium.

Quoūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs ēlūdet? Quem ad fīnem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? Nōnne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī mōvit? Nōnne timor populī, nōnne concursus bonōrum omnium, nōnne senātōrum ōra vultūsque tē mōvērunt? Hōs omnēs scientiam coniūrātiōnis tuae habēre nōnne vidēs? Quid proximā nocte ēgistī? Quid superiōre nocte? Ubi fuistī? Quōs convocāvistī? Quod cōnsilium cēpistī? Quem nostrum haec omnia ignōrāre exīstimās?



CICERŌ

Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit et pūblicī cōnsilī fit particeps.

a. **Abūtēre,** second person singular future of **abūtor,** passive form with active meaning; **abūtēre patientiā,** *will you abuse (take advantage of) our patience;* **nocturnum praesidium Palātī,** *the guarding of the Palatine hill by night;* **bonōrum,** *of good men;* **nocte,** ablative denoting time; **fit,** *becomes.*

MOVET HORĀTIUM COMPLŌRĀTIŌ SORŌRIS

534. Prīnceps ībat Horātius trium frātrum spolia prae sē gerēns. Cui obvia fuit soror, quae dēspōnsa fuerat ūnī ex Cūriātiīs, vīsōque super umerōs frātris palūdāmentō spōnsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcerat, flēre et crīnēs solvere coepit. Movet ferōcis iuvenis animum complōrātiō sorōris in tantō pūblicō gaudiō; atque strictō gladiō trānsfīxit puellam

simul eam verbīs increpāns: "Abī hinc cum immātūrō amōre ad spōnsum, oblīta frātrum, oblīta patriae. Sīc eat quaecumque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem."

PALŪDĀMENTUM

a. **Cui . . . soror,** *whom his sister met, who was met by his sister;* **abī hinc,** *go hence;* **eat,** *may she go;* **quaecumque Rōmāna,** *whatever Roman woman.*

COLLOQUIUM

535. 1. Quid Horātius prae sē gerēbat? 2. Quis Horātiō ferōcī obvia fuit? 3. Cuius palūdāmentum Horātius super umerōs habēbat? 4. Quid palūdāmentō vīsō soror Horātī ēgit? 5. Cūr soror Horātī flēvit? 6. Quid mōvit iuvenis animum? 7. Cūr iuvenis puellam trānsfīxit? 8. Quibus verbīs Horātius sorōrem increpuit? 9. Quālis frāter erat Horātius? Nōnne crūdēlis fuit? 10. Eratne puella spōnsī oblīta?

536. DECLENSION OF *QUIS*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The interrogative **quī** is declined like the relative **quī.** (See section 469.)

SYNTAX

537. ***Quis*** **and** ***quī*** **are interrogative pronouns;** ***quis*** **is generally used as a substantive,** ***quī*** **as an adjective.** (61)

Quis venit? *who is coming?* **quī vir vēnit?** *what man came?*

a. Besides the interrogative pronouns the following interrogative words are in common use:

(1) **Uter,** *which?* is used with reference to one of two persons or things. **Frātrum uter nōmen urbī dedit?** *which of the (two) brothers gave the name to the city?*

(2) **Quot,** *how many?* is an indeclinable adjective. **Quot librōs habēs?** *how many books have you?*

(3) **Num** implies the answer *no;* **nōnne** implies the answer *yes;* the enclitic **-ne** implies nothing about the answer to the question asked. **Num omnēs librōs lēgistī?** *you have not read all the books, have you?* **nōnne Caesar magnus fuit imperātor?** *was not Caesar a great general?* **lēgistīne librōs Caesaris?** *have you read the books of Caesar?*

(4) **Cūr,** *why?* **quandō,** *when?* **quō,** *whither?* **ubi,** *where?* and **unde,** *whence?* are interrogative adverbs.

(5) **Quantus,** *how large?* **quālis,** *of what kind?* **quotus,** *which* (in numerical order)? are interrogative adjectives. **Quanta īnsula est Britannia?** *how large an island is Britain?* **quālis scrīptor fuit Līvius?** *what kind of a writer was Livy?* **quota hōra est?** *what hour is it?*

Practice

538. Write Latin questions to which the following sentences may be answers. Then translate questions and answers.

1. Horātius prīmus ībat. 2. Horātius spolia trium frātrum prae sē gerēbat. 3. Soror Horātī ūnī ex Cūriātiīs dēspōnsa erat. 4. Catilīna impius cīvis erat. 5. Catilīna in senātum vēnit. 6. Multōs diēs furor Catilīnae senātum ēlūdēbat. 7. Proximā nocte, Catilīna, sociōs convocāvistī. 8. Nēmō nostrum haec omnia ignōrat. 9. Catilīna adhūc vīvit. 10. Prīmam partem ōrātiōnis ā Cicerōne in Catilīnam habitae lēgī.

LATIN WRITING

539. 1. What brothers were fighting on the side of the Romans? 2. Who were fighting for the Albans? 3. Who survived as victor? 4. One of (from) the Horatii was victor. 5. Horatius was carrying in his hands the

spoils of the three Curiatii. 6. Over his shoulders he had the cloak which his sister had made for her betrothed. 7. Seeing the cloak which she had made, Horatius' sister weeps. 8. What kind of brother was Horatius? 9. How much love had he for (of) his sister?

VOCABULARY

540.

Group I

agō	eō (verb)	ignōrō	praesidium
audācia	exīstimō	ōrātiō	rēs pūblica
convocō	furor	ōrātor	senātus

Group II

abūtor	crūdēlis	melior	simul
coniūrātiō	ēlūdō	nocturnus	spolium
contrā	iactō	prae	tandem

Group III

an	immātūrus	palūdāmentum	spōnsus
complōrātiō	impius	patientia	stringō
dēspōnsus	lūgeō	quīcumque	trānsfīgō
effrēnātus	oblītus	quoūsque	vultus

Derived English Words

abuse *ignorant* *senate* *spoil* (noun)

Related English Words

ameliorate *audacity* *fury* *sponsor*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

ēlūdō immātūrus ōrātiō patientia

WRITTEN REVIEW

541. 1. Make a list of the Latin interrogative words found in the reading text of this chapter and give the English meaning of each.

2. Write out the complete declension of quī; then cross out those forms in which the declension of quis is different, and substitute the correct forms of quis.

CHAPTER XLV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

542. The Latin adjective, like the adjective in English, has different forms to denote the different degrees of comparison. The degrees of comparison are the positive, the comparative, and the superlative; and they are distinguished by characteristic terminations. The ordinary form of the adjective is the positive degree; in the comparative degree the nominative case ends in **-ior,** masculine and feminine, and **-ius,** neuter; in the superlative degree the nominative endings are generally **-issimus, -issima, -issimum.** The comparative degree is declined like nouns of the third declension and the superlative like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Following an adjective in the comparative degree **quam** is sometimes used as the equivalent of the English *than;* sometimes **quam** is omitted and the comparative is followed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case.

VERGILIUS

READING EXERCISE

543. 1. Vergilius fuit clārus poēta; Horātius fuit clārior; omnium poētārum antīquōrum Homērus fuit clārissimus. 2. Horātius fuit clārior quam Vergilius; Homērus clārior Horātiō fuit. 3. Rōma est urbs antīqua; Carthāgō est antīquior; Trōia

est antīquissima. 4. Trōia est Carthāgine antīquior. 5. Inter Galliam et Hispāniam sunt Pȳrēnaeī montēs. 6. Illī montēs sunt altī, sed altiōrēs illīs sunt Alpēs, quōs Hannibal magnō cum exercitū superāvit. 7. Omnium montium quōs Hannibal vīderat Alpēs erant altissimī. 8. Flūmen Tiberis est altum. 9. Omnium flūminum Ītaliae Tiberis est altissimus. 10. Mare autem est flūmine Tiberī multō altius. 11. Vīdistīne flūmen Tiberī altius?

HOMĒRUS

12. Ingenium Rōmulī erat ferōx. 13. Tullus ferōcior quam Rōmulus fuit. 14. Trium hominum is quī suam sorōrem trānsfīxit fuit ferōcissimus. 15. Pugna cum Sabīnīs erat trīstis. 16. Trīstius erat proelium inter Horātiōs et Cūriātiōs. 17. Ille diēs erat trīstissimus quō (on which) frāter sorōrem trānsfīxit. 18. Omnia bella sunt trīstissima. 19. Ex bellō trīstī pāx est omnibus cārior.

COLLOQUIUM

544. 1. Nōnne clārus poēta Vergilius fuit? 2. Fuitne Vergilius clārior quam Horātius? 3. Quis Horātiō clārior fuit? 4. Hōrum omnium quis clārissimus fuit? 5. Quae urbs antīquior Carthāgine fuit? 6. Rōma et Carthāgō et Trōia erant urbēs antīquae; hārum omnium quae urbs antīquissima fuit? 7. Quantī montēs inter Galliam et Ītaliam sunt? 8. Omnium Ītaliae flūminum quod flūmen est altissimum? 9. Utrum Rōmulus an Tullus ferōcior fuit? 10. Quālis homō erat is quī sorōrem trānsfīxit?

HORĀTIUS APUD IŪDICĒS CONDEMNĀTUS EST

545. Atrōx id vīsum est facinus patribus plēbīque; quārē raptus est in iūs Horātius et apud iūdicēs condem-

nātus (est). Iam accesserat līctor iniciēbatque laqueum. Tum Horātius ad populum prōvocāvit. Intereā pater eius ōrābat populum nē sē orbum līberīs faceret. Nōn tulit populus patris lacrimās iuvenemque absolvit admīrātiōne magis virtūtis quam iūre causae.

LĪCTŌRĒS

a. **Nē . . . faceret,** *not to make him childless;* **līberīs,** ablative of separation (sec. 551); **admīrātiōne,** ablative of cause (sec. 376).

COLLOQUIUM

546. 1. Quāle facinus Horātius fēcit? 2. Cūr Horātius condemnātus est? 3. Quārē Horātius poenam nōn dedit? 4. Quid pater Horātī populum ōrāvit? 5. Populusne patrem Horātī orbum līberīs fēcit? 6. Utrum lacrimīs patris an iūre causae Horātius absolūtus est?

COMPARISON OF TYPICAL ADJECTIVES

547. The comparative degree is regularly formed by dropping the final vowel from the stem of the positive and adding **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The superlative is formed by adding to the same base **-issimus, -issima, -issimum,** for the masculine, feminine, and neuter respectively.

POSITIVE	STEM	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	alto-	altior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
antīquus	antīquo-	antīquior, -ius	antīquissimus, -a, -um
clārus	clāro-	clārior, -ius	clārissimus, -a, -um
ferōx	ferōci-	ferōcior, -ius	ferōcissimus, -a, -um
trīstis	trīsti-	trīstior, -ius	trīstissimus, -a, -um

a. Some adjectives are compared by prefixing **magis**, *more,* and **maximē**, *most,* to the positive. Most adjectives ending in **-ōsus** and in **-us** preceded by a vowel are compared in this manner: **bellicōsus, magis bellicōsus, maximē bellicōsus,** *warlike, more warlike, most warlike.*

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

548. **Altior, altius**; *higher, deeper.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs (-īs)	altiōra
Voc.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

a. The ablative singular of the comparative always ends in **-e**; the genitive plural in **-um**; and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in the neuter gender ends in **-a**. In these cases an adjective in the comparative degree differs from regular adjectives of the third declension. (See section 316.)

SYNTAX

549. **An adjective in the comparative degree may be followed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case to designate the object with which anything is compared.** (62)

Homērus clārior Vergiliō fuit, *Homer was more famous than Vergil.*

a. **Quam,** meaning *than,* is often used after the comparative, and the two nouns compared are then in the same case. **Tullus ferōcior quam Rōmulus fuit,** *Tullus was more fierce than Romulus.*

If the first of the two nouns compared is in any case except the nominative or the accusative, **quam** is always used. **Pāx cārior Rōmulō quam Tullō erat,** *peace was dearer to Romulus than to Tullus.*

550. **The degree of difference denoted by the comparative is expressed by the ablative case.** (63)

Multō altiōrēs sunt Alpēs quam Pȳrēnaeī, *the Alps are much higher than the Pyrenees.*

551. Verbs and adjectives denoting separation may be followed by the ablative without a preposition. (64)

Pater Horātī ōrābat populum nē sē orbum līberīs faceret, *the father of Horatius entreated the people that they should not make him childless (bereft of children).*

PRACTICE

552. 1. In each of the following examples complete the comparison of the adjectives by supplying the two forms which are lacking.

(1) Aestāte diēs longī, ———, ———— sunt.
(2) Aestāte noctēs ——, breviōrēs, ———— sunt.
(3) Tullus Hostīlius ——, ———, ferōcissimus erat.
(4) Lēgēs certāminis saevae, ———, ———— erant.
(5) Facinus Horātī ——, atrōcius, ———— erat.
(6) Procī Atalantae ——, ———, tardissimī erant.

2. Complete the following sentences.

(1) Iuvenēs tard—— quam Atalant—— erant. (2) Atalanta vēlōc—— proc—— erat. (3) Omnium procō-rum vēlōc——— erat Hippomenēs.

LATIN WRITING

553. 1. The deed of Tarpeia was cruel. 2. The murder of Remus was more cruel. 3. The crime of Horatius seems (vidētur) most cruel of all. 4. The times of the ancient Romans were more cruel than ours.

5. The crime of Horatius seemed to the fathers cruel. 6. The judges condemned Horatius, who had been hurried to trial (having been hurried to trial). 7. "I shall be bereft of all my children," Horatius' father said. 8. The people did not make him childless (bereft of children). 9. Horatius was acquitted more on account of his father's tears than because of the justice of his cause.

VOCABULARY

554.

Group I

accēdō	ingenium	nē	magis
faciō	lacrima	trīstis	quam (adv.)

Group II

admīrātiō	iniciō	līctor	plēbs
facinus	iūdex	multō	quārē

Group III

absolvō	condemnō	laqueus	prōvocō

Derived English Words

absolve	*accede*	*admiration*	*provoke*

Related English Words

accession	*condemnation*	*judicial*	*provocation*

a. Many Latin words have been formed by combining prepositions with other words, particularly verbs, and the same combinations appear in the English derivatives; as, ab-solvō (to free from), *absolve;* prō-vocō (to call forth), *provoke;* in-iaciō, iniciō (to throw upon), *inject.* Sometimes the final consonant of the preposition is changed to correspond to the first consonant of the following word, as in accēdō for ad-cēdō, and assimulātiō for ad-simulātiō. This change is called *assimilation.*

WRITTEN REVIEW

555. 1. Write the positive, the comparative, and the superlative forms of saevus with masculine endings, of vēlōx with feminine endings, and of longus with neuter endings, in the nominative and accusative cases, singular and plural.

2. What are the two ways of expressing *than* with comparatives? Find an illustration of each.

CHAPTER XLVI

SUPERLATIVES IN *-LIMUS* AND *-RIMUS*

556. Certain adjectives have superlative forms ending in -limus or -rimus.

Adjectives which end in **-er** in the positive have the termination **-rimus** in the superlative; as,

miser, -era, -erum; miserior, -ius; miserrimus, -a, -um.

Six adjectives ending in -lis form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem of the positive after dropping the final vowel; as,

facilis, -e; facilior, -ius; facillimus, -a, -um.

AUDĀX GĒNS HŪMĀNA EST

Sententia Horātī

557. Vergilius ōlim iter Rōmā faciēbat Athēnās. Horātius igitur, quī Vergilium maximē amābat, ōrāvit nāvem ut amīcum incolumem in portum Athēnārum veheret. Ventōs ōrāvit ut nāvem regerent. Haec in carmine pulchrō Horātius scrīpsit.

HORĀTIUS POĒTA

Audāx erat is quī prīmus nāvem fragilem marī perīculōsō commīsit nec ventōs timuit. Nēquīquam Iuppiter terrās ab ōceanō dīvīsit sī tamen impiae nāvēs mare trānsiliunt.

Audāx gēns hūmāna est. Audāx Promētheus ignem dē caelō fraude hominibus intulit. Audāx Daedalus per caelum volāre cōnātus est. Nihil mortālibus difficilius

est. Caelum ipsum petimus nec Iovem patimur īram pōnere.

a. **Rōmā**, sec. 165; **Athēnās**, sec. 163; **ut . . . veheret**, *to carry;* **ut . . . regerent**, *to guide;* **intulit**, from **īnferō**; **hominibus**, sec. 266; **cōnātus est**, (*he*) *attempted;* **difficilius**, *too hard;* **patimur**, *we permit.*

Colloquium

558. Unde quō-que Vergilius iter faciēbat? 2. Quid Horātius ōrāvit? 3. Nōnne audāx erat is quī prīmus mare

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

Pīraeus, Portus Athēnārum

nāvī fragilī trānsiluit? 4. Quāre nāvēs impiae sunt quae mare trānsiliunt? 5. Quid Promētheus hominibus intulit? 6. Cūr Iuppiter mortālibus īrātus est?

HORĀTIUS POĒTA ET HORĀTIUS MĪLES

559. 1. Quīdam discipulus magistrō hodiē miserrimus esse vidēbātur. 2. "Quam ob rem," magister rogat, "miserior es quam herī fuistī?" 3. "Herī," inquit puer, "librum Horātī poētae legere poteram; hodiē nōn possum." 4. "Cūr nōn hodiē," magister rogat, "eum legere potes?" 5. "Illa pars," respondet, "quam herī legēbam facilis erat;

haec quam hodiē legere nōn possum est difficillima; 6. sententiam reperīre nōn possum." 7. Magister, "Crās fortasse," inquit, "Horātius iterum facilior erit sī eius pulcherrimōs versūs legere cōnāberis (you try)."

8. Horātius mīles fuit multō ferōcior quam Horātius poēta. 9. Rōmulus frātrem, Horātius sorōrem interfēcit; hoc facinus multō ferōcius quam illud fuit. 10. Horātius ab iūdicibus condemnātus ad populum prōvocāvit. 11. Pater eum in poenam darī nōlēbat. 12. Sī Horātius in poenam datus erit, pater orbus līberīs erit. 13. Pugnā tam trīstī factā Horātius patrī multō cārior fuit quam anteā fuerat. 14. Horātius et Tullus ingeniō erant simillimī.

RŌMA CRĒSCIT ALBAE RUĪNĪS

560. Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnīs; duplicātur cīvium numerus, mōns Caelius urbī additur, et eam sēdem Tullus rēgiae capit ibique deinde habitāvit. Prīncipēs Albānōrum in patrēs lēgit; equitum decem turmās ex Albānīs lēgit; legiōnēs et veterēs explēvit et novās scrīpsit. Haud multō post pestilentia vēnit. Nūlla tamen ab armīs quiēs dabātur. Crēdēbat enim rēx bellicōsus salūbriōra mīlitiae quam domī esse iuvenum corpora, dōnec in ipsum longinquus vēnit morbus. Nūllī reī posthāc nisi sacrīs operam dabat. Tullus magnā glōriā bellī rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trīgintā.

a. **Ruīnīs**, ablative of cause (sec. 376); **salūbriōra** with **corpora**, predicate adjective; **mīlitiae** and **domī**, locative; **corpora**, subject of **esse**; **magnā glōriā**, ablative of manner (sec. 513).

Colloquium

561. 1. Quō modō Rōma crēscit? 2. Quem montem Tullus sēdem rēgiae cēpit? 3. Quōs in patrēs Tullus lēgit? 4. Quot turmās equitum scrīpsit? 5. Cūr, ubi pestilentia

vēnit, quiēs ab armīs nōn dabātur? 6. Eratne corpus rēgis salūbre? 7. Quam diū Tullus rēgnāvit?

SPECIAL FORMS OF COMPARISON

562. Positive in -er; superlative in -rimus.
Positive in -lis; superlative in -limus.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

SYNTAX

563. The comparative degree of the adjective is sometimes equivalent to *rather* or *too,* and the superlative to *very.* (65)

Meus liber difficilior, tuus facillimus est, *my book is rather hard, yours is very easy.*

PRACTICE

564. Complete the comparison of the following adjectives.

1. Ventus celer, ——, ——, est.
2. Carmina pulchra, ——, ——, sunt.
3. Mare perīculōsum, ——, ——, est.
4. Iter difficile, ——, ——, est.
5. Nāvēs fragilēs, ——, ——, sunt.

LATIN WRITING

565. 1. Of all the ancient cities in Italy Rome was the most beautiful. 2. It was not very difficult to conquer the Albans. 3. Rome grew because of the fall of Alba. 4. The chiefs of the Albans were chosen among the sena-

tors. 5. A pestilence which came not long (much) after did not give relief (rest) from war. 6. The bodies of the soldiers were more healthy in military service than at home. 7. Tullus reigned with great renown thirty-two years. 8. Because of a lingering disease Tullus was very unhappy. 9. His nature was too fierce. 10. Tullus sought an occasion for war.

VOCABULARY

566.

Group I

cōnor	īnferō	ōceanus	reperiō
difficilis	interim	patior	sententia
incolumis	legiō	regō	similis

Group II

anteā	dōnec	longinquus	quiēs
bellicōsus	expleō	mortālis	sēdēs
crēscō	haud	nēquīquam	vehō

Group III

duplicō	fraus	pestilentia	turma
fragilis	morbus	salūbris	versus

Derived English Words

difficult	*legion*	*ocean*	*sentence*

Related English Words

difficulty	*inference*	*morbid*	*mortality*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

duplicō	fragilis	mortālis	quiēs

WRITTEN REVIEW

567. 1. Write the declension of salūbris in the comparative degree.

2. Translate in two ways: (1) Daedalus erat audācior. (2) Nihil mortālibus difficilius est. (3) Volāre per caelum est difficillimum.

CHAPTER XLVII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

568. A few adjectives in very common use are compared in an irregular manner by changing the form of the stem or by substituting a different stem for the stem of the positive; for example,

magnus, *large;* **maior, maius**, *larger;* **maximus**, *largest.*
bonus, *good;* **melior, melius**, *better;* **optimus**, *best.*

The English *good, better, best,* affords a parallel.

READING EXERCISE

569. 1. Rōma est magna urbs. 2. Rōma est maxima urbs Ītaliae. 3. Rōma reliquīs Ītaliae urbibus est maior. 4. Situs Rōmae est superior quam Ōstiae. 5. Ītalia est inter duo maria; ūnā ex parte est Mare Superum, alterā ex parte est Mare Īnferum. 6. Mare Superum est minus quam Mare Īnferum. 7. In Ītaliā sunt multī montēs quōrum summus est Āpennīnus. 8. Summus mōns procul vidērī potest.

CĪVIS RŌMĀNUS

9. Apud Rōmānōs erant multī quī bonī cīvēs erant. 10. Cicerō melior cīvis quam Catilīna fuit. 11. Malus cīvis in poenam darī dēbet. 12. Malus cīvis peior habētur quam ācerrimus hostis. 13. Pessimī sunt iī quī bonī videntur et malī sunt. 14. Plūrēsne bonī vidērī quam esse bonī volunt? 15. Optimī cīvēs patriam maximē amant. 16. Multī cīvēs sunt dīvitēs,

plūrēs sunt egentēs, plūrimī neque egentēs neque dīvitēs sunt. 17. Erantne temporibus maiōrum nostrōrum plūrēs bonī quam temporibus nostrīs? 18. Dē rēbus maiōrum multa audīvimus; dē nostrīs rēbus minōrēs audient multa. 19. Ab maiōribus nostrīs multa accēpimus; minōribus nostrīs nōs dabimus multa.

Colloquium

570. 1. Eratne Catilīna cīvis bonus? 2. Quis erat illō melior? 3. Estne ācer hostis peior quam cīvis malus? 4. Quī cīvēs sunt optimī? 5. Quī maximē patriam amant? 6. Erantne tempora antīqua meliōra quam nostra?

GALLIA

Ex Librō Caesaris

571. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Gallī, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitutīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit; Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidunt.

C. Iūlius Caesar

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe veniunt atque ea quae effēminant animōs important. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

Helvētiī aut suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibent aut ipsī in Germānōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

a. **linguā, īnstitūtis, lēgibus, virtūte,** ablatives of specification (sec. 526); **inter sē,** *from one another;* **prōvinciae,** the southern part of Gaul, which was governed by the Romans.

Colloquium

572. 1. Quot in partēs Gallia dīvīsa est? 2. Quae gentēs eās partēs Galliae incolunt? 3. Quō nōmine Gallī sē appellant? 4. Quibus rēbus gentēs Gallicae inter sē differunt? 5. Quod flūmen Gallōs ab Aquitānīs dīvidit? 6. Quibus flūminibus Gallī ā Belgīs dīvīsī sunt? 7. Hōrum omnium quī fortissimī sunt? 8. Cūr Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt? 9. Quōrum in fīnibus Helvētiī bellum gerunt?

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

573. In the comparison of these adjectives the form of the stem is changed, or a different stem is substituted for the stem of the positive.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
superus	superior, superius	suprēmus, -a, -um summus, -a, -um
īnferus	īnferior, īnferius	īnfimus, -a, -um īmus, -a, -um
	prior, prius	prīmus, -a, -um

a. **Superus** and **īnferus** have two irregular forms in the superlative. **Prior** has no positive.

SYNTAX

574. Certain adjectives are used to denote a part of the thing modified by the adjective. (66)

Summus mōns, *the highest part of the mountain, the top of the mountain;* **mediā aestāte,** *in mid-summer;* **prīmā lūce,** *at dawn.*

Practice

575. Change each of the following adjectives to its opposite in the same case.

bonus	**magna**	**minimum**	**pessimī**
īnferior	**minōrēs**	**paucī**	**summum**

LATIN WRITING

576. 1. The moon is large, the earth is larger, the sun is the largest. 2. At midnight very many stars can be seen. 3. There are more trees in my garden than in yours. 4. There were many good poets among the Romans. 5. Of all the Roman poets Horace seems to me to be the best. 6. Livy was a better writer than Caesar, but Caesar was a very great general. 7. An unfaithful friend is worse than an enemy. 8. Those who are worst often seem to be good. 9. The tree tops (the highest trees) are higher than the house. 10. Romulus first built a wall around (circumdō with dative) the city of Rome. 11. At dawn I can hear the birds singing.

VOCABULARY

577.

Group I

bonus	**hūmānitās**	**magnus**	**parvus**
fortis	**īnferus**	**malus**	**superus**

Group II

continenter	**ferē**	**īnstitūtum**	**minimē**
cotīdiānus	**importō**	**longissimē**	**minōrēs**
differō	**incolō**	**maiōrēs**	**procul**

Group III

cultus	**effēminō**	**praecēdō**	**situs**

Derived English Words

differ	*humanity*	*import*	*site*

Related English Words

institution	*majority*	*minority*	*situation*

WRITTEN REVIEW

578. Translate the following and explain the meanings of the adjectives.

1. Mediā aestāte calor est maximus. 2. Ab summō monte mare vidērī potest. 3. Bonī patriam amant. 4. Nostra nōbīs cāra sunt. 5. Nostrī ā nōbīs vestrī ā vōbīs amantur. 6. Multum in parvō. 7. Ē plūribus ūnum. 8. Ad astra per aspera. 9. Labor omnia vincit. 10. Deus omnia creāvit.

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

AMPULLA OLEĀRIA

CHAPTER XLVIII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

579. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, nouns, or pronouns by the use of adverbial terminations; for example,

benignus, *kind;* **benignē,** *kindly.*
celer, *swift;* **celeriter,** *swiftly.*
fors, *chance;* **forte,** *by chance.*

An adverb formed from an adjective is generally compared if the adjective admits of comparison. The comparative of the adverb regularly ends in **-ius** and the superlative in **-ē.**

Bene (bonus), *well;* **melius,** *better;* **optimē,** *best.*
Celeriter (celer), *swiftly;* **celerius,** *more swiftly;* **celerrimē,** *most swiftly,* or *very swiftly.*

COLLOQUIUM INTER PATREM ET FĪLIUM

580. 1. Ubi magister puerōs hodiē dīmīsit, Mārcus celeriter domum vēnit. 2. Cum eō pater sīc loquitur: 3. "Quid hodiē, fīlī, ēgistī?" 4. "Optimē," fīlius respondit. "Herī bene ēgī, sed multō melius hodiē." 5. "Quid," pater rogat, "hodiē fēcistī?" 6. "Librum Latīnum lēgī, quī mē maximē dēlectābat." 7. "Quid! num liber magis quam lūdus tē dēlectābat?" 8. "Certē, nam in eō plūrima magnā cum voluptāte lēgī." 9. "Quae sunt ista? Dīc mihi." 10. "Libenter tibi dīcam. 11. Hoc in librō lēgī: 12. Rōmānī bellum maximē amābant." 13. "Num semper pugnābant?" 14. "Nōn semper sed saepe bella gerēbant. 15. Tullus Hostīlius fuit rēx 'bellicōsissimus'!" 16. "Nōnne 'maximē bellicōsus' melius sonat?"

17. "Fortasse. Ille rēx bellicōsus iuvenēs in armīs tenēbat etiam cum pestilentia vēnit." 18. "Nōnne id atrōciter fēcit?" 19. "Nōn tam atrōciter quam benignē. Bellum crēdēbat corporibus mīlitum salūbrius esse quam pācem; benignē igitur eōs in armīs tenēbat." 20. "Eratne bellum rēgī ipsī salūbre?" 21. "Minimē. In rēgem ipsum longinquus morbus vēnit. Nūllī bellō posteā Tullus operam dedit." 22. "Num plūra hodiē lēgistī?" 23. "Aliō tempore dīcam; nam meum corpus salūbrius erit sī lūdīs operam dederō."

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

TEMPLUM ROTUNDUM

BELLUM HELVĒTICUM

Ex Librō Caesaris

581. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent et tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī cōnārentur. Id facile iīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvēticum ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus Helvētiī et minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre poterant. Itaque hominēs

bellicōsī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī cōnstituērunt pācem et amīcitiam cum proximīs cīvitātibus facere, et tertiō annō proficīscī et per prōvinciam Rōmānam domō exīre.

Caesar, hīs rēbus audītīs, mātūrat ab urbe Rōmā proficīscī et quam maximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit et ad Genāvam pervēnit. Deinde multīs proeliīs factīs Helvētiōs superātōs in dēditiōnem accēpit.

a. **cīvitātī,** indirect object, *he persuaded (to) the state,* i. e., *the citizens;* **ut . . . exīrent et . . . cōnārentur,** *to go forth and to attempt;* **imperiō potīrī,** *to obtain the supremacy;* **prō multitūdine hominum,** *in comparison with their population;* **proficīscī,** pres. infin., *to depart, to start;* **in dēditiōnem accēpit,** *received in surrender.*

Colloquium

582. 1. Quis apud Helvētiōs fuit nōbilissimus? 2. Quid Orgetorīx cīvitātī persuāsit? 3. Quārē facile cīvitātī persuāsit ut domō exīrent? 4. Quod flūmen Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit? 5. Quī mōns est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs? 6. Ubi est lacus Lemānnus? Ubi est flūmen Rhodanus? 7. Quam ob rem Helvētiī dolōre afficiēbantur? 8. Quanta erat longitūdō, quanta lātitūdō fīnium Helvēticōrum? 9. Quid Helvētiī facere cōnstituērunt? 10. Quō modō Caesar Helvētiōs superāvit?

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

583. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives, nouns, and pronouns.

(1) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by changing the ending **-us** to **-ē.** Be-

nignus, *kind,* **benignē,** *kindly;* **certus,** *certain,* **certē,** *certainly;* **maximus,** *greatest,* **maximē,** *most, very greatly.*

(2) Adverbs are also formed from adjectives of the third declension by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding the adverbial termination **-ter** or **-iter.** If the stem ends in **-nt,** t is dropped before the ending **-ter.** **Celer,** *quick,* **celeriter,** *quickly;* **atrōx,** *cruel,* **atrōciter,** *cruelly;* **libēns,** *willing,* **libenter,** *willingly.*

(3) Certain cases of nouns and adjectives are used as

RĒGIA CAESARUM IMPERĀTŌRUM

adverbs. **Forte** (abl.), *by chance;* **facile** (acc.), *easily;* **prīmum** (acc.), *first,* **prīmō** (abl.), *at first.*

(4) Some adverbs are formed from pronouns. From **hic,** *this,* **hīc,** *here,* **hūc,** *to this place, hither,* **hinc,** *from here, hence;* from **is,** *this,* **eō,** *in this place, there, thither;* from **quī,** *who,* **quō,** *whither;* from **ille,** *that,* **illō,** *in that place, thither.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

584. An adverb which is formed from an adjective is generally compared if the adjective admits of comparison.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb has the same peculiarity.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
audācter (audāx)	audācius	audācissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē

SYNTAX

585. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. (67)

Rōmānī bellum maximē amābant, *the Romans loved war very much.*

PRACTICE

586. Answer in Latin the following questions based on section 580, introducing an adverb in each answer.

1. Quandō magister puerōs dīmīsit? 2. Quō modō Mārcus domum vēnit? 3. Quid Mārcus herī ēgit? 4. Quid hodiē ēgit? 5. Quid pater fīlium rogāvit? 6. Utrum tardē an libenter puer patrī respondit? 7. Quotiēns Rōmānī pugnābant? 8. Quālis rēx erat Tullus Hostīlius? 9. Nōnne rēx atrōciter iuvenēs in armīs tenēbat? 10. Eratne bellum rēgī ipsī salūbre?

LATIN WRITING

587. 1. The river Tiber is not far from the city of Rome. 2. We are very far from Italy. 3. Yesterday we did well but today we are doing much better. 4. I will gladly give attention to my books today if I can (shall be able to) play tomorrow.

5. The warlike king kindly kept the young men in arms. 6. Tullus Hostilius reigned a long time. 7. Romulus reigned five years longer (longer by five years) than Tullus. 8. Numa reigned the longest of the three kings. 9. Another day we shall read about Ancus Marcius. 10. The days come very quickly.

VOCABULARY

588.

Group I

addūcō	**dīmittō**	**lacus**	**nōbilis**
auctōritās	**exeō**	**lātē**	**nōbilitās**
contineō	**facile** (adv.)	**mātūrō**	**persuādeō**

Group II

dēditiō	**fortitūdō**	**longitūdō**	**permoveō**
dītissimus	**lātitūdō**	**pateō**	**proficīscor**

Group III

afficiō	**atrōciter**	**minus**	**sonō**
arbitror	**dolor**	**potior**	**vagor**

Derived English Words

adduce	*contain*	*lake*	*noble*
affect	*fortitude*	*longitude*	*persuade*

Related English Words

affection *arbitration* *continental* *maturity*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

auctōritās	**exeō**	**lātitūdō**	**nōbilitās**

WRITTEN REVIEW

589. 1. From what adjectives have the following adverbs been formed?

atrōciter	**dīligenter**	**minimē**	**tardē**

2. Find an adverb formed from each of the following adjectives.

celer	**ferōx**	**lātus**	**maximus**

3. Give the comparison of one adverb ending in **-ē** and one ending in **-ter.**

CHAPTER XLIX

THE SUPINE STEM

590. Several Latin verb forms have as their common base the participial or supine stem. The supine stem is found in the perfect passive participle by dropping the case-ending **-us**, or, in the future active participle, by dropping the case-ending **-ūrus**; as, perfect passive participle, **amātus**, supine stem, **amāt-**; future active participle, **statūrus**, supine stem, **stat-**.

These verbal forms are the perfect passive infinitive, ending in **-us** (**-a, -um**) **esse**; the future active participle, ending in **-ūrus, -a, -um**; the future active infinitive, ending in **-ūrus** (**-a, -um**) **esse**; the supine, ending in **-um** or **-ū**; and the future passive infinitive, ending in **-um īrī**.

The supine is a verbal noun with the endings of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative cases. **Petītum**, *to seek;* **audītū**, *to hear*.

READING EXERCISE

591. 1. Tarpēia extrā mūrōs aquam petītum vēnerat. 2. Ea Sabīnōs in arcem Rōmānōrum ductūra petit aureōs ānulōs quōs in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. 3. Illīus prōditiō impia incrēdibilis est audītū. 4. Dux Sabīnōrum dolōsē pollicitus est (promised) ānulōs Tarpēiae datum īrī. 5. Sabīnīs in arcem perductīs Tatius scūtīs Tarpēiam obruī iussit. 6. Sīc fertur (it is said) impiam prōditiōnem vindicātam esse. 7. Melius est patriam amāre quam impiē prōdere. 8. Rōmulus dīxit suam urbem caput orbis terrārum futūram esse. 9. Dīxit nūllās opēs hūmānās urbem Rōmam superātūrās esse.

Colloquium

592. 1. Cūr Tarpēia extrā mūrōs vēnerat? 2. Quid ea petit hostēs in arcem ductūra? 3. Nōnne illa prōditiō

Flūmen et Pōns

incrēdibilis est audītū? 4. Quid dux hostium Tarpēiae pollicitus est? 5. Quō modō prōditiō Tarpēiae vindicāta est? 6. Quid Rōmulus dē urbe suā dīxit?

ANCUS MĀRCIUS RĒX CREĀTUR

593. Mortuō Tullō Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit. Numae Pompilī rēgis nepōs Ancus Mārcius erat, et aequitāte et religiōne avō similis. Igitur Latīnī, quibuscum Tullō rēgnante ictum foedus erat, sustulērunt animōs et incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt, Rōmānum rēgem bellum nōn gestūrum (esse) ratī. Medium erat in Ancō ingenium, et crēdēbat sine iniūriā pācem sē haud facile habitūrum (esse), temporaque esse Tullō rēgī aptiōra quam Numae. Lēgātum tamen mīsit cui superbē respōnsum est ā Latīnīs; quārē bellum iīs indictum est.

a. **Mortuō Tullō**, ablative absolute, *after the death of Tullus;* **aequitāte, religiōne**, ablative of specification (sec. 526); **avō**, dative with **similis** (sec. 104); **Rōmānum . . . ratī**, *thinking that the Roman king would not wage war;* **sē . . . habitūrum**, *that he would not easily have peace;* **tempora esse aptiōra**, object of **crēdēbat**; **Numae**, dative following **quam**, *than* (sec. 549, *a*); **respōnsum est**, impersonal (sec. 512, *a*).

Colloquium

594. 1. Quis mortuō Tullō rēx creātus est? 2. Quis erat Ancī Mārcī avus? 3. Quibus rēbus Ancus avō erat similis? 4. Quārē Latīnī Rōmānīs bellum intulērunt? 5. Quāle ingenium in Ancō erat? 6. Pācemne Ancus cum iniūriā habitūrus erat? 7. Quō modō lēgātō quī ab rēge missus est Latīnī respondērunt?

TYPICAL VERBS

The Perfect Passive Infinitive

595. **amātus (-a, -um) esse,** *to have been loved.*
vīsus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been seen.*

missus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to have been sent.*
audītus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to have been heard.*
captus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to have been taken.*

a. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by joining the infinitive **esse** to the perfect passive participle. If the infinitive has a subject in the accusative in accordance with section 311, the participle agrees in case, number, and gender with the subject of the infinitive. **Dīcitur prōditiōnem vindicātam esse**, *it is said that the treason was punished.*

The Future Active Participle

596. **amātūrus**, -a, -um, *about to love.*
vīsūrus, -a, -um, *about to see.*
missūrus, -a, -um, *about to send.*
audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*
futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*
captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*

a. The future active participle is formed by substituting the ending **-ūrus** (-a, -um) for the ending **-us** (-a, -um) of the perfect passive participle. **Sabīnōs in arcem ductūra**, *about to lead the Sabines to the citadel.*

The Future Active Infinitive

597. **amātūrus** (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to love.*
vīsūrus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to see.*
missūrus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to send.*
audītūrus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to hear.*
futūrus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to be.*
captūrus (-a, -um) **esse**, *to be about to take.*

a. The future active infinitive is formed by joining the infinitive **esse** to the future active participle. The participle agrees in case, number, and gender with the subject of the infinitive. **Esse** is often omitted. **Crēdēbat sine iniūriā pācem sē haud facile habitūrum (esse)**, *he believed that he would not easily have peace without injury.*

The Supine

598. **amātum**, *to love;* **amātū**, *to love.*
vīsum, *to see;* **vīsū**, *to see.*

missum, *to send;* **missū,** *to send.*
audītum, *to hear;* **audītū,** *to hear.*
captum, *to take;* **captū,** *to take.*

a. The supine is a verbal noun which has the accusative and ablative cases, singular, with the case-endings of the fourth declension.

The Future Passive Infinitive

599. **amātum īrī,** *to be about to be loved.*
vīsum īrī, *to be about to be seen.*
missum īrī, *to be about to be sent.*
audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*
captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

a. The future passive infinitive is formed by adding the infinitive form **īrī** to the accusative of the supine.

SYNTAX

600. **The future active participle represents action as about to take place or as intended at the time of the verb upon which the participle depends.** (68)

Sabīnōs in arcem ductūra Tarpēia petiit ānulōs, *about to lead the Sabines to the citadel, Tarpeia asked for their rings.*

a. The future active participle sometimes denotes purpose. **Rōmānī spectāculum parant Sabīnōrum fīliās raptūrī,** *the Romans prepare an exhibition with the purpose of seizing the daughters of the Sabines.*

601. **The time denoted by the future infinitive is future with reference to the time of the verb upon which the infinitive depends.** (69)

Rōmulus dīxit Rōmam caput orbis terrārum futūram esse. *Romulus said that Rome would be the capital of the world.*

602. (1) **The accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to denote purpose.** (70)

Tarpēia aquam petītum vēnerat, *Tarpeia had come to get water.*

(2) **The ablative of the supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification.** (71)

Tarpēiae prōditiō est incrēdibilis audītū, *Tarpeia's treason is incredible to hear (in respect to hearing).*

Practice

603. Find the supine stems of **vindicō, habeō, faciō,** and **audiō,** and in each blank below supply an appropriate form based on one of these stems. (See sections 595–599.)

1. Audīvī coniūrātiōnem ā Catilīnā ——— ——.
2. Cicerō ōrātiōnem ——— senātōrēs convocāvit.
3. Cicerō dīxit sē coniūrātiōnem ——— ——.
4. Cicerō in senātum ōrātiōnem ——— vēnit.
5. Coniūrātiō Catilīnae est incrēdibilis ——— —.
6. Cicerō dīxit coniūrātiōnem ——— ——.

LATIN WRITING

604. 1. After the death of Tullus, Ancus Marcius was made king by the people. 2. Tullus had made a treaty with the Latins. 3. The Latins thought (ratī sunt) that Ancus would not wage war. 4. But Ancus believed that peace would not be without injury. 5. He believed that the times were more suitable for war than for peace. 6. About to declare war, he sent an ambassador to the Latins. 7. It was said that war was about to be declared. 8. The ambassador was sent to declare (supine) war. 9. The times of Tullus are dreadful to hear (of).

VOCABULARY

605. **Group I**

audiō	**dūcō**	**habeō**	**sum**
crēdō	**ferō**	**respondeō**	**superō**
dō	**gerō**	**petō**	**tollō**

Group II

incrēdibilis	morior	prōdō	superbē
iniūria	polliceor	reor	vindicō

Group III

aequitās	dolōsē	impiē	incursiō

Derived English Words

credit	*future*	*habit*	*incredible*

Related English Words

creditable	*equitable*	*injurious*	*vindication*

WRITTEN REVIEW

606. Following the models in sections 595–599, write out the perfect passive infinitive, the future active participle, the future active infinitive, the supine, and the future passive infinitive of **vindicō, habeō, dūcō,** and **faciō,** giving the English translation of each form.

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

CLĀVIS AEREA

CHAPTER L

DEPONENT VERBS

607. Some Latin verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meanings of the active. These are called deponent verbs.

Helvētiī tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī cōnantur, *the Helvetii attempt to gain the supremacy of entire Gaul;* **hominēs bellicōsī angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur,** *the warlike peopl thought that they had narrow boundaries.*

Certain deponent verbs in very common use, although apparently transitive, do not take a direct object in the accusative case, but have an object in the ablative case.

Puer lūdō fruitur, *a boy enjoys sport;* **Rōmānī linguā Latīnā ūsī sunt,** *the Romans used the Latin language.*

READING EXERCISE

608. 1. Puer librum Horātī poētae legere cōnātur sed eum legere nōn potest. 2. Linguā Latīnā nōn ūtitur. 3. Librum poētae difficilem esse arbitrātur. 4. Prīmum, puer, dīligenter elementīs prīmīs operam dā (imper.); tum tibi polliceor Horātī librum facillimum futūrum (esse). 5. Ego maximē Horātiō fruor; ille multās et pulchrās sententiās locūtus est. 6. Nōnne linguā Latīnā potīrī cōnāberis ut tū quoque Horātiō fruāris (may enjoy)? 7. Sī puer labōrem patiētur, praemiō potiētur. 8. Ad astra per aspera aliquandō veniet.

9. Frātre interfectō sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus. 10. Postquam Tullus mortuus est (morior), populus Ancum Mārcium rēgem creāvit. 11. Ancus Mārcius religiōne erat Numae Pompiliō similis. 12. Ancus Numae

quam Tullō erat similior. 13. Tullō rēgnante Rōmānī cum Latīnīs foedus fēcerant. 14. Ancō rēge (abl. abs.) Latīnī animōs sustulērunt. 15. Incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. 16. Num rēx Rōmānus cum Latīnīs

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

CATAPULTA, MĀCHINA QUĀ RŌMĀNĪ PUGNĀBANT

bellum geret? 17. Illī rēgem bellum nōn gestūrum esse ratī sunt. 18. Ancus ratus est pācem haud facile sē habitūrum (esse). 19. Tempora bellō apta arbitrābātur. 20. Lēgātō quem Ancus mīserat superbē respōnsum est ā Latīnīs. 21. Latīnīs igitur bellum Ancus indīxit. 22. Arbitrārisne id bellum longum esse futūrum?

Colloquium

609. 1. Cūr puerō difficile est carmina Horātī legere? 2. Quandō facilius erit linguā Latīnā ūtī? 3. Nōnne fābulīs poētārum frueris? 4. Quā condiciōne discipulus praemiō potiētur? 5. Tūne linguā Latīnā ūtī potes? 6. Nōnne tū elementa prīma intellegere cōnāberis?

LATĪNĪS BELLUM EST INDICTUM

610. Bellum autem hōc modō indīcēbātur. Lēgātus, ubi ad fīnēs eōrum vēnit ā quibus rēs repetuntur, capite vēlātō, "Audī, Iuppiter," inquit, "audīte, fīnēs huius populī. Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī; iūstē piēque lēgātus veniō; verbīs meīs fidēs sit." Deinde peragit postulāta. Sī nōn dēduntur rēs quās exposcit, diēbus tribus et trīgintā perāctīs, bellum ita indīcit. "Audī, Iuppiter, et tū, Iūnō, Quirīne, diīque omnēs caelestēs, vōsque terrestrēs vōsque īnfernī, audīte! Ego vōs testor populum (Latīnum) iniūstum esse neque iūs persolvere." Tum hastam in fīnēs eōrum ēmittit. Hōc tum modō Latīnīs bellum est indictum.

a. **Rēs repetuntur,** *satisfaction is demanded;* **verbīs meīs fidēs sit,** *let there be confidence in my words;* **diēbus tribus et trīgintā perāctīs,** *when thirty-three days have passed;* **populum . . . persolvere,** object of **testor;** **populum** subject of **esse** and **persolvere.**

Colloquium

611. 1. Quō bellum Latīnīs indictūrus lēgātus vēnit? 2. Quid lēgātus iīs ā quibus rēs repetēbantur dīxit? 3. Utrum statim an quibusdam (certain) diēbus perāctīs bellum indictum est? 4. Quōs deōs lēgātus testātus est? 5. Quid lēgātus deōs testātus est?

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENT VERBS

612. The principal parts of deponent verbs are the resent indicative, the present infin itive, and the perfect

indicative. The ending of the present infinitive is a guide to the conjugation.

Conj.	Present	Infinitive	Perfect
I.	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum.
II.	polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum.
III.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum.
IV.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum.
Verb in -ior	patior	patī	passus sum.

a. Deponent verbs are inflected like the verbs of the four conjugations in the passive voice. They have the following forms of the active voice: the present participle (sec. 329), the future participle (sec. 596), the future infinitive (sec. 597), the supine (sec. 598), and the gerund (sec. 722, 730).

b. A few verbs are deponent in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses only.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *to dare.*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *to rejoice.*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *to be accustomed.*

These are called semi-deponent verbs.

IDIOMS

613. Expressions which seem to be exceptions to the ordinary usage in any language are called idioms. Idiomatic expressions show that the people who used the Latin language had characteristic ways of thinking and speaking. The use of the ablative case with certain deponent verbs is an example. In order to learn the language so as to understand it fully, one must become accustomed to the Roman way of thinking. Reading aloud and the oral repetition of words and idiomatic phrases will gradually give the desired familiarity with the Roman way of thinking and speaking.

It is not always desirable to reproduce in English the exact equivalent of the Latin idioms. The translation should represent the thought of the original rather than the grammatical constructions.

SYNTAX

614. **The ablative case is used with the deponents *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,* and their compounds.** (72)

Linguā Latīnā ūtitur, *he uses the Latin language;* **Horātiō fruor,** *I enjoy Horace;* **Ancus rēgnō potītus est,** *Ancus obtained the kingdom.*

a. The ablative with these deponent verbs is supposed to have been originally an ablative of means, with which the verbs were used in a reflexive sense; as, **Horātiō fruor,** *I enjoy (myself with) Horace.*

PRACTICE

615. 1. Learn the principal parts and the definitions of the following pairs of synonymous verbs.

adhibeō	**ūtor**	**faciō**	**fungor**	**prōmittō**	**polliceor**
amō	**fruor**	**ferō**	**patior**	**putō**	**arbitror**
dīcō	**loquor**	**occupō**	**potior**	**temptō**	**cōnor**

2. In the blanks below, after each verb, write its synonym (taken from the list above) in the same tense, person and number; as, **veniō, sequor; vēnit, secūtus est.**

adhibuit, ——	**facit,** ——	**prōmittō,** ——
amat, ——	**ferunt,** ——	**putāvērunt,** ——
dīcēbat, ——	**occupāvit,** ——	**temptāre,** ——

LATIN WRITING

616. 1. Tullus having died, Ancus Marcius obtained the kingdom. 2. At first Ancus tried to do the same as (eadem quae) his grandfather had done. 3. Ancus wished to enjoy peace. 4. The Latins attempt to invade (make an invasion into) the Roman territory. 5. War was declared by the Romans in this manner. 6. The ambassador said, "Hear, Jupiter, hear, boundaries of this people. 7. If the things which I demand are not given (shall not

have been given) within thirty-three days, war will be declared. 8. I call all the gods of heaven and earth to witness that you are unjust. 9. You do not discharge your obligation." 10. The public messenger throws a spear into the territory of the enemy, and in this way declares war.

VOCABULARY

617.

Group I

arbitror	dedō	loquor	polliceor
condiciō	fidēs	morior	potior
cōnor	fruor	patior	ūtor

Group II

asper	elementum	peragō	repetō
astrum	ēmittō	reor	testor

Group III

exposcō	iniūstus	persolvō	postulātum
īnfernus	iūstē	piē	terrestris

Derived English Words

condition	*element*	*patient*	*use* (verb)

Related English Words

colloquial	*elocution*	*fidelity*	*fruition*

WRITTEN REVIEW

618. 1. Write out the synopses of **cōnor, polliceor, sequor, potior,** and **patior** in the first person singular, the third person singular, and the third person plural, through the six tenses of the indicative.

2. Write the present participles of the same verbs in the nominative and genitive cases.

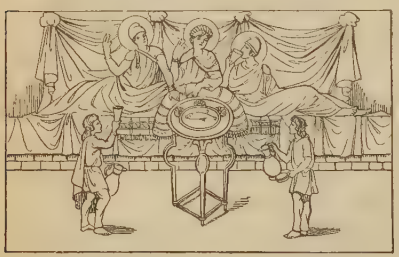
CHAPTER LI

IRREGULAR VERBS

619. In the present tense of a few verbs in very common use certain phonetic changes have taken place which make the verbs seem somewhat irregular. These irregular verbs are **eō**, *I go;* **ferō**, *I bear;* **fīō**, *I become;* **volō**, *I wish;* **nōlō**, *I do not wish;* **mālō**, *I prefer.* If inflected regularly **fīō** and **eō** would belong to the fourth conjugation; **ferō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** to the third.

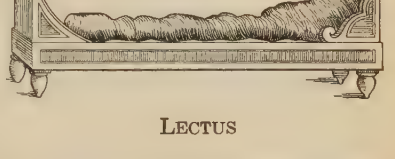
DĒ RŪSTICŌ MŪRE ATQUE MŪRE URBĀNŌ
Fābula Horātī Poētae

620. 1. Ōlim rūsticus mūs mūrem urbānum in paupere cavō accēpisse fertur (is said). 2. Āridum acinum sēmēsaque lārdī frūsta ōre fert et amīcō dat. 3. Fastīdium eius vincere vult. 4. Ipse meliōrem dapis partem relinquit. 5. Sed ille dente superbō male singula tangit. 6. Tandem urbānus, "Cūr vīs," inquit, "amīce, in agrīs vīvere? 7. Ego in urbe quam rūrī (loc.) vīvere mālō. 8. Nōnne tū vīs hominēs praepōnere silvīs? 9. Vīta est brevis; dum licet vīve beātus. 10. Nōnne mēcum in urbem īre vīs?" 11. Hīs verbīs pulsus mūs rūsticus domō exit. 12. Inde comes mūris urbānī in viā fit et ambō ad urbem ībant. 13. In urbis moenia



CĒNA

noctū introīre volunt. 14. Iamque tenēbat nox medium caelī spatium, cum pōnit uterque in locuplēte domō vēstīgia. 15. Ibi tīncta vestis super lectōs eburneōs candēbat, multaque dē magnā cēnā supererant hesternā. 16. Ergō ubi porrēctum purpureā in veste locāvit rūsticum, urbānus servī fungitur officiīs, cibum quem affert praelambēns. 17. Ille (mūs rūsticus) cubāns gaudet mūtātā sorte, cum subitō ingēns strepitus terruit utrumque. 18. Pavidī per tōtum currunt conclāve. Simul domus alta personuit canibus. 19. Tum rūsticus, "Hīc vīvere nōlō," inquit; "in silvā cavōque paupere esse quam hāc vītā fruī mālō. Valē."



LECTUS

MĒNSA

20. Mūs urbānus dīxit sē in silvīs vīvere nōlle. 21. Rūsticum mūrem comitem suum fierī vult. 22. Rūsticus dīxit sē cum illō īre velle. 23. Posteā sē mālle in cavō paupere esse quam in urbe vītā fruī exīstimābat. 24. "Nōlī," inquit, "mē in urbe tenēre; domum eō; valē."

a. **Rūrī** (sentence 7), locative (sec. 164); **domō** (11), *from home* (sec. 165); **officiīs** (16), ablative with **fungitur** (sec. 614).

COLLOQUIUM

621. 1. Quem mūs rūsticus in paupere cavō accēpit? 2. Quid hospes amīcō dat? 3. Quō modō mūs urbānus sē gerit? 4. Quid urbānus mūs hospitem rogat? 5. Vultne rūsticus mūs in urbem īre? 6. Quandō in urbe mūrēs

vēstīgia pōnere volunt? 7. Quālem in domum comitēs introeunt? 8. Ubi urbānus mūs rūsticum locāvit? 9. Quō modō mūs urbānus officiīs servī fungitur? 10. Nōnne rūsticus sorte mūtātā gaudet? 11. Quid mūrēs terruit? 12. Quid pavidus rūsticus dīxit? 13. Utrum in locuplēte domō vīvere an paupere in cavō esse mūs rūsticus māluit?

CONJUGATION

622. **Eō**, *I go;* **ferō**, *I bear;* **fīō**, *I become;* **volō**, *I wish;* **nōlō**, *I do not wish, I am unwilling;* **mālō**, *I prefer.*

Present Tense, Indicative Mood

			SINGULAR		
eō	ferō	fīō	volō	nōlō	mālō
īs	fers	fīs	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
it	fert	fit	vult	nōn vult	māvult
			PLURAL		
īmus	ferimus	(fīmus)	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
ītis	fertis	(fītis)	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
eunt	ferunt	fīunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

a. The remaining tenses of the indicative are inflected regularly, with the following exceptions:

1. **Eō** in the imperfect tense has **ībam, ībās, ībat**; and in the future **ībō, ībis, ībit**; the perfect is often contracted from **īvī, īvistī, īvit**, *etc.*, to **iī, īstī, iit(īt), iimus, īstis, iērunt** (**iēre**).

2. In **fīō** the quantity of **i** in the present stem is long except in the present indicative, third person singular, **fit**, in the present infinitive, **fierī**, and elsewhere when it is followed by **-er**.

3. **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō**; and the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses are formed from the supine stem of **faciō**; as, **factus sum, factus eram, factus erō**.

4. **Ferō** has the present imperative **fer**, *bear thou.*

5. **Nōlō** has the present imperative **nōlī**, *be thou unwilling, do not;* **nōlīte**, *be ye unwilling, do not.*

b. **Nōlō** is from **ne-volō**; **mālō** is from **magis-volō**.

c. For the complete conjugation of these irregular verbs see section 858.

SYNTAX

623. Negative commands are often expressed by *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and the infinitive. (73)

Nōlī hīc mē tenēre, *do not keep me here.*

PRACTICE

624. 1. Write in the present tense the conjugation of ferō as if it were a regular verb of the third conjugation; and of fīō as a regular verb of the fourth conjugation; then mark the changes which have been made to produce the forms shown in section 622.

2. Write the synopsis of fīō in the first person singular through the six tenses of the indicative, taking the perfect tense from the principal parts.

LATIN WRITING

625. 1. A country mouse once welcomed a city mouse in his humble hole. 2. He gives his friend bits of bacon which he brings in his mouth. 3. The city mouse does not wish to touch the food. 4. Why, my friend, are you unwilling to live in the country? 5. Said the city mouse, "We will go to the city if you please." 6. They go forth and become companions on the way. 7. The mice enter the city by night. 8. In the rich house the city mouse performs the duty of a slave. 9. Each rejoices in the changed condition. 10. Suddenly they hear the dogs. 11. Then said the frightened country mouse, "I wish to go to the forest and to live in my humble hole."

VOCABULARY

626. Group I

afferō	licet	nōlō	rūsticus
eō	mālō	officium	superbus
ferō	moenia	pellō	tangō
fīō	mūs	rūs	volō

Group II

canis	ergō	introeō	strepitus
cibus	fungor	locō	vestis

Group III

acinus	cubō	lārdum	porrēctus
candeō	eburneus	lectus	praelambō
cavum	fastīdium	locuplēs	praepōno
cēna	frūstum	personō	sēmēsus
conclāve	hesternus	pauper	tīnctus

Derived English Words

conclave	*office*	*rustic*	*tint*

Related English Words

candid	*cavity*	*person*	*volition*

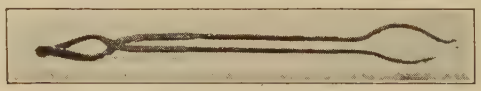
a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

cavum	lārdum	superbus	vestis

WRITTEN REVIEW

627. 1. Write the conjugation of volō as a regular verb of the third conjugation, and of eō as if it were iō, a regular verb of the fourth conjugation. Then mark the changes which have been made to produce the forms shown in section 622.

2. What are the imperative forms of dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō? (See section 330, *b.*)



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

FORCEPS IGNIFER

CHAPTER LII

REVIEW OF VERBS

Formation of Latin Verbs

English Words Derived from Latin Verbs

628. The tenses are generally used with greater exactness in Latin than in English and represent (1) the act of the verb as incomplete or as completed; and (2) the time of the act as present, past, or future. The exact meaning of each tense should be carefully noted, but the final translation from Latin into English should be expressed in idiomatic language.

READING EXERCISE

629. 1. Nūntius Rōmānus bellum indīcit. 2. Hōc modō bellum indīcēbātur. 3. Nūntius ad fīnēs hostium vēnerat et caput vēlāverat. 4. Lēgātī bellum indīcentis caput vēlātum erat. 5. Dīxit sē esse pūblicum nūntium populī Rōmānī. 6. Verbīs nūntī pūblicī fidēs sit. 7. Peragit rēs quae repetuntur. 8. Sī rēs quās exposcit nōn dēditae erunt, bellum indīcētur. 9. Cum diēs trēs et trīgintā perāctī erunt, nūntius omnēs deōs testābitur hostēs iniūstōs esse. 10. Dīcet, "Audīte, omnēs diī, quī in caelō quī in terrā habitātis. 11. Iuppiter audiet vōs semper fuisse, esse, et semper futūrōs esse hostēs." 12. Nōlīte, Rōmānī, bellum iūstīs indīcere. 13. Diī vōs vidēbunt, et vōbīs cum illīs erit bellum. 14. Dum licet, fīte amīcī et āvertite īrās. 15. Sī domum ieritis atque bonā cum pāce vivētis, omnēs vestrī (gen.) erunt memorēs. 16. Melius est pācem facere quam imperiō potīrī.

URBS ATQUE AGER FĪNĒSQUE CRĒSCUNT

630. Ancus, exercitū novō cōnscriptō, urbem Latīnōrum vī cēpit secūtusque mōrem priōrum rēgum multitūdinem Rōmam trādūxit. Mōns Aventīnus novae multi-

Cōnspectus ab Monte Iāniculō

tūdinī datus est. Iāniculum quoque adiectum est, nōn inopiā locī sed nē quandō ea arx hostium esset (might be). Id nōn mūrō sōlum sed etiam ponte subliciō, tum prīmum in Tiberī factō, urbī est coniūnctum. Cum in tantā multitūdine hominum facinora fierent (were done, committed),

carcer ad terrōrem incrēscentis audāciae in mediā urbe imminēns forō aedificātur. Nec urbs tantum hōc rēge crēvit, sed etiam ager fīnēsque; ūsque ad mare imperium prōlātum (est), et in ōre Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita est.

a. **Inopiā,** ablative denoting cause; **inopiā locī,** *because of lack of room;* **nē . . . esset,** *that this might not ever be an enemy's citadel;* **cum facinora fierent,** *since crimes were committed;* **in mediā urbe** (sec. 574), *in the midst of the city;* **hōc rēge,** ablative absolute, *he (being) king, while he was king;* **ager fīnēsque,** subjects respectively of **crēvit** and **crēvērunt** to be supplied from **crēvit** of which **urbs** is the subject.

Colloquium

631. 1. Urbe Latīnōrum captā quō Ancus multitūdinem trādūxit? 2. In eā rē quōrum mōrem secūtus est? 3. Quī mōns multitūdinī datus est? 4. Nōnne Iāniculum inopiā locī adiectum est? 5. Quō modō Iāniculum urbī est coniūnctum? 6. Quō in locō carcer aedificātus est? 7. Multane facinora facta sunt? 8. Quam longē imperium prōlātum est? 9. Ubi urbs Ōstia condita est?

THE FORMATION OF LATIN VERBS

632. Latin verbs have been formed from roots, from other verbs, from nouns and adjectives, and by composition with prepositions.

(1) A root is the simplest element, generally monosyllabic, which appears in a word or in several related words, expressing the general or fundamental meaning. The same root frequently appears, often modified by phonetic laws, in different languages, thus showing that languages as well as words are related to one another.

Latin verbs formed directly from roots are some of the irregular verbs and some verbs of the third conjugation. In the examples given for illustration the Latin verb is followed by the Latin form of the root and its general

meaning in parentheses; and one or more English words, not all direct derivatives, are given, in which the same root appears. The forms given are the present active indicative and the perfect passive participle, which show the different forms in which the root appears in the English derivatives.

cadō, cāsus, (cad-, fall), *cadence, case.*
caedō, caesus (cīd-, cut), *decide, decision.*
dīcō, dictus (dīc-, say), *diction, dictionary, edict.*
dūcō, ductus (dūc-, lead), *duke, duct, produce, product.*
lūdō, lūsus (lūd-, play), *elude, elusive.*
petō, petītus (pet-, fall upon, find), *impetus, petition.*
sum (es-, be), *essence.*
tangō, tāctus (tag-, touch), *tangent, tact.*
tegō, tēctus (teg-, cover), *tegument, protect.*

NOTE.—The study of the roots of words is one of the most technical and difficult branches of language study and belongs to the science of comparative etymology. At this point it is not essential to do more than study the examples given, which are introduced chiefly to show how the English derivatives preserve the forms of the Latin roots.

(2) Latin verbs denoting repeated or frequent action are formed from other verbs by the suffix **-tō** or **-itō**.

agitō (agō), *agitate.*
dictō (dīcō), *dictate.*
habitō (habeō), *habitat.*

(3) Many Latin verbs belonging to the first, second, and fourth conjugations have been formed from nouns and adjectives.

cūrō, cūrātus (cūra), *cure.*
duplicō, duplicātus (duplex), *duplicate.*
fīniō, fīnītus (fīnis), *fine, finish, finite.*
laudō, laudātus (laus), *laud.*
līberō, līberātus (līber), *liberate.*

(4) One of the most obvious ways by which Latin words have been multiplied and become a prolific source of

English words is the formation of compound verbs by the use of prepositions and inseparable particles as prefixes. From many of these compounds have come not only verbs but nouns and adjectives, both in Latin and in English. The following list, for example, contains some of the most common compounds of the verb **ferō** and some of the most familiar English derivatives.

circum-ferō, *circumference.*
cōn-ferō, collātus, *confer, conference, collate.*
dē-ferō, *defer, deference.*
dif-ferō (dis-ferō), *differ, difference.*
ef-ferō, ē-lātus, *elate.*
īn-ferō, *infer, inference.*
of-ferō (ob-ferō), *offer.*
prae-ferō, *prefer, preference.*
re-ferō, relātus, *refer, reference, relate.*
suf-ferō (sub-ferō), *suffer.*
trāns-ferō, trānslātus, *transfer, translate.*

a. Notice the phonetic changes in **col-lātus** for **con-lātus**, **of-ferō** for **ob-ferō**, and **suf-ferō** for **sub-ferō**. The final consonant of the preposition is *assimilated* by the following consonant.

b. The ending *-ence* in *circumference, conference, difference, inference, preference,* and *reference* represents the Latin **-entia** in nouns derived from present participles ending in **-ns** (gen., **-ntis**); as, **differentia**, *difference*, from **differēns, -ntis** (differō); **scientia**, *science*, from **sciēns, -ntis** (sciō). Sometimes the Latin noun is lacking and the English noun is then traced directly to the Latin verb.

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN VERBS

633. English words derived from Latin verbs, including not only verbs but nouns and adjectives, are based sometimes on the root of the verb as it appears in the present stem, as *creed* from **crēdō**; sometimes on the present active participle, as *agent* from **agēns, agent-is** (**agō**); and particularly on the perfect passive participle,

as *act* from **āct-us** (**agō**), *credit* from **crēdit-us** (**crēdō**), *fact* from **fact-us** (**faciō**).

addō, *add.*
collect-us (**colligō**), *collect.*
concept-us (**concipiō**), *concept.*
conciliāt-us (**conciliō**), *conciliate.*
concipiō, *conceive.*
content-us (**contineō**), *content.*
contineō, *contain.*
creāt-us (**creō**), *create.*
dēfendō, *defend.*
habeō, *have.*
habit-us (**habeō**), *habit.*
importāns, important-is (**importō**), *important.*
occupāns, occupant-is (**occupō**), *occupant.*
patiēns, patient-is (**patior**), *patient.*
placeō, *please.*
regēns, regent-is (**regō**), *regent.*
scrībō, *scribe.*
scrīpt-us (**scrībō**), *script.*
tendō, *tend.*
tent-us (**tendō**), *tent.*

THE MEANINGS OF THE TENSES

634. The Latin tenses represent action as incomplete or as completed, and denote past, present, or future time.

(1) The tenses which represent action as incomplete are the present, the imperfect, and the future; the tenses which represent action as completed are the perfect, the past perfect, and the future perfect.

(2) The tenses of the indicative which denote present or future time are the present, the future, and the future perfect; the tenses of the indicative which denote past time are the imperfect, the perfect, and the past perfect.

SYNTAX

635. The tenses of the indicative which denote present or future time are called primary tenses; the tenses which denote past time are called secondary tenses. (74)

a. The historical present, representing a past act as taking place in the present, is sometimes regarded as a secondary tense. **Aenēās in Ītaliam venit**, *Aeneas comes (came) into Italy.*

b. The present perfect, representing an act as now completed, is sometimes regarded as a primary tense. **Epistulam scrīpsī**, *I have (now) written a letter.*

636. The tenses of the infinitive and the participle do not denote absolute time, but time that is relatively past, present, or future with reference to the time of the main verb upon which the infinitive or the participle depends. (75)

Dīcit prōditiōnem vindicātam esse, vindicārī, vindicātum īrī, *he says that the treason has been punished, is being punished, is about to be punished;* **dīxit sē īvisse, īre, itūrum esse,** *he said that he had gone, was going, was about to go (would go).*

Amīcum vidēns nōmen vocat, *seeing his friend he calls his name;* **virginēs raptae Rōmānōrum uxōrēs factae sunt,** *the maidens having been (who had been) seized became the Romans' wives;* **mūrēs in urbem itūrī comitēs in viā fīunt,** *about to go to the city, the mice become companions on the way.*

LATIN WRITING

637. 1. Ancus enrolls a new army, with which he captures a city of his enemies. 2. To the multitude which had been transferred to Rome he gave Mount Aventine. 3. Ancus followed the custom of former kings. 4. Over the Tiber he made a bridge, by which the city was connected with (to) Janiculum. 5. That crimes may not be committed (nē facinora fīant), a prison is built near the forum. 6. While Ancus was king (Ancus king), the territory of the Romans was extended to the mouth of the Tiber. 7. Ancus founded the city of Ostia that (ut) this might be (esset) a harbor for the Romans (for a harbor to the Romans).

VOCABULARY

638.

Group I

āvertō	**cum** (conj.)	**sequor**	**tantum** (adv.)
coniungō	**fīnēs**	**sōlum** (adv.)	**trādūcō**

Group II

carcer	**cōnscrībō**	**indīcō**	**prōferō**

Group III

adiciō	**imminēns**	**incrēscō**	**sublicius**

Derived English Words

avert	*imminent*	*increase*	*traduce*

Related English Words

conjugation	*consequence*	*incarcerate*	*infinite*

a. Find an English word derived from each of the following Latin verbs and show from what part of the verb each English word is derived.

accipiō	**ignōrō**	**occurrō**	**prohibeō**
distrahō	**obtineō**	**offerō**	**trānseō**

WRITTEN REVIEW

639. 1. What tenses of the indicative mood refer to present time? What tenses refer to past time? What tenses refer to future time?

2. What tenses denote incomplete action? What tenses denote completed action?

3. What forms of verbs are given as principal parts? Why are they so called?

4. What parts of the verb, thus far considered, are based on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the supine stem?

5. What verbs in the vocabulary in section 638 include prepositions in their composition?

CHAPTER LIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present and Imperfect Tenses

FINAL CLAUSES

640. In the preceding chapters the finite verbs, with few exceptions, are in the indicative mood and denote actual facts. Sometimes, however, a writer wishes not only to tell what has happened, is happening, or will happen, but also to indicate a feeling or mental attitude, or to express certain relations between facts and ideas.

The attitude of the mind may be indicated by a definite statement; as, **volō Rōmam vidēre,** *I wish to see Rome;* **vērum dīcere dēbeō,** *I ought to speak the truth;* **Remus sē dēfendere nōn poterat,** *Remus could not defend himself.* On the other hand such feelings of desire, obligation, and possibility, are expressed not only in plain statements as in the examples just given, but by the special forms of verbs which belong to the subjunctive mood; as, **utinam Rōmam videam,** *O that I may see Rome.*

This suggestion of feeling or mental attitude implied in the form of the verb, is often more delicate and more expressive than the blunt statement of the fact. There is an obvious difference between **volō meīs verbīs fidem esse,** *I desire that there be confidence in my words,* and **meīs verbīs fidēs sit,** *let there be confidence in my words.* In the first sentence, in which the indicative is used, the wish is directly stated; in the second the wish is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

641. The subjunctive mood is often used in a subordinate clause to express certain relations between the subordinate clause and the main clause upon which the subjunctive depends.

Cum frātribus rēgēs agunt ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicent ferrō, *the kings arrange with the brothers that they (may) fight with the sword each for his own country.*

Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbum līberīs faceret, *the father of Horatius entreated the people that they should not (not to) make him childless.*

In these sentences the dependent clauses, **ut . . . dīmicent** and **nē . . . faceret,** are final clauses representing the purpose of the action denoted by the verbs **agunt** and **ōrābat** in the independent clauses.

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

642. The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood contain the present stem. The present tense is characterized by the mood vowel **e** in verbs of the first conjugation, and by the vowel **a** in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations. In regular verbs of all conjugations the imperfect tense of the subjunctive is characterized by the letters **-re-**, which appear between the present stem and the personal endings. In the irregular verbs, **sum, eō, ferō,** *etc.*, the forms of the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive are exceptional. (See sections 849, 857, 858.)

Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive
dīmicant	**dīmicent**
habet	**habeat**
petunt	**petant**
veniunt	**veniant**
est	**sit**

Imperfect Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive
rēgnābat	rēgnāret
arcēbat	arcēret
faciēbat	faceret
trānsiliēbat	trānsilīret
erat	esset

GALLĪNA IMPAVIDA

(Adapted and translated from *The Youth's Companion.*)

643. Quaedam gallīna nīdum in stabulō habuit. Ōvīs quae pepererat dīligenter incubābat. Forte stabulō incēnsō flammae iam cistae appropinquābant in quā nīdus erat. Minimē pavida gallīna ōvīs īnsidēbat dum aqua īnfūsa ignem exstīnxit. Tandem pullī exclūsī nīdum relinquunt.

Plērumque gallīnae pennīs fovent ōva nē frīgore laedantur; haec tegēbat ōva ut ab iīs arcēret calōrem.

a. In what mood and tense is **laedantur?** **arcēret?**

b. What relation is expressed by the clauses containing the subjunctive?

Colloquium

644. 1. Ubi gallīna nīdum habēbat? 2. Nōnne gallīna ōvīs incubābat ut pullī exclūderentur? 3. Quō modō gallīna stabulō incēnsō sē gerēbat? 4. Cūr gallīnae plērumque ōva pennīs fovent? 5. Cūr haec tegēbat ōva?

READING EXERCISE

645. 1. Amūlius frātrem pellit ut sōlus rēgnet. 2. Ut sōlus rēgnāret, Amūlius frātrem pepulit. 3. Rōmulus et Remus Amūlium obtruncant ut Numitor sit rēx. 4. Frātrēs Amūlium obtruncāvērunt nē diūtius esset rēx. 5. Rōmulus suum frātrem interficit nē moenia iterum trānsiliat. 6. Rōmulus frātrem interfēcit nē moenia iterum trānsilīret. 7. Rōmulus asȳlum aperit ut nova urbs incolās habeat. 8. Rōmulus asȳlum aperuit ut nova urbs

incolās habēret. 9. Lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mittīt quī uxōrēs petant. 10. Lēgātōs mīsit quī uxōrēs peterent. 11. Circā vīcīnās gentēs, lēgātī, mittiminī ut societātem petātis. 12. Missī estis, lēgātī, ut societātem peterētis. 13. Mittimur ut petāmus; mittēbāmur ut peterēmus.

14. Lūdī parantur ut fīnitimī cum līberīs ad spectāculum veniant. 15. Lūdī parātī sunt ut fīnitimī venīrent. 16. Tarpēia ita arbitrābātur: "Sabīnōs in arcem dūcam ut mūnus habeam." 17. "Sabīnōs dūxī ut mūnus habērem." 18. Num in arcem, Tarpēia, hostēs dūcēs ut mūnus habeās? 19. In arcem eōs dūxistī ut mūnus habērēs. 20. Mulierēs inter tēla volantia veniunt nē viduae sint. 21. Inter tēla vēnērunt nē viduae essent. 22. Inter tēla veniēmus nē viduae sīmus. 23. Inter tēla vēnimus nē viduae essēmus. 24. Cum frātribus rēgēs agunt ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicent ferrō. 25. Exercitus Albānus inclāmat Cūriātiīs ut opem frātrī ferant. 26. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbum līberīs faceret.

a. What verbs are in the present subjunctive? the imperfect subjunctive?

b. What is the relation in each sentence between the clause containing the subjunctive and the main clause?

c. What connecting word, conjunction or pronoun, is used with each subjunctive verb?

d. What tenses are found in the main clause when the present subjunctive is used in the dependent clause? when the imperfect subjunctive is used?

READING EXERCISE

646. 1. Ancus exercitum cōnscrīpsit ut urbem Latīnōrum caperet. 2. Ut mōrem priōrum rēgum sequerētur multitūdinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit. 3. Mōns Aventīnus novae multitūdinī datur quō sēdēs habeant. 4. Iāniculum urbī adiectum est nē quandō ea arx

hostium esset. 5. Pōns sublicius in Tiberī factus est ut Iāniculum urbī coniungerētur. 6. Cum (since) facinora

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

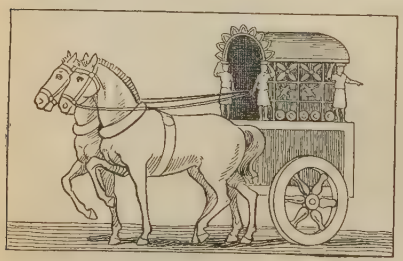
MONTĒS IN ETRŪRIĀ

clandestīna fierent, carcer aedificātus est quī incrēscentem audāciam terrēret. 7. Carcer aedificātus est nē audācia

incrēsceret. 8. Urbs Ōstia in ōre Tiberis condita est quae Rōmānīs portuī esset.

TARQUINIUS RŌMAM COMMIGRAT

647. Ancō rēgnante Tarquinius, vir impiger ac dīvitiīs potēns, ex Etrūriae urbe Rōmam commigrāvit mōtus cupīdine ac spē magnī honōris. Ad Iāniculum forte vēnerat. Ibi eī in carpentō sedentī cum uxōre aquila lēniter dēmissa pilleum aufert, superque carpentum cum magnō clangōre volitāns rūrsus capitī aptē repōnit, inde sublīmis abit. Tanaquil coniūnx, perīta caelestium prōdigiōrum, alta spērāre virum iubet. Hās spēs cōgitātiōnēsque sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī sunt. Domiciliō ibi comparātō in rēgiam quoque dē Tarquiniō fāma perlāta est. Postrēmō tūtor līberōrum rēgis testāmentō īnstitūtus est.



CARPENTUM

a. **Ancō rēgnante,** abl. abs., *in the reign of Ancus;* **dīvitiīs,** abl. of specification; **dīvitiīs potēns,** *powerful because of his wealth;* **cupīdine, spē,** abl. of cause; **honōris,** objective gen. (sec. 441); **cupīdine . . . honōris,** *chiefly because of his desire and hope for great honor;* **eī,** dative denoting separation (sec. 334); **capitī,** indirect object of **repōnit;** **prōdigiōrum,** objective gen. with **perīta** (sec. 441); **perīta . . . prōdigiōrum,** *skilled in heavenly portents;* **alta,** adj. used as noun (sec. 440); **tūtor,** pred. noun (sec. 75); **testāmentō,** abl. of means.

COLLOQUIUM

648. 1. Quālis vir Tarquinius erat? 2. Quō cōnsiliō Rōmam commigrāvit? 3. Quid Tarquiniō in carpentō sedente fīēbat? 4. Nōnne Tanaquil virum ōrat ut alta spēret? 5. Quās spēs Tarquinius sēcum portābat? 6. Quō

Tarquinius officiō, fāmā dē eō in rēgiam perlātā, fungitur?

THE TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

649. The Latin subjunctive is sometimes, but not always, translated by the English auxiliaries *may, might, would, should;* for example,

Rēgēs cum frātribus agunt ut ferrō dīmicent, *the kings arrange with the brothers that they may fight (to fight) with the sword.*

Rōmulus asȳlum aperit ut urbs incolās habeat, *Romulus opens an asylum so that (in order that) the city may have inhabitants.*

Lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mittit quī cōnūbium petant, *he sends messengers among the neighboring tribes (who may seek) to seek an alliance.*

Rōmulus et Remus Amūlium obtruncant ut Numitor sit rēx, *Romulus and Remus slay Amulius in order that Numitor may be king.*

Amūlius frātrem pepulit ut sōlus rēgnāret, *Amulius drove away his brother that he might reign alone.*

Rōmulus mūrum fēcit quī hostēs arcēret, *Romulus made a wall (which should keep off) to keep off the enemy.*

Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbum līberīs faceret, *the father of Horatius entreated the people not to make him childless.*

Inter tēla mulierēs vēnērunt nē viduae essent, *the women came among the weapons so that (in order that) they might not be widows.*

CONJUGATION

650. For the conjugation of **amō, videō, mittō, audiō,** and **capiō** in the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive, active and passive, and the conjugation of the irregular verbs **sum, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, ferō,** and **fīō** in the subjunctive present and imperfect, see sections 849-858. Observe carefully the formation of these tenses, noting particularly the tense-signs.

SYNTAX

651. The subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses with *ut*, *nē*, *quī*, and *quō* to denote purpose. (76)

Aenēās venit ut urbem condat, *Aeneas comes that he may found (to found) a city;* puerōs in Tiberim Amūlius mīsit nē vīverent, *Amulius threw the boys into the Tiber so that (in order that) they might not live;* lēgātī mittuntur quī societātem petant, *ambassadors are sent who may ask (to ask) for an alliance;* mōns multitūdinī datur quō sēdēs habeant, *the mountain is given to the multitude where (so that there) they may have dwelling places.*

a. A clause with the subjunctive mood denoting purpose is called a final clause. Final clauses may be translated in a variety of ways: *so that, in order that, for the purpose of, to* (with the infinitive). Accordingly, the English infinitive, *when it denotes purpose,* should be translated into the Latin subjunctive.

652. In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood denote incomplete action, and refer to time which is relatively present or future; *i. e.*, present or future with reference to the time of the verb in the main clause. (77)

Aenēās venit ut urbem condat, *Aeneas comes that he may found a city;* vēnit ut conderet urbem, *he came that he might found a city.*

PRACTICE

653. 1. Complete the present subjunctive forms of spērō, habeō, sequor, veniō, and ferō.

(1) Ut ego spēr—, hab—, sequ—, ven—, fer—.

(2) Ut ille spēr—, hab—, sequ—, ven—, fer—.

2. Complete the imperfect subjunctive forms of portō, timeō, petō, potior, abeō.

(1) Nē nōs port—, tim—, pet—, pot—, ab—.

(2) Nē illī port—, tim—, pet—, pot—, ab—.

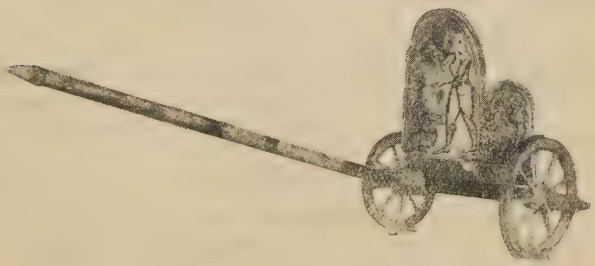
3. In the blank spaces below supply the proper verbs.

(1) Daedalus ālās fēcit ut effugeret; ālās facit ut ——.

(2) Daedalus Īcarum monet ut sequātur; monuit ut ——.

LATIN WRITING

654. 1. Tarquin comes to Rome that he may have great honor. 2. He came that he might have great honor. 3. Tarquin and his wife remove from Etruria that they may come to Rome. 4. They removed that they might come. 5. An eagle is sent down from the sky to (which may) take off Tarquin's cap. 6. The eagle descended (dēmissa est) to take off Tarquin's cap. 7. The eagle



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

CURRUS ETRŪSCUS

comes so that we may have high hopes (hope high things). 8. The eagle came so that we might have high hopes. 9. You come to Rome, Tarquin, that you may there (quō) prepare a dwelling. 10. You (pl.) came to Rome that you might prepare a dwelling there. 11. The king arranges with Tarquin that he may be the guardian of his children. 12. The king arranged with him that he might be the guardian. 13. Tarquin prepares a dwelling in the city so that a report concerning him may go (pres. subj. of eō) to the palace. 14. He prepared a dwelling so that a report might go. 15. Tarquin arranges with the Romans that the son of Ancus may not be king.

VOCABULARY

655.

Group I

aquila	īnstituō	perītus	repōnō
comparō	nē	plērumque	sedeō
honor	perferō	quō (conj.)	ut

Group II

aptē	fāma	īnfūsus	postrēmō
cōgitātiō	flamma	ingredior	pullus
dēmittō	foveō	lēniter	sublīmis
domicilium	gallīna	nīdus	tegō
exstinguō	impavidus	pariō	volitō

Group III

carpentum	commigrō	laedō	prōdigium
cista	exclūdō	ōvum	stabulum
clandestīnus	incubō	pilleus	testāmentum
clangor	īnsideō	potēns	tūtor (noun)

Derived English Words

carpenter *extinct* *ingredient* *testament*

Related English Words

comparison *inflammation* *potential* *sediment*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

comparō exclūdō fāma sublīmis

WRITTEN REVIEW

656. 1. Write in the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive the conjugation of sum (sim, essem), rēgnō (rēgnem, rēgnārem), habeō (habeam, habērem), petō (petam, peterem), veniō (veniam, venīrem), sequor (sequar, sequerer), potior (potiar, potīrer), and ferō (feram, ferrem).

CHAPTER LIV

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

657. The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause to denote the consequence or the result of the action of the verb in the main clause.

Vīcīnae gentēs novam urbem ita timēbant ut benignē lēgātiōnem nōn audīrent, *the neighboring tribes so feared the new city that they did not hear the embassy kindly.*

The present subjunctive in a dependent clause generally follows a tense in the main clause denoting present or future time, and the imperfect tense of the subjunctive generally follows a tense denoting past time.

VULPĒS ET LEŌ

658. Vulpēs quae numquam leōnem vīderat eī forte occurrit atque ita exterrita est ut paene morerētur formīdine. Eundem cōnspicāta iterum, timuit quidem, sed nēquāquam ut (as) anteā. Tertiō illī obviam facta (having met him), adeō impavida fuit ut audēret accēdere propius et cum eō colloquī.

a. In what mood and tense are **morerētur** and **audēret**? What relation do they express? By what conjunctions are they connected with the verbs in the clauses upon which they depend?

COLLOQUIUM

659. 1. Quam territa vulpēs erat quae prīmum leōnī occurrit? 2. Timuitne vulpēs leōne iterum cōnspectō? 3. Quantum timōrem tertiō habuit vulpēs?

READING EXERCISE

660. 1. Amūlius fīliōs Silviae timet; itaque Silviam in cūstōdiam dat et puerōs in Tiberim mittit. 2. Amūlius

fīliōs Silviae adeō timet ut Silviam in cūstōdiam det et puerōs in Tiberim mittat. 3. Amūlius fīliōs Silviae adeō timēbat ut Silviam in cūstōdiam daret et puerōs in Tiberim mitteret. 4. In hīs adultīs sunt magnae vīrēs; apud pāstōrēs sunt ducēs. 5. In hīs adultīs sunt tantae vīrēs ut apud pāstōrēs sint ducēs. 6. In hīs adultīs erant tantae

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

VĪCUS IN ĪTALIĀ HODIERNĀ

vīrēs ut apud pāstōrēs essent ducēs. 7. Vāllum urbis est angustum; Remus id inrīdet et trānsilit. 8. Vāllum urbis est tam angustum ut Remus id inrīdeat et trānsiliat. 9. Vāllum erat tam angustum ut Remus id inrīdēret et trānsilīret. 10. Adeō īrātus erat Rōmulus ut frātrem obtruncāret. 11. Lēgātī circā vīcīnās gentēs missī sunt quī societātem peterent. 12. Sed nova urbs ita timēbātur ut benignē lēgātiō nōn audīrētur.

13. Rōma est urbs clāra; eam vidēre volō. 14. Rōma est urbs tam clāra ut eam vidēre velim. 15. Quis est quī urbem Rōmam vidēre nōlit? 16. Nēmō est cui nōn grātum sit urbem Rōmam vidēre.

17. Nōn est dubium quīn Rōma sit urbs clārissima. 18. Apud Rōmānōs erant multī quī prō patriā morerentur. 19. Nōnnūllī erant ā quibus scelera fierent. 20. Tam multa scelera fīēbant ut carcer in medīa urbe aedificārētur quī incrēscentem audāciam terrēret. 21. Carcer scelerātōs non dēterrēbat quīn scelera facerent. 22. Apud Rōmānōs multa facta sunt digna quae audīrentur. 23. Numquam dē Rōmānīs tam multa audiēmus quīn plūra libenter audiāmus.

Photo Brown Bros., N. Y.

MAGISTRĀTUS RŌMĀNUS

READING EXERCISE

661. 1. Tarquinius ita impiger ac dīvitiīs potēns erat ut spem magnī honōris habēret. 2. Tantam cupīdinem tantāsque spēs habēbat ut Rōmam commigrāret. 3. Aquila Tarquiniō pilleum aufert atque rūrsus capitī repōnit. 4. Tanaquil erat caelestium prōdigiōrum perīta. 5. Virum magnās spēs cogitātiōnēsque sēcum portāre iussit. 6. In rēgiam dē eō fāmā perlātā tūtor līberōrum rēgis testāmentō īnstitūtus est.

TARQUINIUS RĒGNUM PETIT

662. Rēgnāvit Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cuilibet superiōrum rēgum bellī pācisque et artibus et glōriā pār. Quō mortuō Tarquinius īnstābat ut quam prīmum comitia rēgī creandō fierent. Fīliōs Ancī, quī iam prope adultī erant, sub tempus vēnātum mīsit ut ipse rēgnum peteret. Ōrātiōnem dīcitur habuisse ita compositam ut plēbis animōs conciliāret: sē Rōmam cum coniuge ac fortūnīs omnibus commigrāsse; maiōrem partem aetātis eius quā cīvīlibus officiīs fungantur hominēs Rōmae sē quam in vetere patriā vīxisse. Tam multa dē sē haud falsa memorāvit ut ingentī cōnsēnsū populus Rōmānus eum rēgnāre iubēret.

a. **Cuilibet,** dative of **quīlibet,** *to anyone whatever,* emphatic; **bellī . . . pār,** *equal both in the arts and the glory of war and of peace;* **quō mortuō,** abl. abs., *on whose death,* or, *and on his death;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **rēgī creandō,** *for electing a king* (sec. 731); **sub tempus,** *at the approach of the time, as the time approached;* **vēnātum,** supine (sec. 598, 602); **ōrātiōnem dīcitur habuisse,** *he is said to have delivered a speech;* **sē commigrāsse, sē vīxisse,** used as objects of the verb of saying implied in **ōrātiōnem habuisse** (sec. 414); **commigrāsse,** for **commigrāvisse**; **officiīs,** abl. with **fungantur** (sec. 614); **fungantur,** present subjunctive, translated by the English indicative; **partem,** acc. of time (sec. 457); **maiōrem . . . quam,** *a greater part than.*

Colloquium

663. 1. Quot annōs Ancus rēgnāvit? 2. Eratne Ancus superiōribus rēgibus pār? 3. Ancō mortuō quid Tarquinius īnstābat? 4. Quō cōnsiliō Tarquinius fīliōs Ancī vēnātum mīsit? 5. Quālem ōrātiōnem Tarquinius habēbat? 6. Quam partem aetātis Tarquinius Rōmae vīxerat? 7. Quō modō fīēbat ut populus Tarquinium rēgnāre iubēret?

SYNTAX

664. The subjunctive with *ut, ut nōn, quī,* and *quīn* is used in consecutive clauses to denote consequence or result. (78)

Vulpēs ita exterrita est ut paene morerētur formīdine, *the fox was so terrified that she almost died of fright;* **nova urbs ita timēbātur ut benignē lēgātiō nōn audīrētur,** *the new city was so feared that the embassy was not heard kindly;* **quis est quī urbem Rōmam vidēre nōlit?** *who is there who does not wish to see the city of Rome?*

a. When the subjunctive of result is used with the relative **quī**, the relative is generally equivalent to **ut is**. **Quis est quī nōlit** means, *who is such a man that he does not wish?*

b. **Quīn,** *who not, that not, that,* is often used after expressions of doubt. **Nōn est dubium quīn Rōma sit clāra,** *there is no doubt that Rome is famous.*

c. Verbs of hindering and preventing, when a negative is expressed or implied, are followed by **quīn** and the subjunctive. **Carcer scelerātōs nōn dēterrēbat quīn scelera facerent,** *the prison did not keep the wicked from committing crimes.*

PRACTICE

665. In the following sentences change the verbs from the present tense to the imperfect, and from the imperfect to the present. Translate both forms.

1. Atalanta ōrāculum ita timet ut innūpta vīvat.

2. Atalanta tam pulchra est ut multitūdō procōrum eam petat.

3. Tarquinius tam impiger erat ut spem magnī honōris habēret.

4. Tarquinius tantās spēs habēbat ut Rōmam commigrāret.

LATIN WRITING

666. 1. After the death of Ancus, Tarquin urged that the new king should be elected as soon as possible. 2. Just before (sub) the time Tarquin sent the sons

of Ancus to hunt (supine). 3. He sent the sons of Ancus to hunt so that he might be elected king himself. 4. Tarquin's speech was so arranged that he himself was elected king. 5. He said so many true (not false) things about himself that he obtained the kingdom (potior with abl.).

VOCABULARY

667.

Group I

adeō (adv.)	conciliō	īnstō	prope
audeō	cōnsēnsus	occurrō	propius
colloquor	dubius	paene	quidem

Group II

cīvīlis	dignus	memorō	prīmum (adv.)
compōnō	exterreō	nōnnūllus	quīn
cōnspiciō	falsus	obviam	scelus

Group III

comitium	quīlibet	nēquāquam	vēnor
cōnspicor	formīdō	tertiō	vulpēs

Derived English Words

civil *conciliate* *instant* *occur*

Related English Words

conciliation *conspicuous* *formidable* *memorial*

WRITTEN REVIEW

668. 1. Write in the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood the conjugation of arbitror (arbitrer, arbitrārer), polliceor (pollicear, pollicērer), eō (eam, īrem), fīō (fīam, fierem), and volō (velim, vellem).

2. Answer the following questions based on section 660. What verbs are in the present tense of the subjunctive? in the imperfect tense? What tenses in the main clause are followed by the present subjunctive? What tenses are followed by the imperfect subjunctive?

CHAPTER LV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT

Indirect Questions

669. In the perfect and past perfect tenses of the subjunctive mood all verbs are conjugated alike. In the perfect tense of the active voice the perfect stem is followed by the tense-sign **-eri-** and the usual personal endings, **-m, -s, -t,** *etc.;* as, **rēgnāv-eri-t.** In the past perfect tense the perfect stem is followed by the tense-sign **-isse-** and the regular personal endings; as, **iuss-isse-t.** In the passive voice the perfect and past perfect tenses of the subjunctive are formed by joining, respectively, the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** to the perfect passive participle; as, **portātae sint, facta essent.**

670. An indirect question is a dependent clause in which a question is implied; as,

In memoriā habeō quid herī vīderim, *I remember what I saw yesterday.*

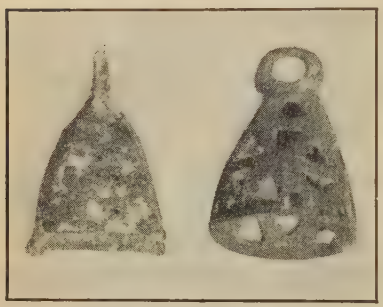
In such clauses the Latin uses the subjunctive mood although the indicative mood is used in English.

MŪRĒS

671. Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium quō modō ā fēle cavērent. Multīs aliīs prōpositīs, omnibus placuit ut eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs quaererētur quī tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācīs, sed in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

a. What verbs are in the subjunctive mood? What conjunctions or other connectives are used to introduce the clauses which contain the subjunctive? What clauses are indirect questions? Do any of the clauses denote purpose? result? Is any other relation expressed by a clause with the subjunctive?



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N.Y.
TINTINNĀBULA

b. What is generally used as the subject of a verb? as the object? What is the subject of **placuit**? of **quaererētur**? If **habuērunt cōnsilium** were translated by the single verb *planned*, what would be the object?

COLLOQUIUM

672. 1. Quod cōnsilium mūrēs habēbant? 2. Quod cōnsilium omnibus placuit? 3. Quō modō sē fēlem fugere posse arbitrābantur? 4. Quis repertus est quī fēlī tintinnābulum adnecteret? 5. Quid fābula dē mūribus docet?

MAGISTER CUM DISCIPULŌ LOQUITUR

673. 1. *Magister.* Dīc mihi, sī vīs, quot annōs Ancus rēgnāverit.

2. *Discipulus.* Annōs quattuor et vīgintī Ancus rēgnāvit.

3. *M.* Scīsne num superiōribus rēgibus bellī glōriā Ancus fuerit pār?

4. *D.* Cuilibet superiōrum rēgum fuit pār.

5. *M.* Intellegisne cūr Tarquinius comitia statim fierī voluerit?

6. *D.* Ancō mortuō ūnum ex fīliīs illīus rēgem esse nempe volēbat.

7. *M.* Num oblītus es quālis vir Tarquinius fuerit et quantae spēs ab eō Rōmam portātae sint?

8. *D.* In memoriā habeō quae herī lēgerim. Lēgī quās rēs Tanaquil virum spērāre iussisset. Iam intellegō cūr Tarquinius fīliōs rēgis vēnātum mīserit; ipse rēgnō potīrī volēbat.

9. *M.* Num Tarquiniō incertum erat quō modō plēbis animōs conciliāret?

10. *D.* Minimē. Ōrātiōnem habuit ita compositam ut populus ipsum rēgnāre iubēret.

11. *M.* Fuitne Rōma Tarquinī patria?

12. *D.* Nōn semper sed magnam partem aetātis Rōmae vīxerat.

13. *M.* Dīxitne Rōmānīs quantam partem aetātis Rōmae vīxisset?

14. *D.* Maiōrem partem aetātis eius quā cīvīlibus officiīs funguntur hominēs ille Rōmae quam in vetere patriā vīxerat.

15. *M.* Fuitne Tarquinius bonus rēx?

16. *D.* Nesciō. Crās fortasse fuerit necne bonus experiar.

17. *M.* Mihi memorā quae sint facta bonī rēgis.

18. *D.* Bona facta rēgis sunt ea quae populō prōsint.

19. *M.* Num Tarquinius intellēxit quae facta essent bona?

20. *D.* Quae ā priōribus rēgibus facta essent scīvit atque multa quae laudārī possent ipse fēcit.

a. What subjunctives in this exercise are used in clauses of the same kind as **quō modō . . . cavērent** and **quī . . . adnecteret** in section 671?

b. What clause is used as the subject of a verb? What clauses are used as objects of verbs? **Quot, num, quantae,** and **necne** are followed by clauses of what kind?

TARQUINIUS NOVĀCULĀ CŌTEM SECAT

674. Tarquinius rēx multa ēgregia fēcit. Bellum prīmum cum Latīnīs gessit et oppidum eōrum vī cēpit praedamque magnam reportāvit. Circō quī Maximus dīcitur locus dēsignātus est. Mūrō lapideō circumdare urbem parābat, cum Sabīnum bellum intervēnit. Equitēs suīs deesse cōpiīs ratus, ad Ramnēs, Titiēnsēs, Lucerēs, quās centuriās Rōmulus scrīpserat, addere aliās cōnstituit suōque nōmine nōmina iīs dare.

AUGUR

Attus Navius, inclitus eō tempore augur, "Nōmina," inquit, "mūtārī nōn possunt nisi avēs addīxerint." Īrātus rēx ēlūdēnsque artem auguris, "Inaugurā," inquit, "fierīne possit quod ego mente concipiō." Attus, in auguriō expertus, fierī posse respondit. "Atque hoc," inquit rēx, "agitābam, num cōtem illam secāre novāculā possem." "Potes ergō," inquit augur, et rēx secuisse dīcitur. Auguriīs tantus honor accessit ut nihil bellī domīque posteā nisi auspicātō gererētur.

a. **Cōpiīs,** dat. with **dē in deesse,** denoting separation (sec. 334); **suō nōmine,** *from his own name* (sec. 376); **eō tempore,** abl. denoting time (sec. 176); **addīxerint,** future perfect; **inaugurā,** imperative; **fierīne possit quod,** *whether that can be done which;* **posse,** the subject is the accusative of the pronoun **id,** not expressed, but suggested by **quod**; **fierī . . . respondit,** *he replied that it could be done;* **num secāre possem,** *whether I could cut;* **secuisse,** the object is the pronoun **eam,** not expressed, referring to **cōtem illam**; **bellī, domī,** locative case.

COLLOQUIUM

675. 1. Semperne Tarquinius rēx mala faciēbat? 2. Quod bellum gessit? 3. Quod oppidum cēpit? 4. Quid Tarquinius faciēbat cum bellum Sabīnum intervēnit? 5. Cūr novās centuriās scrībere volēbat? 6. Eratne Tar-

quiniō in animō nōmina centuriārum mūtāre? 7. Quis dīxit nōmina mūtāri nōn posse? 8. Quid rēx augurem rogāvit? 9. Quid augur respondit? 10. Quid rēx agitābat? 11. Cōtemne novācula secāre poterat? 12. Quantus honor cōte sectā auguriīs accessit?

CONJUGATION

676. The perfect and past perfect tenses of the subjunctive mood, active and passive, are conjugated in the same manner in all the conjugations. For the complete conjugation of these tenses see sections 849–856.

SYNTAX

677. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive mood. (79)

Agitābam num cōtem secāre possem, *I was considering whether I could cut the whetstone;* **inaugurā fierīne possit quod mente concipiō,** *determine by augury (predict) whether that which I am thinking of can be done;* **fuerit necne bonus experiar,** *I shall find out whether he was good or not.*

a. An indirect question is not directly asked but is represented as an indirect quotation depending as subject or object upon a verb of asking or upon an expression which suggests the idea of asking. The difference between direct and indirect questions may be seen in the following examples:

Direct	*Indirect*
Ubi es; *where are you?*	**Videō ubi sīs,** *I see where you are.*
Ubi erās; *where were you?*	**Rogābam ubi essēs,** *I was asking where you were.*
Ubi fuistī; *where have you been?*	**Sciō ubi fuerīs,** *I know where you have been.*
Ubi fuerās; *where had you been?*	**Repperī ubi fuissēs,** *I found out where you had been.*

678. In dependent clauses the perfect and past perfect tenses of the subjunctive mood denote completed

action and refer to time which is relatively past; *i. e.*, past with reference to the time of the verb in the main clause. (80)

Scīsne num superiōribus rēgibus Ancus fuerit pār? *Do you know whether Ancus was equal to the former kings?* Tar-

Photo from Keystone View Co., N. Y.

TEMPLUM APOLLINIS IN URBE POMPĒIĪS

quinius scīvit quae a priōribus rēgibus essent facta, *Tarquinius knew what had been done by the former kings.*

679. When the subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses, the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive are generally found in connection with a primary tense in the main clause; and the imperfect and past perfect

tenses of the subjunctive are generally found in connection with a secondary tense. This is known as the law of *the sequence of tenses.* (81)

For examples see section 677 *a*.

680. A clause may be used in place of a noun as the subject or the object of a verb. Such a clause is a substantive clause. (82)

The indirect questions in sections 671, 673, and 674 are substantive clauses. Clauses of purpose and result may also be substantive clauses.

Practice

681. Change the following questions to the indirect form.

1. Quod bellum Tarquinius gerēbat? Audīvī quod bellum . . .

2. Cōsne novāculā secārī potest? Rēx rogāvit num . . .

3. Quot annōs Ancus rēgnāvit? Magister mihi dīxit quot . . .

4. Quid ego mente concipiō? Sciō quid tū . . .

LATIN WRITING

682. 1. The master asked whether Tarquin had done many excellent things. 2. I know what war he waged, what city he took, and how great booty he brought back. 3. Romulus had enrolled three centuries of knights. 4. Tarquin resolved to give his own name to other centuries. 5. Attus, the famous augur, said, "The names cannot be changed unless the omens (birds) are (shall have been) propitious." 6. The king mocking asked whether a whetstone could be cut with a razor. 7. Attus replied that it could be done (to be able to be done). 8. It is said that the king (acc.) cut

the whetstone. 9. Attus was so renowned that great honor was added to augury. 10. Nothing was done in war or (and) at home except by augury.

VOCABULARY

683.

Group I

agitō	doceō	experior	sciō
circumdō	ēgregius	gerō	vīvō

Group II

admoneō	incertus	prōpōnō	secō
caveō	necne	prōsum	sonitus
concipiō	num	reportō	suādeō

Group III

addīcō	auspicātō	fēlēs	lapideus
adnectō	cōs	inaugurō	novācula
augur	dēsignō	interveniō	tintinnābulum

Derived English Words

agitate *concept* *inaugurate* *designate*

Related English Words

admonition *auspicious* *doctor* *inauguration*

WRITTEN REVIEW

684. In the perfect and past perfect subjunctive active write the conjugation of possum (potuerim, potuissem), vīvō (vīxerim, vīxissem) and veniō (vēnerim, vēnissem), and in the same tenses of the passive write the conjugation of portō (portātus sim, portātus essem) and iubeō (iussus sim, iussus essem).

CHAPTER LVI

CLAUSES WITH *CUM*

685. The conjunction **cum**, *when*, *since*, or *although*, is used in clauses denoting time, cause, or concession. Which of the three meanings it has in any given sentence can be determined partly by the mood and tense of the verb, and partly by the context.

AGRICOLA ET FĪLIĪ

686. Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi appropinquāre sentīret, fīliōs convocāvit, quōs, cum frātrēs essent, interdum discordāre nōverat, et fascem virgulārum afferrī iubet. Quae cum allātae essent, fīliōs hortātur ut fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulās virgās, iīsque celeriter frāctīs, docuit illōs quam fīrma rēs esset concordia quamque imbecilla discordia.

a. What is the meaning of **cum** in the clauses **cum . . . sentīret? cum . . . essent? cum allātae essent? cum . . . possent?**

b. What kind of a clause is **ut . . . frangerent? quam . . . concordia?**

c. What is the tense of each subjunctive? Upon what verb does each subjunctive depend?

COLLOQUIUM

687. 1. Quandō senex fīliōs convocāvit? 2. Discordābantne fīliī cum frātrēs essent? 3. Quid senex, cum fascem virgulārum afferrī iussisset, fīliōs hortātus est? 4. Cūr singulās virgās distribuit? 5. Quid pater, cum virgae singulae frāctae essent, fīliōs docuit?

READING EXERCISE

688. 1. Tarquinius, cum fīliōs Ancī rēgnō fraude pepulisset, multa tamen ēgregia fēcit. 2. Cum bellum adversus Latīnōs gessisset, praedam magnam reportāvit. 3. Mūrō lapideō circumdare urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum intervēnit. 4. Cum equitēs suīs deessent cōpiīs, aliās centuriās suō nōmine vocātās addere cōnstituit. 5. Attus augur, "Cum avēs," inquit, "nōn addīxerint, nōmina mūtārī nōn possunt." 6. Cum rēx īrātus interrogāvisset fierīne posset quod ipse mente conciperet, Attus respondit, "Cum artem auguris ēlūdās, tamen fierī potest." 7. Atque cum rēx agitāret num cōs secārī novāculā posset, illa tamen secta est. 8. Quod cum factum esset, auguriīs magnus honor accessit.

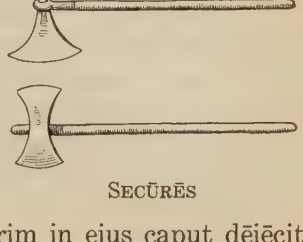
ANCĪ FĪLIĪ RĒGĪ ĪNSIDIĀS PARANT

689. Supererant duo Ancī fīliī, quī, cum paternō rēgnō fraudātī essent, rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt. Ex pās-

Photo by Mary A. Grant, Ph.D.

TEMPLUM CONCORDIAE IN SICILIĀ

tōribus duo ferōcissimī ad facinus dēlēctī sunt. Iī simulātā rīxā in vēstibulō rēgiae tumultuantur. Quōrum clāmor cum penitus in rēgiam pervēnisset, vocātī sunt ad rēgem. Prīmō uterque vōciferārī coepit et certātim alter alterī obstrepere. Cum vērō iussī essent in vicem dīcere, ūnus ex compositō rem ōrdītur; dumque intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam secūrim in eius caput dēiēcit, et relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambō forās sē prōripiunt.



SECŪRĒS

a. **Rēgnō**, abl. of separation (sec. 551); **ex pāstōribus**, *from* or *of the shepherds;* **simulātā rīxā**, abl. abs.; **quōrum clāmor**, *and when their shouting* (a relative at the beginning of a sentence is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative); **alterī**, dat. with **ob** in **obstrepere;** **alter alterī**, *one the other, each other.*

COLLOQUIUM

690. 1. Cūr duo Ancī fīliī rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt? 2. Quī ad facinus dēlēctī sunt? 3. Quid pāstōrēs ferōcēs in vēstibulō rēgiae fēcērunt? 4. Quandō ad rēgem vocātī sunt? 5. Cum rēx pāstōrēs in vicem dīcere iussisset, quid fēcit uterque? 6. Quō sē prōripiunt cum secūris in rēgis caput dēiecta esset?

SYNTAX

691. **In temporal clauses with *cum* the indicative is used if the dependent clause simply defines the time of the action of the main verb, or if the thought expressed by the temporal clause is an essential addition to the sentence.** (83)

Mūrō lapideō circumdare urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum intervēnit, *he was preparing to surround the city with a stone wall when a war with the Sabines interrupted.* (In this

sentence the clause with **cum** is an essential addition to the thought.)

692. In temporal clauses with *cum* which describe the circumstances under which the action of the main clause took place the subjunctive mood is used. The tense is always imperfect or past perfect. (84)

Cum senex mortem sibi appropinquāre sentīret, fīliōs vocāvit, *when an old man perceived that death was approaching, he called his sons;* **cum Tarquinius bellum gessisset, praedam reportāvit,** *when Tarquin had waged war, he brought back the booty.*

693. In causal and concessive clauses with *cum* the verbs are always in the subjunctive. Any tense may be used, the present and the perfect with primary tenses in the main clause, and the imperfect and the past perfect with secondary tenses. (85)

Cum avēs nōn addīxerint, nōmina mūtārī nōn possunt, *since the omens have not been propitious, the names cannot be changed;* **cum Tarquinius fīliōs Ancī rēgnō fraude pepulisset, multa tamen ēgregia fēcit,** *although Tarquin had driven the sons of Ancus from the kingdom by fraud, nevertheless he did many excellent things.*

Practice

694. 1. In each of the following clauses, taken from section 686, give the meaning of **cum**, and refer to the section in which the appropriate rule of syntax is stated.

(1) Cum senex mortem sibi appropinquāre sentīret. (2) Cum frātrēs essent. (3) Quae cum allātae essent. (4) Quod cum facere nōn possent.

2. In section 689 find one causal clause and two temporal clauses.

COMPOSITION

695. 1. Although Tarquin was the guardian of the king's sons, nevertheless he defrauded them of their

father's kingdom. 2. Since the sons of Ancus had been defrauded of their father's kingdom, they arranged a plot against the king. 3. They chose two fierce shepherds for the deed. 4. The shepherds made a disturbance in the entrance of the palace. 5. When their shouts had come into the palace, the shepherds were called to the king. 6. At first they cried out against each other (one against the other). 7. They had been ordered to speak in turn, when one of the shepherds threw an ax at the king's head. 8. When this had been done, both fled out of doors.

VOCABULARY

696.

Group I

cum (conj.)	forās	hortor	paternus
fīrmus	frangō	nōscō	pellō

Group II

compositum	efferō	interdum	penitus
concordia	fascis	interrogō	simulō
dēiciō	intentus	ōrdior	vēstibulum

Group III

certātim	imbecillus	rīxa	vicem
discordō	obstrepō	secūris	virgula
fraudō	prōripiō	tumultuor	vōciferor

Derived English Words

concord	*firm*	*intent*	*simulate*

Related English Words

composition	*convocation*	*exhortation*	*interrogation*

WRITTEN REVIEW

697. Make a list of all the clauses in section 688 introduced by the conjunction cum and classify them according to the different meanings of the conjunction. Refer by number to the section in which the explanatory rule of syntax is stated.

CHAPTER LVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

698. The subjunctive is used chiefly in dependent clauses; but it is also used in independent clauses for the expression of such ideas as *will, desire,* or *possibility;* as,

Meīs verbīs fidēs sit, *let there be confidence in my words.*

In independent clauses the subjunctive may be *volitive,* expressing the will of the speaker in commands, exhortations, *etc.; optative,* expressing desire; or *potential,* expressing possibility. The English auxiliaries *let, may, can, might,* and *could,* are often used in translating.

LEŌ

699. Societātem iūnxērunt leō, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā autem quam cēperant in quattuor partēs aequālīs dīvīsā, leō, "Prīma," ait, "mea est; dēbētur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quārtam quī sibi adrogāre voluerit, is sciat sē habitūrum mē inimīcum sibi." Quid facerent imbecillae bēstiae, aut quae leōnem īnfestum habēre vellet?

a. **Is sciat,** *let him know;* **quid facerent bēstiae,** *what could the beasts do?* **quae vellet,** *what (beast) could wish?*

COLLOQUIUM

700. 1. Quae bēstiae cum leōne societātem iūnxērunt? 2. Quot in partēs praeda dīvīsa est? 3. Quam ob rem leō prīmam partem sibi adrogāvit? 4. Cūr secundam partem sustulit? 5. Quā rē tertia pars leōnī dēbita est? 6. Quem inimīcum habitūra erat ea bēstia quae quārtam

partem praedae sibi adrogāvit? 7. Quae bēstia leōnem īnfestum habēre vellet?

READING EXERCISE

701. 1. Iuvenca, capra, ovis haec leōnī dīxērunt: "Societātem iungāmus atque praedam quam cēperīmus in partēs aequālīs dīvidāmus." 2. Hoc enim volēbant: "Utinam nōs ipsae habeāmus praedam quam leō cēperit." 3. Praedam autem captam leō tōtam sibi vindicāvit. 4. Tunc imbecillae bēstiae, "Utinam," aiunt, "societātem nē fēcissēmus. 5. Utinam ipsae partem praedae habērēmus. 6. Quid faciāmus? Nē fuerit leō (let not the lion be) nōbīs inimīcus. 7. Prīma pars leōnis est; tollat (let him take) et secundam; tertia quoque illī dēbētur; nē quārtam quidem nōbīs adrogāre velīmus, cum sciāmus nōs habitūrās leōnem inimīcum." 8. Dēnique leōnī dīxērunt, "Tolle praedam sed nōbīs nē fuerīs (do not be) īnfestus."

SYNTAX

702. The volitive subjunctive expresses commands or exhortations. The negative is *nē*. (86)

Praedam dīvidāmus, *let us divide the prey;* **nē fuerīs īnfestus,** *do not be hostile.*

a. The perfect subjunctive is used in negative commands. A more polite form of prohibition is **nōlī** with an infinitive. **Nōlī praedam tollere,** (*please*) *do not carry off the prey.*

703. The optative subjunctive expresses wishes or desires. The present and perfect tenses refer to the future and suggest the possibility of the fulfillment of the wish; the imperfect expresses a wish contrary to a present fact; and the past perfect expresses a wish contrary to a past fact. ***Utinam,*** *O that,* is generally found with the imperfect and past perfect. The negative adverb is generally ***nē***. (87)

Utinam ipsae praedam habeāmus, *O that we ourselves may have the prey;* **utinam partem praedae habērēmus,** *O that we* (now) *had part of the prey;* **utinam societātem nē fēcissēmus,** *O that we had not made the alliance.*

THERMAE CARACALLAE

704. **The potential subjunctive expresses possibility. The present and the perfect refer to the future; the imperfect and the past perfect refer to the past. A negative is often implied.** (88)

Quid faciāmus? *What can we do?* (Nothing.) **Quid facerent imbecillae bēstiae?** *What could the poor beasts do?* (Nothing.) **Quae sibi leōnem īnfestum habēre vellet?** *What beast could wish to have the lion hostile to her?* (No one.)

LATIN WRITING

705. 1. Let us make (join) an alliance. 2. Let us not divide the prey. 3. Let the first part be mine. 4. Do not take my part of the prey. 5. O that I may have a part. 6. O that the lion were not an enemy to me. 7. O that the prey had been divided. 8. If the lion is her enemy what can a weak sheep do? 9. When the lion had taken (sec. 692) all the prey, what weak beast could wish to claim a part? 10. What could the poor beasts have done?

VOCABULARY

706.

Group I

iungō	mereor	nē (adv.)	utinam

Group III

adrogō	aiō	iuvenca	ovis
aequālis	capra	rōbur	praestantia

Derived English Words

arrogant	*arrogate*	*equal*	*merit*

Related English Words

equality	*equator*	*junction*	*meritorious*

WRITTEN REVIEW

707. 1. Arrange the verbs of section 701 which are in the subjunctive mood and in independent clauses in three groups according as they denote will, desire, or possibility.

2. What tense of the subjunctive is used with **utinam** to represent the fulfillment of the wish as possible? What tense represents the wish as contrary to a present fact? What tense represents the wish as contrary to a past fact?

CHAPTER LVIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

708. Conditional sentences are complex sentences in which the subordinate or dependent clauses are introduced by the conjunction **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *if not, unless*. A conditional sentence contains two clauses: the condition, and the conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause and the conclusion is the independent clause.

Nōmina mūtārī nōn possunt nisi avēs addīxerint, *the names cannot be changed unless the omens are (shal have been) propitious.*

Sī imbecillae bēstiae praedam sibi adrogent, leōnem inimīcum sibi habeant, *if the poor beasts should claim the prey for themselves, they would have the lion as their enemy.*

In conditional sentences in which actual facts are represented or assumed the indicative mood is used with its ordinary signification. When the subjunctive mood is used in conditional sentences, the tenses have the same force as in sentences expressing wishes or desires (sec. 703).

LUPUS SCELERĀTUS

(Adapted and translated from *The Youth's Companion*.)

709. 1. Lupus quī apud hominēs ā parvō vīxerat tam mītis fuit ut fīlius agricolae eum prō cane habēret et cum eō cotīdiē lūderet. 2. Sed cum grandior factus esset, ferōx ingenium vidērī poterat. 3. Namque frūstīs quae data erant intāctīs humī iacēns somnum simulābat. 4. Sī autem pullī cibum petītum prope vēnērunt, eōs subitō raptōs dēvorāvit. 5. Atque hoc saepe faciēbat. 6. Dēnique agricola īrātus dīxit, "Lupus sī iterum pullōs rapuerit statim interficiētur." 7. Eōdem iterum factō, cum agri-

cola eum occīdere cōnārētur, effūgit in silvam. 8. Tum puer lacrimāns, "Laetus sim sī lupus redeat," inquit; atque vesperī vēnit. 9. Tum fīliō ōrantī ut lupō parceret agricola respondit, "Licet tibi tenēre lupum dōnec rūrsus malum faciet." 10. Posterō diē ille somnō simulātō tenerum pullum rapuerat cum agricola lupum ipsum prehendit; 11. atque sēcum locūtus, "Fīlī causā lupō parcerem sī nōn scelerātus esset," statim eum occīdit. 12. Nisi lupus continenter malum fēcisset, nōn interfectus esset.

a. What verbs are in the independent and the dependent clauses of the conditional sentences?

b. In what mood and tense is each of these verbs?

c. What time is referred to by each tense of the indicative in the conditional sentences? To what time does the present subjunctive refer? the imperfect subjunctive? the past perfect subjunctive?

d. In what conditional sentence with the subjunctive is the possibility of the fulfillment of the condition suggested?

e. In which sentence is the condition contrary to a present fact?

f. In which sentence is the condition contrary to a past fact?

g. Is the idea of future time represented more vividly in sentence 6 or in sentence 8?

Colloquium

710. 1. Quam mītis erat lupus quī apud hominēs ā parvō vīxerat? 2. Quandō ferōx ingenium vīsum est? 3. Quō modō ferōx lupī ingenium sē ostendit? 4. Quid, sī pullī prope vēnērunt, lupus faciēbat? 5. Quid tum agricola dīxit? 6. Iterumne pullī raptī sunt? 7. Cūr nōn agricola statim lupum interfēcit? 8. Quid puer dīxit cum lupus in silvam effūgisset? 9. Fīliō ōrantī nē lupus interficerētur quid pater respondit? 10. Quā rē tandem lupus interfectus est? 11. Num lupus interfectus esset nisi pullōs rapuisset? 12. Num lupus interficerētur nisi scelerātus esset?

READING EXERCISE

711. 1. Sī fīliī Ancī paternō rēgnō fraudātī sunt, rēgī īnsidiās parābunt. 2. Sī rēgī īnsidiās parāverint, duo pāstōrēs ad facinus dēligentur. 3. Iī in vēstibulō tumultuābuntur. 4. Quōrum sī clāmor penitus in rēgiam per-

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

DOMUS MĀRCĪ LUCRĒTĪ IN URBE POMPĒIĪS

veniat, ad rēgem vocentur. 5. Sī ad rēgem vocātī erunt, alter alterī obstrepet. 6. Sī rēx īnsidiās timēret, pāstōrēs ad sē nōn vocāret. 7. Ūnus ex compositō rem ōrdītur; alter secūrī rēgem vulnerat. 8. Nisi rēx pāstōrēs in rēgiam vocāvisset, ab iīs nōn vulnerātus esset.

SERVIUS TULLIUS RĒGNAT

712. Servius Tullius ā Tarquiniō gener adsūmptus erat, et cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil, Tarquinī uxor, mortem eius cēlāvit, populumque ex superiōre parte aedium allocūta ait rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse, eumque petere ut interim Serviō Tulliō parērent. "Tuum est rēgnum," inquit Serviō, "si vir es,

Impluvium—Interior Pars Aedium

nōn eōrum quī scelerātīs manibus pessimum facinus fēcēre." Sīc Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed rēctē imperium administrāvit. Sabīnōs subēgit; montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Vīminālem, Esquilīnum urbī adiūnxit; fossās circā mūrum dūxit. Īdem (he also) cēnsum ōrdināvit, et populum in classēs et centuriās distribuit.

a. **Cum . . . occīsus esset,** *temporal;* **rēgem,** subject of **accēpisse; eum,** subject of **petere.**

Colloquium

713. 1. Quō modō, cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil uxor mortem eius cēlāvit? 2. Cūr Tanaquil Servium Tullium rēgnāre volēbat? 3. Quid Serviō dīxit? 4. Quī pessimum facinus fēcerant? Nōnne iī quī Tarquinium rēgem occīderant? 5. Quō modō Servius rēgnāvit? 6. Quōs montēs urbī adiūnxit? 7. Quō modō urbem mūnīvit? 8. Nōnne populus Serviō paruisset sī Tanaquil Tarquinium occīsum esse dīxisset?

SYNTAX

714. In conditional sentences of the first class any tense of the indicative may be used with its ordinary signification. Either the supposition is assumed to be true or nothing is implied about the fact. Future time is vividly represented by the future or the future perfect tense. (89)

Sī frātrēs rēgnō fraudātī sunt, īnsidiās parābunt, *if the brothers have been defrauded of the kingdom they will prepare a plot;* sī pāstōrēs ad rēgem vocātī erunt, alter alterī obstrepet, *if the shepherds are called (shall have been called) before the king, they will abuse each other.*

715. In conditional sentences of the second class the present or the perfect subjunctive is used, and the possibility of fulfillment is suggested. Future time is denoted, but less vividly than by the future tenses of the indicative. (90)

Sī clāmor in rēgiam perveniat, pāstōrēs ad rēgem vocentur, *if the shouting should penetrate into the palace* (as it may), *the shepherds would be called before the king.*

716. In conditional sentences of the third class the imperfect subjunctive is used in a condition or a conclusion which is contrary to a present fact, and the past perfect subjunctive is used in a condition or a conclusion which is contrary to a past fact. Both the condition and

the conclusion are represented as contrary to fact, but the time need not be the same in both. (91)

Sī rēx īnsidiās timēret, pāstōrēs ad sē nōn vocāret, *if the king feared* (now) *a plot, he would not* (now) *call the shepherds before him;* (but he does not fear and calls); **nisi pāstōrēs in rēgiam vocātī essent, rēgem nōn vulnerāvissent,** *if the shepherds had not been called into the palace, they would not have wounded the king* (but they were called and wounded him).

717. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs in which the relation *to* is implied. Such verbs are those meaning *to believe, help, please,* and their opposites; *to persuade, command, obey, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, etc.* (92)

Placuit omnibus ut fēlī tintinnābulum adnecterētur, *it pleased all that a bell should be tied to the cat;* **agricola lupō nōn ignōscit,** *the farmer does not pardon the wolf;* **cīvēs Tulliō parent,** *the citizens obey Tullius;* **fīlius patrī persuāsit ut lupō parceret,** *the son persuaded his father to spare the wolf.*

Practice

718. Change the sentence,

Sī rēx īnsidiās timēbit, pāstōrēs in rēgiam nōn vocābit,

to mean successively (1) if he should fear, he would not call; (2) if he feared, he would not call; (3) if he had feared, he would not have called.

LATIN WRITING

719. Notice the exact meaning of each sentence before translating it into Latin. Remember that the English indicative is often to be expressed by the Latin subjunctive.

1. Although Tarquin had been killed, nevertheless Tanaquil concealed his death. 2. Tanaquil persuades (to) the people to (that they) obey Servius. 3. It pleased the people that Servius should be king. 4. The kingdom is yours, Servius, if you are a man. 5. Even if (etsī) Servius began to reign thus, he managed the kingdom well.

6. If you are (shall be) a man, the kingdom will be yours. 7. If you should be a man, the kingdom would be yours. 8. If you were a man (but you are not), the kingdom would be yours (but it is not). 9. If you had been a man (but you were not), the kingdom would (now) be yours (but it is not). 10. If Servius had not been king, we should not have heard (of) his deeds.

VOCABULARY

720.

Group I

administrō	fossa	mūniō	ostendō
classis	interficiō	occīdō	posterus

Group II

adiungō	lupus	parcō	somnus
aedēs	mītis	prehendō	subigō

Group III

adsūmō	cēnsus	grandis	lētālis
alloquor	dēvorō	lacrimō	ōrdinō

Derived English Words

administer	*assume*	*class*	*grand*

Related English Words

administration	*mitigate*	*ordinary*	*munition*

WRITTEN REVIEW

721. From each of the conditional sentences in section 711 select the verb in the condition and in the conclusion; as, **sī fraudātī sunt, parābunt.** Then answer the following questions.

1. In what mood and tense is each verb? 2. What time is denoted by the tense of each verb? 3. In which of the two sentences denoting future time is the future more vividly represented? 4. What condition is represented as contrary to a present fact? 5. What condition is represented as contrary to a past fact?

CHAPTER LIX

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE, THE GERUNDIVE, AND THE GERUND

722. The future passive participle is formed by adding to the present stem of the verb the letters **-nd-** (**-end-** for verbs in *-iō*) and the case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declensions. The long vowel of the present stem is shortened.

Ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *about to be loved, to be loved.*
Audi-end-us, -a, -um, *about to be heard, to be heard.*

When the future passive participle is used as a verbal adjective in the genitive, the dative, the accusative, or the ablative case, it is called the gerundive. As such it emphasizes the verbal idea in the phrase and is best translated by a verbal noun or, sometimes, by the English infinitive.

Comitia rēgī creandō facta sunt, *an assembly was held for electing a king (for a king to be elected), to elect a king.*

The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. In form the gerund is like the neuter singular of the gerundive in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. The gerund has the constructions of a noun but it may be followed by a direct object in the accusative case or by any other construction which the verb permits.

In suādendō plūrimī sunt audācēs, *very many are bold in advising.*

TUBICEN

723. Tubicen ab hostibus captus, "Nē mē," inquit, "interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeō

praeter hanc tubam." At hostēs, "Propter hoc ipsum," inquiunt, "tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī sīs imperītus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs."

TUBAE

Fābula docet nōn sōlum maleficōs esse pūniendōs, sed etiam eōs quī aliōs ad male faciendum inrītent.

COLLOQUIUM

724. 1. Quid tubicen ab hostibus captus dīxit? 2. Nōnne armātus tubicen erat? 3. Quid hostēs respondērunt? 4. Eratne tubicen pugnandī perītus? 5. Quō modō virōs ad pugnandum incitāre solēbat? Nōnne tubā eōs incitābat? 6. Nōnne malī pūniendī sunt? 7. Suntne quoque pūniendī iī quī aliōs ad male faciendum incitāre soleant?

READING EXERCISE

725. 1. Faustulus pāstor puerōs parvōs inventōs uxōrī dedit ēducandōs. 2. Adultī silvās vēnandō peragrābant. 3. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus in hīs locīs ubi ēducātī erant urbem condidērunt. 4. Sed ortum est inter eōs certāmen uter novae urbī nōmen daret. 5. Rōmulus auguriō victor, cum urbem suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvisset, frātre interfectō, ut ipse populusque uxōrēs habērent lēgātōs ad vīcīnās gentēs dē societāte faciendā mīsit. 6. Sabīnōrum fīliās, quae convēnerant studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, Rōmānī rapuērunt et uxōrēs habuērunt.

7. Tarquiniō in suā patriā honōris adipīscendī facultās nōn fuerat. 8. Itaque cōnsilium migrandī cēpit. 9. Rēgnandī cupīditāte Tarquinius Rōmam vēnit. 10. Ancō

mortuō Tarquinius ōrātiōnem habuit ad conciliandōs plēbis animōs compositam. 11. Cum rēgnum adeptus esset, imperī suī fīrmandī atque augendae reī pūblicae memor erat. 12. Ancī fīliī, cum paternō rēgnō fraudātī essent, rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt. 13. Duo pāstōrēs ad rēgem occīdendum dēlēctī sunt. 14. Tarquiniō vulnerātō Tanaquil ea quae cūrandō vulnerī opus erant sēdulō parābat. 15. Cum Tanaquil ingenium aptum ad simulandum habēret, dīxit rēgem petere ut Servius Tullius imperium administrāret. 16. Servius, rēgnō suō fīrmātō, tandem fīnem simulandō fēcit palamque rēgnāvit.

Colloquium

726. 1. Cui Faustulus puerōs ex aquā servātōs dedit ēducandōs? 2. Quā dē rē Rōmulus lēgātōs ad vīcīnās gentēs mīsit? 3. Quō studiō Sabīnī convēnērunt? 4. Cūr Tarquinius cōnsilium Rōmam migrandī cēpit? 5. Ancō mortuō quālem ōrātiōnem Tarquinius habuit? 6. Cum Tarquinius rēgnum adeptus esset, cuius reī memor erat? 7. Cūr fīliī Ancī rēgī īnsidiās parāvērunt? 8. Quī ad rēgem occīdendum dēlēctī sunt? 9. Quid Tanaquil Tarquiniō vulnerātō parābat? 10. Quāle ingenium Tanaquil habēbat? 11. Quid falsum Tanaquil dīxit? 12. Quandō Servius fīnem simulandī fēcit?

VĪCUS SCELERĀTUS

727. Initium turbandī omnia ā fēminā ortum est. Servius Tullius fīliam alteram ferōcem, mītem alteram habēns, cum Tarquinī fīliōs parī esse animō vidēret, ferōcem mītī, mītem ferōcī in mātrimōnium dedit, nē duo violenta ingenia mātrimōniō iungerentur. Sed mītēs seu forte seu fraude periērunt; ferōcēs mōrum similitūdō coniūnxit. Statim Tarquinius ā Tulliā incitātus rēgnī repetendī cōnsilium cēpit. Ut iam agendae reī tempus

visum est, senātū advocātō, cum dē sē ingentia pollicendō tum rēgem crīminandō animōs patrum in sē convertit. Quā rē audītā Servius ā vestibulō cūriae magnā vōce,

From the painting by Ernst Hildebrand

VĪCUS SCELERĀTUS

"Quid hoc," inquit, "Tarquinī, reī est? Quā tū audāciā mē vīvō vocāre ausus es patrēs aut in sēde cōnsīdere meā?" Cum ille ferōciter sē patris suī tenēre sēdem dīxisset, Servium per gradūs dēiēcit. Inde domum refugiēns rēx interfectus est. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta ēvocāvit virum ē cūriā rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Cum domum redīret Tullia per patris corpus carpentum ēgisse fertur; unde ille vīcus Scelerātus dictus est.

a. **Parī animō**, *of like mind, like-minded;* **fraude**, abl. of cause (sec. 376); **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also;* **magnā vōce**, abl. of manner (sec. 513); **reī**, gen. of the whole (sec. 442); **quid reī**, *what affair;* **quā audāciā**, abl. of cause (sec. 376); **mē vīvō**, abl. abs. (sec. 488); **prīma appellāvit**, *first called, was the first to call.*

b. Notice the order of the words in the expressions **alteram ferōcem, mītem alteram** and **ferōcem mītī, mītem ferōcī.** When the order is reversed in the second of two parallel expressions, the arrangement is called the chiastic (crossed) order. Such embellishment of style is quite common in the Latin writings and was thought to be artistic.

Colloquium

728. 1. Quis initium omnia turbandī fēcit? 2. Quālēs fīliās Servius Tullius habuit? Quālēs fīliōs Tarquinius habuit? 3. Cūr ferōx fīlia mītī virō, mītis ferōcī, in mātrimōnium data est? 4. Cūr nōn mītis fēmina cum ferōcī virō coniūncta est? 5. Quid ferōcem fīliam Servī et Tarquinī fīlium ferōcem coniūnxit? 6. Quod Tarquinius cōnsilium fēcit? 7. Quō modō Tarquinius animōs patrum in sē convertit? 8. Quid hāc rē audītā Servius dīxit? 9. Nōnne Tarquinius sēdem patris suī tenēbat? 10. Ubi Servius interfectus est? 11. Quis prīma Tarquinium rēgem appellāvit? 12. Cūr vīcus quō Tullia domum rediit Scelerātus appellātus est? 13. Nōnne Tullia ipsa fēmina erat scelerāta?

TYPICAL VERBS

The Future Passive Participle

729. The Gerundive

amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*
videndus, -a, -um, *to be seen.*
mittendus, -a, -um, *to be sent.*
audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*

a. The future passive participle is formed by joining to the present stem of the verb the letters -nd- (-end- for verbs of the fourth conjugation and verbs in -iō of the third conjugation), and the case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declensions. A long vowel in the verb stem is shortened. **Ama-nd-us, audi-end-us.**

730. The Gerund

Gen.	amandī	videndī	mittendī	audiendī	capiendī
Dat.	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō	capiendō
Acc.	amandum	videndum	mittendum	audiendum	capiendum
Abl.	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō	capiendō

a. The gerund in these cases has the same forms as the neuter singular of the gerundive.

SYNTAX

731. **The gerundive agrees with a noun or pronoun in case, number, and gender. It emphasizes the verbal idea of the phrase and is almost equivalent to a verbal noun.** (93)

Gen. **Convēnērunt studiō videndae urbis,** *they came with the desire of seeing the city (of the city to be seen).*

Dat. **Comitia rēgī creandō facta sunt,** *the assembly was held for electing a king (for a king to be elected).*

Acc. **Ōrātiōnem ad conciliandōs plēbis animōs compositam,** *a speech designed to win over the minds of the common people (for the minds to be won).*

Abl. **Dē societāte faciendā,** *concerning the making of an alliance (an alliance to be made).*

a. The gerundive with **ad** may be used to denote purpose.

732. The gerund is a verbal noun whose four cases are used like the same cases of other nouns. (94)

Gen. Initium turbandī omnia, *a beginning of disturbing all things;* pugnandī imperītus, *ignorant of fighting.*

Dat. Fīnem simulandō fēcit, *he made an end of (to) feigning.*

Acc. Ingenium aptum ad simulandum, *a nature adapted to feigning;* quī aliōs ad male faciendum inrītant, *who arouse others to wrong-doing.*

Abl. Silvās vēnandō peragrant, *they roam through the woods in hunting;* dē sē ingentia pollicendō, *by promising great things concerning himself.*

a. The gerund with ad may be used to denote purpose.

Practice

733. In each of the following sentences supply, in the proper form, the gerund or the gerundive of the verb given in parentheses, specifying in each instance whether the form supplied is the gerund or the gerundive, and explaining its use as noun or adjective.

1. Tubicen —— (pugnō) erat imperītus. 2. Maleficī —— (pūniō) sunt. 3. Tarquinius cōnsilium —— (migrō) cēpit. 4. Tullia coniugem incitāvit ad rēgnum —— (repetō). 5. Ubi tempus senātūs —— (advocō) vēnit, Tarquinius rēgem —— (crīminor) animōs patrum in sē convertit.

LATIN WRITING

734. 1. Tullia makes a beginning of disturbing everything. 2. Tarquin was aroused by the desire of recovering the kingdom. 3. It seemed now the time for (of) doing the thing. 4. He won over the senate by promising many things. 5. By accusing the king he turned the minds of the fathers to himself. 6. The senate was called to make (for making) Tarquin king. 7. Tullia summoned her husband from the senate-house to salute (for saluting)

him as king. 8. Tullia was the first to salute (first saluted) Tarquin as king.

VOCABULARY

735.

Group I

convertō	incitō	orior	studium
ēdūcō	inermis	pereō	tuba
ēvocō	initium	quisquam	vīcus

Group II

adipīscor	ferōciter	invehō	soleō
advocō	gradus	refugiō	turbō
cupīditās	imperītus	seu . . . seu	vīvus

Group III

crīminor	interimō	palam	similitūdō
fīrmō	maleficus	pūniō	tubicen
inrītō	migrō	sēdulō	violentus

Derived English Words

adept *convert* *educate* *orient*

Related English Words

disturbance *immigration* *initiative* *vivacious*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

cupīditās incitō gradus violentus

WRITTEN REVIEW

736. 1. Refer each gerundive in section 731 to the verb from which it comes, and explain its agreement as an adjective.

2. Refer each gerund in section 732 to the verb from which it comes and explain its construction (use) as a noun.

3. In what words in section 735 are prepositions used as prefixes? How does each preposition affect the meaning of the word of which it is a part?

CHAPTER LX

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

The Dative of the Agent

737. The future active participle (sec. 596) is combined with the different tenses of the verb **sum** to form the active periphrastic conjugation. This represents action as intended or as about to take place.

Agricola lupum scelerātum interfectūrus erat, *the farmer was about to kill (intended to kill) the vicious wolf.*

The future passive participle (sec. 729) is combined with the different tenses of the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation. This represents action as necessary or obligatory.

Lupus scelerātus interficiendus est, *the vicious wolf is to be (must be, ought to be) killed.*

With a verb in the passive periphrastic conjugation the person upon whom the obligation rests to perform the act, or the person by whom the act must be performed, is denoted by the dative case. This dative, denoting the agent, is best translated by the preposition *by,* or, changing the voice of the verb, the noun in the dative case may be translated as if it were the subject of the verb.

Animī plēbis Tarquiniō conciliandī erant, *the minds of the common people had to be won over by Tarquin,* or, *Tarquin had to win over the minds of the common people.*

READING EXERCISE

738. 1. Servius Tullius duās fīliās, alteram ferōcem alteram mītem, habuit, quās fīliīs Tarquinī in mātrimōnium datūrus erat. 2. Hoc sēcum putāvit: "Ferōx

mulier virō mītī, mītis ferōcī in mātrimōnium mihi danda est. 3. Duo violenta ingenia nōn sunt iungenda." 4. Fēmina omnia turbātūra erat. 5. Nam mītēs seu forte seu fraude periērunt et ferōcēs coniūnctī sunt. 6. Atque Tullia Tarquinium ita incitāvit: 7. "Rēgnum tibi repe-

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art, N. Y.

MEDIA ROTAE PARS CUM CAPITE MEDŪSAE

tendum est. 8. Senātus advocandus est et animī patrum in tē convertendī sunt." 9. Hōc factō Servius rēx magnā vōce, "Quid," inquit, "Tarquinī, factūrus es? 10. Num in meā sēde cōnsessūrus es?" 11. Tum ille, "Patris meī," respondit, "sēdem tentūrus sum," et Servium per gradūs dēiēcit. 12. Tullia virō ē cūriā ēvocātō, "Sī tū," inquit, "es vir, rēx es futūrus."

Colloquium

739. 1. Quō ingeniō erant fīliae quās Servius Tullius fīliīs Tarquinī in mātrimōnium datūrus erat? 2. Utra mulier virō mītī, utra ferōcī danda est? 3. Nōnne duo violenta ingenia iungenda sunt? 4. Quibus verbīs Tullia Tarquinium incitāvit? 5. Quid Tarquinius factūrus erat? 6. Cūr Tarquinius Serviō vīvō in sēde rēgis cōnsessūrus erat? 7. Cuius sēdem Tarquinius tentūrus erat? 8. Cūr Servius Tarquiniō interficiendus erat? 9. Quid Tullia virō ē cūriā ēvocātō dictūra erat?

TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS RĒGNUM OCCUPAT

740. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā. Is tam bonus et tam mītis erat ut difficilis esset aemulātiō atque, ut quīdam ferunt, imperium ipse dēpositūrus esset. Sed L. Tarquinius rēgnum occupāvit, cui Superbō cognōmen datum est quod neque populī iussū neque auctōribus patribus rēgnāvit. Eī in cāritāte cīvium nihil speī repōnentī metū rēgnum tūtandum erat. Multī ob dīvitiās et prūdentiam ab eō occīsī sunt. Tarquinius Superbus suīs cōnsiliīs per sē sōlus rem pūblicam administrāvit; bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse quibuscum voluit iniussū populī ac senātūs fēcit dirēmitque.

a. **Ut . . . esset, dēpositūrus esset,** clauses of result; **ut quīdam ferunt,** *as some say;* **Superbō,** dat., attracted into the case of **cui** although the form **Superbus** would be expected; **cui . . . est,** *to whom the name Superbus was given;* **iussū, cōnsiliīs, iniussū,** abl. of cause; **auctōribus patribus,** abl. abs.; **eī,** dat. of agent, *by him;* **speī,** gen. of the whole modifying **nihil**; **nihil speī,** *nothing of hope, no hope;* **repōnentī,** dat., agreeing with **eī**; **metū,** abl. denoting means; **populī, senātūs,** subjective genitive.

Colloquium

741. 1. Quot annōs Servius rēgnāvit? 2. Quam bonus erat? 3. Num imperium dēpositūrus erat? 4. Cūr

cognōmen Superbum Tarquiniō datum est? 5. Quam ob rem Tarquiniō rēgnum metū tūtandum erat? 6. Quam ob rem multī occīsī sunt? 7. Quō modō Tarquinius rem pūblicam administrāvit? 8. Fēcitne bellum et pācem iniussū populī ac senātūs? 9. Cum quibus foedera ac

VIA APPIA AB RŌMĀ AD BRUNDISIUM

societātēs fēcit? 10. Nōnne Tarquinius ā populō Superbus appellandus erat?

CONJUGATION

742. The conjugation of a typical verb in the active and passive periphrastic conjugations is given in section 855.

SYNTAX

743. The active periphrastic conjugation is used to represent action as future or intended, with reference to a time in the past, present, or future. (95)

Quid factūrus es? *What do you intend to do?* quid factūrus erās? *what did you intend to do?* rogō quid factūrus sīs? *I ask what you intend to do.*

744. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes necessity or obligation. (96)

Senātus advocandus est, *the senate must be summoned.*

745. With the passive periphrastic conjugation the agent is denoted by the dative case. (97)

Tarquiniō rēgnum metū tūtandum erat, *by Tarquin royal power had to be maintained by fear,* or, *Tarquin had to maintain royal power by fear.*

746. The genitive of the subject may be used with nouns denoting action. (98)

Iussū populī, *by the order of the people.*

a. This is called the subjective genitive.

PRACTICE

747. 1. Supply the participles required to complete the active periphrastic forms.

(1) Tarquinius senātum —— (advocō) erat. (2) Tarquinius Superbus rēgnum —— (occupō) erat. (3) Tullia prīma virum rēgem —— (appellō) erat.

2. Supply the participles required to complete the passive periphrastic forms.

(1) Tulliae carpentum per patris corpus nōn —— (agō) erat. (2) Ille vīcus Scelerātus —— (dīcō) est.

LATIN WRITING

748. 1. Servius Tullius was about to lose the kingdom. 2. Royal power had to be laid down by him

(dat.). 3. The reign of Servius Tullius was so gentle that imitation was difficult. 4. Lucius Tarquin was about to seize the kingdom. 5. The name Superbus was given to Tarquin because he administered the affairs of the state without the consent of the people and the senate. 6. He placed no hope (nothing of hope) in the affection of the citizens. 7. He (dat.) had to strengthen his rule by fear. 8. He made peace and war on his own authority (by his own plans). 9. (Acting) by himself alone, he made and broke off treaties. 10. Tarquin the Proud was not (about) to reign long.

VOCABULARY

749.

Group I

cognōmen	**dō**	**habeō**	**iungō**
dēpōnō	**faciō**	**interficiō**	**teneō**

Group II

auctor	**cāritās**	**metus**	**prūdentia**

Group III

aemulātiō	**iniussū**	**iussus**	**tūtor** (verb)

Derived English Words

charity	*deposit*	*emulation*	*prudence*

Related English Words

attain	*contain*	*obtain*	*pertain*

WRITTEN REVIEW

750. 1. Write the synopsis of **datūrus sum** and **repetendus sum** in the third person singular in all the tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive.

2. Make a list of all periphrastic forms in section 738 and give the English translation of each.

CHAPTER LXI

ĪDEM AND THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

751. **Īdem** (**is-dem**), *the same,* is declined in most cases like the demonstrative **is** (sec. 469) with the suffix **-dem** added. However, **s** is dropped before **d** in the nominative singular masculine, and **m** is changed to **n** in the accusative singular and in the genitive plural. **Eīdem** is generally shortened to **īdem** in the nominative plural masculine, and **eīsdem** to **īsdem** in the ablative plural. In the neuter singular **idem** is found instead of **iddem.**

Of the indefinite pronouns the most common are **quis,** *anyone* (substantive); **quī,** *any* (adjective); **aliquis,** *some one, some;* **quīdam,** *a certain one, certain;* **quisquam,** *any at all;* **quīvīs,** *any whatever;* **quisque,** *each;* **quīcumque,** *whoever.*

READING EXERCISE

752. 1. L. Tarquinius idem rēgnum occupāvit quod pater habuerat. 2. Eandem sēdem tenuit quam pater eius tenuerat. 3. Quīdam ferunt Servium imperium ipsum dēpositūrum fuisse. 4. Nēmō autem quidquam dē eā rē certum habet. 5. Tarquinius aliqua fortiter, crūdēliter multa fēcit. 6. Suīs cōnsiliīs rem pūblicam administrāvit nec quidquam iussū populī ac senātūs fēcit. 7. Cīvēs quisque suō cōnsiliō multa facere possunt, sed rēgibus iussū populī rēs pūblica administranda est. 8. L. Tarquinius cuivīs vidētur superbus quod bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse sōlus fēcit dirēmitque. 9. Sī quis (if anyone) eadem quae Tarquinius faciat, eī Superbō cognōmen dandum sit.

Colloquium

753. 1. Quod rēgnum Tarquinius occupāvit? 2. Quis eandem sēdem tenuerat quam Tarquinius tenuit? 3. Quid dē Serviō quīdam dīxērunt? 4. Certumne erat Servium imperium dēpositūrum fuisse? 5. Fēcitne Tarquinius omnia fortiter? 6. Nōnne quidquam iussū populī ac senātūs fēcit? 7. Possuntne rēgēs omnia suō cōnsiliō facere? 8. Quam ob rem Tarquinius cuivīs vidēbātur superbus? 9. Sī quis eadem quae Tarquinius faciat, quod cognōmem eī dandum sit?

RĒGE EXPULSŌ CŌNSULĒS SUNT CREĀTĪ

754. Iūnius Brūtus, sorōre Tarquinī Superbī nātus, eandem fortūnam timēbat in quam aliī inciderant. Is deōs obtestāns, "L. Tarquinium Superbum," inquit, "cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī, quācumque vī poterō, exsequar, nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae patiar." Omnēs ab metū versī in īram Brūtum sequuntur ducem. Prō sē quisque scelus rēgis ac vim queruntur. Ferōcissimus quisque iuvenum cum armīs adest. Inde cūstōdibus datīs, nē quis eum mōtum rēgī nūntiāret, Rōmam vēnērunt. Ibi Brūtus ōrātiōne factā multitūdinī persuāsit ut imperium rēgī abrogāret exsulemque esse iubēret L. Tarquinium cum coniuge ac līberīs.

Iūnius Brūtus, Cōnsul

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vīgintī. Rēgnātum est Rōmae ab urbe conditā ad lībertātem annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor. Duo cōnsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātīnus.

a. **Sorōre Tarquinī nātus,** *born of Tarquin's sister, the son of Tarquin's sister;* **ferrō, ignī, vī,** abl. of means (sec. 30); **prō**

sē quisque, *each on his own account;* **ferōcissimus quisque,** (*each most daring*) *all the most daring;* **nē quis,** *so that* (*in order that*) *no one;* **rēgnātum est,** impersonal (sec. 512), *it was ruled* (*by kings*), *kings ruled;* **Rōmae,** locative (sec. 52); **ab urbe conditā,** *from the founding of the city* (*from the city founded*); **L. Iūnius Brūtus, Tarquinius Collātīnus,** in apposition with **cōnsulēs.**

Colloquium

755. 1. Quis erat Iūnī Brūtī māter? 2. Quam fortūnam Brūtus timēbat? 3. Quid Brūtus factūrus erat nē quis Rōmae rēgnāret? 4. Quam ob rem omnēs ab metū in īram versī sunt? 5. Quī cum armīs Brūtum secūtī sunt? 6. Cūr cūstōdēs datī sunt? 7. Quō vēnērunt iī quī Brūtum ducem secūtī sunt? 8. Quid Brūtus ōrātiōne multitūdinī persuāsit? 9. Quot annōs Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit? Quam diū Rōmae rēgnātum est? 10. Quī prīmī cōnsulēs creātī sunt?

DECLENSION

756. For the declension of **īdem,** see section 845. For the declension of **aliquis, quisque, quīdam,** and **quisquam,** see section 848.

SYNTAX

757. Indefinite pronouns refer to indefinite antecedents. (99)

Homō quīdam duōs fīlīōs habuit, *a certain man had two sons;* **cūstōdēs datī sunt nē quis eum mōtum rēgī nūntiāret,** *guards were appointed so that no one might report this movement to the king.*

a. **Quis** and **quī** are often used after **sī, nisi, nē,** or **num. Sī quis,** *if anyone;* **nē quis,** *that no one.*

b. **Quisquam** is frequently used in negative expressions. **Nēmō quidquam certum habet,** *no one regards anything as certain;* or *feels assured of anything;* **nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgem esse patiar,** *neither him nor any one else will I permit to be king.*

758. Origin or parentage is generally expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (100)

Sorōre Tarquinī nātus, *born of Tarquin's sister, the son of Tarquin's sister.*

Practice

759. Supply the proper case of īdem with each of the following nouns.

—— rēgnum, —— cōnsilia, —— fortūna, —— ducem, —— cīvēs, —— societātem, —— ōrātiōne, —— tempore, —— oppidīs, —— urbium, —— virōs.

LATIN WRITING

760. 1. The citizens, each for himself, feared Tarquin the Proud. 2. Brutus wished neither Tarquin nor anyone else to reign at Rome. 3. Certain (men) followed Brutus as leader because they feared the same fortune into which others had fallen. 4. All of the most daring (each most daring) came to Rome with Brutus. 5. All complained of Tarquin's wickedness and violence. 6. If anyone fears Tarquin, let him come to Rome with arms.

VOCABULARY

761.

Group I

aliquis	mōtus	quīcumque	quisquam
expellō	nūntiō	quīdam	quisque
īdem	queror	quis	quīvīs

Group II

crūdēliter	ducentī	exsequor	scelus

Group III

abrogō	cūstōs	exsul	obtestor

WRITTEN REVIEW

762. Write the declension of īdem, aliquis, and quisque.

CHAPTER LXII

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

763. Expressions which follow verbs of saying, thinking, etc., if not quoted in the exact words of the original speaker or thinker, are said to be in the indirect discourse.

Direct.—**Brūtus eandem fortūnam timet,** *Brutus fears the same fortune.*

Indirect.—**Brūtus dīcit sē eandem fortūnam timēre,** *Brutus says that he fears (himself to fear) the same fortune.*

In English the clause that is indirectly quoted is generally introduced by the conjunction *that.* In Latin, however, no conjunction is ever used, but the main verb in the indirect quotation, if declarative, is in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative case in accordance with sections 309 and 414.

READING EXERCISE

764. 1. Iūnius Brūtus eandem fortūnam timet in quam aliī incidērunt. 2. Brūtus dīcit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī inciderint. 3. Brūtus dīxit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī incidissent. 4. L. Tarquinium cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī, quācumque vī poterō, exsequar. 5. Brūtus dīcit sē L. Tarquinium cum scelerātā coniuge ferrō, ignī quācumque vī possit, exsecūtūrum esse. 6. Dīxit sē Tarquinium quācumque vī posset, exsecūtūrum esse. 7. Nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae patiar. 8. Dīcit (dīxit) sē nec illum nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum (esse). 9. Līvius est auctor omnēs ab metū versōs in īram Brūtum secūtōs esse ducem; 10. atque ferōcissimum quemque

iuvenum cum armīs Rōmam vēnisse. 11. Audīvī Brūtum multitūdinī persuāsisse ut Tarquinium exsulem esse iubēret. 12. Lēgī Tarquinium Superbum rēgnāvisse annōs quīnque et vīgintī; atque inde cōnsulēs creātōs esse, L. Iūnium Brūtum et L. Tarquinium Collātīnum. 13. Dictum est Tarquinium Superbum ab omnibus timērī; atque prō sē quemque scelus eius ac vim querī.

LIBRĪ SIBYLLĪNĪ

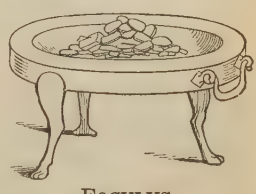
765. Quondam anus incognita ad Tarquinium Superbum rēgem adiit novem librōs ferēns, quōs esse dīcēbat dīvīna ōrācula; eōs sē velle vēndere. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est; mulier nimium atque immēnsum poposcit. Rēx, quasi anus aetāte dēsiperet, dērīsit. Tum illa foculum cum ignī appōnit et trēs librōs ex novem deūrit; et ecquid reliquōs sex eōdem pretiō emere vellet rēgem interrogāvit. Sed Tarquinius id multō rīsit magis, dīxitque anum iam procul dubiō dēlīrāre. Mulier statim trēs aliōs librōs exussit; atque id ipsum dēnuō placidē rogat, ut trēs reliquōs eōdem illō pretiō emat. Tarquinius ōre iam sēriō atque attentiōre animō fit; eam cōnstantiam cōnfīdentiamque nōn neglegendam esse intellegit. Librōs trēs reliquōs mercātur nihilō minōre pretiō quam quod erat petītum prō omnibus. Sed eam mulierem tunc ā Tarquiniō dīgressam posteā nusquam vīsam (esse) fertur (it is said).

By Michelangelo *Photo Brown Bros.*

SIBYLLA

Librī trēs in sacrāriō conditī sunt Sibyllīnīque appellātī (sunt). Ad eōs quasi ad ōrāculum quīndecimvirī adeunt cum diī immortālēs cōnsulendī sunt.

a. **Eōs sē velle vēndere:** sē is the subject of **velle** and **eōs** the object of **vēndere**; **nimium** and **immēnsum** modify **pretium**, which is to be supplied as the object of **poposcit**; **aetāte**, abl. of cause; **ecquid . . . vellet**, *whether he wished*, indirect question, object of **interrogāvit**; **eōdem pretiō**, *at the same price*; **procul dubiō**, *without doubt*; **ut . . . emat**, a clause of purpose (sec 651); **ōre sēriō fit**, *becomes of serious countenance*; **neglegendam esse**, periphrastic infinitive (sec. 744); **nihilō minōre pretiō**, *at a price no less*; **quod**, with **id** to be supplied, *that which*; **vīsam** (esse), infinitive in the indirect discourse with **fertur**.



FOCULUS

COLLOQUIUM

766. 1. Quis quondam ad Tarquinium rēgem vēnit? 2. Quālēs librōs anus sēcum ferēbat? 3. Dīxitne mulier sē librōs rēgī dare velle? 4. Quod pretium poposcit? 5. Cūr rēx dērīsit? 6. Quot librōs mulier deussit? 7. Quō pretiō reliquōs sex vēndere volēbat? 8. Cum mulier rogāvisset ecquid Tarquinius reliquōs librōs emere vellet, quid rēx respondit? 9. Tribus aliīs librīs exustīs quid mulier rogāvit? 10. Quā rē Tarquinius attentiōre animō factus est? 11. Quot librōs rēx mercātus est? 12. Quō pretiō eōs ēmit? 13. Quō deinde mulier dīgressa est? 14. Quō in locō librī trēs sunt conditī? 15. Quandō quīndecimvirī ad librōs Sibyllīnōs adeunt?

SYNTAX

767. After verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, etc., the main verbs, if declarative, are infinitives with subjects in the accusative case. (101)

Direct.—**Brūtus timet,** *Brutus fears.*

Indirect.—**Brūtus dīcit sē timēre,** *Brutus says that he fears;* **Brūtus dīxit sē timēre,** *Brutus said that he feared.*

TEMPLUM SIBYLLAE

Direct.—**Ferōcissimus quisque Rōmam vēnit,** *all the boldest came to Rome.*

Indirect.—**Fertur ferōcissimum quemque Rōmam vēnisse,** *it is said that all the boldest came to Rome;* **dictum est ferōcissimōs vēnisse,** *it was said that the boldest came (had come).*

Direct.—**Rēgem exsequar,** *I will pursue the king.*

Indirect.—**Dīcit sē rēgem exsecūtūrum esse,** *he says that he will pursue the king;* **dīxit sē rēgem exsecūtūrum esse,** *he said that he would pursue the king.*

768. In the dependent clauses of the indirect discourse the verbs are in the subjunctive mood. The tense is determined by the usual law of sequence (sec. 679). (102)

Direct.—**Brūtus eandem fortūnam timet in quam aliī incidērunt,** *Brutus fears the same fortune into which others have fallen.*

Indirect.—**Brūtus dīcit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī inciderint,** *Brutus says that he fears the same fortune into which others have fallen;* **dīxit sē eandem fortūnam timēre in quam aliī incidissent,** *he said that he feared the same fortune into which others had fallen.*

Direct.—**Rēgem quācumque vī poterō exsequar,** *I will pursue the king with whatever force I can.*

Indirect.—**Dīcit sē rēgem quācumque vī possit exsecūtūrum (esse),** *he says that he will pursue the king with whatever*

force he can; dīxit sē rēgem quācumque vī posset exsecūtūrum, *he said that he would pursue the king with whatever force he could.*

769. Interrogative clauses in the indirect discourse become indirect questions (sec. 677) and have their verbs in the subjunctive mood. (103)

Direct.—Vīsne librōs emere? *do you wish to buy the books?*
Indirect.—Ecquid librōs emere vellet rēgem interrogāvit, *she asked the king whether he wished to buy the books.*

The Ablative of Price

770. The ablative is used to denote price or value. (104)

Eōdem pretiō emere, *to buy at the same price.*

771. A noun in the ablative, if modified by an adjective or a genitive, may be used to denote quality or description. (105)

Tarquinius attentiōre animō fit, *Tarquinius becomes more attentive (of more attentive mind).*

Practice

772. 1. Change the following sentences from the indirect discourse to the direct, omitting the verbs of saying or thinking.

(1) Mulier dīxit sē librōs habēre quōs vēndere vellet. (2) Tarquinius dīxit anum dēlīrāre. (3) Intellegit eam cōnstantiam nōn neglegendam esse. (4) Fertur mulierem dīgressam posteā nusquam vīsam esse.

2. Change the following sentences from the direct to the indirect discourse following the verbs in parentheses.

(1) (Līvius dīcit) Quaedam mulier incognita ad rēgem vēnit novem librōs ferēns. (2) (Intellegō) Tarquinius pretium percontātus est. (3) (Audīvī) Librī trēs in sacrāriō conditī sunt. (4) (Fertur) Quīndecimvirī ad librōs Sibyllīnōs adeunt cum diī immortālēs cōnsulendī sunt.

LATIN WRITING

773. 1. The woman said that the books were divine oracles (the books to be). 2. She said that she wished to sell them for a large price. 3. Tarquin replied that he did not wish to buy (sē emere nōlle) the books at that price. 4. When the woman had burned (cum with

From the painting by Elihu Vedder

SIBYLLA CŪMAEA CUM LIBRĪS SIBYLLĪNĪS

subj.) three books, she wished to sell the others at the same price. 5. Tarquin thought that the woman was crazy. 6. Immediately she burned three others. 7. Tarquin then said that he would buy the three remaining books at no less price than (that) which had been asked (subj.) for all.

8. It was said (dictum est) that the three books which Tarquin had bought (subj.) were placed in a sacred place and were called the Sibylline books.

VOCABULARY

774.

Group I

cōnsulō	**emō**	**neglegō**	**vēndō**

Group II

dīgredior	**immortālis**	**mercor**	**placidē**
immēnsus	**incognitus**	**nihilum**	**quasi**

Group III

anus	**cōnstantia**	**dēsipiō**	**percontor**
appōnō	**dēlīrō**	**deūrō**	**quīndecimvirī**
attentus	**dēnuō**	**ecquid**	**sacrārium**
cōnfīdentia	**dērīdeō**	**foculus**	**sērius**

Derived English Words

confidence	*digress*	*immense*	*neglect*

Related English Words

attention	*delirious*	*immortality*	*negligence*

a. What English words are derived from the following Latin words?

cōnfīdentia	**dērīdeō**	**immortālis**	**neglegō**

WRITTEN REVIEW

775. Answer the following questions based on section 764.

1. What verbs are in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative? 2. What verb or expression denoting saying or thinking does each infinitive follow? 3. What verbs are in dependent clauses? In what mood are they? 4. What tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses? secondary tenses? 5. What verb in a subordinate clause would be in the subjunctive in the direct discourse as well?

CHAPTER LXIII

READING AND TRANSLATION

Review of Forms and Syntax

776. All of the commonly used forms of Latin words, the ordinary principles of syntax, and a vocabulary containing a considerable number of words have been presented in the preceding chapters; and the way has now been prepared for the intelligent reading and translation of Latin selections which are more varied in style and construction. It remains for the student, by continually recalling the words, forms, and idioms with which he has become familiar, to increase his confidence and power by the same process in which he has already been trained.

The following chapters contain material for further practice in reading and translation, for the review and continued study of word-formation and derivation, and for a systematic review of inflections and syntax.

SENEX ET MORS

777. Senex in silvā ligna cecīderat iīsque sublātīs domum redīre coepit. Cum aliquantum viae prōgressus esset, et onere et viā dēfatīgātus fascem dēposuit et sēcum aetātis et inopiae mala contemplātus mortem clārā vōce invocāvit, quae ipsum ab omnibus hīs malīs līberāret. Tum Mors senis precibus audītīs subitō adstitit et quid vellet percontātur. At senex quem iam vōtōrum suōrum paenitēbat, "Nihil," inquit, "sed requīrō quī onus paulum adlevet dum ego rūrsus subeō."

a. For the declension of **senex** and **domus** see section 835; **iīs sublātīs,** abl. abs. (sec. 488), *having taken them up;* **viae,**

gen. of the whole (sec. 442); **onere, viā,** abl. of cause (sec. 376); **clārā vōce,** abl. of manner (sec. 513); **quae . . . līberāret,** clause of purpose (sec. 651); **quid vellet,** indirect question (sec. 677); **paenitēbat,** impersonal; **quem vōtōrum paenitēbat,** *who repented of his prayers;* **quī . . . adlevet,** purpose (sec. 651.)

Colloquium

778. 1. Unde quōque senex ībat? Quid portābat? 2. Quā rē fascem dēposuit? 3. Quid sēcum contemplātus est? 4. Quid Mortem ōrāvit? 5. Precēsne senis Mors audīvit? 6. Quid precibus audītīs Mors senem percontātus est? 7. Utrum senex iam volēbat id quod rogāverat an vōtōrum suōrum eum paenitēbat? 8. Quid tandem senex Mortī respondit?

LĀRS PORSENA RŌMAM ĪNFESTŌ EXERCITŪ VENIT

779. Iam Tarquiniī ad Lārtem Porsenam Clūsīnum rēgem perfūgerant. Eum ōrābant nē sē exsulēs esse paterētur; monēbant nē iniūriam suī pellendī inultam (esse) sineret. (Dīcunt) nisi rēgna rēgēs dēfendant, adesse fīnem rēgnīs. Porsena, cum rēgem esse Rōmae vellet, Rōmam īnfestō exercitū vēnit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror senātum invāsit; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Nec hostēs modō timēbant sed suōs cīvēs, nē Rōmāna plēbs metū perculsa, receptīs in urbem rēgibus, vel cum servitūte pācem acciperet. Cum hostēs adessent, prō sē quisque in urbem ex agrīs dēmigrant. Urbs ipsa, aliā ex parte mūrīs (objectīs), aliā Tiberī obiectō, vidēbātur tūta. Pōns sublicius iter hostibus dedisset nī ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius, quem prō mūnimentō illō diē fortūna urbis Rōmānae habuit.

a. Notice the following idioms: **suī pellendī,** gerund (sec. 732), *of banishing them* (lit., *of the banishing of them);* **cum rēgem esse Rōmae vellet,** *since he wished a king to be at Rome,* not *wished to be king,* which in Latin would be **cum rēx esse**

vellet; timēbant nē, *they (the senators) feared that* (sec. 781); **prō sē quisque,** *each for himself.*

Colloquium

780. 1. Ad quem Tarquiniī perfūgerant? 2. Quid Tarquiniī Clūsīnum rēgem ōrābant? 3. Quid eum monēbant? 4. Cūr Tarquiniī rēgna rēgēs dēfendere volēbant? 5. Cūr Porsena Rōmam īnfestō exercitū vēnit? 6. Cūr

Via Appia et Aquaeductus Claudiānus

tantus terror senātum invāsit? 7. Cūr Rōmāna plēbs rēgēs in urbem receptūra erat? 8. Quā rē senātōrēs cīvēs suōs timēbant? 9. Quō, cum hostēs adessent, multitūdō sē recēpit? 10. Quō modō urbs tūtābātur? 11. Quem prō mūnimentō illō diē urbs Rōmāna habuit? 12. Quō modō hostēs in urbem vēnissent nī urbs Horātium prō mūnimentō habuisset?

SYNTAX

781. According to the Latin idiom, after a verb of fearing **nē** is translated *that*, and **ut** *that not*. (106)

Timēbant nē plēbs servitūtem acciperet, *they feared that the common people would accept servitude;* **timēbat ut urbs esset tūta,** *he feared that the city would not be safe.*

782. With ***paenitet*** and a few other impersonal verbs the accusative is used to denote the person and the genitive to denote the object of the feeling. (107)

Senem suōrum vōtōrum paenitēbat, *the old man repented of his own prayers.*

LATIN WRITING

783. 1. Since the Tarquins wished to be kings, they begged Lars Porsena the king of Clusium not to permit them to be exiles. 2. They advised him to come to Rome with a hostile army. 3. Porsena wished a king to be at Rome. 4. When the enemy were near, the senate feared that the common people would receive the Tarquins into the city. 5. They feared that the city itself would not be safe.

VOCABULARY

784.

Group I

accipiō	**prōgredior**	**servitūs**	**tollō**
dēfendō	**recipiō**	**subeō**	**vel**

Group II

aliās	**paenitet**	**requīrō**	**sinō**

Group III

adlevō	**dēfatīgātus**	**invādō**	**paululum**
adstō	**dēmigrō**	**nī**	**percellō**
contemplor	**inultus**	**obiectus**	**perfugiō**

Derived English Words

accept	*object*	*progress*	*require*

Related English Words

contemplation	*invasion*	*progressive*	*servitude*

CHAPTER LXIV

READING AND TRANSLATION

Latin Word Formation

785. Some of the ways in which Latin nouns, verbs, and adjectives have been formed have been presented in sections 424–427 and 632, 633. A comparison of the lists given for illustration shows that several Latin words, including nouns, verbs, and adjectives, have sometimes been formed from a single original word by the use of certain characteristic prefixes and suffixes, and that corresponding English words have been derived from many of the Latin words thus formed. For example, from the adjective **līber**, *free*, have come the noun **lībertās**, section 425, the verb **līberō**, section 632, (3), and the adjective **līberālis**, section 427. Again, from the verb **līberō** the nouns **līberātiō** and **līberātor** have been formed; and from the adjective **līberālis**, the noun **līberālitās**. The English derivatives from these Latin words are as follows: **lībertās**, *liberty;* **līberō**, *liberate;* **līberālis**, *liberal;* **līberātiō**, *liberation;* **līberātor**, *liberator;* **līberālitās**, *liberality.*

The additional illustrations in section 788, based on a few of the most familiar Latin words, are sufficient to show how extensive is this process of word-formation in Latin and why some knowledge of it is necessary if one is to understand the multiplication and the significance of English words.

HORĀTIUS PONTEM DĒFENDIT

786. Is positus in statiōne pontis, cum captum (esse) repentīnō impetū Iāniculum vīdisset atque dēcurrere

hostēs, trepidōsque suōs arma ōrdinēsque relinquere, monuit ut pontem ferrō, ignī, quācumque vī possint, interrumpant; sē impetum hostium sōlum sustentūrum (esse). Namque timēbat ut ponte relictō urbs ipsa esset tūta. Duōs tamen parumper cum eō pudor tenuit, Sp.

From the painting by Vincenzo Camuccin

HORĀTIUS PONTEM DĒFENDIT

Larcium ac T. Herminium. Deinde eōs quoque ipsōs, exiguā parte pontis relictā, cēdere in tūtum coēgit. Prīncipēs Etrūscōrum aliquamdiū cunctātī sunt; deinde clāmōre sublātō in Horātium tēla coniciunt. Tum ille, cum simul fragōrem ruptī pontis simul clāmōrem Rōmānōrum audīvisset, "Tiberīne pater," inquit, "tē precor haec arma et hunc mīlitem accipiās." Ita sīc armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et incolumis ad suōs trānāvit. Tanta vir-

tūs cīvitātī fuit grāta; statua in comitiō posita (est), tantum agrī eī datum est quantum ūnō diē circumarāre potuit.

AGRICOLA ET ARĀTRUM

a. **Captum (esse) Iāniculum, dēcurrere hostēs, suōs relinquere,** objects of **vīdisset; suōs,** *his friends* (sec. 440); **monuit ut,** *he advised that;* **quācumque vī possint,** *by whatever force they could;* **timēbat ut,** *he feared that . . . not;* **tē precor . . . accipiās,** *I pray that you receive, I pray you to receive;* **sīc armātus,** *thus armed, armed as he was;* **tantum . . . quantum,** *as much . . . as.*

b. **Possint** and **interrumpant** are in the present tense of the subjunctive although they follow a secondary tense, **monuit.** This gives vividness to the description.

c. What conjunction would most naturally be supplied with **accipiās?**

d. What verbs in section 786 contain prepositions as prefixes? What phonetic changes have occurred in the formation of **accipiō?**

COLLOQUIUM

787. 1. Quid Horātius in statiōne pontis positus vīdit? 2. Quid Horātius, cum Iāniculum captum esset hostēsque dēcurrerent, monuit? 3. Cūr Horātius dīxit sē sōlum impetum hostium sustentūrum esse. 4 Tūtane ponte relictō urbs ipsa erat futūra? 5. Quōs parumper pudor tenuit? 6. Nōnne iī ipsī, cum exigua pars pontis relicta esset, Horātium relīquērunt? 7. Quī in Horātium impetum fēcērunt? 8. Quid ponte ruptō Horātius audīvit? 9. Quid Tiberim ōrāvit? 10. Quō modō Horātius sē ad suōs recēpit? 11. Quantum praemium Horātiō datum est? 12. Tūtane urbs fuisset nī pōns rupta esset? 13. Nōnne semper hominēs Horātī erunt memorēs?

EXAMPLES OF WORD-FORMATION

788. The following examples illustrate the formation of several series of Latin words and the derivation of the corresponding English equivalents. The list is based chiefly on Latin words taken from sections 765, 779, and 786, and is limited to those which seem best adapted to illustrate the process of word-formation. Almost any paragraph in Latin or in English will furnish similar material.

It should be noticed particularly that the English words in each series have not been derived from other English words but each from a Latin word formed from a Latin original. Thus the English *victory* was not derived from the English *victor* but from the Latin victōria, formed from the Latin victor, which can be traced back still further to the verb vincō.

capiō, captus, to take.
- captor, *captor*.
- captiō, captiōn-is, *caption*.
- captīvus, *captive*.
- captīvitās, captīvitāt-is, *captivity*.
- captūra, *capture*.
- capāx, capāc-is, *capacious*.
- capācitās, capācitāt-is, *capacity*.
- accept-us (accipiō), *accept*.
- concipiō, *conceive*.
- concept-us (concipiō), *concept*.
- except-us (excipiō), *except*.
- incipiēns, incipient-is (incipiō), *incipient*.
- occupāns, occupant-is (occupō), *occupant*.
- prīnceps, *prince*.
- recipiō, *receive*.

cīvis, citizen.
- cīvicus, *civic*.
- cīvitās, cīvitāt-is, *city*.
- cīvīlis, *civil*.
- cīvīlitās, cīvīlitāt-is, *civility*.

currō, cursus, to run.
- currēns, current-is, *current*.
- currentia, *currency*.
- curriculum, *curriculum*.
- cursus, -ūs, *course*.
- concurrō, *concur*.
- concursus, -ūs, *concourse*.
- discursus, -ūs, *discourse*.
- incurrō, *incur*.
- incursiō, incursiōn-is, *incursion*.
- occurrō, *occur*.

faciō, factus, to do, to make.
- facilis, *facile*.
- factor, *factor*.
- factiō, factiōn-is, *faction*.
- affect-us (ad-ficiō), *affect*.
- dēficiēns, dēficient-is (dēficiō), *deficient*.
- effect-us (efficiō), *effect*.
- efficiēns, efficient-is (efficiō), *efficient*.
- officium (opus and faciō), *office*.
- perfect-us (perficiō), *perfect*.

gradior, gressus, to step, to go.
gradus, -ūs, *grade.*
aggressiō, aggressiōn-is, *aggression.*
aggressor, *aggressor.*
congressus, -ūs, *congress.*
prōgress-us (prōgredior), *progress* (verb).
prōgressus, -ūs, *progress* (noun).
trānsgress-us (trānsgredior), *transgress.*
trānsgressiō, trānsgressiōn-is, *transgression.*

līber, free.
lībertās, lībertāt-is, *liberty.*
līberālis, *liberal.*
līberālitās, līberālitāt-is, *liberality.*
līberāt-us (līberō), *liberate.*
līberātor, *liberator.*

mittō, missus, to send.
missilis, *missile.*
missiō, missiōn-is, *mission.*
admittō, *admit.*
admissiō, admissiōn-is, *admission.*
intermittēns, intermittent-is (intermittō), *intermittent.*
prōmiss-us (prōmittō), *promise.*
remittō, *remit.*
trānsmittō, *transmit.*

ōs, ōris, mouth.
ōrātor, *orator.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, *oration.*
ōrāculum, *oracle.*
adōrō, *adore.*
adōrātiō, adōrātiōn-is, *adoration.*
adōrābilis, *adorable.*

stō, statūrus, to stand.
statiō, statiōn-is, *station.*
statua, *statue.*
statūra, *stature.*
status, -ūs, *state.*
stabilis, *stable* (adj.).
stabilitās, stabilitāt-is, *stability.*
stabulum, *stable* (noun).
cōnstāns, cōnstant-is (cōnstō), *constant.*
cōnstantia, *constancy.*
distāns, distant-is (distō), *distant.*
distantia, *distance.*
substantia, *substance.*
arma and stō, *armistice.*
sōlstitium, *solstice.*

veniō, ventus, to come.
adventus, -ūs, *advent.*
conveniō, *convene.*
conveniēns, convenient-is (conveniō), *convenient.*
ēventus, -ūs, *event.*
invent-us (inveniō), *invent.*
inventiō, inventiōn-is, *invention.*
interveniō, *intervene.*
interventiō, interventiōn-is, *intervention.*
praeventiō, praeventiōn-is, *prevention.*

videō, vīsus, to see.
ēvidēns, ēvident-is, *evident.*
prōvidentia, *providence.*
prōvidēns, prōvident-is (prōvideō), *provident.*
prōvisiō, prōvisiōn-is, *provision.*
prūdēns, prūdent-is, *prudent.*

prūdentia, *prudence.*
super and videō, *survey.*
vincō, victus, to conquer.
vincō, *vanquish.*
victor, *victor.*
victōria, *victory.*
victōriōsus, *victorious.*
convincō, *convince.*
convict-us (convincō), *convict.*

PREFIXES

789. In the formation of Latin words the use of prepositions and inseparable particles as prefixes is very important, and the same prefixes appear in many English derivatives.

The most common prefixes which occur in this book are shown in the following list. The Latin words chosen as examples are words from which English words have been derived.

The form of the prefix is sometimes modified by the first letter of the word with which it is combined; as, **ac-cipiō** for **ad-capiō**, **im-portō** for **in-portō**, **oc-currō** for **ob-currō**. This is called assimilation.

ā or **ab**, *from.*	**ab-sum** (to be away from), *absent.*
ad, *to.*	**ac-cipiō** (to take to), *accept.*
con-, *with.*	**cōn-ferō** (to bring together), *confer.*
dē, *down from, from.*	**dē-tineō** (to hold from), *detain.*
dis-, *apart.*	**dis-trahō** (to draw apart), *distract.*
ē or **ex**, *from, out.*	**ex-clūdō** (to shut out), *exclude.*
in, *into, to.*	**im-portō** (to carry into), *import.*
in-, *not.*	**im-mortālis** (not mortal), *immortal.*
inter, *among, between.*	**inter-veniō** (to come between), *intervene.*
ob, *against.*	**oc-currō** (to run against), *occur.*
per, *through.*	**per-eō** (to go through), *perish.*
prae, *before.*	**prae-dīcō** (to say before), *predict.*
prō, *forth.*	**prō-videō** (to look forth), *provide.*
re-, *again, back.*	**re-quīrō** (to seek again), *require.*
sē-, *apart.*	**sē-cēdō** (to go apart), *secede.*
sub, *under.*	**sub-scrībō** (to write under), *subscribe.*
trāns, *across.*	**trāns-mittō** (to send across), *transmit.*

SYNTAX

790. The conjunction *ut* is sometimes omitted. (108)

Tē precor accipiās, *I pray that you receive, I pray you to receive.*

791. A verb which otherwise would be in the indicative, if it depends upon a clause containing the subjunctive, is often attracted into the subjunctive. (109)

Monuit ut quācumque vī possint pontem interrumpant, *he advised them to destroy the bridge by whatever force they could.* Interrumpant is a subjunctive used with ut in a clause of purpose and it attracts possint into the subjunctive.

LATIN WRITING

792. Horatius saw that the enemy had taken Janiculum and that his (friends) were leaving their arms. He feared that the city itself would not be safe unless the bridge should be destroyed (sub.). "I entreat you to break down the bridge," said Horatius to the citizens; "I alone will withstand the enemy's attack." When the bridge had been broken down (abl. abs.), Horatius leaped down into the river Tiber and unharmed swam across to the city. He afterwards received a reward from the citizens. The city would not have been safe that day if Horatius had not been brave.

VOCABULARY

793.

Group I

cēdō	**cunctor**	**dēsiliō**	**statiō**
coniciō	**dēcurrō**	**possum**	**trepidus**

Group II

exiguus	**pudor**	**rumpō**	**trānō**

Group III

aliquamdiū	**circumarō**	**interrumpō**	**parumper**

Derived English Words

cede *interrupt* *station*

Related English Words

conjecture *intercede* *intrepid* *stationary*

CHAPTER LXV

REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Compound Words

MĀRCUS RĒGULUS REDIT CARTHĀGINEM

794. Post multōs annōs cum Poenī adversus Rōmānōs bellum gererent, Mārcus Rēgulus, quī prīmus Rōmānōrum ducum in Āfricam missus erat, ipse captus in carcerem coniectus est. Inde Rōmam dē permūtandīs captīvīs missus est datō iūreiūrandō ut, sī nōn impetrāsset (impetrāvisset), redīret ipse Carthāginem. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset inductus in senātum mandāta exposuit. Sententiam autem dīcere recūsāvit. Dīxit quamdiū iūreiūrandō hostium tenērētur, sē nōn esse senātōrem. Iussus tamen sententiam dīcere, negāvit esse ūtile captīvōs Poenōs reddī; illōs enim iuvenēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē iam cōnfectum senectūte. Cuius cum valuisset auctōritās, captīvī retentī sunt; ipse, cum retinērētur ā propinquīs et amīcīs, tamen Carthāginem redit. Neque vērō tunc ignōrābat sē ad crūdēlissimum hostem proficīscī; sed iūsiūrandum cōnservandum (esse) putāvit.

Colloquium

795. 1. Quī prīmus Rōmānōrum ducum in Āfricam missus est? 2. Quandō Rēgulus in carcerem coniectus est? 3. Quibus dē rēbus inde Rōmam missus est? 4. Quā condiciōne Carthāginem reditūrus erat? 5. Quid cum Rōmam vēnisset fēcit? 6. Cūr sententiam dīcere recūsāvit? 7. Quid tamen Rēgulus loquī iussus dīxit? 8. Cūr nōn ūtile erat captīvōs Poenōs reddī? 9. Valuitne

Rēguli auctōritās? 10. Ā quibus Rēgulus retinēbātur? 11. Ignōrābatne quam crūdēlēs essent hostēs? 12. Cūr sibi Carthāginem eundum esse putāvit?

RĒGULUS

796. Read the following stanzas in Latin, accenting the words as they are marked. Do not sound the letters in parentheses. Make a literal translation and compare it with that given more freely in *a* below.

Fertur′ pudī′cae con′iugis ōs′culum′
parvōs′que nā′tōs ut′ capitis′ minor′
ab sē′ remō′viss(e) et′ virī′lem
tor′vus humī′ posuis′se vul′tum;

dōnec′ laban′tīs cōn′siliō′ patrēs′
fīrmā′ret auc′tor num′qu(am) aliās′ datō′
inter′que mae′rentīs′ amī′cōs
ē′gregius′ properā′ret ex′sul.

—*Horatius*

a. They say that he refused the kiss of his faithful wife and put away his little children as though his manhood had been forfeited, and sternly fixed his sturdy gaze upon the ground; until, by counsel never given before, his advice convinced the hesitating fathers, and he hastened forth amid the lamentations of his friends, a noble exile.

b. **Fertur,** (literally) *he* (Regulus) *is said;* **remōvisse** and **posuisse** depend upon **fertur;** **capitis minor,** an idiom applied to a person who had been deprived of the privileges of citizenship, including family rights; **humī,** locative; **fīrmāret, properāret,** in the subjunctive with **dōnec** to represent the expectation of Regulus rather than an actual fact.

FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS

797. The formation of compound words by the use of prepositions and inseparable particles has been mentioned in sections 632, (4), and 789.

© *Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.*

AQUAEDUCTUS CLAUDIĀNUS

Compound nouns and adjectives are also formed by combining a noun or an adjective with another noun or adjective; as, **iūs-iūrandum**, *an oath;* **rēs-pūblica**, *the public welfare, the state;* **agri-cola**, *a tiller of the soil.* If two nominatives are combined, both are declined; as, **rēs-pūblica, reī-pūblicae.** In other compounds the last part only is declined; as, **agricola, agricolae.**

The suffix **-ficus** (related to **faciō**) is used in the formation of compound adjectives; as, **pacificus**, *pacific.* English verbs derived from these compounds have the ending **-fy**; as, **magnificō** (magnus-faciō), *magnify;* **pācificō** (pāx-faciō), *pacify.*

a. English words have not only been derived from Latin compounds, as *enemy* from **inimīcus**, *republic* from **rēs-pūblica**, and *aqueduct* from **aquaeductus**, but have also been formed by a combination of two Latin words; as, *armistice* from **arma** and **stō**; *homicide* from **homō** and **caedō**; *horticulture* from **hortus** and **cultūra**; *locomotive* from **locus** and **moveō**, *submarine* from **sub** and **marīnus** (mare); *velocipede* from **vēlōx** and **pēs**; *viaduct* from **via** and **dūcō.**

b. English words are sometimes formed from words of two different languages; as *automobile*, from **auto**—*self* (Greek), and **mōbilis**, *movable* (Latin).

LATIN WRITING

798. When the Romans were carrying on war with the Carthaginians, Regulus was sent to Africa as a leader. He himself was captured and was sent (having been captured was sent) to Rome concerning an exchange of prisoners. "If I do not accomplish it (fut. perf.)," said he, "I will return to Carthage myself." When he had set forth in the senate the things commanded, he said that it was not (negāvit esse) expedient that the captives be exchanged. His influence prevailed; and although he knew that he was going to a cruel enemy, he returned to Carthage. His friends tried to detain (were detaining)

him, but he thought that he ought to keep his oath (his oath ought to be kept).

VOCABULARY

799.

Group I

captīvus	impetrō	recūsō	reddō

Group II

cōnservō	indūcō	propinquus	retineō
expōnō	iūsiūrandum	removeō	virīlis

Group III

labō	negō	permūtō	quamdiū
maerēns	ōsculum	pudīcus	torvus

Derived English Words

captive	*conserve*	*remove*	*virile*

Related English Words

captivity	*conservation*	*inductive*	*retentive*

GNAEUS POMPĒIUS

CHAPTER LXVI

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS HANNIBALEM VINCIT

800. Multōs annōs inter Rōmānōs et Carthāginiēnsēs erat bellum. Hannibal, superātīs Pȳrēnaeīs montibus atque Alpium iugīs, magnō cum exercitū in Ītaliam vēnit. Adversus eum clārissimī ducēs missī sunt sed Hannibalem ipsum vincere nōn poterant. Postrēmō Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō in Āfricam profectus est bellum in Āfricam ipsam trānslātūrus. Deinde Hannibal ex Ītaliā ad tuendam patriam revocātus Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ā Carthāgine abest, et nūntium ad Scīpiōnem mīsit ut colloquendī sēcum potestātem faceret. Ab Scīpiōne diēs locusque cōnstituitur. Itaque congressī sunt duo clārissimī suae aetātis ducēs. Stetērunt aliquamdiū tacitī mūtuāque admīrātiōne dēfīxī. Cum vērō dē condiciōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad suōs sē recēpērunt, renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse. Commissō deinde proeliō Hannibal victus est. Carthāginiēnsēs metū perculsī ad petendam pācem ōrātōrēs mittunt trīgintā cīvitātis prīncipēs. Victīs lēgēs imposuit Scīpiō. Ita pāce terrā marīque factā, Scīpiō exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rōmam revertit. Quī

HANNIBAL

SCĪPIŌ ĀFRICĀNUS

adveniēns prīmus nōmine gentis ā sē victae nōbilitātus Āfricānus appellātus est.

a. **Quīnque diērum iter,** *a five days' journey;* **ut . . . faceret,** *that he would grant an opportunity for conferring with him;* **diēs locusque cōnstituitur,** *time and place are appointed,* the two nouns forming a single subject; **cum . . . nōn convēnisset,** *when no agreement had been made;* **convēnisset,** impersonal; **renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse,** *reporting that*

HANNIBAL EXERCITUM TRĀNS ALPĒS DŪCIT

there must be a decision with arms; **dēcernendum esse,** impersonal; **pāce . . . factā,** abl. abs.; **quī prīmus nōbilitātus,** *who, the first (to be) distinguished.* Notice three ways of denoting purpose; **trānslātūrus** (sec. 600, *a*), **ut . . . faceret** (sec. 651), **ad petendam pācem** (sec. 731, *a*).

COLLOQUIUM

801. 1. Quam diū inter Rōmānōs et Carthāginiēnsēs erat bellum? 2. Quōs montēs Hannibal superāvit?

3. Nōnne ducēs Rōmānī Hannibalem superāre poterant? 4. Quō cōnsiliō Cornēlius Scīpiō in Āfricam profectus est? 5. Quam ad rem Hannibal ex Ītaliā revocātus est? 6. Quid Hannibal Scīpiōnem rogāvit? (Rogāvit ut . . .) 7. Quāles ducēs diē cōnstitūtā convēnērunt? 8. Quō modō prīmō stetērunt? 9. Convēnitne inter ducēs de condiciōnibus pācis? 10. Quid uterque ad suōs renūntiāvit? 11. Proeliō commissō uter victus est? 12. Ōrātōribus ad petendam pācem missīs uter duōrum ducum alterī lēgēs pācis imposuit? 13. Quō modō Scīpiō Rōmam adveniēns nōbilitātus est?

ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN PARTICIPLES

802. Many English words, including nouns, adjectives, and verbs, have been derived from Latin participles, particularly from the present active participle and the perfect passive participle.

(1) From the stem of the present active participle are derived English adjectives and nouns ending in *-ant*, *-ent*, and *-ient*.

ēmigrāns, ēmigrant-is (ēmigrō), *emigrant.*
ignōrāns, ignōrant-is (ignōrō), *ignorant.*
incidēns, incident-is (incidō), *incident.*
intellegēns, intellegent-is (intellegō), *intelligent.*
oriēns, orient-is (orior), *orient.*
patiēns, patient-is (patior), *patient.*
prōvidēns, prōvident-is (prōvideō), *provident.*

(2) Many English nouns ending in *-ance* and *-ence* are derived from Latin nouns ending in -ia and formed from present active participles.

ignōrantia (ignōrāns, ignōrantis), *ignorance.*
neglegentia (neglegēns, neglegentis), *negligence.*
prōvidentia (prōvidēns, prōvidentis), *providence.*
scientia (sciēns, scientis), *science.*

(3) Many nouns, adjectives, and verbs in English have been derived from the Latin perfect passive participle.

āctus (agō), *act* (noun and verb).
dēfectus (dēficiō), *defect.*
dōnātus (dōnō), *donate.*
effectus (efficiō), *effect* (noun and verb).
factus (faciō), *fact.*
intellēctus (intellegō), *intellect.*

(4) A few English words have been derived from the Latin gerundive or future passive participle.

dīvidendus (dīvidō), *dividend.*
legendus (legō), *legend.*

For other examples of English words derived from Latin participles see sections 633 and 788.

LATIN WRITING

803. Hannibal crossed the Alps with a large army, intending to (about to) carry on war with the Romans in Italy. Famous consuls sent as leaders against him could not conquer Hannibal himself. But when Publius Scipio had transferred the war to Africa, Hannibal, recalled to protect his country, was defeated by the Roman general. Peace having been made on land and sea, the Roman army came to Rome. Scipio on his arrival (arriving) the citizens called Africanus from the name of the nation conquered by him (ab eō).

VOCABULARY

804.

Group I

committō	**impōnō**	**potestās**	**revertō**
congredior	**iugum**	**renūntiō**	**stō**

Group II

dēcernō	**dēfīgō**	**revocō**	**tueor**

Group III

adveniō	**mūtuus**	**nōbilitātus**	**trānsferō**

Derived English Words

committee	*impose*	*revoke*	*transfer*

Related English Words

commission *congress* *nobility* *state*

a. Trace the following English words to the Latin participles from which they have been derived:

accident	dictate	important	patience
audience	diligent	inaugurate	permanent
confidence	eloquent	inhabitant	precept
crescent	emigrate	neglect	sentence
defendant	future	omnipotent	tract

NOTE.—English nouns and adjectives derived from Latin nouns and participles formed from verbs of the first conjugation have the endings *-ance* and *-ant;* those derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations generally end in *-ence* and *-ent;* those derived from verbs of the fourth conjugation and from verbs in iō of the third conjugation end in *-ience* and *-ient.* There are a few exceptions to this rule; *e. g., defendant* from dēfendēns (dēfendō).

DOMUS VIRGINUM VESTĀLIUM

CHAPTER LXVII

GENERAL REVIEW

805. Review the forms of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, the rules of syntax, the formation of Latin words, and the derivation of English words, basing the study on material found in sections 806, 808, and 810.

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR

806. C. Iūlius Caesar, maximus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum, cōnsul creātus societātem cum Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. Fūnctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte factō aggressus maximīs affēcit clādibus; aggressus est Britannōs, ignōtōs anteā, superātīsque eīs pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Haec in librīs dē Bellō Gallicō ipse Caesar scrīpsit.

a. **Quid**, indefinite (sec. 757, *a*); **nē quid agerētur**, *that nothing should be done;* **displicuisset**, attracted by **agerētur** (sec. 791); **ūllī**, dative (sec. 717); **fūnctus**, participle from **fungor**; **cōnsulātū**, ablative with **fūnctus** (sec. 614).

b. Explain the formation of the Latin words **accipiō, imperātor, societās.**

c. What English words have been derived from the following Latin words?

cōnsul	**fōrma**	**prōvincia**
creātus	**imperātor**	**scrībō**
fabricātus	**prīmus**	**societās**

COLLOQUIUM

807. 1. Quālis imperātor C. Iūlius Caesar fuit? 2. Cum quibus virīs societātem fēcit? 3. Quid inter eōs trēs

āctum est? 4. Quam prōvinciam cōnsulātū fūnctus Caesar accēpit? 5. Superāvitne Galliam? 6. Quis prīmus Rōmānōrum Germānōs aggressus est? 7. Quō modō flūmen Rhēnum trānsiit? 8. Quid Britannīs superātīs imperāvit? 9. Quibus in librīs haec sunt scrīpta?

CAESAR RUBICŌNEM TRĀNSIT

808. Interfectus est intereā apud Parthōs Crassus et dēfūncta est Iūlia, Caesaris fīlia, quae nūpta Pompēiō generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat. Deinde inter Caesarem et Pompēium statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam prīdem Pompēiō suspectae (erant) Caesaris opēs et Caesarī Pompēiāna dignitās (erat) gravis, nec hic ferēbat parem nec ille superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinērētur et postulāsset (postulāvisset) ut sibi licēret quamvīs absentī alterum cōnsulātum petere, ā senātū suādentibus Pompēiō eiusque amīcīs negātum eī est. Hanc iniūriam vindicātūrus in Ītaliam rediit et cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae fīnis erat, trānsiit plūrimīsque urbibus occupātīs Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant. Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit.

a. **Pompēiō** (dat.) **suspectae,** *mistrusted by Pompey;* **Caesarī gravis,** *grievous to Caesar;* **hic . . . ille,** *the latter (Caesar) . . . the former (Pompey);* **ferēbat,** *would endure;* **dētinērētur, postulāsset,** temporal clauses (sec. 692); **licēret,** purpose (sec. 651); **absentī,** dat., agreeing with **sibi**; **negātum est,** impersonal; **eī,** indirect object; **vindicātūrus,** *intending to avenge* (sec. 600); **Brundisium,** place to which (sec. 163); **quī cum,** *and when they.*

b. From what Latin words have the following English words been derived?

absent	negative	superior
defunct	nuptial	suspect
grave	sequence	vindicate

Colloquium

809. 1. Ubi Crassus interfectus est? 2. Quis concordiam Caesaris et Pompēī tenuerat? 3. Quandō inter eōs aemulātiō ērūpit? 4. Erantne Caesaris opēs Pompēiō suspectae? Eratne dignitās Pompēiāna Caesarī gravis? 5. Hōrum uter parem, uter superiōrem ferre nōn poterat?

From the painting by J. Court

Antōnius Ōrātiōnem dē Caesare Mortuō Habet

6. Quid Caesar, cum in Galliā dētinerētur, postulāvit? 7. Nōnne id quod postulāverat Caesarī datum est? 8. Quī persuāsērunt senātuī nē Caesarī licēret alterum cōnsulātum petere? 9. Cūr in Ītaliam Caesar redit? 10. Quod flūmen Caesar cum exercitū trānsiit? 11. Hōc flūmine trānsitō quō Caesar contendit? 12. Ubi Caesar Pompēium cōnsulēsque superāvit?

Īdūs Mārtiae

810. Caesar bellō cīvīlī cōnfectō dictātor in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit. Cum Antōnius,

Caesaris in omnibus bellīs comes, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis corōnam, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque (est) eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū cōnfodere. Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset,

In Hōc Locō Antōnius Ōrātiōnem Habuit

ā coniūrātīs cōnfossus est. Caesare mortuō Antōnius dē eō ōrātiōnem in forō habuit.

a. Sedentis, present participle, genitive case, agreeing with eius; coniūrātum est, impersonal (sec. 512); ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, *by more than sixty men;* dēcrētum est, from dēcernō; cōnfodere, subject of dēcrētum est; Īdibus Mārtiīs, eō diē, ablatives denoting time (sec. 176).

b. From what Latin words have the following Latin words been formed?

cīvīlis **coniūrō** **dictātor** **senātor**

c. To what Latin words may the following English words be traced? What, therefore, was the exact original meaning?

actor	conjure	dictator	repel
civil	decree	insolent	repulse

Colloquium

811. 1. Quandō Caesar sōlus dictātor creātus est? 2. Quō modō deinde agere coepit? 3. Quis corōnam capitī Caesaris imposuit? 4. Quō modō id ab Caesare est repulsum? 5. Quī in Caesarem coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt? 6. Quī coniūrātiōnis erant ducēs? 7. Quō diē Caesar cōnfossus est? 8. Caesare interfectō quis dē eō ōrātiōnem habuit?

DEFECTIVE VERBS

812. Verbs whose conjugation is incomplete are called defective verbs. Some of the common defective verbs which lack many forms are **aiō**, *I say;* **inquam**, *I say* (used chiefly in direct quotations); **meminī**, *I remember;* **coepī**, *I began;* **licet**, *it is permitted.*

VOCABULARY

813.

Group I

absēns	**coniūrō**	**obses**	**redigō**
aggredior	**dignitās**	**perpetuus**	**repellō**
coniūrātī	**ignōtus**	**postulō**	**ūllus**

Group II

afficiō	**cōnsulātus**	**fundō**	**prīdem**
amplius	**ērumpō**	**īnsigne**	**quamvīs**

Group III

cōnfodiō	**dētineō**	**īnsolenter**	**sella**
cōnfugiō	**dictātor**	**nūbō**	**socer**
dēfungor	**displiceō**	**offēnsus**	**traiciō**

Derived English Words

absent	*dictator*	*dignity*	*displease*

Related English Words

aggression	*eruption*	*insolent*	*perpetual*

CHAPTER LXVIII

CERTĀMEN CURSŪS

Fābula Vergilī

Aeneas and his companions on their way from Carthage to Italy were driven by adverse winds to the shore of Sicily, where they arrived on the anniversary of the death of Aeneas' father Anchises. In honor of his father Aeneas is said to have celebrated a series of athletic games, which are described by Vergil in the Fifth Book of the Aeneid. The following is a modification of Vergil's description of the foot-race.

814. Nāvēs quae Aenēān comitēsque ab ōrīs Carthāginis in Ītaliam vehēbant ventīs impedītae erant atque ad portum Siciliae āctae sunt. In hōc locō Aenēās lūdōs parat. Ubi diēs exspectāta vēnit, sociī illīus et amīcī in campum convocātī sunt atque animī eōrum quī rapidō cursū contendere volēbant praemiīs stimulātī sunt.

Multī convēnērunt, Nīsus et Euryalus prīmī, Euryalus fōrmā īnsignis, Nīsus amōre amīcī. Hōs Diōrēs, fīlius Priamī, et Salius secutī sunt atque Helymus, iuvenis Siciliae, quī aetātem in silvīs agēbat. Praeter eōs multī parātī contendere erant.

Pater Aenēās deinde ita dīxit: "Omnēs quī contendent dōna habēbunt. Nōn sōlum victōribus sed etiam iīs quī superātī erunt mūnera dabō. Trēs prīmī praemia habēbunt: prīmus equum pulchrum, alter pharetram plēnam sagittīs, tertius Graecam galeam."

Haec ubi dicta sunt iuvenēs locum capiunt signōque audītō ēmicant. Prīmus ante omnēs Nīsus ēmicat et celerior quam ventus currit; proximus huic Salius īnsequitur; deinde tertius spatiō relictō Euryalus; Helymus Euryalum sequitur; post eum Diōrēs incumbēns volat.

Colloquium

815. 1. Unde Aenēās comitēsque vehēbantur? Quō āctī sunt? 2. Quō in locō lūdī ab Aenēā parātī sunt? 3. Quōrum animī praemiīs stimulātī sunt? 4. Cuius generis erat certāmen quod Aenēās parābat? Nōnne certāmen cursūs? 5. Quot puerī parātī contendere erant? 6. Quis praemia dedit? 7. Iīsne quī superātī erunt mūnera dabuntur? 8. Quae trium prīmōrum praemia erant? 9. In prīncipiō certāminis quis erat prīmus? Quis secundus? Quis tertius? Quis quārtus? Quis quīntus?

PRAEMIA DANTUR

816. Iamque fessī ad mētam ipsam veniēbant cum Nīsus victor īnfēlīx lābitur et prōnus in humō concidit. Euryalī tamen amīcī memor erat, nam surgēns sēsē Saliō opposuit. Ille impedītus in arēnā iacuit. Euryalus ēmicat et beneficiō amīcī prīmum locum tenet. Post eum Helymus subit et nunc tertius Diōrēs.

Hīc Salius magnīs clāmōribus honōrem dolō ēreptum sibi reddī poscit. Multitūdō Euryalum tūtātur et virtūs in corpore pulchrō. Diōrēs quoque illum adiuvat, quī spem ultimī mūneris āmittet sī prīmī honōrēs Saliō dabuntur.

Tum pater Aenēās, "Vestra," inquit, "mūnera vōbīs certa manent, puerī, et nēmō ōrdinem movēbit. Sed amīcō meō mūnus dare volō." Tum Saliō tergum magnum leōnis Āfricānī dat. Hīc Nīsus, "Sī tanta," inquit, "praemia sunt victīs, quae mūnera mihi dabis, quī prīmam corōnam virtūte meritus sum." Simul faciem ostendēbat et turpia membra. Aenēās rīsit et clipeum illī darī iussit.

a. **Saliō**, dative with **opposuit** (sec. 266); **hīc**, *hereupon*.

Colloquium

817. 1. Quā rē Nīsus īnfēlīx erat? 2. Quō modō Nīsus amīcum adiūvit? 3. Cūr nōn Salius prīmum prae-

mium habuit? 4. Cūr Diōrēs, quī ultimus fuerat, Euryalum praemium habēre volēbat? Nōnne spem tertiī mūneris habēbat? 5. Mōvitne Aenēās ōrdinem victōrum? 6. Erantne praemia victīs? 7. Nōnne Aenēās dīxerat omnēs quī contenderent dōna habitūrōs esse? 8. Arbitrārisne Nīsum prīmam corōnam meritum esse? 9. Cūr Aenēās rīsit?

METRICAL READING

818. In reading Latin poetry the rhythmical effect is produced by different combinations of long and short syllables and by the regular recurrence of accented syllables. This is called metre, which is employed in great variety by the Latin poets. Rhyme, which is so prominent in English poetry, is not found in Latin of the classical period.

In the following selection from the *Aeneid* of Vergil each line is composed of six divisions or feet, each foot consisting of two long syllables (a spondee), or a long syllable followed by two short syllables (a dactyl). The poetic accent is placed on the first syllable of each foot. This metre is called the dactylic hexameter, and in the first line below, it may be represented as follows:

Ex'cū/dent' a-li-/ī' spī-/ran'ti-a/ mol'li-us/ ae'ra.

ARTĒS RŌMĀNAE

819. In reading the Latin verses place the accent on the marked syllables, and do not sound the vowels in parentheses. Make a slight pause at the sign //. A suggestive translation, but not the only possible rendering, is given in *a* below.

Ex'cūdent' aliī' // spīran'tia mol'lius ae'ra,
crēd(ō) equidem', vīvōs' // dūcent' dē mar'more vul'tūs,
ō'rābunt' causās' // melius', caelī'que meā'tūs
dē'scrībent' radi(ō) et' // surgen'tia sī'dera dī'cent;
tū' reger(e) im'periō' // populōs', Rōmā'ne, memen'tō;

hae′ tib(i) erunt′ artēs′: // pācis′qu(e) impō′nere mō′rem, par′cere sub′iectīs′, ,, et dē′bellā′re super′bōs.

—*Vergilius*

a. Others with greater art, I readily believe, will produce statues in bronze that seem to breathe and will represent

FŌNS TRIUM VIĀRUM

VIĀTŌRĒS EX URBE EXITŪRĪ NUMMUM IN HUNC FONTEM MITTUNT ET EX AQUĀ BIBUNT UT ITERUM RŌMAM VENIANT. NŌNNE TŪ, HŌC LIBRŌ RELICTŌ, NUMMUM IN FONTEM MITTĒS ET EX AQUĀ BIBĒS?

more life-like features in marble, plead cases at law with greater eloquence, mark with a rod the pathways in the sky, and call by name the rising constellations; but thou, O Roman, remember to bring the nations under thy dominion; these shall be thy arts: to dictate terms of peace, to spare the vanquished, and to subdue the mighty.

b. How does Vergil's characterization of the Roman ideal compare with the Roman character as represented in the stories from Roman history which have been read in this book?

VOCABULARY

820.

Group I

concidō	īnsequor	maneō	molliter
exspectō	īnsignis	meminī	subiectus

Group II

aes	equidem	lābor	spīrāns
clipeus	ēripiō	prōnus	surgō
dolus	galea	sīdus	turpis

Group III

dēbellō	īnfēlīx	meātus	pharetra
excūdō	marmor	oppōnō	radius

Derived English Words

expect	*opposite*	*prone*	*subject*

Related English Words

felicity	*insurgent*	*turpitude*	*sidereal*

CHAPTER LXIX

SELECTIONS FROM FĀBULAE FACILĒS

821. PERSEUS

ĀCRISIUS NEPŌTEM NECĀRE VULT

Haec nārrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Iovis, māximī deōrum; avus eius Ācrisius appellātus est. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum nepōtem suum necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum adhūc īnfantem, et cum mātre in arcā ligneā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī māter, māgnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

Perseus, pronounced *Per'sūs* in English; **haec**, the following stories; **propter ōrāculum**, it had been predicted that Acrisius would perish at the hand of his grandson.

IUPPITER FĪLIUM SERVAT

Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et fīlium suum servāre cōnstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum et arcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Huius īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in arēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et iīs sēdem tūtam in fīnibus suīs dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

Serīphus, pronounced *Se-rī'fus* in English.

POLYDECTĒS PERSEUM DĪMITTIT

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātre suā vītam agēbat beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat, atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōnstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est hanc vītam ignāvam agere; iam dūdum tū adolēscēns es. Quoūsque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī, et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

Haec, *these things, thus, as follows;* **iam dūdum es,** with expressions of time the present tense represents something that has been, and now is, true; *i. e., you have for some time been a man;* **refer,** imperative of **referō** (sec. 622, 4).

PERSEUS MEDŪSAM QUAERIT

Perseus ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit, et postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; namque nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per āera volābat et tandem ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī; capita enim eārum anguibus omnīnō contēcta erant. Manūs etiam ex aere factae sunt.

Āera, ā'e-ra, a Greek noun in the accusative; **speciē horribilī,** ablative of quality (sec. 771); **aere, ae're,** from **aes, aeris.**

CAPUT GORGONIS

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis; eius enim cōnspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter

hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit et in speculum īnspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et ubi rem vīdērunt, īrā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant. Ille autem dum fugit galeam magicam induit; et hōc factō statim ē cōnspectū eārum ēvāsit.

Hōc modō, ablative of manner (sec. 513); **falce**, ablative of instrument (sec. 30).

FĪNĒS AETHIOPUM

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō iussus est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Eius autem fīlia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvīs suōs ē tantō perīculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere cōnstituit.

Cēpheus, pronounced *Sē'fūs* in English; **illō tempore**, ablative of time (sec. 176).

FĀTUM ANDROMEDAE

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est, et in cōnspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum eius dēplōrābant nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus

terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum horribilī speciē procul cōnspicitur. Eius cōnspectus timōrem maximum omnibus iniēcit. At mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

Illī, dative, indirect object of **expōnunt** and **dēmōnstrant**; **magnā celeritāte**, ablative of manner (sec. 513).

IMPETUS EX ĀERE

At Perseus ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit, et postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit, et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum lītus volat, reditum eius exspectābat. Mare autem intereā undique sanguine īnficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

Dum . . . volat, *while he was flying;* the present tense used with **dum**, *while*, may refer to past time.

PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM UXŌREM DŪCIT

Perseus postquam ad lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta est. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem māximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiam prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam uxōrem dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen mātrem suam

rūrsus vidēre cupiēbat. Tandem igitur cum uxōre suā ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

Terrōre, gaudiō, ablatives of cause (sec. 376).

POLYDECTĒS IN SAXUM VERTITUR

Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat; at domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus ubi haec cognōvit, īrā magnā commōtus est. Ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit, et ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium inrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

Simul atque, *as soon as*.

ĀCRISIUS FĀTUM FRŪSTRĀ VĪTAT

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisī rediit. Ille autem ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est; nam propter ōrāculum nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit. Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs eius certāminis forte stābat.

CHAPTER LXX

SELECTIONS FROM FĀBULAE FACILĒS (Continued)

822. ULIXĒS

ULIXĒS DOMUM REDĪRE VULT

Urbem Trōiam ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessam esse satis cōnstat; dē hōc enim bellō Homērus, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem opus nōtissimum scrīpsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās captā, Graecī longō bellō fessī domum redīre mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs nāvēs dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam nactī magnō cum gaudiō solvērunt. Erat inter prīmōs Graecōrum Ulixēs quīdam, vir summae virtūtis ac prūdentiae, quem dīcunt nōnnūllī dolum istum excōgitāsse quō Trōiam captam esse cōnstat. Hic rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat, et paulō antequam cum reliquīs Graecīs ad bellum profectus est, puellam fōrmōsissimam, nōmine Pēnelopēn, in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Nunc igitur cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōnsūmpsisset, magnā cupīditāte patriae et uxōris videndae ārdēbat.

Cōnstat, an impersonal verb of which the subject is **urbem obsessam esse**, *it is well known that* (sec. 307); **per īnsidiās**, *by a strategem*, that of the wooden horse (sec. 126); **paulō antequam . . . profectus est**, *a little before he set out;* **cum . . . cōnsūmpsisset**, a temporal clause (sec. 692).

GRAECĪ LŌTUM GUSTANT

Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā lītore Trōiae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae aliās in partēs

disicerentur. Nāvis autem quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta decimō diē ad lītus Libyae appulsa est. Ancorīs iactīs Ulixēs cōnstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra eius regiōnis cognōscerent. Hī igitur ē nāvī ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolīs obviam factī, ab iīs hospitiō acceptī sunt. Accidit autem ut vīctus eōrum hominum ē mīrō quōdam frūctū quem lōtum appellābant paene omnīnō cōnstāret. Quem cum Graecī gustāssent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī, cōnfīrmāvērunt sē semper in eā terrā mānsūrōs esse ut dulcī illō cibō in aeternum vēscerentur.

Ut posset, disicerentur, clauses of result (sec. 664); **aliae aliās in partēs,** *some in one direction, others in another;* **quī . . . referrent . . . cognōscerent,** clauses of purpose (sec. 651); **quālis esset,** an indirect question (sec. 677); **obviam factī,** *having met;* **gustāssent,** contracted from **gustāvissent; patriae, sociōrum,** genitives with **oblītī** (sec. 441); **cibō,** ablative with **vēscerentur** (sec. 614).

ULIXĒS SOCIŌS REPORTAT

At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāsset, veritus nē sociī suī in perīculō versārentur, nōnnūllōs ē reliquīs mīsit, ut quae causa esset morae cognōscerent. Hī igitur in terram expositī ad vīcum quī nōn longē aberat sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum ubi causam veniendī docuērunt, iīs persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum ad nāvem redīrent. Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, nūntiī rē īnfectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvī relictī erant ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus ut suā sponte redīrent, manibus eōrum

post terga vinctīs invītōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam celerrimē ē portū solvit.

Ab hōrā septimā, for the Roman divisions of time, see section 519; **veritus nē**, *fearing that* (sec. 781); **iīs**, dative with **persuādēre** (sec. 717); **abitūrōs**, supply **esse**, which is often omitted in the future infinitive; **sē abitūrōs (esse)**, object of **clāmitantēs** (sec. 767); **quae cum ita essent**, causal (sec. 693); **rē īnfectā**, ablative absolute, *without accomplishing anything* (sec. 488).

CYCLŌPS

Postrīdiē Ulixēs comitēsque postquam eam tōtam noctem rēmīs contendērunt, ad terram ignōtam nāvem appulērunt. Tum, quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, Ulixēs ipse cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus loca explōrāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī sēnsērunt; eius enim introitum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine perīculō id factūrōs, antrum introiērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis in vāsīs ingentibus conditam invēnērunt. Dum tamen mīrantur quis in eā sēde habitāret, sonitum terribilem audīvērunt, et oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem speciē et figūrā, sed ingentī magnitūdine corporis. Cum autem animadvertissent gigantem ūnum oculum tantum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

Factūrōs (esse), future active infinitive (sec. 597); **sē . . . factūrōs (esse)**, object of **intellegēbant** (sec. 767).

HOMINĒS IN ANTRŌ CĒLANTUR

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam quī īnsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur simul ac mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (sīc enim gigās appellābātur) pecus suum in spēluncam ēgit; deinde, cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediō antrō accendit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antrī cēlārī, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī hominēs estis? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā vēnisse; sed ā Trōiā redeuntēs vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse. Ōrāvit etiam ut sibi sine iniūriā abīre licēret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi esset nāvis quā vectī essent; sed Ulixēs cum bene intellegeret sibi maximē praecavendum esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpēs coniectam et perfrāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō respōnsō datō duo ē virīs manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs carnem dēvorāre coepit.

Cēlāre, complementary infinitive (sec. 307); **sē . . . esse . . . vēnisse . . . dēpulsōs esse**, indirect discourse following **respondit** (sec. 767); **sibi praecavendum esse**, passive periphrastic form with dative of the agent (sec. 744, sec. 745); **membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs**, *their limbs torn apart.*

NŪLLA SPĒS SALŪTIS

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem praesentem exspectārent. Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est, humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae nōn omittendam arbitrātus, eī in animō erat pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfīgere. Cum tamen nihil temere agendum exīstimāret, cōnstituit explōrāre, antequam hoc faceret, quā ratiōne ex spēlūncā ēvādere possent. At cum

saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sibi prōfutūrum intellēxit sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovērī posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; quī cum intellēxissent quō in locō rēs essent, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnīs suīs dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animōs dēmitterent vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam anteā ē multīs et magnīs perīculīs ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrīmine diī auxilium lātūrī essent.

Nē vōcem quidem, *not even a word;* **occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae,** *a chance for successful action;* **gerendae,** gerundive (sec. 731); **omittendam** (esse), **agendum** (esse), passive periphrastic infinitives (sec. 744); **cōnātū,** ablative of separation (sec. 551); **neque dubium esse quīn . . . diī auxilium lātūrī essent,** *and that there was no doubt that the gods would bring aid* (sec. 664, *b*); **lātūrī essent,** active periphrastic conjugation (sec. 743).

CŌNSILIUM IN DISCRĪMINE

Ortā lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit; correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ex spēluncā prōgressus est; quod cum Graecī vidērent, magnam in spem sē mox ēvāsūrōs vēnērunt. Ab hāc tamen spē repulsī sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Reliquī omnī spē salūtis dēpositā lāmentīs lacrimīsque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir magnī fuit cōnsilī, etsī intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem, postquam diū multa tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hoc cōnsilium cēpit. Ē lignīs quae in spēluncā reposita erant pālum magnum dēlēgit. Hunc summā cum

dīligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum, postquam sociīs quid fierī vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

Cum . . . āmōvisset, cum . . . vidērent, postquam . . . exiērunt, postquam . . . cōgitāvit, the imperfect and past perfect tenses are generally in the subjunctive with **cum,** but **postquam** is followed by the indicative, and generally by the perfect tense; **magnī cōnsilī,** genitive of quality (sec. 222).

PRŌ BENEFICIŌ GRĀTIA

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit, et eōdem modō quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsit, quem forte sēcum attulerat; et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō complēvit, Polyphēmum ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Ille, quī numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim exhausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replērī iubēret. Tum, cum quaesīvisset quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī; quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam; tē postrēmum omnium dēvorābō." Hīs dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravis recubuit et mox somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātīs, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petiimus facultātem; nē igitur tantam occāsiōnem reī gerendae omittāmus."

Quod cum fēcisset, *and when he had done this;* the relative pronoun at the beginning of a clause is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative; **habēmus quam petiimus facultātem,** for **habēmus facultātem quam petiimus; nē omittāmus,** subjunctive in an exhortation (sec. 702).

"NĒMŌ" POLYPHĒMUM VULNERAT

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum ignī calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī dormientis flagrante lignō perfōdit; quō factō omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt. At ille tantō dolōre ē somnō excitātus subitō

clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur. Cum tamen iam omnīnō caecus esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs clāmōre audītō undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et ad introitum adstantēs quid Polyphēmus ageret quaesīvērunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre afficī. Cum tamen quaesīvissent quis eī vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus rēbus audītīs ūnus ē Cyclōpibus, "At sī nēmō," inquit, "tē vulnerāvit, haud dubium est quīn cōnsiliō deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō afficiāris." Hīs dictīs, abiērunt Cyclōpēs eum in īnsāniam incidisse arbitrātī.

Haud dubium est quīn . . . afficiāris, *there is no doubt that you are afflicted* (sec. 664, *b*); **afficiāris,** the present subjunctive follows a primary tense in the main clause (sec. 679).

SALŪS IN DOLŌ

Polyphēmus ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quō obstrūcta erat āmōvit, ut pecus in agrōs exīret. Tum ipse in introitū cōnsēdit, et ut quaeque ovis ad hunc locum vēnerat, eius tergum manibus tractābat, nē virī inter ovīs exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, novum iniit cōnsilium; intellēxit enim omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Prīmum trēs pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit, quās cum inter sē vīminibus coniūnxisset, ūnum ex sociīs suīs ventribus eārum ita subiēcit ut omnīnō latēret. Deinde ovēs hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim postquam terga ovium manibus tractāvit, eās praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs ubi rem tam fēlīciter

ēvēnisse vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ōrdine eōdem modō ēmīsit; quō factō ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

Fore, for futūrum esse, future infinitive of sum (sec. 597).

GRAECĪ CURSUM TENENT

Hīs rēbus ita cōnfectīs, Ulixēs maximē veritus nē Polyphēmus fraudem sentīret, cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab iīs quī nāvī praesidiō relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim cum anxiīs animīs iam trēs diēs reditum eōrum exspectāvissent, eōs in perīculum magnum incidisse (id quod erat) suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredī parābant. Tum Ulixēs nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficīscī cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et ancorīs sublātīs paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā vōce exclāmāvit, "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus īrā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit, et ubi nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse intellēxit, saxum ingēns manū correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem nūllō damnō acceptō cursum tenuērunt.

Quō cum vēnissent, *and when they had come there;* **nāvī praesidiō,** *for protection to the ship, to protect* (sec. 499); **auxiliandī, gerund** (sec. 732).

PATRIA VENTŌRUM

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam quae Aeolia appellātur nāvem appulit. Haec patria erat ventōrum.

"Hīc vāstō rēx Aeolus antrō
luctantīs ventōs tempestātēsque sonōrās
imperiō premit ac vinclīs et carcere frēnat."

Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitiō accēpit, atque iīs persuāsit ut ad recuperandās vīrēs paucōs diēs in eā regiōne commorārentur. Septimō diē cum sociī ē labōribus sē recēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, sibi sine morā proficīscendum statuit. Tum Aeolus, quī sciēbat Ulixem cupidissimum esse patriae videndae, eī iam profectūrō magnum saccum ē coriō cōnfectum dedit, in quō ventōs omnēs praeter ūnum inclūserat. Zephyrum tantum praetermīserat, quod illum ventum ad Ithacam nāvigantī idōneum esse sciēbat. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et grātiīs prō tantō beneficiō relātīs saccum ad mālum alligāvit. Tum omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs merīdiānō ferē tempore ē portū solvit.

Hīc vāstō rēx . . . frēnat, a quotation from Vergil's Aeneid; for the meter, see sec. 818: **proficīscendum**, supply **esse**, periphrastic infinitive of **proficīscor**; **profectūrō**, future participle of **proficīscor** (sec. 612, *a*), belonging with **eī**; **nāvigantī**, dative with **idōneum**, *favorable for one sailing* (sec. 104).

VENTĪ SOLVUNTUR

Novem diēs Graecī ventō secundō cursum tenuērunt, iamque in cōnspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs lassitūdine cōnfectus (nāvem enim manū suā gubernābat) ad quiētem capiendam recubuit. At sociī, quī iam dūdum mīrābantur quid in illō saccō inclūsum esset, cum ducem somnō oppressum vidērent, tantam occāsiōnem nōn omittendam arbitrātī sunt; crēdēbant enim aurum et argentum ibi cēlārī. Itaque spē lucrī adductī saccum sine morā solvērunt; quō factō ventī

"velut agmine factō
quā data porta ruunt, et terrās turbine perflant."

Extemplō tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvis cursum tenēre nōn posset sed in eandem partem unde erat profecta referrētur. Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō

rēs esset statim intellēxit; saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vīdit. Tum vērō magnopere īrātus sociōs vehementer obiūrgābat quod cupīditāte pecūniae adductī spem patriae videndae prōiēcissent.

Velut agmine factō . . . perflant, a quotation from Vergil's Aeneid; **data,** supply **est; quā data (est) porta,** *where an opening is given;* **solūtum** and **relictam,** supply **esse; quod . . . prōiēcissent,** the subjunctive is required because the thought is that of Ulysses, and thus the clause resembles a dependent clause in the indirect discourse.

ĪNSULA CIRCĒS

Brevī spatiō intermissō Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt quam Circē, fīlia Sōlis, incolēbat. Quō cum nāvem appulisset, Ulixēs in terram frūmentandī causā sibi ēgrediendum esse statuit; nam cognōverat frūmentum quod in nāvī habērent iam dēficere. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quō in locō rēs esset et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs in memoriā tenērent quam crūdēlī morte necātī essent iī quī nūper in patriam Cyclōpum ēgressī essent, nēmō repertus est quī hoc negōtium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita essent, rēs ad contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem Ulixēs cōnsēnsū omnium sociōs in duās partēs dīvīsit, quārum alterī Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alterī ipse praeesset. Tum hī virī inter sē sortītī sunt uter in terram ēgrederētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochō sorte ēvēnit ut cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs rem susciperet.

Quod . . . habērent, a dependent clause in indirect discourse (sec. 768); **cum . . . tenērent,** a causal clause (sec. 693); **ēgressī essent,** subjunctive by attraction (sec. 791); **quī . . . vellet,** a relative clause of result (sec. 664, *a*); **alterī . . . alterī,** *one . . . the other,* dative with **praeesset** (sec. 266); **ut . . . susciperet,** a substantive clause subject of **ēvēnit** (sec. 680).

CONVĪVIUM

Hīs rēbus ita cōnstitūtīs iī quī sorte ductī erant in interiōrem partem īnsulae profectī sunt. Tantus tamen timor animōs eōrum occupāverat ut nihil dubitārent quīn mortī obviam īrent. Vix quidem poterant iī quī in nāvī relictī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdēbant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam posteā vīsūrōs. Illī autem aliquantum itineris prōgressī ad vīllam quandam pervēnērunt summā magnificentiā aedificātam, cuius ad ōstium cum adīssent, carmen dulcissimum audīvērunt. Tanta autem fuit eius vōcis dulcēdō ut nūllō modō retinērī possent quīn iānuam pulsārent. Hōc factō ipsa Circē forās exiit, et summā cum benignitāte omnēs in hospitium invītāvit. Eurylochus īnsidiās sibi comparārī suspicātus forīs exspectāre cōnstituit, sed reliquī novitāte adductī intrāvērunt. Convīvium magnificum omnibus rēbus īnstrūctum invēnērunt et iussū dominae libentissimē accubuērunt. At Circē vīnum quod servī apposuērunt medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum Graecī bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

Aliquantum itineris, *some part of the way;* **itineris,** genitive of the whole (sec. 442); **quīn mortī obviam īrent,** *that they were going to meet death;* **quīn iānuam pulsārent,** *from knocking at the door;* **novitāte,** ablative of cause (sec. 376).

ARS MAGICA

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae perītissima erat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Eurylochus ignārus quid in aedibus agerētur ad ōstium sedēbat. Postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum anxiō animō et sollicitō exspectāvit, sōlus ad nāvem regredī cōnstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, sollicitūdine ac timōre tam perturbātus erat ut quae vīdisset vix lūcidē nārrāre posset. At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in perīculō versārī, et gladiō correptō Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad illam domum

mōnstrāret. Hic tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē in tantum perīculum sē committeret; sī quid gravius eī accidisset, omnium salūtem in summō discrīmine futūram. Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre, sī māllet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō praesidiō rem susceptūrum. Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī dēsiluit et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.

Artis, objective genitive (sec. 441); **sī quid gravius**, *if anything too serious* (sec. 563); **accidisset, māllet**, subjunctive in dependent clauses in indirect discourse (sec. 768); **respondit sē**, in indirect discourse the reflexive pronoun **suī** generally refers to the speaker.

MERCURIUS AUXILIUM FERT

Ulixēs aliquantum itineris prōgressus ad vīllam magnificam pervēnit, quam cum oculīs perlūstrāsset, statim intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem domum dē quā Eurylochus mentiōnem fēcisset. At cum līmen trānsitūrus esset, subitō eī obviam stetit adolēscēns fōrmā pulcherrimā aureum baculum gerēns. Hic Ulixem iam domum intrantem manū corripuit et, "Quō ruis?" inquit. "Nōnne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī ex hūmānā speciē in porcōs conversī. Num vīs ipse in eandem calamitātem venīre?" Ulixēs simul ac hanc vōcem audīvit, deum Mercurium agnōvit; nūllīs tamen precibus ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina multum valēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape," inquit, "et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, tū strictō gladiō impetum in eam vidē ut faciās." Mercurius postquam fīnem loquendī fēcit,

"mortālēs vīsūs mediō sermōne relīquit,
et procul in tenuem ex oculīs ēvānuit auram."

Circēs, genitive of Circe, a Greek form; **quam multum valēre dīcēbat**, *which he said had great effect;* **mortālēs vīsūs . . . auram**, quoted from Vergil's Aeneid.

ARS CIRCĒS NIHIL VALET

Brevī intermissō spatiō Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus iānuam pulsāvit, et foribus patefactīs ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque anteā facta sunt. Cēnam magnificē īnstrūctam vīdit et accumbere iussus est. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille etsī suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum exhausit; quō factō Circē postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs eius anteā in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta enim vīs erat eius herbae quam Mercurius dederat ut neque venēnum neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut Mercurius iusserat, gladiō strictō impetum in mulierem fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē cum artem suam nihil valēre sēnsisset, multīs cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre coepit nē sibi vītam adimeret.

Eōdem modō atque anteā, *in the same manner as before;* **aliter . . . atque**, *otherwise than;* **quicquam**, emphatic indefinite pronoun, *anything whatever.*

ULIXĒS AMĪCŌS AGNŌVIT

Ulixēs autem ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs suōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūceret (certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse); nisi id factum esset, sē dēbitās poenās sūmptūrum ostendit. Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta eī ad pedēs sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre-iūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē quae ille imperāsset omnia factūram. Tum porcōs in ātrium immittī iussit. Illī datō signō inruērunt, et cum ducem suum agnōvissent,

magnō dolōre affectī sunt quod nūllō modō eum dē rēbus suīs certiōrem facere poterant. Circē tamen unguentō quōdam corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō omnēs statim in hūmānam speciem redditī sunt. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs suōs amīcōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs receptōs esse dīceret. Illī autem hīs rēbus cognitīs statim ad domum Circaeam sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs laetitiae sē dēdidērunt.

Nisi id factum esset, sē . . . poenās sūmptūrum, if in direct discourse would be nisi id factum erit, poenās sūmam.

SOLVITUR NĀVIS

Postrīdiē eius diēī Ulixēs in animō habēbat ex hāc īnsulā quam celerrimē discēdere. Circē tamen cum haec cognōvisset, ex odiō ad amōrem conversa omnibus precibus eum ōrāre et obtestārī coepit ut paucōs diēs apud sē morārētur; et hōc tandem impetrātō tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut facile eī persuāsum sit ut diūtius manēret. Postquam tamen tōtum annum apud Circēn cōnsūmpserat, Ulixēs magnō dēsīderiō patriae suae videndae mōtus est. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quid in animō habēret ostendit. Ubi tamen ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus tam afflictam invēnit ut ad nāvigandum paene inūtilis esset. Hāc rē cognitā omnia quae ad nāvēs reficiendās ūsuī essent comparārī iussit, quā in rē tantam dīligentiam omnēs praebēbant ut ante tertium diem opus perfīcerent. At Circē ubi omnia ad profectiōnem parāta esse vīdit, rem aegrē ferēbat et Ulixem vehementer obsecrābat ut eō cōnsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, et tempestātem idōneam nactus nāvem solvit.

Eī persuāsum sit, *he was persuaded,* **the verb is used impersonally (sec. 512); ūsuī, dative of purpose (sec. 499).**

PRONUNCIATION

The Alphabet

823. The Latin alphabet has the same letters as the English with the exception of **J** and **W**, which are lacking.

K, **Y**, and **Z** are rarely used.

I is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. In some texts the consonant **I** is represented by the letter **J**.

VOWELS

824. Vowels are long or short in quantity; *i. e.*, in the time required for their pronunciation. In poetry vowels are sometimes common; *i. e.*, either long or short.

The sounds of the vowels are represented as follows:

ā as in *father.*	**a** as in *idea.*
ē as in *they.*	**e** as in *net.*
ī as in *machine.*	**i** as in *sin.*
ō as in *note.*	**o** as in *obey.*
ū as *oo* in *moon.*	**u** as in *full.*

When **Y** is used, it has the sound of **ī** pronounced with the lips in position to sound **ū**.

In this book the long vowels only are marked.

DIPHTHONGS

825. Diphthongs retain the sound of each of the combined vowels:

ae as *ai* in *aisle.*	**ei** as *ei* in *feint.*
au as *ou* in *our.*	**eu** as *ew* in *few.*
oe as *oi* in *toil.*	**ui**, as *we.*

CONSONANTS

826. The sounds of the consonants are the same as in English, with these exceptions:

b before **s** and **t** has the sound of *p;* **urbs** like **urps.**

c and **ch** are always hard like *k;* as *c* in *come.*

g is always hard like **g** in **get.**

i when used as a consonant, *i. e.*, between two vowels or at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel, has the sound of *y* in *yet.*

r is trilled more than the English *r.*

s is always like *s* in *so* (not like *s* in *rose*).

t is always like *t* in *time* (not like *t* in *nation*).

v is like *w* in *we;* **u** in such words, as **quis, lingua,** and **suādeō,** has the same sound as the Latin **v.**

Syllables

827. 1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

2. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second. **Rō-mā, La-tī-na.**

3. In combinations of two or more consonants the last consonant is generally pronounced with the following vowel. **An-tī-qua.**

A mute followed by **l** or **r,** and the combinations **gu** and **qu** are pronounced with the following vowel. **Pa-tri-a, li-brō, lin-gua, se-quor.** Compound words are divided in pronunciation so as to show the separate words. **Ab-est.**

Quantity of Syllables and Vowels

828. 1. A syllable is long or short in quantity according to the time required in its pronunciation.

2. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. **Rō-ma, cae-lō, hōc.**

3. A syllable is long if its vowel, although short, is followed by two or more consonants, except a mute preceding **l** or **r,** or by a double consonant. The first syllable

of **lin-gua, ur-be,** and **stel-la** is long although the vowel is short. In **pa-tri-a** and **li-brō** the first syllable is short since the vowel is followed by **tr** or **br.**

4. A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate **h.** The first syllable is short in **pu-el-la, po-ē-ta,** and **vi-ae.** In this position the vowel as well as the syllable is short.

5. The quantity of vowels can best be learned by observation. A vowel is always long if it is the result of contraction, or if it is followed by **nf, ns, nx,** or **nct.** **Nīl** (for **nihil**), **īn-frā, cōn-sul, coniūnx, coniūnctum.**

A vowel is generally short if it is followed by another vowel or **h.** **Ītalia, nihil.**

NOTE.—The mistake should not be made of giving a vowel the long sound in a long syllable when the vowel itself is short. The syllable **est,** for example, is long but the vowel **e** is short.

Accent

829. 1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first. **Rō'ma.**

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last syllable) if it is long in quantity; if the penult is short, the antepenult is accented. **An-tī'qua, Ī-ta'li-a.**

TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION

Nouns

830. THE FIRST DECLENSION

Stella, *star.*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	stella	stellae
Gen.	stellae	stellārum
Dat.	stellae	stellīs
Acc.	stellam	stellās
Voc.	stella	stellae
Abl.	stellā	stellīs

a. **Dea,** *goddess,* and **fīlia,** *daughter,* in the dative and ablative plural have the forms **deābus** and **fīliābus.**

831. THE SECOND DECLENSION

Amīcus, *friend;* **puer,** *boy;* **liber,** *book;* **fīlius,** *son;* **templum,** *temple.*

	Singular				
Nom.	amīcus	puer	liber	fīlius	templum
Gen.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīlī	templī
Dat.	amīcō	puerō	librō	fīliō	templō
Acc.	amīcum	puerum	librum	fīlium	templum
Voc.	amīce	puer	liber	fīlī	templum
Abl.	amīcō	puerō	librō	fīliō	templō
	Plural				
Nom.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīliī	templa
Gen.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	fīliōrum	templōrum
Dat.	amīcīs	puerīs	librīs	fīliīs	templīs
Acc.	amīcōs	puerōs	librōs	fīliōs	templa
Voc.	amīcī	puerī	librī	fīliī	templa
Abl.	amīcīs	puerīs	librīs	fīliīs	templīs

a. For the declension of nouns ending in **-ius** and **-ium** see sections 74, *b,* and 84, *b.*

832. THE THIRD DECLENSION

Mute Stems

Prīnceps, *chief;* **rēx**, *king;* **mīles**, *soldier;* **caput**, *head.*

SINGULAR

Nom.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
Gen.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
Dat.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Acc.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
Voc.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
Abl.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

PLURAL

Nom.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
Gen.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
Dat.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus
Acc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
Voc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
Abl.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

Liquid Stems

Cōnsul, *consul;* **pāstor**, *shepherd;* **pater**, *father.*

SINGULAR

Nom.	cōnsul	pāstor	pater
Gen.	cōnsulis	pāstōris	patris
Dat.	cōnsulī	pāstōrī	patrī
Acc.	cōnsulem	pāstōrem	patrem
Voc.	cōnsul	pāstor	pater
Abl.	cōnsule	pāstōre	patre

PLURAL

Nom.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	pāstōrum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs
Voc.	cōnsulēs	pāstōrēs	patrēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	pāstōribus	patribus

Stems in *n*

Leō, *lion;* **imāgō**, *image;* **flūmen**, *river.*

SINGULAR

Nom.	leō	imāgō	flūmen
Gen.	leōnis	imāginis	flūminis
Dat.	leōnī	imāginī	flūminī
Acc.	leōnem	imāginem	flūmen
Voc.	leō	imāgō	flūmen
Abl.	leōne	imāgine	flūmine

PLURAL

Nom.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
Gen.	leōnum	imāginum	flūminum
Dat.	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus
Acc.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
Voc.	leōnēs	imāginēs	flūmina
Abl.	leōnibus	imāginibus	flūminibus

Stems in *s*

Flōs, *flower;* **tempus**, *time;* **genus**, *kind.*

SINGULAR

Nom.	flōs	tempus	genus
Gen.	flōris	temporis	generis
Dat.	flōrī	temporī	generī
Acc.	flōrem	tempus	genus
Voc.	flōs	tempus	genus
Abl.	flōre	tempore	genere

PLURAL

Nom.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Gen.	flōrum	temporum	generum
Dat.	flōribus	temporibus	generibus
Acc.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Voc.	flōrēs	tempora	genera
Abl.	flōribus	temporibus	generibus

Stems in *i*

Urbs, *city;* **hostis,** *enemy;* **nāvis,** *ship;* **mare,** *sea.*

	Singular			
Nom.	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
Gen.	urbis	hostis	nāvis	maris
Dat.	urbī	hostī	nāvī	marī
Acc.	urbem	hostem	nāvem	mare
Voc.	urbs	hostis	nāvis	mare
Abl.	urbe	hoste	nāve (-ī)	marī (-e)
	Plural			
Nom.	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
Gen.	urbium	hostium	nāvium	(marum)
Dat.	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus
Acc.	urbīs (-ēs)	hostīs (ēs)	nāvīs (-ēs)	maria
Voc.	urbēs	hostēs	nāvēs	maria
Abl.	urbibus	hostibus	nāvibus	maribus

833. THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Portus, *harbor;* **cornū,** *horn.*

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	portus	portūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	portūs	portuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	portuī	portibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	portum	portūs	cornū	cornua
Voc.	portus	portūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	portū	portibus	cornū	cornibus

834. THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Diēs, *day;* **rēs,** *thing.*

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

835. SPECIAL NOUNS

Domus, *house;* **senex,** *old man;* **vīs,** *strength;* **iter,** *route.*

SINGULAR

Nom.	domus	senex	vīs	iter
Gen.	domūs (-ī)	senis	(vis)	itineris
Dat.	domuī (-ō)	senī	(vī)	itinerī
Acc.	domum	senem	vim	iter
Voc.	domus	senex	vīs	iter
Abl.	domō (-ū)	sene	vī	itinere

PLURAL

Nom.	domūs	senēs	vīrēs	itinera
Gen.	domuum (-ōrum)	senum	vīrium	itinerum
Dat.	domibus	senibus	vīribus	itineribus
Acc.	domōs (-ūs)	senēs	vīrīs (-ēs)	itinera
Voc.	domūs	senēs	vīrēs	itinera
Abl.	domibus	senibus	vīribus	itineribus

Aenēās, *Aeneas;* **Iuppiter,** *Jupiter;* **deus,** *god.*

Nom.	Aenēās	Iuppiter	deus	deī (diī), dī
Gen.	Aenēae	Iovis	deī	deōrum, deum
Dat.	Aenēae	Iovī	deō	deīs (diīs), dīs
Acc.	Aenēān (-am)	Iovem	deum	deōs
Voc.	Aenēā	Iuppiter	deus	deī (diī), dī
Abl.	Aenēā	Iove	deō	deīs (diīs), dīs

Adjectives

836. THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Bonus, *good.*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

		PLURAL	
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Miser, *unhappy.*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō

	PLURAL		
Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Pulcher, *beautiful.*

	SINGULAR		
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	PLURAL		
Nom.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Voc.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

837. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Ūnus, *one;* **alter,** *other.*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. In the plural these adjectives are declined like **bonus.**

b. The genitive ending **-īus** is sometimes shortened to **-ius,** especially in **alterius.**

838. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Audāx, *daring;* **omnis,** *all.*

SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
Gen.	audācis	audācis	omnis	omnis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	omnem	omne
Voc.	audāx	audāx	omnis	omne
Abl.	audācī	audācī	omnī	omnī

PLURAL

Nom.	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	omnium	omnium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	omnīs (-ēs)	omnia
Voc.	audācēs	audācia	omnēs	omnia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	omnibus	omnibus

Ācer, *spirited.*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācri

		PLURAL	
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Amāns, *loving.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
Voc.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Abl.	amante (ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

a. Adjectives in -ns and participles in -ns, used as adjectives, have the ending -ī in the ablative singular; participles in -ns, used as such, have the ending -e.

839. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
ferōx	ferōcior, -ius	ferōcissimus, -a, -um
trīstis	trīstior, -ius	trīstissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus	— plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
superus	superior, superius	suprēmus, -a, -um summus, -a, -um
īnferus	īnferior, īnferius	īnfimus, -a, -um īmus, -a, -um
	prior, prius	prīmus, -a, -um

840. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

Altior, *higher*.

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs (-īs)	altiōra
Voc.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

841. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus	altē	altius	altissimē
audāx	audācter	audācius	audācissimē
celer	celeriter	celerius	celerrimē
facilis	facile	facilius	facillimē
miser	miserē	miserius	miserrimē
bonus	bene	melius	optimē
magnus	magnopere	magis	maximē
malus	male	peius	pessimē
multus	multum	plūs	plūrimum
parvus	parum	minus	minimē
	diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
	saepe	saepius	saepissimē

842. NUMERALS

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman
1.	ūnus, -a, -um, *one*	prīmus, -a, -um, *first*	I
2.	duo, duae, duo, *two*	secundus, -a, -um, *second*	II
3.	trēs, tria, *three*	tertius, -a, -um, *third*	III

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman
4.	quattuor	quārtus	IIII or IV
5.	quīnque	quīntus	V
6.	sex	sextus	VI
7.	septem	septimus	VII
8.	octō	octāvus	VIII
9.	novem	nōnus	VIIII or IX
10.	decem	decimus	X
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12.	duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13.	tredecim	tertius (-a, -um) decimus (-a, -um)	XIII
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII or XIV
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XVIIII or XIX
20.	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus	XX
21.	vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēnsimus prīmus (ūnus et vīcēnsimus)	XXI
22.	vīgintī duo (duo et vīgintī)	vīcēnsimus secundus (alter et vīcēnsimus)	XXII
30.	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XXXX or XL
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80.	octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXX or XC
100.	centum	centēnsimus	C
101.	centum (et) ūnus	centēnsimus prīmus	CI
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	D
600.	sescentī	sescentēnsimus	DC
700.	septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800.	octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC
1000.	mīlle	mīllēnsimus	M
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēnsimus	MM

843. DECLENSION

Duo, *two*; **trēs**, *three*; **mīlia**, *thousands*.

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

a. In the singular **mīlle** is indeclinable.

b. For the declension of **ūnus** see section 837.

Pronouns

844. PERSONAL

Ego, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **suī**, *of himself, of themselves*.

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	S. & P.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
Dat.	mihi (mī)	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
Voc.	—	—	tū	vōs	—
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

845. DEMONSTRATIVE

Hic, *this*.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Ille, *that*.

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. **iste** is declined like **ille**; **ipse** has **ipsum** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

Is, *this, that.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

Īdem, *the same.*

Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem (iīdem) eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem (iīsdem) eīsdem	īsdem, *etc.*	īsdem, *etc.*
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem (iīsdem) eīsdem	īsdem, *etc.*	īsdem, *etc.*

846. RELATIVE

Quī, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

847. INTERROGATIVE

Quis, *who? what?* (substantive).

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod,** is declined like the relative **quī.**

848. INDEFINITE

Aliquis, *some one, something.*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. The indefinite adjective **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some,* is declined like the relative **quī** except that the indefinite has the form **aliqua** where the relative has **quae.**

Quisque, *each.*

	Substantive		*Adjective*		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
Abl.	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

Quīdam, *a certain one, a certain.*

	Singular		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	Plural		
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. In the neuter singular the substantive has the form **quiddam** and the adjective **quoddam.**

Quisquam, *anyone, anything.*

	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

Verbs

THE VERB *SUM*

849. **Sum**, *I am.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERF. INDIC.	FUT. PART.
sum	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*
es, *you are*	**estis**, *you are*
est, *he is*	**sunt**, *they are*

Imperfect

eram, *I was*	**erāmus**, *we were*
erās, *you were*	**erātis**, *you were*
erat, *he was*	**erant**, *they were*

Future

erō, *I shall be*	**erimus**, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	**eritis**, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	**erunt**, *they will be*

Perfect

fuī, *I have been, was*	**fuimus**, *we have been, were*
fuistī, *you have been, were*	**fuistis**, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*	**fuērunt** (**-ēre**) *they have been, were*

Past Perfect

fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	**fuerātis**, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant**, *they had been*

Future Perfect

fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		*Imperfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
fuerim	fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	es, *be (thou)*	este, *be (ye)*
Fut.	estō, *you shall be*	estōte, *you shall be*
	estō, *he shall be*	suntō, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be*
Pref. fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

850. THE VERB *VOCŌ*, WITH TRANSLATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
vocō	vocāre	vocāvī	vocātus

Active Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

vocō, *I call, am calling, do call*	**vocāmus,** *we call, are calling, do call*
vocās, *you call, are calling, do call*	**vocātis,** *you call, are calling, do call*
vocat, *he calls, is calling, does call*	**vocant,** *they call, are calling, do call*

Imperfect

vocābam, *I was calling, called*	**vocābāmus,** *we were calling, called*
vocābās, *you were calling, called*	**vocābātis,** *you were calling, called*
vocābat, *he was calling, called*	**vocābant,** *they were calling, called*

Future

vocābō, *I shall call*	**vocābimus,** *we shall call*
vocābis, *you will call*	**vocābitis,** *you will call*
vocābit, *he will call*	**vocābunt,** *they will call*

Perfect

vocāvī, *I called, have called*	**vocāvimus,** *we called, have called*
vocāvistī, *you called, have called*	**vocāvistis,** *you called, have called*
vocāvit, *he called, has called*	**vocāvērunt** (**-ēre**), *they called, have called*

Past Perfect

vocāveram, *I had called*	**vocāverāmus,** *we had called*
vocāverās, *you had called*	**vocāverātis,** *you had called*
vocāverat, *he had called*	**vocāverant,** *they had called*

Future Perfect

vocāverō, *I shall have called*	**vocāverimus,** *we shall have called*
vocāveris, *you will have called*	**vocāveritis,** *you will have called*
vocāverit, *he will have called*	**vocāverint,** *they will have called*

For the translation of the subjunctive mood, see section 649.

IMPERATIVE

Present

vocā, *call thou* — **vocāte**, *call ye*

Future

vocātō, *thou shalt call* — **vocātōte**, *ye shall call*
vocātō, *he shall call* — **vocantō**, *they shall call*

INFINITIVE

Present	*Perfect*	*Future*
vocāre, *to call*	**vocāvisse**, *to have called*	**vocātūrus esse**, *to be about to call*

PARTICIPLE

Present	*Future*
vocāns, *calling*	**vocātūrus**, *about to call*

GERUND

Gen.	**vocandī**, *of calling*
Dat.	**vocandō**, *for calling*
Acc.	**vocandum**, *calling*
Abl.	**vocandō**, *by calling*

SUPINE

Acc.	**vocātum**, *to call*
Abl.	**vocātū**, *to call*

851. Passive Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

Singular	Plural
vocor, *I am called*	**vocāmur**, *we are called*
vocāris (**-re**), *you are called*	**vocāminī**, *you are called*
vocātur, *he is called*	**vocantur**, *they are called*

Imperfect

vocābar, *I was called*	**vocābāmur**, *we were called*
vocābāris (**-re**), *you were called*	**vocābāminī**, *you were called*
vocābātur, *he was called*	**vocābantur**, *they were called*

Future

vocābor, *I shall be called*	**vocābimur**, *we shall be called*
vocāberis (**-re**), *you will be called*	**vocābiminī**, *you will be called*
vocābitur, *he will be called*	**vocābuntur**, *they will be called*

Perfect

vocātus sum, *I was called, have been called*
vocātī sumus, *we were called, have been called*
vocātus es, *you were called, have been called*
vocātī estis, *you were called, have been called*
vocātus est, *he was called, has been called*
vocātī sunt, *they were called, have been called*

Past Perfect

vocātus eram, *I had been called*
vocātī erāmus, *we had been called*
vocātus erās, *you had been called*
vocātī erātis, *you had been called*
vocātus erat, *he had been called*
vocātī erant, *they had been called*

Future Perfect

vocātus erō, *I shall have been called*
vocātī erimus, *we shall have been called*
vocātus eris, *you will have been called*
vocātī eritis, *you will have been called*
vocātus erit, *he will have been called*
vocātī erunt, *they will have been called*

For the translation of the subjunctive mood, see section 649.

IMPERATIVE

Present

vocāre, *be thou called*
vocāminī, *be ye called*

Future

vocātor, *thou shalt be called*
vocātor, *he shall be called*
vocantor, *they shall be called*

INFINITIVE

Pres. **vocārī**, *to be called*
Perf. **vocātus esse**, *to have been called*
Fut. **vocātum īrī**, *to be about to be called*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. **vocandus**, *to be called*
Perf. **vocātus**, *having been called, called*

852. REGULAR VERBS, FOUR CONJUGATIONS

amō, *I love;* **videō**, *I see;* **mittō**, *I send;* **audiō**, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Conj.	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Pass. Part.
I.	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
II.	videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus
III.	mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
IV.	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

853. Active Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

amō	videō	mittō	audiō
amās	vidēs	mittis	audīs
amat	videt	mittit	audit
amāmus	vidēmus	mittimus	audīmus
amātis	vidētis	mittitis	audītis
amant	vident	mittunt	audiunt

Imperfect

amābam	vidēbam	mittēbam	audiēbam
amābās	vidēbās	mittēbās	audiēbās
amābat	vidēbat	mittēbat	audiēbat
amābāmus	vidēbāmus	mittēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	vidēbātis	mittēbātis	audiēbātis
amābant	vidēbant	mittēbant	audiēbant

Future

amābō	vidēbō	mittam	audiam
amābis	vidēbis	mittēs	audiēs
amābit	vidēbit	mittet	audiet
amābimus	vidēbimus	mittēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	vidēbitis	mittētis	audiētis
amābunt	vidēbunt	mittent	audient

Perfect

amāvī	vīdī	mīsī	audīvī
amāvist	vīdīsti	mīsistī	audīvistī
amāvit	vīdit	mīsit	audīvit
amāvimus	vīdimus	mīsimus	audīvimus
amāvistis	vīdīstis	mīsistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)	vīdērunt (-ēre)	mīsērunt (-ēre)	audīvērunt (ēre)

Past Perfect

amāveram	vīderam	mīseram	audīveram
amāverās	vīderās	mīserās	audīverās
amāverat	vīderat	mīserat	audīverat
amāverāmus	vīderāmus	mīserāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	vīderātis	mīserātis	audīverātis
amāverant	vīderant	mīserant	audīverant

Future Perfect

amāverō	vīderō	mīserō	audīverō
amāveris	vīderis	mīseris	audīveris
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit
amāverimus	vīderimus	mīserimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	vīderitis	mīseritis	audīveritis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amem	videam	mittam	audiam
amēs	videās	mittās	audiās
amet	videat	mittat	audiat
amēmus	videāmus	mittāmus	audiāmus
amētis	videātis	mittātis	audiātis
ament	videant	mittant	audiant

Imperfect

amārem	vidērem	mitterem	audīrem
amārēs	vidērēs	mitterēs	audīrēs
amāret	vidēret	mitteret	audīret
amārēmus	vidērēmus	mitterēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	vidērētis	mitterētis	audīrētis
amārent	vidērent	mitterent	audīrent

Perfect

amāverim	vīderim	mīserim	audīverim
amāverīs	vīderīs	mīserīs	audīverīs
amāverit	vīderit	mīserit	audīverit
amāverīmus	vīderīmus	mīserīmus	audīverīmus
amāverītis	vīderītis	mīserītis	audīverītis
amāverint	vīderint	mīserint	audīverint

Past Perfect

amāvissem	vīdissem	mīsissem	audīvissem
amāvissēs	vīdissēs	mīsissēs	audīvissēs
amāvisset	vīdisset	mīsisset	audīvisset
amāvissēmus	vīdissēmus	mīsissēmus	audīvissēmus
amāvissētis	vīdissētis	mīsissētis	audīvissētis
amāvissent	vīdissent	mīsissent	audīvissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

Sing.	amā	vidē	mitte	audī
Pl.	amāte	vidēte	mittite	audīte

Future

Sing.	amātō	vidētō	mittitō	audītō
	amātō	vidētō	mittitō	audītō
Pl.	amātōte	vidētōte	mittitōte	audītōte
	amantō	videntō	mittuntō	audiuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amāre	vidēre	mittere	audīre
Perf.	amāvisse	vīdisse	mīsisse	audīvisse
Fut.	amātūrus esse	vīsūrus esse	missūrus esse	audītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	amāns	vidēns	mittēns	audiēns
Fut.	amātūrus	vīsūrus	missūrus	audītūrus

GERUND

Gen.	amandī	videndī	mittendī	audiendī
Dat.	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō
Acc.	amandum	videndum	mittendum	audiendum
Abl.	amandō	videndō	mittendō	audiendō

SUPINE

Acc.	amātum	vīsum	missum	audītum
Abl.	amātū	vīsū	missū	audītū

854. Passive Voice

INDICATIVE

Present

amor	videor	mittor	audior
amāris (-re)	vidēris (-re)	mitteris (-re)	audīris (-re)
amātur	vidētur	mittitur	audītur
amāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	audīmur
amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī
amantur	videntur	mittuntur	audiuntur

Imperfect

amābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	audiēbar
amābāris (-re)	vidēbāris (-re)	mittēbāris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)
amābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	audiēbātur
amābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	audiēbantur

Future

amābor	vidēbor	mittar	audiar
amāberis (-re)	vidēberis (-re)	mittēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
amābitur	vidēbitur	mittētur	audiētur
amābimur	vidēbimur	mittēmur	audiēmur
amābiminī	vidēbiminī	mittēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	vidēbuntur	mittentur	audientur

Perfect

amātus sum	vīsus sum	missus sum	audītus sum
amātus es	vīsus es	missus es	audītus es
amātus est	vīsus est	missus est	audītus est
amātī sumus	vīsī sumus	missī sumus	audītī sumus
amātī estis	vīsī estis	missī estis	audītī estis
amātī sunt	vīsī sunt	missī sunt	audītī sunt

Past Perfect

amātus eram	vīsus eram	missus eram	audītus eram
amātus erās	vīsus erās	missus erās	audītus erās
amātus erat	vīsus erat	missus erat	audītus erat
amātī erāmus	vīsī erāmus	missī erāmus	audītī erāmus
amātī erātis	vīsī erātis	missī erātis	audītī erātis
amātī erant	vīsī erant	missī erant	audītī erant

Future Perfect

amātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō	audītus erō
amātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris	audītus eris
amātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit	audītus erit
amātī erimus	vīsī erimus	missī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	vīsī eritis	missī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	vīsī erunt	missī erunt	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amer	videar	mittar	audiar
amēris (-re)	videāris (-re)	mittāris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
amētur	videātur	mittātur	audiātur
amēmur	videāmur	mittāmur	audiāmur
amēminī	videāminī	mittāminī	audiāminī
amentur	videantur	mittantur	audiantur

Imperfect

amārer	vidērer	mitterer	audīrer
amārēris (-re)	vidērēris (-re)	mitterēris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
amārētur	vidērētur	mitterētur	audīrētur
amārēmur	vidērēmur	mitterēmur	audīrēmur
amārēminī	vidērēminī	mitterēminī	audīrēminī
amārentur	vidērentur	mitterentur	audīrentur

Perfect

amātus sim	vīsus sim	missus sim	audītus sim
amātus sīs	vīsus sīs	missus sīs	audītus sīs
amātus sit	vīsus sit	missus sit	audītus sit
amātī sīmus	vīsī sīmus	missī sīmus	audītī sīmus
amātī sītis	vīsī sītis	missī sītis	audītī sītis
amātī sint	vīsī sint	missī sint	audītī sint

Past Perfect

amātus essem	vīsus essem	missus essem	audītus essem
amātus essēs	vīsus essēs	missus essēs	audītus essēs
amātus esset	vīsus esset	missus esset	audītus esset
amātī essēmus	vīsī essēmus	missī essēmus	audītī essēmus
amātī essētis	vīsī essētis	missī essētis	audītī essētis
amātī essent	vīsī essent	missī essent	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

Sing.	amāre	vidēre	mittere	audīre
Pl.	amāminī	vidēminī	mittiminī	audīminī

Future

Sing.	amātor	vidētor	mittitor	audītor
	amātor	vidētor	mittitor	audītor
Pl.	amantor	videntor	mittuntor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amārī	vidērī	mittī	audīrī
Perf.	amātus esse	vīsus esse	missus esse	audītus esse
Fut.	amātum īrī	vīsum īrī	missum īrī	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Fut.	amandus	videndus	mittendus	audiendus
Perf.	amātus	vīsus	missus	audītus

855. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

Active

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	amātūrus sum, es, est	amātūrus sim, sīs, sit
Imperf.	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem
Fut.	amātūrus erō	
Perf.	amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim
Past Perf.	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem
Fut. Perf.	amātūrus fuerō	

	INFINITIVE
Pres.	amātūrus esse
Perf.	amātūrus fuisse

Passive

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	amandus sum, es, est	amandus sim, sīs, sit
Imperf.	amandus eram	amandus essem
Fut.	amandus erō	
Perf.	amandus fuī	amandus fuerim
Past Perf.	amandus fueram	amandus fuissem
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuerō	

	INFINITIVE
Pres.	amandus esse
Perf.	amandus fuisse

a. The periphrastic conjugations are alike in all verbs. They are formed by joining the various tenses of sum to the future active participle and the future passive participle.

856. VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IŌ*

Capiō, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

capiō	capere	cēpī	captus

INDICATIVE

Present

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

Perfect

cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus

Past Perfect

cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus

a. The perfect, past perfect, and the future perfect tenses are conjugated like the same tenses of all other verbs. **Cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit,** *etc.;* **captus sum, captus es, captus est,** *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperīmus	captus sim	captī sīmus

Past Perfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	captī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

Present

cape	capite	capere	capiminī

Future

capitō	capitōte	capitor	
capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns	*Perf.*	captus
Fut.	captūrus	*Fut.*	capiendus

GERUND		**SUPINE**
Gen.	capiendī	
Dat.	capiendō	
Acc.	capiendum	captum
Abl.	capiendō	captū

857. IRREGULAR VERBS

Possum, *I am able, I can.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum posse potuī

	INDICATIVE		**SUBJUNCTIVE**	
Pres.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Imperf.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
Fut.	poterō	poterimus		
Perf.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
Past Perf.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
Fut. Perf.	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse *Perf.* potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns (used as adj.)

a. The other compounds of sum are conjugated like sum; but prōsum has d before the forms of sum which begin with a vowel; as, prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.

858. Volō, *I wish;* nōlō, *I do not wish;* mālō, *I prefer;* eō, *I go;* ferō, *I bear;* fīō, *I become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Part.
volō	velle	voluī	
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī	
mālō	mālle	māluī	
eō	īre	iī	(*fut.*) itūrus
ferō	ferre	tulī	lātus
fīō	fierī	factus sum	

INDICATIVE

Present

volō	nōlō	mālō	eō	ferō	fīō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs	fers	fīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult	it	fert	fit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	īmus	ferimus	(fīmus)
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis	fertis	(fītis)
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt	ferunt	fīunt

Imperfect

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam	ferēbam	fīēbam

Future

volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō	feram	fīam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībis	ferēs	fīēs
volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit	feret	fīet
volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus	ferēmus	fīēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībitis	ferētis	fīētis
volent	nōlent	mālent	ībunt	ferent	fīent

Perfect

voluī	nōluī	māluī	iī (īvī) īstī (iistī) iit (īt) iimus īstis (iistis) ierunt (ierē)	tulī	factus sum

Past Perfect

volueram	nōlueram	māluēram	ieram	tuleram	factus eram

Future Perfect

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	ierō	tulerō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

velim	nōlim	mālim	eam	feram	fīam
velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	eās	ferās	fīās
velit	nōlit	mālit	eat	ferat	fīat
velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	fīāmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	eātis	ferātis	fīātis
velint	nōlint	mālint	eant	ferant	fīant

Imperfect

vellem	nōllem	māllem	īrem	ferrem	fierem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs	īrēs	ferrēs	fierēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet	īret	ferret	fieret
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	fierēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis	īrētis	ferrētis	fierētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent	īrent	ferrent	fierent

Perfect

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	ierim	tulerim	factus sim

Past Perfect

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īssem	tulissem	factus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	ī	fer	fī
	nōlīte	īte	ferte	fīte
Fut.	nōlītō	ītō	fertō	
		ītō	fertō	
	nōlītōte	ītōte	fertōte	
		euntō	feruntō	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle	īre	ferre	fierī
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	īsse (iisse)	tulisse	factus esse
Fut.				itūrus esse	latūrus esse	factum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	iēns (Gen., euntis)	ferēns	
Fut. Act.			itūrus	latūrus	
Fut. Pass.			eundum		faciendus
Perf. Pass.					factus

GERUND

Gen.	eundī	ferendī
Dat.	eundō	ferendō
Acc.	eundum	ferendum
Abl.	eundō	ferendō

The Passive of *ferō*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
feror	ferimur	ferar	ferāmur
ferris (-re)	feriminī	ferāris (-re)	ferāminī
fertur	feruntur	ferātur	ferantur
	Imperfect		
ferēbar	ferēbāmur	ferrer	ferrēmur
ferēbāris (-re)	ferēbāminī	ferrēris (-re)	ferrēminī
ferēbātur	ferēbantur	ferrētur	ferrentur

Future

ferar ferēmur

Perfect

lātus sum lātī sumus lātus sim lātī sīmus

Past Perfect

lātus eram lātī erāmus lātus essem lātī essēmus

Future Perfect

lātus erō lātī erimus

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE	
Pres.	ferre	feriminī	*Pres.*	ferrī
Fut.	fertor		*Perf.*	lātus esse
	fertor	feruntor		

PARTICIPLE

Fut. ferendus *Perf.* lātus

859. DEPONENT VERBS

Conj.	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	
I.	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum	*attempt*
II.	polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum	*promise*
III.	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	*follow*
IV.	potior	potīrī	potītus sum	*obtain*
III-ior	patior	patī	passus sum	*suffer*

a. Deponent verbs have the form of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. They have also the active participles, the future active infinitive, the gerund, and the supine. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with the passive meaning.

b. Deponent verbs are conjugated like regular verbs in the passive voice.

c. A few verbs are deponent in the perfect system only. These are called semi-deponents.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice.*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed.*

REFERENCES TO RULES OF SYNTAX

860. The principles of syntax which have been developed in the text are here collected by titles. For convenience in review they are arranged in the same order in which they are first introduced. The numbers following the titles refer to the sections where complete statements with illustrations may be found.

For the full treatment of any subject, *e. g.*, the uses of the ablative case, consult the index.

1. The subject of a finite verb. 19.
2. The direct object of a transitive verb. 20.
3. The genitive qualifying another noun. 29.
4. The ablative of means or instrument. 30.
5. The indirect object. 39.
6. The vocative case. 40.
7. The locative case. 52.
8. Agreement of verb. 62.
9. Predicate noun or adjective. 75.
10. Agreement of adjectives. 103.
11. The dative with adjectives. 104.
12. Apposition. 118.
13. The use of the present indicative. 130.
14. The agent with passive verbs. 151.
15. The place to which. 163.
16. The place in which. 164.
17. The place from which. 165.
18. The ablative of time. 176.
19. The ablative of accompaniment. 177.
20. Two accusatives. 188.
21. The use of the imperfect tense. 199.
22. Voice. 210.
23. Transitive and intransitive verbs. 211.
24. The genitive of quality. 222.
25. The use of the future tense. 253.
26. The dative with certain compound verbs. 266.
27. Conjunctions. 281.
28. The complementary infinitive. 307.

29. The infinitive as subject. 308.
30. The infinitive as object. 309.
31. The time denoted by the present infinitive. 310.
32. The subject of an infinitive. 311.
33. The use of the participle. 332.
34. The use of the imperative. 333.
35. The dative with verbs of separation. 334.
36. The accusative of extent. 350.
37. The use of the definite perfect. 374.
38. The use of the indefinite perfect. 375.
39. The ablative of cause. 376.
40. The dative denoting possession. 377.
41. The use of the past perfect tense. 390.
42. The use of the future perfect tense. 402.
43. The infinitive with verbs of saying. 414.
44. The time denoted by the perfect infinitive. 415.
45. The use of personal pronouns. 437.
46. The use of the reflexive pronoun. 438.
47. The use of possessive pronouns. 439.
48. Adjectives as nouns. 440.
49. The objective genitive. 441.
50. The genitive of the whole. 442.
51. The use of demonstrative pronouns. 456.
52. Duration of time. 457.
53. The use of is. 470.
54. Agreement of the relative pronoun. 471.
55. The use of the perfect passive participle. 487.
56. The ablative absolute. 488.
57. The dative of purpose. 499.
58. Verbs used impersonally. 512.
59. The ablative of manner. 513.
60. The ablative of specification. 526.
61. Interrogative words. 537.
62. The ablative with a comparative. 549.
63. The ablative of degree. 550.
64. The ablative of separation. 551.
65. Special meanings in comparison. 563.
66. Adjectives denoting a part. 574.
67. The use of adverbs. 585.
68. The use of the future active participle. 600.
69. The time denoted by the future infinitive. 601.

70. The use of the supine.—The accusative. 602, (1).
71. The ablative of the supine. 602, (2).
72. The ablative with deponent verbs. 614.
73. Negative commands. 623.
74. Primary and secondary tenses. 635.
75. The tenses of the infinitive and the participle. 636.
76. The subjunctive of purpose. 651.
77. Use of present and imperfect subjunctive. 652.
78. The subjunctive of result. 664.
79. Indirect questions. 677.
80. The use of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive. 678.
81. Sequence of tenses. 679.
82. Substantive clauses. 680.
83. Temporal clauses with **cum**.—The indicative. 691.
84. The subjunctive in temporal clauses with **cum**. 692.
85. Causal and concessive clauses with **cum**. 693.
86. The volitive subjunctive. 702.
87. The optative subjunctive. 703.
88. The potential subjunctive. 704.
89. Conditional sentences.—First class. 714.
90. Conditional sentences.—Second class. 715.
91. Conditional sentences.—Third class. 716.
92. The dative with special verbs. 717.
93. The use of the gerundive. 731.
94. The use of the gerund. 732.
95. The active periphrastic conjugation. 743.
96. The passive periphrastic conjugation. 744.
97. The dative of the agent. 745.
98. The subjective genitive. 746.
99. The use of indefinite pronouns. 757.
100. The ablative of origin. 758.
101. Main verbs in indirect discourse. 767.
102. Dependent verbs in indirect discourse. 768.
103. Questions in indirect discourse. 769.
104. The ablative of price. 770.
105. The ablative of quality or description. 771
106. **Nē** and **ut** with verbs of fearing. 781.
107. The genitive with verbs of feeling. 782.
108. The omission of **ut**. 790.
109. The subjunctive by attraction. 791.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

861. Certain words which are introduced in the reading exercises before their grammatical explanation is given will be found in the vocabulary in the forms used in the text; *e. g.* **manibus**, section 278; **eaedem**, section 519; **faceret**, section 545.

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *by, from, on the side of.*

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to hide.*

abeō, -īre, -iī (īvī), **-itus**, *to go away.*

abī, imper. of **abeō**, *go away, begone.*

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to annul, take away.*

abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to cut off.*

absēns, -ntis, part. of **absum**, *absent.*

absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, *to set free, release, acquit.*

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *to be away, be distant.*

abūtēre, sec. per. sing. future of **abūtor.**

abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, *to use up, abuse.*

ac, conj., *and, and also.*

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia*, the wife of Faustulus.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to come near, approach, happen, befall, be added to.*

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *to kindle, light.*

acceptus, -a, -um, part. of **accipiō**, *welcome, acceptable, pleasing.*

accidō, -ere, -cidī, *to happen.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to receive, welcome, catch, accept.*

accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *to recline, sit* (at table).

accurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run to, run up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to accuse, blame.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, active, spirited, violent.*

Achātēs, -ae, m., *Achates*, a companion of Aeneas.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *edge, line, line of battle.*

acinus, -ī, m., *berry, grape.*

Ācrisius, -ī, m., *Acrisius*, grandfather of Perseus.

acus, -ūs, f., *needle, pin.*

ad, prep, with acc., *to, toward, according to, for.*

addīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *to give assent to, be propitious, be favorable.*

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to add to, annex, join.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead on, induce.*

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, *to go to, approach.*

adeō, adv., *to such a degree, so.*

adeptus, -a, -um, part. of **adipiscor.**

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to employ, use.*

adhūc, adv., *yet, still, as yet.*

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to place near, add to.*

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *to take away.*

adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum, *to obtain, acquire, attain.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, entrance.*

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to join to, unite, annex.*

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, assist, support.*

adlevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to lift up, raise.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to manage, guide, administer.*

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f., *admiration, wonder.*

admissus, -a, -um, part. of **admittō,** *admitted.*

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to admit, allow.*

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to remind, warn, admonish.*

adnectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *to tie to, bind to, annex.*

adolēscēns, -ntis, m., *a youth, young man.*

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, adultus, *to grow to manhood.*

adrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to claim, appropriate.*

adstō, -āre, -stitī, *to stand by or near.*

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *to be near, be present.*

adsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *to receive, accept, adopt, take.*

adultus, -a, -um, part. of **adolēscō,** *grown to manhood, mature.*

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come to, arrive.*

adventū, abl. sing., see **adventus.**

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, coming.*

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable, adverse.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call to, summon.*

aedēs, -is, f., *temple;* pl., *dwelling, house.*

aedificium, -ī, n., *a building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build, erect.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty, with displeasure.*

aegritūdō, -inis, f., *sickness, grief;* **aegritūdō animī,** *disappointment.*

aemulātiō, -ōnis, f., *rivalry, emulation, imitation.*

Aenēās, Aenēae, m., *Aeneas,* legendary ancestor of the Romans.

aēneus, -a, -um, adj., *of bronze.*

Aeolia, -ae, f., *Aeolia,* an island or group of islands near Sicily.

Aeolus, -ī, m., *Aeolus,* the king of the winds.

aequālis, -e, adj., *equal.*

aequitās, -ātis, f., *fairness, justice, equity, equality.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make equal, become equal.*

āēr, āeris, acc., **āera**, m., *air.*

aereus, -a, -um, adj., *of copper, bronze.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze;* pl., **aera**, *statues in bronze.*

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aetās, ātis, f., *age, life, time.*

aeternus, -a, -um, adj., *perpetual, everlasting.*

Aethiopēs, -um, m., *the Ethiopians.*

Aetna, -ae, f., *Aetna*, the famous mountain and volcano of Sicily.

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *to bring to, produce, report.*

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to affect, inflict upon, disturb.*

afflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *to damage, injure.*

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa.*

Āfricānus, -ī, m., *Africanus*, a surname of Scipio.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, territory, country.*

aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go to, approach.*

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to drive, disturb, revolve in mind, consider.*

agmen, -inis, n., *army* (on the march).

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to recognize.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *to lead, drive, do, agree, arrange;* **aetātem agere**, *to pass time, live;* **quid agis**, *what are you doing? how do you do?* **grātiās agere**, *to give thanks, thank.*

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer.*

agricultūra, -ae, f., *cultivation of the land, agriculture.*

aiō, defective verb, *I say, assert;* **ait**, *he says;* **aiunt**, *they say.*

āla, -ae, f., *wing.*

Alba Longa, Albae Longae, f., *Alba Longa*, an ancient Latin town.

Albānī, -ōrum, m., *the Albans.*

Albānus, -a, -um, adj., *Alban, of the Albans.*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.*

aliās, adv., *at another time.*

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time, a little while.*

aliquandō, adv., *at some time, once, finally, at last.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., *considerable, somewhat.*

aliquid, nom. and acc. sing. neut. of **aliquis**, *something.*

aliquis, aliquid, indef. pro., *some one, something.*

aliquot, indecl. adj., *some, several.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise.*

aliud, nom. and acc. sing. n. of **alius**, *other;* **aliud . . . aliud**, *one thing . . . another thing.*

alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another;* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another;* **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others.*

allātūrus, see **afferō**.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bind to, make fast.*

alloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *to speak to, address.*

Alpēs, ium, f., *the Alps mountains.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other* (of two), *either, another, a second;* **alter . . . alter**, *one . . . the other.*

altior, altius, gen. -ōris, adj., comp. of altus, *deeper, higher.*
altissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of altus, *highest, very high.*
altitūdō, -dinis, f., *height.*
altum, -ī, n., *the deep, the sea.*
altus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high.*
alumnus, -ī, m., *pupil, foster-son.*
amātor, -ōris, m., *lover.*
ambō, ambae, ambō, adj., *both.*
ambulāns, -ntis, part. of ambulō, *walking.*
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to walk about, journey.*
āmentia, -ae, f., *madness.*
America, -ae, f., *America.*
Americānus, -a, -um, adj., *American.*
amethystus, -ī, f., *amethyst.*
amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship.*
amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*
āmissus, -a, -um, part. of āmittō, *lost.*
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send away, lose.*
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to love, like.*
amor, pass. of amō, *I am loved.*
amor, -ōris, m., *love.*
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to remove from, move away.*
amphitheātrum, -ī, n., *amphitheater.*
amphora, -ae, f., *a bottle, flask.*
amplius, adv., *more, more than.*
ampulla, -ae, f., *a bottle, flask.*
Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius,* a king of Alba Longa.
an, conj., *or.*
Anchīsēs, -ae, m., *Anchises,* the father of Aeneas.
ancora, -ae, f., *anchor.*
Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus,* a king of Rome.
Andromeda, -ae, f., *Andromeda,* daughter of the Ethiopian king Cepheus.
anguis, -is, m. and f., *serpent.*
angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to notice, observe.*
animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*
animus, -ī, m., *mind, courage, spirit, disposition.*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
ante, prep. with acc., *before;* adv., *before.*
anteā, adv., *before.*
antequam, conj., *before.*
antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old.*
Antōnius, -ī, m., *Antony,* a Roman.
antrum, -ī, n., *cave.*
ānulus, -ī, m., *ring.*
anus, anūs, f., *old woman.*
anxietās, -ātis, f., *anxiety.*
anxius, -a, -um, adj., *troubled, anxious.*
Āpennīnus, -ī, m., *the Apennines,* mountains in Italy.
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *to open, uncover.*
apertus, -a, -um, part. of aperiō, *opened, uncovered.*
Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo,* the twin brother of Diana, the god of the sun, of music, poetry, augury, archery, and healing.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call.*
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive to, bring to.*

Appius, -a, -um, adj.; *Appian;* **Appia Via,** *the Appian Way,* the road named for Appius Claudius.

appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place before, put or set by.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, *to approach, come near.*

Aprīlis, -is, m., *the month of April.*

aptē, adv., *suitably, nicely, fitly.*

aptior, -ius, gen., **ōris,** adj., comp. of **aptus,** *more suitable.*

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, fit, appropriate, adapted.*

apud, prep. with acc., *among, at the house of.*

Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia,* a province of Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquaeductus, -ūs, m., *an aqueduct.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle, standard* (of a legion).

Aquītānī, -ōrum, m., *the Aquitani,* inhabitants of a part of Gaul, or France.

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

arātor, -ōris, m., *plowman, farmer.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to be of the opinion, consider, think.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

arca, -ae, f., *box, chest, ark.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, *to keep away, off.*

arcēret, imperf. subj. of **arceō** *he (she, it) might (would) keep off, keep away.*

arcus, -ūs, m., *arch, a triumphal arch.*

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *to burn, to be filled with a desire.*

arēna, -ae, f., *sand, the shore* (of the sea), *the arena* (in an amphitheater).

argenteus, -a, -um, adj., *of silver.*

argentum, -ī, n., *silver.*

āridus, -a, -um, adj., *dry, withered, meagre.*

arista, -ae, f., *an ear of grain.*

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms.*

armātus, -a, -um, part. of **armō,** *armed.*

armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to arm.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to plow.*

ars, artis, f., *skill, art, knowledge.*

artifex, -ficis, m., *artist, artificer.*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel.*

Ascanius, -ī, m., *Ascanius,* the son of Aeneas.

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to climb, go up, ascend.*

Āsia, -ae, f., *Asia.*

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, difficult;* n. pl. as noun, *difficulties.*

astrum, -ī, n., *star, constellation;* fig., *heaven, success.*

asȳlum, -ī, n., *asylum.*

at, conj., *but.*

Atalanta, -ae, f., *Atalanta,* daughter of the king of Boeotia, distinguished for swiftness in running.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*

atque, conj., *and, and also;* sometimes *than.*

ātrium, -ī, n., *hall, entry.*

atrōciter, adv., *cruelly, severely.*

atrōx, -ōcis, adj., *fierce, savage, cruel.*

attentus, -a, -um, adj., *attentive.*

attulī, see **afferō.**

Attus, -ī, m., *Attus*, a Roman augur.
auctor, -ōris, m., *author, authority.*
auctōritās, -ātis, f., *influence, authority.*
audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, courage, audacity, lawlessness.*
audācter, adv., *boldly.*
audāx, -ācis, adj., *daring, bold, brave.*
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *to dare.*
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to hear.*
audīre, pres. inf. of audiō, *to hear.*
audīrī, pres. inf. pass. of audiō, *to be heard.*
audītū, abl. supine of audiō, *to hear.*
auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus, *to take away, take off, carry off, remove.*
aufert, see auferō.
aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to flee away from, flee away.*
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, strengthen, enlarge, advance.*
augur, -uris, m., *augur, soothsayer.*
augurium, -ī, n., *divination, augury.*
Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus*, the first Roman emperor; the month of *August.*
aura, -ae, f., *the air.*
Aurēlius, -ī, m., *Aurelius, Marcus Aurelius*, a Roman emperor.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden.*
aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*
auspicātō, adv., *after taking the auspices, by augury.*
auspicium, -ī, n., *divination, augury.*
auster, -trī, m., *the south wind.*
aut, conj., *or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*
autem, conj., *but, however, moreover.*
auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to help.*
auxilium, -ī, n., *help, assistance.*
avārus, -a, -um, adj., *avaricious, selfish.*
Aventīnus, -ī, m., *Mount Aventinus* at Rome.
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to turn away.*
avidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager, greedy.*
avis, -is, f., *bird.*
avītus, -a, -um, adj., *of a grandfather, ancestral.*
avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

Bacchus, -ī, m., *Bacchus*, the god of wine.
baculum, -ī, n., *a stick, staff.*
balneum, -ī, n.; pl., balneae, -ārum, f., *a bath, a place for bathing.*
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *uncivilized, barbarian.*
beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, fortunate.*
Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgae* or *Belgians*, inhabitants of a part of Gaul.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike.*
bellum, -ī, n., *war.*
bēlua, -ae, f., *beast, monster.*
bene, adv., *well, wisely.*
beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
benignē, adv., *kindly.*

benignitās, -ātis, f., *kindness.*
benignus, -a, -um, adj., *kind.*
bēstia, -ae, f., *beast, animal.*
bibō, -ere, bibī, *to drink.*
blandus, -a, -um, adj., *persuasive, coaxing, alluring.*
bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good;* pl., **bonī,** *good men;* **bona,** *good things, goods.*
bracchium, -ī, n., *the arm.*
brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief.*
Britannī, -ōrum, m., *Britons,* inhabitants of Britain.
Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*
Brundisium, -ī, n., *Brundisium,* an ancient town in Italy.
Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus.* 1. The first Roman consul. 2. One of the conspirators against Caesar.

C

C, abbreviation for **Gāius.**
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *to fall, fall down, fall dead, die.*
caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*
caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, murder.*
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *to cut, cut down, strike, kill.*
caelestis, -e, adj., *of heaven, heavenly, celestial.*
Caelius, -ī, m., *the Caelian hill* at Rome.
caelum, -ī, n., *sky.*
Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar.*
caestus, -ūs, m., *a strap* loaded with metal balls and wound around the hands for boxing; *boxing-glove.*
caesus, -a, -um, part., see **caedō.**
calamitās, -ātis, f., *damage, misfortune, calamity.*
calefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *to heat, make hot.*
calor, -ōris, m., *heat.*
campus, -ī, m., *field, campus, the Campus Martius* at Rome.
candeō, -ēre, -uī, *to shine, glitter.*
canis, -is, m., *dog.*
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, *to sing.*
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *to take, take captive, make prisoner, capture.*
Capitōlīnus, -ī, m., *the Capitoline hill* at Rome.
Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the Capitol, Capitoline.*
Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitoline hill* at Rome.
capra, -ae, f., a *she-goat.*
captīvus, -ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*
captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to catch, chase, snatch.*
captus, -a, -um, part. of **capiō,** *captured, taken prisoner.*
caput, -itis, n., *head, capital;* **minor capitis,** *deprived of citizenship.*
Caracalla, -ae, m., *Caracalla,* a Roman emperor.
carcer, -eris, m., *prison, jail.*
cārior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** adj., comp. of **cārus,** *dearer, more dear.*
cāritās, -ātis, f., *affection, esteem, love.*
carmen, -inis, n., *song, charm.*
carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*
carpentum, -ī, n., *carriage, cart.*
carrus, -ī, m., *cart, car.*
Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m., *the Carthaginians.*
Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage,* a city in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear.*

casa, -ae, f., *hut, house.*

Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius.*

Castor, -ōris, m., *Castor,* the brother of Pollux, with whom, in the constellation Geminī, he guides sailors.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, accident, chance.*

catapulta, -ae, f., *a catapult,* an engine of war for throwing arrows, stones, etc.

Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline.*

cauda, -ae, f., *tail.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, cause* or *case* (in a law suit); **causā,** (abl.) with gen., *for the sake of.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *to guard against, avoid, take care, look out.*

cavēte, imperative of **caveō,** *beware, look out for.*

cavum, -ī, n., *hollow, hole.*

cecidērunt, perf., see **cadō.**

cecidī, perf., see **cadō.**

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, *to go, withdraw, retire.*

celer, -ris, -re, adj., *swift.*

celeritās, -ātis, f., *swiftness, speed.*

celeriter, adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

celerius, comp. of **celeriter,** *more swiftly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to keep secret, hide, conceal.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., *the Celtae,* inhabitants of a part of Gaul.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner.*

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to eat, dine.*

cēnsus, -ūs, m., *census.*

centum, indcl. num. adj., *one hundred.*

centuria, -ae, f., *a century,* a division consisting of one hundred; *a hundred,* a division of the Roman people.

Cēpheus, -ī, m., *Cepheus,* king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda.

cēpī, perf., see **capiō.**

cēra, -ae, f., *wax.*

Cereālis, -e, adj., *belonging to Ceres;* **mūnera Cereālia,** *the gifts of Ceres, bread.*

Cerēs, -eris, f., *Ceres,* the goddess of agriculture.

certāmen, -inis, n., *strife, conflict, contest.*

certātim, adv., *earnestly, eagerly, violently.*

certē, adv., *certainly, surely, yes indeed.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain, determined;* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed.*

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., pl., *the rest, the others.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero,* a famous Roman orator.

circā, adv., *around, throughout;* prep. with acc., *around.*

Circaeus, -a, -um, adj., *of Circe.*

Circē, -ēs, dat., **Circae,** acc., **Circēn,** f., *Circe,* daughter of the sun, distinguished for magic arts.

circiter, adv., *about.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about.*

circumarō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to plow around.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *to build around, surround.*

circumstō, -āre, -stetī, *to stand around, surround.*

circus, -ī, m., *circle, circus, the Circus Maximus* at Rome.

cista, -ae, f., *box.*

cīvīlis, -e, adj., *belonging to a citizen, of a citizen, civil.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f., *state.*

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, defeat.*

clāmāte, imperative of **clāmō,** *call out.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to shout, call out.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call, cry out.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout.*

clandestīnus, -a, -um, adj., *secret, hidden.*

clangor, -ōris, m., *noise.*

clārior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** adj. comp. of **clārus,** *brighter, more famous.*

clārissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **clārus,** *brightest, most famous.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, famous;* **clāra vōx,** *a loud voice.*

classis, -is, f., *class, fleet.*

Claudiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Claudius.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *to shut, close.*

clausus, -a, -um, part. of **claudō,** *closed.*

clāvis, -is, f., *key.*

clipeus, -ī, m., *shield.*

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Clusium,* an ancient town in Etruria.

coēgī, -istī, -it, perf., see **cōgō.**

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defective verb, *to begin.*

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f., *deliberation, thought, opinion.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to consider, think.*

cognōmen, -inis, n., *name, the surname, family name.*

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to find out, learn.*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, *to urge, compel.*

Collātīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus.*

collis, -is, m., *hill.*

colloquium, -ī, n., *a talking together, conversation.*

colloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *to talk with, converse.*

collum, -ī, n., *neck.*

color, -ōris, m., *color.*

Colossēum, -ī, n., *the Colosseum* at Rome.

columba, -ae, f., *dove.*

columna, -ae, f., *column.*

comes, -itis, m., *companion.*

comitium, -ī, n., *comitium,* the place for the assembling of the Romans; pl., *the comitia,* the meeting of the Romans to elect magistrates.

commigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to remove, go.*

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to join together, begin.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to delay, remain.*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to move, arouse, disturb.*

commūnis, -e, adj., *common.*
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change.*
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make ready, provide, prepare.*
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive together, impel, compel.*
complector, -ī, -plexus sum, *to embrace.*
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to fill, fill up.*
complōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *lamentation, complaint.*
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to compose, arrange, design.*
compositum, -ī, n., *agreement;* ex **compositō,** *by agreement.*
compositus, -a, -um, part., see **compōnō.**
comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *to seize.*
compulsus, -a, -um, part. of **compellō,** *compelled.*
cōnāberis, fut. of **cōnor,** second per. sing., (if) *you shall try, attempt.*
cōnārentur, imper. subjunctive of **cōnor,** (that) *they attempt.*
cōnātus est, perf. of **cōnor,** *he attempted.*
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to withdraw, depart, permit.*
concidō, -ere, -cidī, *to fall down.*
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to unite, win over, secure the favor of, acquire.*
concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take hold of, conceive, imagine, think.*
conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out together, shout, exclaim.*
conclāve, -is, n., *room, apartment.*
Concordia, -ae, f., *the goddess Concord.*
concordia, -ae, f., *union, harmony.*
concurrō, -ere, -currī and **-cucurrī, -cursus,** *to run together, meet in combat, join battle.*
concursus, -ūs, m., *a running together, meeting, encounter.*
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to condemn.*
condiciō, -ōnis, f., *agreement, terms, condition.*
condidisse, perf. act. inf. of **condō,** *to have founded.*
conditor, -ōris, m., *founder.*
conditus, -a, -um, part. of **condō,** *founded, built.*
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditus, *to place, found, put away, establish, build.*
cōnfectus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnficiō,** *weakened, exhausted.*
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *to bring together;* with **sē,** *to betake one's self, to go.*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to complete, make, exhaust, kill.*
cōnfīdentia, -ae, f., *boldness, confidence.*
cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make firm, strengthen, declare.*
cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *to stab, assassinate.*
cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to flee for refuge.*
congredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go or come together, meet.*
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw, hurl, put with force.*
coniugem, acc. of **coniūnx,** *wife, husband.*

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to connect, join, unite.*

coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f., *husband, wife.*

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m., *conspirators.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to swear together, plot, conspire.*

connectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *to fasten together, connect.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to try, attempt.*

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to mount, embark.*

cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *to enroll.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement, unanimity, harmony.*

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *to pursue, follow.*

cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, *to join, bring together;* **manūs cōnserere,** *to join battle.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to preserve, keep, observe.*

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *to take a position, be seated, sit, encamp, settle.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *counsel, advice, plan, authority.*

cōnspectū, abl. sing., see **cōnspectus.**

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to look at, behold.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to see, perceive, behold.*

cōnspīrātor, ōris, m., *conspirator.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy, perseverance.*

Cōnstantīnus, -ī, m., *Constantine,* a Roman emperor.

cōnsternātus, -a, -um, part. of **cōnsternō,** *alarmed, in alarm, panic-stricken.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to appoint, create, determine, agree, resolve.*

cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, *to stand together, agree;* impersonal, *it is certain, evident, agreed.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *to be,* or *become, accustomed.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m., *consulship, the office of consul.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *to consider, consult.*

cōnsultissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **consultus,** *most learned, experienced.*

cōnsultor, -ōris, m., *adviser, client.*

cōnsultus, -a, -um, adj., *learned, experienced;* **iūris-cōnsultus,** *lawyer.*

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *to use up, consume;* (of time), *spend.*

cōntegō, -ere, -tēxī, tēctus, *to cover.*

contemplor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to observe, consider.*

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to strive, hasten, contend, fight.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *contented, satisfied.*

continēns, -ntis, f., *mainland, continent.*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *to enclose, surround, shut in.*
contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, *to touch.*
cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting.*
contrā, adv., *against.*
contrōversia, -ae, f., *dispute, quarrel.*
contulī, perf., see **cōnferō.**
cōnūbium, -ī, n., *marriage, the right of intermarriage.*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come together, assemble;* impersonal, *it is agreed.*
conversus, -a, -um, part. of **convertō,** *turned, turned toward.*
converto, -ere, -tī, -sus, *to turn, direct to.*
convīvium, -ī, n., *feast, banquet.*
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call together, summon.*
coorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *to arise, occur.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance;* pl., *forces.*
corium, -ī, n., *skin, leather.*
Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia.*
Cornēlius, -ī, m., *Cornelius.*
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army), *trumpet.*
corōna, -ae, f., *wreath, garland.*
corpus, -oris, n., *body.*
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *to seize.*
Corsica, -ae, f., *Corsica.*
cōs, cōtis, f., *whetstone.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily, every day.*
cotīdiē, adv., *every day, daily.*
crās, adv., *tomorrow.*
Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus.*
crātēra, -ae, f., *bowl.*
creandō, dat. and abl. gerundive of **creō,** *for* or *by electing.*
creātor, -ōris, m., *creator.*
creātus, -a, -um, part. of **creō,** *elected, appointed, having been elected.*
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *to trust, confide in, believe.*
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring forth, make, elect, appoint.*
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *to be born, grow, increase, be enlarged.*
Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete.*
Creūsa, -ae, f., *Creusa,* the wife of Aeneas.
crēvī, perf., see **crēscō.**
crīmen, -inis, n., *crime, fault.*
crīminor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to accuse, complain of.*
crīnis, -is, m., *hair.*
crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*
crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*
crūstulum, -ī, n., *confectionery, sweetmeats, candy.*
cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitus, *to lie asleep, lie.*
cui, dat. sing., see **quī, quis.**
cuilibet, dat. sing., see **quīlibet.**
cuius, gen. sing., see **quī, quis.**
cuiusdam, gen. sing., see **quīdam.**
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to blame, complain of.*
cultus, -ūs, m., *culture, civilization, manner of living.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
cum, conj., *when, since, although.*
cum . . . tum, conj., *not only . . . but also, both . . . and.*
Cūmaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Cumaean,*

of Cumae, a town in Campania, the home of the Sibyl.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to delay, hesitate.*

cupīditās, -ātis, f., *desire, avarice.*

cupīdō, -inis, f., *desire, wish.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *to desire, wish.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety.*

Curēs, -ium, m., pl., *Cures,* the capital of the Sabines.

cūria, -ae, f., *curia,* one of the divisions of the Roman people, *the senate-house, the senate.*

Cūriātius, -ī, m., *Curiatius;* pl., *the Curiatii.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to care for.*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *to run, hasten.*

currus -ūs, m., *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, m., *running, way.*

Curtius, -ī, m., *Curtius.*

cūstōdia, -ae, f., *custody, watch.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., *guard.*

Cybela, -ae, f., *Cybele,* a goddess worshipped by the Romans as the Great Mother of the gods.

Cyclops, -ōpis, m., *Cyclops,* a fabulous giant of Sicily.

Cyprius, -a, -um, adj., *of Cyprus, Cyprian.*

D

dabam, dabās, dabat, imperf. of **dō,** *I was giving, you were giving, he was giving.*

dabō, future of **dō,** *I shall give.*

Daedalus, -ī, m., *Daedalus.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to condemn.*

damnum, -ī, n., *harm, injury, damage.*

Danaē, -ēs, f., *Danae,* the mother of Perseus.

daps, dapis, f., *feast, banquet, meal.*

dare, inf. of **dō,** *to give.*

datum īrī, fut. pass. inf. of **dō,** *to be about to be given.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from, concerning.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to conquer, subdue.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to owe, one ought, must.*

dēbitus, -a, -um, part. **dēbeō,** *due, merited, deserved.*

decem, indcl. num. adj., *ten.*

December, -bris, m., *the month of December.*

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *to decide, determine.*

dēcerpō, -ere, -cerpsī, -cerptus, *to pluck off, gather.*

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*

dēclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to turn aside.*

dēcrētus, -a, -um, part. of **dēcernō.**

dēcurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursus, *to run down, charge, advance rapidly.*

dederant, past perf. of **dō,** *they had given.*

dedī, dedistī, dedit, perf. of **dō,** *I have given, you have given, he has given.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *to give up, surrender, deliver, yield.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead down, escort, conduct.*

dēfatīgātus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied.*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to carry* or *drive away, drive.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *exhausted, weary.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to be wanting, fail.*

dēfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *to fix, fasten, strike.*

dēfīxus, -a, -um, part. of **dēfīgō,** *fixed, astonished;* **admīrātiōne dēfīxus,** *filled with admiration.*

dēfūnctus, -a, -um, part. of **dēfungor.**

dēfungor, -ī, -fūnctus sum, *to perform, finish, die.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw down, hurl down, throw.*

deinceps, adv., *in turn, successively.*

deinde, adv., *then, thereupon.*

dēlāpsus, -a, -um, part. of **dēlābor,** *descending.*

dēlātus, -a, -um, part. of **dēferō,** *driven.*

dēlectāns, -ntis, adj., *pleasing, entertaining.*

dēlectantissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **dēlectāns,** *most (very) entertaining.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to please, delight, entertain.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to destroy.*

dēlētus (-a, -um) est, perf. pass., see **dēleō.**

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to choose, select.*

dēlīrō, -āre, *to be crazy, deranged, out of one's wits.*

Dēlos, -ī, f., *Delos,* an island in the Aegean sea.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to move away, remove, depart.*

dēmissus, -a, -um, part. of **dēmittō,** *sent down, having descended.*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send down;* pass., *to descend.*

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, *to take away.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to point out, show.*

dēnique, adv., *finally.*

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick, dense.*

dēnuō, adv., *anew, again.*

dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive away, drive.*

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to lament.*

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place down, lay down.*

dērīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *to laugh at, deride.*

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to come down, descend.*

dēscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *to define, mark off, divide.*

dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *to leave, forsake, abandon.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, part. of **dēserō,** *deserted, abandoned.*

dēsīderium, -ī, n., *desire, longing.*

dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to mark out, designate, describe.*

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus, *to leap down, dismount.*

dēsipiō, -ere, *to be silly, be foolish.*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *to leave off, cease from.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to be hopeless, despair.*

dēspōnsus, -a, -um, part. of **dēspondeō,** *promised, pledged, betrothed.*

dēstitī, perf., see **dēsistō.**

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *to be wanting, be lacking.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to prevent, hinder.*

dēterritus, -a, -um, part. of **dēterreō,** *prevented.*

dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to detain, hinder.*

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *to pull away from, pluck.*

deum, gen. pl., see **deus.**

deūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *to burn up, destroy.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.* (For the declension see Sec. 835.)

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to devour.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*

dextra, -ae, f., *the right hand.*

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana,* goddess of the forest and the chase.

dīc, imper. of **dīcō,** *say, tell.*

dīcat, pres. subj. of **dīcō,** *should say.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *to tell, say, declare.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*

didicī, perf., see **discō.**

Dīdō, -ōnis, f., *Dido,* queen of Carthage.

diē, abl. sing., see **diēs.**

diēs, diēī, m. (sometimes f.), *day, time.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *to be different, differ.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger.*

dignitās, -ātis, f., *worth, merit, greatness.*

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy, deserving.*

dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go apart, depart.*

dīgressus, -a, -um, part., see **dīgredior.**

diī, nom. pl., see **deus.**

dīligēns, -ntis, adj., *diligent, careful.*

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*

dīmicāns, -ntis, pres. part. of **dīmicō,** *fighting.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight, contend.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send apart, send away, dismiss.*

Diōrēs, -is, m., *Diores,* a companion of Aeneas.

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *to divide, break off, put away, destroy.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go away, depart from.*

discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil, learner.*

discō, -ere, didicī, *to learn.*

discordia, -ae, f., *dissension, discord.*

discordō, -āre, *to be at variance, to quarrel.*
discrīmen, -inis, n., *crisis, danger.*
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run to and fro.*
discus, -ī, m., *discus, quoit.*
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to drive apart, scatter.*
displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to displease.*
dissimilis, -e, adj., *different, unlike.*
dissimulāns, -ntis, part. of dissimulō, *disguising, concealing.*
dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disguise, conceal.*
distraheret, imperf. subj. of distrahō, *he might draw apart, separate.*
distrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractus, *to draw apart, separate.*
distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to distribute, divide.*
dītissimus, -a, -um, adj., super., see dīves.
diū, adv., *a long time.*
diūtius, adv., comp. of diū, *longer.*
dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, *to tear apart.*
dīversus, -a, -um, adj., *different, opposite.*
dīves, -itis, adj., *rich.*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *to divide.*
dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the gods, divine.*
dīvīsus, -a, -um, part. of dīvidō, *divided.*
dīvitiae, -ārum, f., *riches.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *to give, put, place, appoint.*
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *to teach, show.*
doctor, -ōris, m., *teacher.*
doctrīna, -ae, f., *teaching, doctrine.*
dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, vexation.*
dolōsē, adv., *treacherously, deceitfully.*
dolus, -ī, m., *trick, fraud.*
domī, loc., *at home.*
domicilium, -ī, n., *habitation, dwelling, abode, residence.*
domina, -ae, f., *mistress.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master, overseer.*
domus, -ūs, f., *house;* loc., domī, *at home;* acc., domum, *homeward, home.*
dōnec, conj., *until.*
dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, *to sleep.*
duae, nom. fem. of duo, *two.*
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to waver, hesitate.*
dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful;* procul dubiō, *certainly, undoubtedly;* nōn est dubium, *there is no doubt.*
duce, abl. sing., see dux.
ducentī, -ae, -a, adj., *two hundred.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead, draw, produce, conduct.*
ductūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of dūcō, *about to lead.*
dūdum, adv., *long ago;* iam dūdum, *now for some time.*
dulcēdō, -inis, f., *charm, sweetness.*
dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, agreeable.*
dum, conj., *until, while, as long as.*
duo, duae, duo, adj., *two.*
duodecim, indcl. num. adj., *twelve.*
duodecimus, -a, -um, adj., *twelfth.*

duodēvīgintī, indcl. num. adj., *eighteen.*
duōrum, gen. pl., see **duo.**
duplicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to double, enlarge, increase.*
dux, **ducis**, m., *leader.*
dūxit, perf. of **dūcō**, *he led.*

E

ē, **ex**, prep. with abl., *from, out of*; (with reference to time) *after.*
eā, abl. sing. f., see **is.**
eaedem, nom. pl. f., see **īdem.**
eadem, nom. and acc. pl. n., see **īdem.**
eam, acc. sing. f., see **is.**
eārum, gen. pl. f., see **is.**
eat, pres. subj. of **eō**, *let him (her) go, may he go.*
ēbrius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *intoxicated.*
eburneus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of ivory.*
ecquid, interrog. adv., *whether.*
ēdīcō, **-ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictus**, *to declare, appoint.*
ēdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *to give forth, utter.*
ēducō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to bring up, rear, educate.*
effēminō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to make effeminate, weaken.*
efferō, **-ferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātus**, *to bring out, publish, raise, exalt.*
efficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *to effect, accomplish, do.*
effrēnātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unrestrained.*
effugiō, **-ere**, **-fūgī**, **-fugitūrus**, *to flee away, escape.*
egēns, **-ntis**, adj., *poor, needy.*
egestās, **-ātis**, f., *poverty.*
ēgī, perf., see **agō.**
ego, **meī**, per. pro., *I.*
ēgredior, **-ī**, **-gressus sum**, *to go out, disembark.*
ēgregius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *excellent, illustrious.*
eius, gen. sing., see **is.**
ēlātus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **efferō**, *raised.*
elementum, **-ī**, n., *element, rudiment, principle.*
ēligō, **-ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctus**, *to choose, select.*
ēlūdō, **-ere**, **-sī**, **-sus**, *to delude, deceive, make sport of, mock.*
ēmicō, **-āre**, **-micuī**, *to spring forth, dart forward.*
ēmittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *to send forth, throw, hurl.*
emō, **-ere**, **ēmī**, **ēmptus**, *to buy, purchase.*
enim, conj., *for.*
eō, **īre**, **īvī** or **iī**, **itus**, *to go.*
eō, abl. sing. m. and n., see **is.**
eō, adv., *to this place, thither.*
eōrum, gen. pl. m. and n., see **is.**
eōs, acc. pl. m., see **is.**
Ēpīrus, **-ī**, f., *Epirus*, a province in the northwest of Greece.
epistula, **-ae**, f., *letter, epistle.*
epulae, **-ārum**, f., *feast, banquet.*
eques, **-itis**, m., *horseman, knight*; pl., *cavalry.*
equidem, adv., *verily, truly, indeed.*
equus, **-ī**, m., *horse*
eram, **erās**, **erat**, imperf. of **sum**, *I was, you were, he was.*
ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*
ēripiō, **-ere**, **-ripuī**, **-reptus**, *to snatch away, take away.*

erō, eris, erit, fut. of **sum,** *I shall be, you will be, he will be.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, *to wander, err, be mistaken.*

error, -ōris, m., *wandering.*

ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to break forth, rush forth.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *eruption, a breaking forth.*

Esquilīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Esquiline,* the Esquiline hill in Rome.

esse, inf. of **sum,** *to be.*

esset, imperf. subj. of **sum,** *he (she, it) might be.*

este, imperative of **sum,** *be ye.*

et, conj., *and;* after comparatives sometimes, *than;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam, adv., *even.*

Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria,* a country in Italy.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., *the Etruscans.*

Etrūscus, -a, -um, adj., *Etruscan.*

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

eum, acc. sing. m., see **is.**

eundem, acc. sing. m., see **īdem.**

Euryalus, -ī, m., *Euryalus,* a companion of Aeneas.

Eurylochus, -ī, m., *Eurylochus,* a companion of Ulysses.

ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *to escape.*

ēvānēscō, -ere, -vānuī, *to vanish away, disappear.*

ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come out, happen, result.*

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out, call away, summon.*

ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of.*

exanimātus, -a, -um, part. of **exanimō,** *overcome, lifeless.*

exārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsus, *to be inflamed, be furious.*

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to receive, welcome.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to arouse.*

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out.*

exclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *to shut out, remove, hatch.*

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to think out, contrive.*

excūdō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *to forge, mold.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, precedent.*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go forth, go out.*

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*

exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, *to drink, drain.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little.*

exīre, pres. inf., see **exeō.**

exīrent, imperf. subj. of **exeō,** *they should go forth;* **ut exīrent,** *to go forth.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to think, suppose, believe.*

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive out, banish.*

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, *to find out.*

expers, -tis, adj., *having no part in, free from, without.*

expertus, -a, -um, part. of **experior,** *having made trial, having put to the test.*

expleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to fill, complete, finish.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to examine, explore.*

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to put forth, set on shore, land, explain.*
exposcō, -ere, -poposcī, *to ask, request, demand.*
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to capture, take by storm.*
expulsus, -a, -um, part. of **expellō,** *driven out, banished.*
exsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *to pursue, follow.*
exsilium, -ī, n., *exile.*
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to expect.*
exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to breathe out, expire.*
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, *to put out, quench, extinguish.*
exsul, -ulis, m. and f., *an exile.*
exsultāns, -ntis, part. of **exsultō,** *exulting, rejoicing.*
extemplō, adv., *immediately.*
exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to frighten.*
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of.*
extrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *to draw out, release.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *most remote, most distant.*
exuō, -ere, exuī, exūtus, *to put off, take off.*
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *to burn up, destroy.*

F

faber, fabrī, m., *smith, carpenter.*
fābula, -ae, f., *story.*
fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to frame, construct, build.*
faceret, imperf. subj. of **faciō,** *should make;* **nē . . . faceret,** *not to make.*
faciēmus, fut., see **faciō.**
faciendum, acc. gerund of **faciō,** *doing.*
faciēs, -ēī, f., *form, face.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
facile, neuter of **facilis,** *easy.*
facilis, -e, adj., *easy.*
facinus, -oris, n., *deed, action, misdeed, crime.*
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *to make, do.*
factum, -ī, n., *deed, action.*
factus, -a, -um, part. of **faciō,** *made, done, accomplished.*
facultās, -ātis, f., *means, opportunity.*
falsus, -a, -um, adj., *false, untrue.*
falx, falcis, f., *sickle.*
fāma, -ae, f., *report, fame.*
famēs, -is, f., *hunger.*
fascis, -is, m., *a bundle, bundle of rods, sticks of wood.*
fastīdium, -ī, n., *aversion, distaste, fastidiousness.*
fātum, -ī, n., *destiny, fate.*
Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus, a shepherd.*
Februārius, -ī, m., *the month of February.*
fēcī, perf. see **faciō.**
fēlēs, -is, f., *cat.*
fēlīciter, adv., *fortunately, luckily.*
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
fera, -ae, f., *wild beast.*
ferant, pres. subj. of **ferō,** *they should bring, carry.*
ferē, adv., *almost.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, endure, bring, carry, report, say.*

ferōcior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp., of **ferōx**, *more fierce.*

ferōciter, adv., *fiercely, cruelly.*

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., *fierce, savage, cruel, warlike, bold.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword, weapon, arms.*

fert, pres. indic. of **ferō**, *he (she, it) brings.*

fertur, pres. indic. pass. of **ferō**, *he (she, it) is said, reported.*

fessus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, tired, weak.*

fēstus, -a, -um, adj., *festive, festal.*

fīat, -fīant, pres. subj. of **fīō**, *may become, be done* or *committed.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, faith, confidence, belief.*

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful.*

fierī, pres. inf. of **fīō**, *to be done.*

fierent, imperf. subj. of **fīō**, *they might be* or *were done, committed.*

figō, -ere, **fīxī**, **fixus**, *to fix, fasten.*

figūra, -ae, f., *form, shape, figure.*

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*

fingō, -ere, **finxī**, **fictus**, *to form, fashion, mould, make up.*

finiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to finish, end.*

fīnis, -is, m., *limit, end;* pl., *territory.*

fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., *neighbors.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*

finxisse, perf. inf. act. of **fingō**, *to have invented, made up.*

fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, (pass. of **faciō**), *to be made, be done, become.*

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to strengthen, encourage.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong.*

fit, third per. of **fīō**, *he (she, it) becomes.*

fīte, imper. of **fīō**, *be made, become.*

fīxī, perf., see **figō**.

Flaccus, -ī, m., *Flaccus*, the father of the poet Horace.

flagrāns, -ntis, adj., *burning.*

flamma, -ae, f., *flame, fire.*

flāvus, -a, -um, adj., *yellow.*

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus**, *to weep.*

flōs, **flōris**, m., *flower.*

flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*

fluō, -ere, **flūxī**, **flūxus**, *to flow.*

foculus, -ī, m., *fire-pan, brazier.*

foedus, -eris, n., *compact, treaty.*

foedus, -a, -um, adj., *shameful, disgraceful.*

folium, -ī, n., *leaf.*

fōns, **fontis**, m., *fountain, source.*

forās, adv., *out of doors, abroad.*

forceps, -ipis, m. and f., *a pair of tongs.*

fore, fut. inf. of **sum**, for **futūrum esse.**

foris, -is, or **forēs**, **forum**, f., *door.*

forīs, adv., *out of doors, outside.*

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape, beauty.*

formīdō, -inis, f., *fear, terror, dread.*

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj., *beautiful, handsome.*

fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*

forte, adv., *by chance.*

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong.*

fortissimē, adv., super. of **fortiter**, *most bravely, very bravely.*

fortissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **fortis,** *bravest, very brave.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely.*

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery, courage.*

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, good fortune, misfortune.*

Fortūna, -ae, f., *the goddess of Fortune.*

forum, -ī, n., *forum, market-place; the Forum* at Rome, the principal place for holding public meetings.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench.*

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus, *to cherish, brood over, keep warm.*

fragilis, -e, adj., *fragile, frail.*

fragor, -ōris, m., *crash, noise.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *to break.*

frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*

fraudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to cheat, defraud of.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, fraud, treachery.*

fremitus, -ūs, m., *roaring, noise.*

frēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to restrain, govern.*

frēnum, -ī, n., *bit* for a horse's bridle.

fretum, -ī, n., *strait.*

frīgus, -oris, n., *cold.*

frōns, frontis, f., *brow, front, façade.*

fruar, pres. subj. of **fruor,** *I may enjoy.*

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to provide grain, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *to enjoy, delight in.*

frūstrā, adv., *to no purpose, in vain.*

frūstum, -ī, n., *a piece, bit, scrap.*

fūdī, perf., see **fundō.**

fueram, fuerās, past perf. of **sum,** *I had been, you had been.*

fuerō, fueris, fuerit, fut. perf. of **sum,** *I shall have been,* etc.

Fūfetius, -ī, m., *Fufetius,* leader of the Albans.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight, retreat.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus, *to flee, retreat.*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to put to flight, repel.*

fuī, fuistī, fuit, perf. of **sum,** *I have been, you have been,* etc.

fuisse, perf. inf. of **sum,** *to have been.*

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, *to shine, glitter, flash, gleam.*

fulvus, -a, -um, adj., *yellow.*

fūnctus, -a, -um, part., see **fungor.**

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour, scatter, overcome, rout.*

fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *to perform, discharge.*

furor, -ōris, m., *madness, fury.*

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of **sum,** *about to be.*

futūrus (-a, -um) esse, fut. act. inf. of **sum,** *to be about to be.*

G

Gāius, -ī, m., *Caius.*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallī, -ōrum, m., *the Gauls.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic, belonging to Gaul.*

gallīna, -ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul,* an inhabitant of Gaul.

Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne river.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *to rejoice, be glad.*

gaudium, -ī, n., *joy, rejoicing, gladness.*

gelidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold.*

geminātus, -a, -um, adj., *double, repeated.*

geminī, -ōrum, m., *twins.*

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva,* a city of Gaul.

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, people.*

genus, -eris, n., *kind, race, class.*

Germānī, -ōrum, m., *the Germans.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *to bear, carry, carry on, wage, perform;* with **sē,** *to conduct one's self, behave;* **bellum gerere,** *to wage war.*

gestus, -a, -um, part. of **gerō,** *accomplished, done.*

gigās, -antis, m., *a giant.*

gladiātor, -ōris, m., *a gladiator.*

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glaeba, -ae, f., *clod, lump of earth.*

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.*

Gnaeus, -ī, m., *Gnaeus.*

Gorgō, -onis, f., *Gorgon.*

gradior, -ī, gressus sum, *to step, walk, go.*

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, stair, degree.*

Graeae, -ārum, f., *the Graeae,* sisters and guardians of the Gorgons.

Graecī, -ōrum, m., *the Greeks.*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *of Greece, Greek.*

grandis, -e, adj., *large, big, full-grown.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor;* pl., **grātiae, -ārum,** *thanks.*

grātissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **grātus,** *most pleasing, very pleasing.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable, agreeable, welcome.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, burdened, severe, great, eminent.*

graviter, adv., *severely.*

gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to steer.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to taste.*

guttur, -uris, n., *throat.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to have, hold, consider;* **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *to deliver a speech.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to have possession of, inhabit, dwell, reside, live.*

hae, nom. pl. f. of **hic,** *these.*

haec, nom. sing. f., nom. and acc. pl. n., of **hic,** *this, these.*

Hammōn, -ōnis, m., *Hammon,* an Egyptian deity.

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal,* a famous Carthaginian general.

hās, acc. pl. f. of **hic,** *these.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

haud, adv., *not.*

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, *to drink up.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetii.*

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetians,* a people of Gaul.

Helymus, -ī, m., *Helymus,* a Sicilian.

herba, -ae, f., *plant, herb.*

Hērculēs, -is, m., *Hercules.*

herī, adv., *yesterday.*

Herminius, -ī, m., *Herminius.*

Hesperidēs, -um, f., *the Hesperides,* daughters of Hesperus, guardians of a garden with golden apples.

hesternus, -a, -um, adj., *of yesterday, yesterday's.*

hic, haec, hoc, demonst. pro., *this, this of mine;* **ille . . . hic,** *the former . . . the latter.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather, tempest.*

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence;* **hinc . . . hinc,** *on this side . . . on the other side.*

Hippomenēs, -ae, acc., **-ēn,** m., *Hippomenes,* the youth who conquered Atalanta in a race.

hīs, dat. and abl. pl., see **hic.**

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

hoc, nom. and acc. sing. n. of **hic,** *this.*

hōc, abl. sing. m. and n. of **hic,** *this.*

hodiē, adv., *today.*

hodiernus, -a, -um, adj., *of today, today's.*

Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer,* a famous poet of Greece.

homō, -inis, m., *a human being, man;* pl. *people.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, office, preferment.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

Horātius, Horātī, m., (1) *Horace,* the poet; (2) pl., *the Horatii,* the three brothers who fought against the Curiatii; (3) *Horatius,* the Roman who defended the bridge across the Tiber.

horribilis, -e, adj., *terrible, dreadful.*

horror, -ōris, m., *trembling, terror, dread, horror.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to urge, encourage.*

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*

hospes, -itis, m., *host, guest.*

hospitium, -ī, n., *hospitality.*

Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Hostilius, Tullus Hostilius,* a king of Rome.

hostis, -is, m., *enemy.*

Hostius, -ī, m., *Hostius.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.*

huius, gen. sing., see **hic.**

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to man, human.*

humī, loc. of **humus,** *on the ground.*

humilis, -e, adj., *low, humble.*

humus, -ī, f., *the ground;* loc., **humī,** *on the ground.*

hunc, acc. sing. m., see **hic.**

I

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, *to lie, lie prostrate.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *to hurl, throw.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to throw out, display, boast.*

iam, adv., *now, already;* iam dūdum, *now for some time.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *Mount Janiculum* at Rome.

iānua, -ae, f., *door.*

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus, the temple of Janus.*

Iānuārius, -ī, m., *the month of January.*

ībam, ībās, ībat, etc., imperf. of eō, *I was going,* etc.

ibi, adv., *there.*

ībō, ībis, ībit, etc., fut. of eō, *I shall go,* etc.

Īcarus, -ī, m., *Icarus,* the son of Daedalus.

īcō, -ere, īcī, ictus, *to make* or *strike* a treaty or league.

ictus, -ūs, m., *stroke, blow.*

id, nom. and acc. sing. n., see is.

īdem, eadem, idem, demonst. pro., *the same;* īdem . . . quī, *the same . . . as.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, convenient.*

Īdūs, -uum, f., *the Ides,* the fifteenth day of the month in March, May, July, and October; in other months the thirteenth.

iēcī, perf., see iaciō.

ierō, ieris, etc., fut. perf. of eō, *I shall have gone,* etc.

igitur, conj., *therefore, then, accordingly.*

ignārus, -a, -um, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *inactive, idle.*

ignifer, -era, -erum, adj., *fire-bearing, fiery.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *not to know, to be ignorant.*

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, *to pardon.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

iīs, dat. and abl. pl., see is.

Īlias, -adis, f., *the Iliad,* the epic poem of Homer describing the Trojan war.

ille, illa, illud, demonst. pro., *that; he, she, it;* ille . . . hic, *the former . . . the latter.*

illī, dat. sing. and nom. pl. m., see ille.

illō, abl. sing. m. and n., see ille.

illud, nom. and acc. sing. n. of ille, *that.*

illūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make light, make clear, illumine, light up.*

imāgō, -inis, f., *likeness, image, statue, picture.*

imbecillus, -a, -um, adj., *weak, feeble.*

imbellis, -e, adj., *cowardly.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain.*

immānitās, -ātis, f., *cruelty, barbarity.*

immātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *untimely, unseasonable.*

immemor, -oris, adj., *unmindful, negligent, forgetful.*

immēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, immense.*

imminēns, -ntis, part. of immineō, *near.*

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send in, admit.*

immortālis, -e, adj., *immortal.*

impār, -paris, adj., *unequal, not a match for.*

impavidus, -a, -um, adj., *fearless.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to hinder.*

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive on, impel, incite.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general, emperor.*

imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order.*

imperītus, -a, -um, adj., *ignorant, unskilled, inexperienced.*

imperium, -ī, n., *dominion, power, supremacy.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to rule over, command, demand.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to accomplish, get, obtain.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, violence, fury.*

impiē, adv., *wickedly, impiously.*

impiger, -gra, -grum, adj., *active, energetic, diligent.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, impious, unpatriotic.*

impluvium, -ī, n., *the impluvium,* the open court of a Roman house or the basin in it to receive the rain-water.

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to lay upon, impose.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring in, import.*

in, prep. with acc., *to, into, upon, against, among;* with abl., *in, on.*

inaugurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to practice augury, foretell, divine.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, *to set fire to, burn.*

incēnsus, -a, -um, part. of **incendō**, *set on fire, burning.*

incertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*

incidō, -ere, -cidī, *to fall into, fall upon, happen, coincide with.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to incite, arouse.*

inclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call out, invoke.*

inclitus, -a, -um, adj., *celebrated, famous, renowned.*

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to shut up in, confine.*

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, *to inhabit, dwell, live.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed.*

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to make a noise, clash, upbraid, blame.*

incrēscēns, -ntis, pres. part. of **incrēscō**, *growing, increasing.*

incrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, *to grow, increase.*

incubō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to lie in* or *upon, to sit upon, brood over.*

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *to lean upon, to exert one's self.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, invasion.*

inde, adv., *thence, from that place, thereafter, after that time.*

index, -dicis, m., *index, sign, indication.*

indīcī, pres. pass. inf. of **indīcō**, *to be proclaimed.*

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *to declare, publish, announce.*

indignātiō, -ōnis, f., *displeasure, indignation, wrath.*

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead into, bring into, introduce.*

inductus, -a, -um, part., see **indūcō**.

induō, -ere, **induī**, **indūtus**, *to put on.*

ineō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, *to go into, enter.*

inermis, -e, adj., *without arms, unarmed, defenseless.*

īnfāns, -ntis, m. and f., *infant.*

īnfectus, -a, -um, adj., *not done, not accomplished.*

īnfēlīx, -īcis, adj., *unfortunate, unlucky.*

īnferior, -ōris, comp. of **īnferus**, *lower, too low.*

īnfernus, -a, -um, adj., *lower, belonging to the lower regions, infernal.*

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus, *to bring upon, make.*

īnferus, -a, -um, adj., *low, lower;* **Mare Īnferum**, *the Lower* or *Tyrrhenian Sea.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., *disturbed, hostile, dangerous.*

īnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to stain, dye.*

īnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, *to flow into.*

īnfrā, adv., *below, beneath.*

īnfūsus, -a, -um, part. of **īnfundō**, *poured over* or *upon.*

ingenium, -ī, n., *nature, temper, character.*

ingēns, -ntis, adj., *great.*

ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go in, enter, begin.*

ingressus, -a, -um, part. of **ingredior**, *having entered.*

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw* or *put on.*

inimīcus, -ī, m., *enemy, a private enemy.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile.*

inīquus, -a, -um, adj., *unequal, unfair, unfriendly.*

initium, -ī, n., *beginning.*

iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injury.*

iniussū, m., abl. only, *without the command of, without consent.*

iniūstus, -a, -um, adj., *unjust.*

innūptus, -a, -um, adj., *unmarried.*

inopia, -ae, f., *want, need, lack, poverty.*

inquit, defective verb, *he (she) says, said;* **inquiunt**, *they say.*

inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *to laugh at.*

inrītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to incite, provoke.*

inrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to break into, rush into.*

inruō, -ere, -ruī, *to rush in.*

insānia, -ae, f., *madness, insanity.*

īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *to inscribe, dedicate.*

īnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *to follow up, pursue.*

īnsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *to sit upon.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush, artifice, plot.*

īnsigne, -is, n., *mark, sign.*

īnsolenter, adv., *immoderately, insolently, arrogantly.*

īnsolentius, adv., comp. of **īnsolenter**, *too* or *somewhat arrogantly.*

īnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to look at, look into.*

īnstāns, -ntis, adj., *insisting, urgent.*

īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to establish, appoint, determine.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *habit, custom.*

īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *to approach, threaten, urge, insist upon.*

īnstrūctus, -a, -um, part. of īnstruō, *drawn up in battle array.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*

intāctus, -a, -um, adj., *untouched, unharmed.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, entire, unhurt;* **dē integrō,** *anew.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to observe, understand, know.*

intentus, -a, -um, adj., *attentive.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

interdiū, adv., *in the daytime.*

interdum, adv., *sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *in the meantime.*

interfēcisse, perf. act. inf. of interficiō, *to have killed.*

interfectus, -a, -um, part. of interficiō, *killed, slain.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to kill, slay.*

interim, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *to kill, destroy.*

īnterior, -ius, adj., comp., *inner, interior.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to leave off;* passive, *to intervene, pass.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask, inquire.*

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to break up, break off, destroy.*

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come between, interrupt, intervene, happen, occur.*

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go into, enter.*

introitus, -ūs, m., *entrance.*

intulī, perf., see īnferō.

inultus, -a, -um, adj., *unpunished, unavenged.*

inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless, unserviceable.*

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *to rush in, fall upon, assault, take possession of.*

invectus, -a, -um, part., see invehō.

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *to carry to* or *into.*

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come upon, find.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to invite.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling.*

invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call upon, appeal to, implore.*

Iovī, dat., see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. pro., *himself, herself, itself.*

ipsī, ipsae, ipsa, nom. pl. of ipse, *themselves.*

īra, -ae, f., *wrath, anger, rage.*

īrātus, -a, -um, adj., *angered, in anger, angry.*

is, ea, id, demonst. pro., *this, that, he, she, it.*

īsdem, dat. and abl. pl., see īdem.

iste, ista, istud, demonst. pro., *that, that of yours.*

istī, istae, ista, nom. pl. of iste, *those.*

ita, adv., *thus, so, in this manner.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, conj., *therefore, accordingly.*

iter, itineris, n., *route, way, passage, march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time, once more.*

Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca,* an island in the Ionian sea, the home of Ulysses.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *to order, command.*

iūdex, -icis, m., *judge.*

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, height, summit, ridge.*

Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia.*

Iūlius, -ī, m., *Julius; the month of July.*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to join, make* (by joining).

Iūnius, -ī, m., *Junius,* a Roman name; *the month of June.*

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., *Juno,* the goddess Juno.

Iuppiter, Iovis, Iovī, m., *Jupiter,* the supreme deity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura mountains.*

iūris-cōnsultus, -ī, m., *lawyer.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right, obligation, a court of justice, trial.*

iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandī, n., *oath.*

iussī, iussistī, iussit, perf. indic., see iubeō.

iussus, -ūs, m., *order, command.*

iussus, -a, -um, part., see iubeō.

iūstē, adv., *rightly, justly, duly.*

iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice.*

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., *just, upright, righteous;* iūstī, **-ōrum,** m., *the just.*

iuvenca, -ae, f., *heifer.*

iuvenis, -is, m., *young man, youth.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to help, assist, aid.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *the Kalends,* the first day of the month.

L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius.

labāns, -ntis, part. of labō, *wavering, hesitating.*

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, labor.*

lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, *to fall, slip, fall down.*

labōriōsus, -a, -um, adj., *laborious, difficult.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to toil, labor, work.*

lāc, lactis, n., *milk.*

lacerta, -ae, f., *lizzard.*

lacertus, -ī, m., *arm.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to weep, weep for.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

laedantur, pres. subj. of laedō, *they may be injured.*

laedō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *to wound, injure, damage, hurt.*

laetissimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of laetus, *most happy, very happy.*

laetitia, -ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *glad, happy.*
laeva, -ae, f., *left hand.*
laevus, -a, -um, adj., *left, on the left hand.*
lāmenta, -ōrum, n., *lamentation, weeping.*
lapideus, -a, -um, adj., *of stone.*
lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
laqueus, -ī, m., *noose, snare, fetters.*
Larcius, -ī, m., *Larcius.*
lārdum, -ī, n., *bacon, lard.*
Lārentia, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia,* the wife of Faustulus.
Lārissa, -ae, f., *Larissa,* a city of Thessaly.
Lārs, Lārtis, m., *Lars Porsena,* a king of Clusium.
lassitūdō, -inis, f., *weariness.*
lātē, adv., *widely, extensively.*
lateō, -ēre, latuī, *to be hidden, be concealed.*
Latīnē, adv., *in Latin.*
Latīnī, -ōrum, m., *the people of Latium, the Latins.*
Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus,* king of Latium.
Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Latin.*
lātitūdō, -inis, f., *width, extent.*
Latium, -ī, n., *Latium,* the region of Italy in which Rome is situated.
latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*
latus, -eris, n., *side.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad.*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to praise.*
Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lavinia,* daughter of Latinus and wife of Aeneas.
Lāvīnium, -ī, n., *Lavinium,* a city of Latium founded by Aeneas.
lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus, *to wash, bathe.*
lebēs, -ētis, m., *kettle, cauldron.*
lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
lēgī, lēgistī, lēgit, perf. of legō, *I have read.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to gather, choose, read.*
Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva.*
lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle.*
lēniter, adv., *gently.*
leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*
lētālis, -e, adj., *deadly, fatal.*
levātus, -a, -um, part. of levō, *raised up.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *laws, terms, conditions.*
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
liber, librī, m., *book.*
līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.*
līberāliter, adv., *courteously, generously.*
līberātus, -a, -um, part. of līberō, *liberated, released.*
līberī, -ōrum, m., *children.*
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to set free, liberate, release.*
lībertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*
Libya, -ae, f., *Libya, Africa.*
licet, -ēre, licuit, impersonal, *it is permitted, one may.*
līctor, -ōris, m., *lictor,* an attendant to a magistrate.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj., *of wood, wooden.*
lignum, -ī, n., *wood, firewood;* pl., *pieces of wood.*

līmen, -inis, n., *threshold, entrance.*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*
liquidus, -a, -um, adj., *liquid.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore, seashore.*
Līvius, -ī, m., *Livy,* a Roman historian.
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to put, place, arrange.*
locuplēs, -ētis, adj., *rich, wealthy, well-supplied.*
locus, -ī, m., *place;* **locī, -ōrum,** *topics;* **loca, -ōrum,** n., *places.*
longē, adv., *far.*
longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *long continued, lingering.*
longissimē, adv., *very far.*
longitūdō, -inis, f., *length.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.*
loquitur, *he (she) speaks.*
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, say, express.*
lōtus, -ī, f., *the lotus,* the fruit of the lotus.
Lucerēs, -ium, m., *the Luceres,* one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.
lūcerna, -ae, f., *lamp.*
lūcidē, adv., *clearly.*
Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*
Lucrētius, -ī, m., *Lucretius,* a Roman name.
lucrum, -ī, n., *gain, profit.*
luctāns, -ntis, part. of **luctor,** *struggling, contending.*
luctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to struggle, contend.*
lūcus, -ī, m., *grove.*
lūdēns, -ntis, part. of **lūdō,** *playing.*
lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *to play.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *play, sport, game.*
lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *to mourn, lament.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*
lupa, -ae, f., *a she-wolf.*
lupus, -ī, m., *a wolf.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.*
Lȳdia, -ae, f., *Lydia,* a country in Asia Minor.
Lȳdius, -a, -um, adj., *of Lydia.*

M

māchina, -ae, f., *an engine.*
Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas,* a friend of Augustus and Horace.
maerēns, -ntis, part. of **maereō,** *sorrowing, mourning.*
magicus, -a, -um, adj., *magic.*
magis, adv., *more, rather.*
magister, -trī, m., *master, teacher.*
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *office, magistrate.*
magnificē, adv., *magnificently, sumptuously.*
magnificentia, -ae, f., *grandeur, magnificence.*
magnificus, -a, -um, adj., *sumptuous, splendid.*
magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness.*
magnopere, adv., *greatly.*
magnus, -a, -um, adj., *large.*
maior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** adj., comp. of **magnus,** *larger;* **maiōrēs, -um,** m., *forefathers, ancestors.*
Māius, -ī, m., *the month of May.*
male, adv., *badly, hardly, unwisely.*
maleficium, -ī, n., *mischief, evil.*
maleficus, -a, -um, adj., *evil-doing, wicked.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *to be more willing, to prefer.*

malum, -ī, n., *evil, mischief.*
mālus, -ī, m., *mast.*
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil, wicked.*
mandātum, -ī, n., *order, commission, command, bidding.*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *to remain.*
manibus, dat. and abl. pl., see **manus.**
manū, abl. sing., see **manus.**
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, force, band.*
manūs, nom. and acc. pl., see **manus.**
manuum, gen. pl., see **manus.**
Mārcius, -ī, m., *Marcius, Ancus Marcius,* a king of Rome.
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus,* a Roman name.
mare, maris, n., *sea.*
marmor, -oris, n., *marble.*
Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars,* the god of war; *war, battle.*
Mārtius, -ī, m., *the month of March.*
māssa, -ae, f., *lump, mass.*
māter, -tris, f., *mother.*
māteria, -ae, f., *material, occasion, cause, opportunity.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage.*
Matrona, -ae, m., the river *Marne.*
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hasten.*
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, mature.*
maximē, adv., super. of **magis,** *most, very much, greatly, very.*
maximus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **magnus,** *largest, greatest.*
Maximus, -ī, m., *Maximus,* a Roman name.
mē, acc. and abl., see **ego.**
meātus, -ūs, m., *path, motion.*
medicāmentum, -ī, n., *drug.*
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, middle of, in the midst, moderate;* **mediā aestāte,** *in midsummer.*
Medūsa, -ae, f., the Gorgon *Medusa,* whose head turned anyone looking at it to stone.
melior, -ius, gen., **-ōris,** adj., comp. of **bonus,** *better.*
melius, adv., comp. of **bene,** *better.*
membrum, -ī, n., *member.*
mementō, imper. of **meminī,** *remember.*
meminī, defective, *I remember.*
memor, -oris, adj., *mindful.*
memorā, imper. of **memorō,** *tell.*
memorābilis, -e, adj., *memorable, worthy of mention.*
memoria, -ae, f., *memory.*
memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring to remembrance, mention, recount, tell.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*
mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*
mentiō, -ōnis, f., *making mention, mention.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*
mercor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to buy, purchase.*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury,* messenger of the gods.
mereor, -ērī, meritus sum, *to deserve.*
mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *to plunge, immerse, sink.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of midday, noon.*
merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, the south.*
meritus, -a, -um, adj., *merited, just, deserved.*
Messāna, -ae, f., *Messina,* a city of Sicily.
mēta, -ae, f., *goal.*
Mettius, -ī, m., *Mettius.*
metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread.*
meus, -a, -um (voc. sing., m., mī), poss. pro., *my.*
micāns, -ntis, adj., *flashing, glittering.*
Midās, -ae, m., *Midas.*
migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to remove, depart.*
mihi, dat. of **ego,** *to me.*
mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.*
mīlia, -ium, n., *thousands.*
mīlitia, -ae, f., *military service.*
mīlle, indcl. num. adj., *thousand.*
minae, -ārum, f., *threats.*
Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva,* the goddess of wisdom.
minimē, adv., super. of **parum,** *least, not at all, by no means.*
minimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **parvus,** *smallest;* **minimus nātū,** *youngest.*
minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to threaten.*
minor, -us, gen., **-ōris,** adj., comp. of **parvus,** *less, smaller;* **minōrēs, -um,** m., *descendants;* **minor nātū,** *younger;* **minor capitis,** *deprived of citizenship.*
Mīnōs, -ōis, m., *Minos,* king of Crete.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to wonder.*
mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful.*
misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus, *to mix, mingle.*
miser, -era, -erum, adj., *unhappy, miserable.*
miserrimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **miser,** *most miserable, very miserable.*
mīsērunt, perf. of **mittō,** *they sent.*
mīsī, mīsistī, mīsit, perf. of **mittō,** *I have sent, I sent,* etc.
missus, -a, -um, part. of **mittō,** *sent, having been sent.*
mītis, -e, adj., *gentle, mild, tame.*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *to send, throw.*
modo, adv., *only;* **nōn modo . . . sed,** *not only . . . but.*
modus, -ī, m., *manner;* **hōc modō,** *in this manner;* **quō modō,** *in what manner? how?*
moenia, -ium, n., *walls, city walls.*
molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to make soft, soften.*
molliter, adv., *delicately, agreeably.*
mollius, adv., comp. of **molliter,** *more delicately.*
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to advise, warn.*
monīle, -is, n., *necklace.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to show, point out.*
mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster.*
monumentum, -ī, n., *memorial, monument.*
mora, -ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *to die.*

moror, -ārī, morātus sum, *to delay, stay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortālis, -e, adj., *mortal.*
mortuus, -a, -um, part. of morior, *having died, being dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner, conditions, terms;* pl., *morals, manners.*
mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, disturbance.*
mōtus, -a, -um, part. of moveō, *moved, affected.*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move, affect, disturb.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude.*
multō, abl. as adv., *much, by much.*
multum, adv., *much.*
multus, -a, -um, adj., *much;* pl., **multī**, *many persons;* **multa**, *many things.*
mūnīmentum, -ī, n., *defence, fortification, protection.*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to fortify.*
mūnus, -eris, n., *gift, reward.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*
mūsēum, -ī, n., *museum.*
mūtāte, imperative of mūtō, *change ye.*
mūtātus, -a, -um, part. of mūtō, *changed.*
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to move, change, exchange.*
mūtuus, -a, -um, adj., *mutual.*

N

nactus, perf. part., see nancīscor.
nam, conj., *for.*
namque, conj., *for.*
nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, *to meet with, find.*
nārrātus, -a, -um, part. of nārrō, *told.*
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to tell about, tell, talk about, declare.*
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *to be born.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, -ūs, m., *birth;* **maior nātū**, *elder;* **minor nātū**, *younger.*
nātus, -ī, m., *son, child.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvem, acc. of nāvis, *ship, boat.*
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *voyage.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to sail.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship, boat;* **nāvis longa**, *a war ship.*
Navius, -ī, m., *Attus Navius*, a Roman augur.
nē, adv., *not;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even* (the included word being emphatic).
nē, conj., *that not, lest, in order that not, not to;* after verbs of fearing, *that, lest.*
-ne, enclitic, sign of question, *whether.*
Neāpolis, -is, f., *Naples*, a coast town of Italy.
nec, see neque.
necesse, indcl. adj., *necessary.*
necessitās, -ātis, f., *necessity.*
necne, adv., *or not, whether or not.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to kill, slay.*
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *not to heed, to neglect.*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to say no, deny, refuse.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *occupation, business.*

nēmō, -inis, n., *nobody, no one.*
nempe, adv., *doubtless, surely.*
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune,* the god of the sea.
nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*
neque and **nec**, conj., *and not, nor;* **neque . . . neque** (**nec . . . nec**), *neither . . . nor.*
nēquīquam, adv., *to no purpose, in vain.*
Nerō, -ōnis, m., *Nero,* a Roman emperor.
nesciō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, *not to know, to be ignorant.*
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither* (of two).
nī, conj., *if not, unless.*
nīdus, -ī, m., *nest.*
nihil, indcl. noun, n., *nothing.*
nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing;* **nihilō minus**, *no less.*
nimbus, -ī, m., *cloud, storm-cloud.*
nimis, adv., *too, too much.*
nimius, -a, -um, adj., *too much, too great, excessive.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*
Nīsus, -ī, m., *Nisus,* a companion of Aeneas.
nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, famous, noble.*
nōbilitās, -ātis, f., *nobility, the nobles.*
nōbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to make known, render famous.*
nōbīs, dat. and abl. pl., see **ego.**
noctū, adv., *by night.*
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the night, at night.*
nōlī, imper. of **nōlō**, *be unwilling, do not.*
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *not to be willing, to be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to, name, call.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
Nōnae, -ārum, f., *the Nones,* the seventh day of the month in March, May, July, and October; in other months the fifth.
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōnne, *not?* sign of question expecting the answer *yes.*
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some,* (pl.) *several.*
nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth.*
nōs, nom. and acc. pl., see **ego.**
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *to become acquainted with, know.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pro., *our.*
nōtus, -a, -um, part. of **nōscō**, *known.*
novācula, -ae, f., *razor.*
novem, indcl. num. adj., *nine.*
November, -bris, m., *the month of November.*
nōverat, past. perf. of **nōscō**, *he had learned, knew.*
novitās, -ātis, f., *novelty, strangeness.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.*
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *to veil, be married to, wed, marry.*
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, naked.*
nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *no, not any.*

num, sign of question expecting the answer *no;* in indirect questions, *whether.*

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius,* a king of Rome.

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to count, reckon.*

numerus, -ī, m., *number.*

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor,* a king of Alba Longa.

Numitōrī, dat., **Numitōris,** gen., see **Numitor.**

nummus, -ī, m., *a piece of money, a coin.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to announce, report.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūptus, -a, -um, part., see **nūbō.**

nusquam, adv., *nowhere.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to offer, present, expose.*

obiectus, -a, -um, part. of **obiciō,** *offered, presented.*

obiūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to blame, rebuke, reprove.*

oblātus, part., see **offerō.**

oblītus, -a, -um, part. of **oblīviscor,** *forgetful, unmindful.*

oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *to forget, be forgetful, be unmindful.*

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *to bury, cover.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to implore, entreat.*

obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, surety.*

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *to besiege.*

obstrepō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *to cry out against, abuse.*

obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *to stop up, block up.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to call upon.*

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *to hold, possess.*

obtruncō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to slay, kill.*

obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet;* **obviam factus,** *having met.*

obvius, -a, -um, adj., *in the way;* **obvius esse,** *to meet.*

occasiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, chance.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, going down, setting.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to strike down, kill.*

occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *to fall, die.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to seize, lay hold of, take possession of.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run to meet, fall in with, oppose.*

ōceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean.*

octāvus, -a, -um, adj., *eighth.*

octō, indcl. num. adj., *eight.*

Octōber, -bris, m., *the month of October.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, defective verb, *to hate.*

odium, -ī, n., *hatred.*

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to offend, displease.*

offēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *offensive.*
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus, *to bring to, present, produce.*
officīna, -ae, f., *workshop.*
officium, -ī, n., *duty, service, part, office.*
oleārius, -a, -um, adj., *of oil, for oil.*
ōlim, adv., *once, formerly, sometimes.*
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to let go, give up, disregard.*
omnīnō, adv., *wholly, entirely.*
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*
onus, oneris, n., *burden, load.*
opācus, -a, -um, adj., *shady.*
opera, -ae, f., *work, attention.*
operiō, -īre, operuī, opertus, *to cover.*
opertus, part. of operiō, *covered, buried.*
operuisse, perf. act. inf. of operiō, *to have covered.*
oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman, citizen.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place before, put before.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *to press down, overcome.*
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attack.*
ops, opis, f., *aid, succor, assistance, support, power.*
optimē, adv., super. of bene, *very well.*
optimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of bonus, *best.*
optiō, -ōnis, f., *choice.*
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wish, desire.*
opus, operis, n., *work, labor, need;* opus est, *there is need.*
ōra, -ae, f., *shore, sea-coast.*
ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*
ōrāns, -ntis, part., see ōrō.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration, discourse.*
ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator, ambassador.*
orbis, -is, m., *circle;* orbis terrārum, *the world.*
orbus, -a, -um, adj., *bereft of parents* or *children, orphan, fatherless, childless.*
ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to set in order, arrange, appoint.*
ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus sum, *to begin, undertake.*
ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, line, rank, arrangement, class.*
Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix,* chief of the Helvetii.
oriēns, -ntis, part. of orior, *rising.*
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *to arise, rise, begin, take its origin.*
ōrnātus, part. of ōrnō, *adorned.*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to adorn, decorate.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to beg, entreat, plead.*
ortus, -a, -um, part., see orior.
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, countenance.*
ōsculum, -ī, n., *kiss.*
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to show, display.*
Ōstia, -ae, f., *Ostia,* a city at the mouth of the Tiber.
ōstium, -ī, n., *door, entrance.*
ovāns, -ntis, adj., *rejoicing, exulting, triumphant.*

Ovidius, -ī, m., *Ovid*, a Roman poet.
ovis, -is, f., *sheep*.
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg*.

P

pācātus, -a, -um, part. of **pācō**, *pacified, peaceful*.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to pacify, subdue*.
Pactōlus, -ī, m., *the Pactolus*, a river of Lydia.
paedagōgus, -ī, m., *attendant*.
paene, adv., *almost*.
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *one repents, is sorry*.
palam, adv., *openly, publicly*.
Palātīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Palatine, belonging to the Palatine*.
Palātium, -ī, n., *the Palatine hill* at Rome.
palūdāmentum, -ī, n., *military cloak, mantle*.
pālus, -ī, m., *stake*.
Panthēum, -ī, n., *the Pantheon*, a temple of Jupiter at Rome.
Papȳrus, -ī, m. and f., *the paper-reed, papyrus*.
pār, paris, adj., *like, equal to*.
parātus, -a, -um, part. of **parō**, *prepared*.
parcō, -ere, pepercī, (parsī), parsūrus, *to spare*.
parēns, -ntis, m., *parent, father*.
pareō, -ēre, paruī, *to obey, be obedient to*.
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *to bear, drop, lay, produce*.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to prepare, design, arrange*.
Paros, -ī, f., the island of *Paros*.
pars, partis, f., *part*.
Parthenōn, -ōnis, m., *The Parthenon*, the famous temple of Athene (the Roman Minerva) on the Acropolis in Athens.
Parthī, -ōrum, m., *the Parthians*.
particeps, -cipis, adj., *partaking, sharing;* subst., *a sharer*.
parumper, adv., *a little while*.
parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little*.
passūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part., see **patior**.
passus, -ūs, m., *pace;* **mīlle passūs**, *a thousand paces, a mile;* **mīlia passuum**, *thousands of paces, miles*.
passus, -a, -um, part. of **pandō**, *spreading, flowing, disheveled*.
passus est, see **patior**.
passuum, gen. pl., see **passus**.
pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd*.
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *to open*.
pateō, -ēre, patuī, *to stretch out, extend*.
pater, -tris, m., *father;* (pl.) *fathers, senators*.
paternus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to a father, a father's*.
patientia, -ae, f., *patience, endurance*.
patior, patī, passus sum, *to suffer, endure, allow, permit*.
patria, -ae, f., *fatherland, native land, native city, native country*.
paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few*.
paulō, adv., *a little, somewhat*.
paululum, adv., *a little*.
paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor, not rich, small, humble*.

pavidus, -a, -um, adj., *trembling, alarmed, frightened.*
pavor, -ōris, m., *fear, alarm.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to sin.*
pectus, pectoris, n., *breast.*
pecūnia, -ae, f., *money, wealth.*
pecus, pecoris, n., *herd, flock.*
pedes, -itis, m., *foot-soldier;* pl., peditēs, *foot-soldiers, infantry.*
peior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj., comp. of malus, *worse.*
pellendī, gen. gerund of pellō, *of driving off.*
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *to drive off, drive, impel, move.*
pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *to pay.*
Pēnelopē, -ēs, f., *Penelope,* the wife of Ulysses.
penitus, adv., *within.*
penna, -ae, f., *feather, wing.*
pepererat, past perf., see pariō.
pepulī, -istī, -it, perf., see pellō.
per, prep. with acc., *through, by, by means of, along.*
peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *to carry through, go through with, pass, describe.*
peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to roam through, traverse.*
percellō, -ere, -culī, -culsus, *to smite, cast down, strike with consternation.*
percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to feel.*
percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to ask, inquire.*
perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to destroy.*
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead through, conduct, lead.*
perductus, -a, -um, part. of perdūcō, *conducted.*
pereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to pass away, perish, die.*
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to carry through, bring through;* passive, *reach, arrive.*
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī -fectus, *to accomplish.*
perfidus, -a, -um, adj., *treacherous, faithless.*
perflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to blow through* or *over.*
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, *to break in pieces, wreck.*
perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to run away, flee for refuge.*
perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous.*
perīculum, -ī, n., *peril, danger.*
perītus, -a, -um, adj., *experienced, acquainted with, skilled.*
perlātus sum, perf. pass., see perferō.
perlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to examine, survey.*
permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to arouse, stir up.*
permūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to change, exchange.*
perpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to urge, compel, prevail upon.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *continuous;* in perpetuum, *permanently, for life.*
perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *to describe.*
Perseus, -ī, m., *Perseus,* son of Jupiter and Danae.

persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, *to discharge, pay, render, perform.*

personō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to resound.*

perstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *to bind together, seize.*

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *to persuade.*

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, *to frighten thoroughly, to terrify.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *to reach, extend.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disturb, trouble greatly.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come through, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

pessimus, -ā, -um, adj., super. of **malus,** *worst.*

pestilentia, -ae, f., *plague, pestilence.*

petītum, acc. supine of **petō,** *to seek, get, fetch.*

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī), petītus, *to seek, ask for, fetch, go to get.*

pharetra, -ae, f., *quiver.*

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj., *at Pharsalus,* a city in Thessaly where Caesar defeated Pompey.

pictūra, -ae, f., *painting, picture.*

piē, adv., *piously, dutifully.*

pila, -ae, f., *ball.*

pilleus, -ī, m., *cap.*

pinguis, -e, adj., *fat.*

Pīraeus, -ī, m., *the Piraeus,* the port of Athens.

piscātor, -ōris, m., *fisherman.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to please, be agreeable, seem good, be determined.*

placidē, adv., *calmly.*

placidus, -a, -um, adj., *quiet, calm.*

platēa, -ae, f., *piazza, a public square.*

plaustrum, -ī, n., *a wagon, cart.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*

plērumque, adv., *generally.*

plūrēs, plūra, adj., comp. of **multī,** *more.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **multus,** *most,* (pl.) *very many.*

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of **multus,** *more.*

plūs, adv., comp. of **multum,** *more.*

Plūtō, -ōnis, m., *Pluto,* the king of the lower world.

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup,* a drinking vessel.

poena, -ae, f., *punishment;* in **poenam dare,** *to punish;* **poenam dare,** *to suffer punishment.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

pollicendō, abl. gerund of **polliceor,** *by promising.*

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, *to offer, promise.*

Pollūx, -ūcis, m., *Pollux,* the brother of Castor, with whom, in the constellation Gemini, he guides sailors.

Polydectēs, -is, m., *Polydectes,* king of Seriphus.

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *Polyphemus,* the Cyclops of Sicily.

Pompēiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pompey, of Pompeii.*

Pompēiī, -ōrum, m., *Pompeii,* an ancient city of Italy destroyed by an eruption of Vesuvius.

Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey,* a Roman general.

Pompilius, -ī, m., *Pompilius, Numa Pompilius,* a king of Rome.

pōmum, -ī, n., *apple.*

pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *to place, set, depend upon, put away.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populus, -ī, m., *people.*

porcus, -ī, m., *pig, hog.*

porrēctus, -a, -um, part. of **porrigō,** *stretched out.*

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena,* king of Clusium.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, a city-gate.*

portāns, -ntis, part. of **portō,** *carrying.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to carry, bring.*

portuī, dat. of **portus,** *for a harbor.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, *to beg, demand, request.*

positus, -a, -um, part., see **pōnō.**

possum, posse, potuī, *to be able;* **possum,** *I can;* **possumus,** *we can;* **poteram,** *I could.*

post, prep. with acc., *after.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., *following, next.*

posthāc, adv., *after this.*

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *finally.*

postrīdiē, adv., *on the following day, the day after.*

postulātum, -ī, n., *demand, request.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask for, demand, request.*

potēns, -ntis, part. of **possum,** *able, strong, powerful.*

potentia, -ae, f., *power, efficacy.*

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *to become master of, acquire, gain, obtain.*

prae, prep. with acc., *before, in front of.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, -ēre, -buī, -bitus, *show, exhibit.*

praecaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautus, *to be on one's guard, beware.*

praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go before, surpass, excel.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praeda, -ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedātor, -ōris, m., *plunderer, robber.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to plunder, rob.*

praelambō, -ere, *to taste before or first.*

praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize.*

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place before, prefer.*

praesēns, -ntis, part. of **praesum,** *present, immediate.*

praeses, praesidis, m., *protector.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *defence, protection.*

praestantia, -ae, f., *superiority.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī, *to be in command of.*

praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *to prove, exhibit, manifest.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides;* adv., *past, by.*

praetereā, adv., *besides.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go past, overtake.*

praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to omit, leave out.*

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to entreat, pray, beseech.*

prehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, *to lay hold of, catch, seize.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *to press upon, bite.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price, worth, value.*

prex, precis, f., (not often in sing.), *prayer.*

Priamus, -ī, m., *Priam,* king of Troy.

prīdem, adv., *long ago, long since, long before.*

prīdiē, adv., *the day before.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first;* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **prior**, *first.*

prīnceps, -ipis, m., *chief, leader, the first* or *foremost.*

prīncipium, -ī, n., *beginning.*

prior, -us, gen., -ōris, adj., comp., *before, former, first.*

prō, prep. with abl., *for, in behalf of, before.*

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca,* a king of the Albans.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go forth, advance.*

procul, adv., *far, far off, from a distance;* **procul dubiō**, *undoubtedly.*

Proculus, -ī, m., *Proculus.*

procus, -ī, m., *suitor.*

prōdigium, -ī, n., *omen, portent, prodigy.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treason, betrayal.*

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give forth, produce, betray.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

profectus, -a, -um, part., see **proficīscor.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to bring forth, extend, produce, make known.*

proficīscor, -ī, **profectus sum**, *to set out, depart, go.*

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go forward, advance, proceed.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to prevent, hinder.*

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw away, give up.*

prōlātus, -a, -um, part., see **prōferō.**

Promētheus, -ī, m., *Prometheus,* who is said to have brought fire from heaven to earth.

prōmissus, -a, -um, part. of **prōmittō**, *promised.*

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send forth, promise.*

prōmō, -ere, **prōmpsī**, **prōmptus**, *to bring forth, produce.*

prōnus, -a, -um, adj., *bending forward, headlong.*

prope, adv., *near, near by, almost.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hasten on.*

propinquus, -ī, m., *relative, kinsman.*

propius, adv., comp. of **prope**, *nearer.*

prōpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *to set forth, publish, propose.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

propterea, adv., *on account of this.*

prōripiō, **-ere**, **-ripuī**, **-reptus**, *to snatch away;* with **sē**, *to rush out, hasten.*

Proserpina, **-ae**, f., *Proserpine,* daughter of Ceres and wife of Pluto.

prōsternō, **-ere**, **-strāvī**, **-strātus**, *to throw down, prostrate.*

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, *to be useful, benefit.*

prōvehō, **-ere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus**, *to carry forward, advance, move.*

prōvincia, **-ae**, f., *province.*

prōvocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to call out, make appeal to,*

proximum, **-ī**, n., *vicinity.*

proximus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., super. of **propior**, *nearest, next preceding* or *following, last, next.*

prūdentia, **-ae**, f., *knowledge, skill, prudence.*

pūblicē, adv., *for the state, on behalf of the state.*

pūblicus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *for the state, public;* **rēs pūblica**, *the state.*

Pūblius, **-ī**, m., *Publius.*

pudīcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *modest.*

pudor, **-ōris**, m., *shame, modesty.*

puella, **-ae**, f., *girl.*

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy, child.*

pugil, **-ilis**, m., *a boxer, pugilist.*

pugna, **-ae**, f., *fight, battle.*

pugnandī, gen. gerund of **pugnō**, *of fighting.*

pugnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to fight.*

pugnātur, *a battle is fought.*

pulcher, **-chra**, **-chrum**, adj., *beautiful.*

pulchrior, **-ōris**, comp. of **pulcher**, *more beautiful.*

pullus, **-ī**, m., *chicken.*

pulsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to strike, knock.*

pulsus, **-a**, **-um**, part., see **pellō.**

pūniendus, **-a**, **-um**, fut. pass. part. of **pūniō**, *to be punished.*

pūniō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *to punish.*

purpureus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *purple.*

putō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to think, suppose.*

Pȳrēnaeus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Pyrenaean;* **Pȳrēnaeī montēs**, *the Pyrenees.*

Q

quā, abl. sing. f., see **quī** and **quis.**

quadrāgintā, indcl. num. adj., *forty.*

quae, nom. sing. f., nom. pl. f.; nom. and acc. pl. n.; see **quī** and **quis.**

quaeque, see **quisque.**

quaerō, **-ere**, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, *to seek for, look for, inquire, ask.*

quālis, **-e**, rel. and interrog. adj., *such as, as; of what kind, what kind of a;* **tālis . . . quālis**, *such . . . as.*

quam, acc. sing. f., see **quī.**

quam, adv., *how, than;* with superlatives, *as possible.*

quamdiū, adv., *as long as.*

quamquam, conj., *although.*

quamvīs, conj., *although.*

quandō, adv., *at some time, ever;* interrog., *when.*

quantus, -a, -um, rel. and interrog. adj., *as, as great as; how great, how much;* **tantus . . . quantus**, *as great . . . as, as much . . . as.*

quārē, rel. adv., *wherefore.*

quārtus, -a, -um, adj., *fourth.*

quās, rel. pro., acc. pl. f., see **quī.**

quasi, adv., *as if, as it were.*

quatiō, -ere, quassus, *to shake.*

quattuor, indcl. num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, indcl. num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and;* sometimes *but, or.*

quem, acc. sing. m., see **quī.**

quercus, -ūs, f., *oak, oak tree.*

queror, -ī, questus sum, *to complain.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pro., *who, which, what, that, as.*

quia, conj., *because.*

quibus, dat. and abl. pl., see **quī** and **quis.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pro., *whoever, whatever.*

quid, interrog. pro., *what;* interrog. adv., *why, how.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), indef. pro., *a certain, certain, some.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, to be sure;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, quiet, cessation, relief.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, indef. pro., *any one whatever, any you will.*

quīn, conj., *but that, that, from being.*

quīndecim, indcl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīndecimvirī, -ōrum, m., *the fifteen men,* or *priests,* who had charge of the Sibylline books.

quīnque, indcl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, adj., *fifth;* **quīntus decimus**, *fifteenth.*

Quirīnālis, -e, adj., *of Quirinus, Quirinal.*

Quirīnus, -ī, m., *Quirinus,* a name of Romulus.

Quirītēs, -ium, m., *Quirites,* the Roman citizens.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pro., *who, what;* indef., *any one, any.*

quisquam, quidquam, (quicquam), indef. pro., *any one, anything, any whatever.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pro., *each, every.*

quisquis, quidquid or quicquid, indef. pro., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quodvīs), indef. pro., *any one you please, any whatever.*

quō, abl. sing. m. and n., see **quī** and **quis.**

quō, rel. and interrog. adv., *where, whither.*

quod, conj., *because.*

quod, nom. and acc. sing. n., see **quī.**

quondam, adv., *once.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

quōrum, gen. pl. m. and n., see **quī** and **quis.**

quōs, acc. pl. m., see quī and quis.
quot, indcl. adj., *how many.*
quoūsque, interrog. adv., *how long, how far.*

R

radius, -ī, m., *rod,* for marking or measuring.
Ramnēs, -ium, m., *the Ramnes,* one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.
rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.*
rapidus, -a, -um, adj., *consuming, swift, rapid.*
rapīna, -ae, f., *plundering.*
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, *to seize, hurry away.*
raptus, -a, -um, part. of rapiō, *seized.*
ratiō, -ōnis, f., *manner, method, plan.*
ratus, -a, -um, part. of reor, *thinking.*
rēbus, dat. and abl. pl., see rēs.
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take back, receive again, accept;* sē recipere, *to draw back, return.*
rēctē, adv., *rightly, well.*
rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight, direct.*
recumbō, -ere, -cubuī, *to lie down.*
recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to regain, recover.*
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to refuse, decline, be reluctant.*
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give back, return, surrender.*
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go back, return.*
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *to bring back, reduce.*
redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to renew.*
redit, see redeō.
reditus, -ūs, m., *return.*
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to bring back, restore.*
referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *to bring back, return.*
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to renew, rebuild, repair.*
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *to flee back, flee for safety.*
regerent, imperf. subj. of regō; ut regerent, *that they should direct, to direct, guide.*
rēgī, dat. sing., see rēx.
rēgia, -ae, f., *palace, royal residence.*
rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen.*
regiō, -ōnis, f., *district, region.*
rēgis, gen. sing., see rēx.
rēgius, -a, -um, adj., *royal, of the king.*
rēgnāvisse, perf. act. inf. of rēgnō, *to have reigned.*
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to reign, rule.*
rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom, royal power.*
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *to guide, conduct, direct, rule, govern.*
regredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go back, return.*
Rēgulus, -ī. m., *Regulus,* a Roman consul and general.
relātus, part., see referō.
relevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to relieve, assuage.*
religiō, -ōnis, f., *piety, a sense of duty.*

religiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *religious, conscientious.*

relinquitur, *he (she, it) is left.*

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *to leave behind, abandon, give up, leave.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining.*

remorātus, -a, -um, part. of **remoror**, *hindered, delayed.*

remōtus, -a, -um, part. of **removeō**, *removed.*

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to put away, remove.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, the brother of Romulus.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to report.*

reor, rērī, ratus sum, *to think, suppose, imagine.*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *to thrust back, reject.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *to find, find out, learn, discover.*

repertor, -ōris, m., *discoverer, inventor.*

repetō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, *to seek again, ask, demand, recover.*

repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *to fill again, refill.*

repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place back, replace, put, place, repose.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring back, get, obtain.*

repulsus, -a, -um, part., see **repellō**.

requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *to ask for, need, be in want of.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair, property;* **rēs gestae**, *deeds;* **rēs pūblica**, *the state;* **rēs repetere**, *to demand satisfaction.*

resistō, -ere, -stitī, *to halt, stand, withstand, resist.*

respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to look back, regard, be mindful.*

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, response.*

restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to put back, restore.*

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to hold back, detain, keep.*

rettulī, see **referō**.

revertisse, perf. act. inf. of **revertō**, *to have returned.*

revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to turn back, return.*

revertor, -ī, -versus sum, *to turn back, return.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēa, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine river.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the river Rhone.*

rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *to laugh, smile, laugh at.*

rigeō, -ēre, *to be hardened.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

rīxa, -ae, f., *quarrel, dispute.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak, strength.*

rogātus, -a, -um, part. of **rogō**, *asked for, requested.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask, inquire.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānī, -ōrum, m., *the Romans.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman.*
Rōmulus, -ī, *Romulus,* founder and first king of Rome.
rosa, -ae, f., *rose.*
rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*
rotundus, -a, -um, adj., *round.*
Rubicō, -ōnis, m., *the Rubicon river.*
ruīna, -ae, f., *downfall, ruin.*
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to break, break in pieces, destroy.*
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus, *to fall* (by violence).
rūpēs, -is, f., *a rock, a cliff.*
ruptus, -a, -um, part., see **rumpō.**
rūrsus, adv., *again.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country;* loc., **rūrī,** *in the country.*
rūsticus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the country, rustic, rural, country.*

S

Sabīnae, -ārum, f., *the Sabine women.*
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines.*
Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sabines, Sabine.*
saccus, -ī, m., *sack, bag.*
sacer, -cra, -crum, *consecrated, holy, sacred;* pl., *sacred things.*
sacrārium, -ī, n., *a sanctuary, shrine, sacred place.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saevus, -a, -um, adj., *severe, angry, cruel.*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*
Salius, -ī, m., *Salius,* a companion of Aeneas.
saltem, adv., *at least.*
salūbris, -e, adj., *healthful, wholesome, beneficial, healthy.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, greeting.*
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to salute.*
salveō, -ēre, *to welcome, hail;* **salvē,** *good-day, how do you do?*
Samos, -ī, f., the island of *Samos.*
sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*
sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom, understanding.*
Sardinia, -ae, f., the island of *Sardinia.*
satis, adv., *sufficiently, enough.*
Sāturnius, -a, -um, adj., *of Saturn.*
Sāturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn,* the most ancient king of Latium and the god of agriculture.
saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*
scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, vicious, accursed, guilty;* **Vīcus Scelerātus,** the street where Tullia drove over her father's body.
scelus, -eris, n., *wicked deed, crime.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, science.*
sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus, *to know, understand.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio,* a famous Roman general who conquered Hannibal.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write, enroll.*
scrīptor, -ōris, m., *writer, author.*
scrīptus, -a, -um, part. of **scrībō,** *written.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

sē, acc. and abl., see **suī**.

Sebastiānus, -a, -um, adj., *Sebastian*, named for Sebastian, a Roman soldier and Christian martyr.

secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, *to cut*.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, second, favorable*.

secūris, -is, f., *axe*.

secūtus, -a, -um, part., see **sequor**.

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdecim, indcl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *to sit, sit still, remain*.

sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, residence, dwelling-place*.

sēdulō, adv., *carefully*.

sella, -ae, f., *seat, chair*.

sēmēsus, -a, -um, adj., *half-eaten*.

semper, adv., *always*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting, perpetual*.

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age*.

senex, senis, m., *an old man*.

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, sentiment, meaning, sense*.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, know*.

septem, indcl. num. adj., *seven*.

September, -bris, m., *the month of September*.

septendecim, indcl. num. adj., *seventeen*.

septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh*.

sepulcrum, -ī, n., *sepulchre, grave*.

Sēquana, -ae, m., the river *Seine*.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., *the Sequani*, inhabitants of Gaul.

sequere, imperative of **sequor**, *follow (thou)*.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *to follow*.

Serīphus, -ī, f., *Seriphos*, an island in the Aegean Sea.

sērius, -a, -um, adj., *grave, serious, earnest*.

sermō, -ōnis, m., *conversation, discourse*.

servātus, -a, -um, part. of **servō**, *saved*.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *servitude, slavery, subjection*.

Servius, -ī, m., *Servius*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to save, protect*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*.

sescentī, -ae, -a, adj., *six hundred*.

seu, conj., *or, or if;* **seu . . . seu**, *whether . . . or*.

sex, indcl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgintā, indcl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sextus, -a, -um, adj., *sixth*.

sī, conj., *if*.

Sibylla, -ae, f., *a Sibyl, prophetess*.

Sibyllīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sibyl, Sibylline*.

sīc, adv., *thus, so, in this manner*.

siccus, -a, -um, adj., *dry*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

sīcut, adv., *just as, as*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *star, constellation*.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to show, indicate, signify*.

signum, -ī, n., *signal, sign, image*.

silentium, -ī, n., *silence*.

Sīlēnus, -ī, m., *Silenus*, the tutor of Bacchus.

silva, -ae, f., *forest*.

Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia*.

similis, -e, adj., *similar, like.*
similitūdō, -inis, f., *similarity, resemblance, likeness.*
simul, adv., *at the same time, at once;* **simul ac**, *as soon as.*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to feign, pretend.*
sine, prep. with abl., *without.*
singula, -ōrum, n., *separate pieces, parts.*
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one, separate, one on a side.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left (hand).*
sinistra, -ae, f., *left hand.*
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, *to let, allow, permit.*
sinus, -ūs, m., *bosom, arms, lap.*
sistō, -ere, stitī, status, *to stop.*
sit, pres. subj. of sum, *he (she, it) may be, is; let there be, may there be.*
sitis, -is, f., *thirst.*
situs, -ūs, m., *situation, position, site.*
situs, -a, -um, adj., *placed, situated.*
socer, socerī, m., *father-in-law.*
societās, -ātis, f., *alliance, society.*
socius, -ī, m., *companion, ally, follower.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *to be accustomed.*
sollicitus, -a, -um, adj., *troubled, disturbed.*
sōlum, adv., *alone, only.*
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to loose, loosen, spread out, set sail, depart.*
somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound.*
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, *to sound.*
sonōrus, -a, -um, adj., *noisy, roaring.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
sors, sortis, f., *lot, destiny, fate.*
sortior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *to draw lots, decide by lot.*
Sp., abbreviation for **Spurius.**
spatium, -ī, n., *room, space, distance, time.*
speciēs, -ēī, f., *appearance, shape, form.*
spectāculum, -ī, n., *spectacle, exhibition.*
spectāns, -ntis, part. of spectō as noun, *spectator.*
spectātor, -ōris, m., *spectator, beholder.*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to look, behold, spy.*
speculum, -ī, n., *mirror.*
spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave, cavern.*
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, *to scorn.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hope, expect.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*
spīrāns, -ntis, part. of **spīrō**, *breathing, lifelike.*
spīritus, -ūs, m., *air, breath, spirit, courage.*
splendidus, -a, -um, adj., *splendid, magnificent.*
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to strip, strip off, rob, plunder, spoil.*
spolium, -ī, n., *spoil, plunder, booty.*
spōnsus, -ī, m., *a betrothed man.*

sponte, defective noun, abl. f., with **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

Spurius, **-ī**, m., *Spurius.*

stabulum, **-ī**, n., *stall, stable, barn.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

statiō, **-ōnis**, f., *position, post, station.*

Stator, **-ōris**, m., *Stayer, Supporter, Defender.*

statua, **-ae**, f., *statue.*

statuō, **-ere**, **statuī**, **statūtus**, *to decide, determine.*

stella, **-ae**, f., *star.*

stimulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to stimulate, arouse.*

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statūrus**, *to stand.*

strepitus, **-ūs**, m., *noise, din.*

strictus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **stringō**, *drawn, unsheathed.*

stringō, **-ere**, **strīnxī**, **strictus**, *to draw, strip off, unsheath.*

studium, **-ī**, n., *zeal, study, pursuit, occupation.*

suādendō, ab., gerund of **suādeō**, *in advising.*

suādeō, **-ēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus**, *to advise, persuade, urge.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under, near, at the approach of, just before.*

subeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, *to go under, approach, take upon one's self, take up.*

subiectus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **subiciō**, *placed under, subdued, conquered.*

subiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *to place under.*

subigō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctus**, *to overcome, conquer.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

subitus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *sudden.*

sublātus, **-a**, **-um**, part., see **tollō**.

sublicius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *resting upon piles;* **pōns sublicius**, *the pile bridge* at Rome.

sublīmis, **-e**, adj., *high, aloft, on high.*

submergō, **-ere**, **-mersī**, **-mersus**, *to sink.*

suī (gen.), dat., **sibi**, acc. and abl., **sē** or **sēsē**, reflexive pro., *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves.*

sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *to be.*

summa, **-ae**, f., *sum, total, amount.*

summus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., super. of **superus**, *highest, the highest part of.*

sūmō, **-ere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *to take up, begin, undertake.*

super, prep. with acc., *above, over;* adv., *above.*

superātūrus (**-a**, **-um**) **esse**, fut. inf. act. of **superō**, *to be about to overcome.*

superbē, adv., *proudly, arrogantly, insolently.*

Superbus, **-ī**, *Superbus*, a name of Tarquin.

superbus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *proud, arrogant, discourteous.*

superior, **-ius**, gen., **-ōris**, adj., comp. of **superus**, *higher, superior, former, previous.*

superō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to overcome, conquer, remain, survive.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *to be over, remain, survive.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., *upper, higher, that is above.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment;* **supplicium dare,** *to suffer punishment.*

suprā, adv., *above, before, previously.*

surgēns, -ntis, part. of **surgō,** *rising.*

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, *to rise, arise, get up.*

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take up, undertake.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to look up to, mistrust, suspect.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to mistrust, suspect.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to keep back, hold up, support, withstand.*

sustulerant, past. perf., see **tollō.**

suus, -a, -um, poss. pro., *his, her, its, their.*

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus.**

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., *silent, still.*

tālāria, -ium, n. pl., *winged shoes.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv., *so, so much.*

tamen, adv., *still, nevertheless.*

tamquam, adv., *as if.*

Tanaquil, -īlis, f., *Tanaquil,* the wife of Tarquin.

tandem, adv., *at last.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*

tantum, adv., *so much, only.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much;* **tantus . . . quantus,** *as great . . . as, as much . . . as.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, tardy.*

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia,* a Roman maiden.

Tarpēius, -a, -um, adj., *Tarpeian, of Tarpeia.*

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquin,* the name of a king of Rome and his descendants.

Tatius, -ī, m., *Tatius,* a king of the Sabines, and afterwards king of Rome with Romulus.

tē, acc. and abl., see **tū.**

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover, protect.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*

temere, adv., *rashly, indiscreetly.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm, weather.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to put to the test, try, attempt.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus and **tēnsus,** *to stretch, fill* (sails), *hasten.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *to hold, have possession, keep.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back, skin;* **post tergum,** *behind.*

ternī, -ae, -a, adj., *three each, three on a side.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, ground, land.*

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *to frighten, scare, threaten.*

terrestris, -e, adj., *belonging to the earth, earthly, terrestrial.*

terribilis, -e, adj., *dreadful, terrible.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, fear, terror.*

tertiō, adv., *for the third time.*

tertium, adv., *a third time.*

tertius, -a, -um, adj., *third;* **tertius decimus,** *thirteenth.*

testāmentum, -ī, n., *will, testament.*

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to declare, assert, call to witness.*

thermae, -ārum, f., *warm baths, baths,* places for bathing.

Thēsēus, -a, -um, adj., *of Theseus.*

Thessalia, -ae, f., *Thessaly.*

Tiberim, acc., see **Tiberis.**

Tiberīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tiber;* **pater Tiberīnus,** *father Tiber.*

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber.*

Tiberius, -ī, m., *Tiberius,* a Roman emperor.

tibi, dat., see **tū.**

timeō, -ēre, timuī, *to fear, be alarmed.*

timidus, -a, -um, adj., *fearful, afraid, timid, cowardly.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*

timuisse, perf. act. inf. of **timeō,** *to have feared.*

tīnctus, -a, -um, part. of **tingō,** *dyed, colored.*

tintinnābulum, -ī, n., *bell.*

Titiēnsēs, -ium, m., *the Titienses,* one of the three centuries of knights named by Romulus.

titubō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to stagger, totter.*

Titus, -ī, m., *Titus,* a Roman name; *Titus Vespasianus Augustus,* a Roman emperor.

toga, -ae, f., *toga,* the outer garment of a Roman citizen.

tollēns, -ntis, part. of **tollō,** *raising.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *to lift up, arouse, take away, carry off.*

tonitribus, dat. and abl. pl., see **tonitrus.**

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder.*

torvus, -a, -um, adj., *stern, grim.*

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *entire, all.*

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to touch, manage, treat.*

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give up, deliver.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead across, transfer, remove.*

trahēns, -ntis, part. of **trahō,** *drawing.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *to draw, drag.*

Trāiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Trajan.*

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to cause to cross over, transfer, pass over.*

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to swim across.*

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., *tranquil, calm.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go across, go over.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to bring over, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *to pierce through, transfix.*

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *to pierce through.*
trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, *to leap over.*
trānslātūrus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of **trānsferō,** *about to transfer.*
trecentī, -ae, -a, adj., *three hundred.*
tredecim, indcl. num. adj., *thirteen.*
trepidus, -a, -um, adj., *trembling, fearful, timid.*
trēs, tria, adj., *three.*
trigeminī, -ōrum, m., *three brothers* (born at the same time).
trīgintā, indcl. num. adj., *thirty.*
trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, mournful, unhappy.*
triumphālis, -e, adj., *triumphal.*
Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy,* a city in Asia Minor.
Trōiānī, -ōrum, m., *the Trojans,* inhabitants of Troy.
tū, tuī, per. pro., *you.*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*
tubicen, -inis, m., *trumpeter.*
tuendus, -a, -um, fut. pass. part. of **tueor,** *to be defended.*
tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, *to watch, look to, defend, protect.*
tulit, perf. of **ferō,** *he bore, endured, proposed.*
Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia.*
Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius, Servius Tullius,* a king of Rome.
Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus, Tullus Hostilius,* a king of Rome.
tum, adv., *then, at that time.*
tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to make a disturbance, raise a tumult.*
tunc, adv., *then, at that time.*
turbō, -inis, m., *whirlwind, hurricane.*
turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disturb, throw into disorder, confuse.*
turma, -ae, f., *troop, squadron of horsemen.*
turpis, -e, adj., *unsightly, filthy.*
turris, -is, f., *tower.*
tūtēla, -ae, f., *protection.*
tūtor, -ōris, m., *protector, guardian.*
tūtor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to defend, protect, maintain, strengthen.*
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *protected, safe.*
tuus, -a, -um, poss. pro., *your, yours.*

U

ubi, adv. and conj., *where, when.*
Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses.*
ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any.*
ulmus, -ī, f., *the elm tree.*
ultimus, -a, -um, adj., *most distant, last.*
umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.*
umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*
ūnā, adv., *together.*
unda, -ae, f., *wave, water.*
unde, adv., *from which place, whence, on whose side.*
ūndecim, indcl. num. adj., *eleven.*
ūndecimus, -a, -um, adj., *eleventh.*
ūndēvīgintī, indcl. num. adj., *nineteen.*
undique, adv., *from all directions, from everywhere.*
ungō, -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus, *to besmear, anoint.*
unguentum, -ī, n., *ointment.*
ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *all.*

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., *one, only, alone.*
urbānus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the city, civilized.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus, *to burn, parch.*
ursa, -ae, f., *bear.*
ūsque, adv., *even, as far as.*
ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage, value.*
ut, utī, adv. and conj., *how, as, that, in order that, so that, when;* with verbs of fearing, *that not.*
ūter, ūtris, m., *skin, bottle.*
uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. adj., *which* (of two).
uterque, -traque, -trumque, adj., *each* (of two).
ūtī, pres. infin., see **ūtor.**
utī, conj., see **ut.**
ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful, profitable, expedient.*
utinam, adv., *O that, would that, I wish that.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use, employ, take advantage of, enjoy.*
utrimque, adv., *from both sides.*
utrum, adv., *whether;* **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or.*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty.*
vādō, -ere, *to go, go quickly.*
vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to roam, move about, wander.*
valēns, -ntis, part. of **valeō**, *well, in good health.*
valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, *to be strong, be well, prevail;* imper., **valē, valēte**, *farewell.*
validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, in good health.*
vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart.*
vās, vāsis, pl., **vāsa**, -ōrum, n., *vessel, dish.*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to lay waste, plunder.*
vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, immense.*
Vāticānus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Vatican.*
vehementer, adv., *earnestly, strongly, greatly.*
veheret, imperf. subj. of **vehō**; **ut veheret**, *that it should carry, to carry.*
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, *to carry, transport;* passive, *to ride, sail.*
vel, conj., *or, even;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*
velit, pres. subj. of **volō**, *would be willing.*
vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to cover up, wrap up, veil.*
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift.*
vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.*
velut, adv., *just as.*
vēnātor, -ōris, m., *hunter.*
vēnātum, acc. supine of **vēnor**, *to hunt.*
vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *to sell.*
venēnum, -ī, n., *poison.*
vēnērunt, perf. of **veniō**, *they came.*
venia, -ae f., *mercy, forgiveness, pardon.*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come, go.*
vēnisse, perf. inf. act. of veniō, *to have come.*
vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to hunt.*
venter, ventris, m., *belly.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*
Venus, Veneris, f., *Venus,* the goddess of love and beauty.
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *to fear.*
Vergilius, Vergi'lī, m., *Vergil,* a famous Roman poet.
vērō, adv., *indeed, truly.*
versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to be situated, be, be occupied.*
versus, -a, -um, part., see vertō.
versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *to turn.*
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real.*
vēscor, -ī, *to take food, eat.*
vesper, -eris, m., *the evening;* vesperī, as adv., *in the evening.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta,* the Roman goddess of the home.
vestālis, -e, adj., *of Vesta, vestal.*
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pro., *your, yours.*
vēstibulum, -ī, n., *entrance.*
vēstīgium, -ī, n., *step, footstep.*
vestis, -is, f., *clothing, covering.*
Vesuvius, -ī, m., *Vesuvius,* a mountain and volcano in Italy.
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to forbid, prohibit, prevent.*
vetus, veteris, adj., *old, veteran.*
via, -ae, f., *street, way, road, manner.*
viātor, -ōris, m., *traveler.*
vicem, in vicem, adv., *by turns, one after the other.*
vīcī, perf., see vincō.
vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*
victor, -ōris, m., *victor.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
victrix, -icis, adj., *victorious.*
victus, -ūs, m., *food.*
victus, -a, -um, part. of vincō, *conquered;* pl., *the conquered.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *street, quarter, village.*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see;* passive, *to be seen, to seem.*
vidētur, *he (she, it) is seen, seems.*
vīdī, vīdistī, vīdit, perf. indic. act. of videō, *I have seen, you have seen, he has seen.*
vīdisse, perf. inf. act. of videō, *to have seen.*
vidua, -ae, f., *widow.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *watching, a watch* (the fourth part of the night).
vīgintī, indcl. num. adj., *twenty.*
villa, -ae, f., *villa, a country house.*
vīmen, -inis, n., *twig, osier.*
Vīmināl is, -e, adj., with collis or mōns, *the Viminal hill* at Rome.
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *to bind.*
vinclum, contracted from vinculum.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *to conquer, overcome, defeat.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *bond, fetter, prison.*
vindicātus, (-a, -um) esse, perf. inf. pass. of vindicō, *to have been punished.*
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to punish, avenge, claim.*
vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

violentus, -a, -um, adj., *violent, impetuous.*
vir, virī, m., *hero, man, husband.*
virēns, -ntis, adj., *green, fresh.*
vīrēs, vīrium, pl. of **vīs,** *strength.*
virga, -ae, f., *branch, rod.*
virgō, -inis, f., *maiden.*
virgula, -ae, f., *a little branch, small rod.*
virīlis, -e, adj., *manly.*
virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manhood, valor, virtue.*
vīs, vis, f., *force, power, strength, violence.*
vīs, pres. indic. of **volō,** *you wish.*
vīta, -ae, f., *life.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to avoid, escape.*
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victus, *to live, dwell.*
vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *living, life-like;* **mē vīvō,** *while I am living.*
vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly.*
vōbīs, dat. and abl. pl. of **tū.**
vōciferor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to call out, cry out.*
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call.*
volāns, -ntis, part. of **volō,** *flying.*
Volcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan,* the god of fire.
volēbat, imperf. of **volō,** *he wished.*
volitō, -āre, -āvī, *to fly about, hasten.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fly.*
volō, velle, voluī, *to wish, desire, will.*
voltus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks.*
voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure, delight, enjoyment.*
vōs, vestrum, (**vestrī**), pl. of **tū.**
vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, promise, prayer.*
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *to vow, promise.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, speech.*
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wound.*
vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*
vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*
vult, pres. indic. of **volō,** *he wishes.*
vultis, pres. indic. of **volō,** *you* (pl.) *wish.*
vultur, -uris, m., *vulture.*
vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks, expression.*

Z

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama,* a town in Africa.
Zephyrus, -ī, m., *Zephyrus,* the west wind.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

862 This vocabulary contains the words which are needed in translating the composition exercises into Latin. Additional definitions of the Latin words and the principal parts of the verbs are given in the Latin-English vocabulary, page 473.

A

a, an, *omitted in Latin.*
able (to be), possum, posse.
about, dē *with abl.*
about to, fut. act. part.
above, *adv.*, super; *prep.*, super *with acc.;* ante *with acc.*
abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.
acceptable, grātus, -a, -um; acceptus, -a, -um.
accomplish, impetrō, -āre.
accordance (in accordance with), *abl. case.*
account (on account of), *abl. case;* ob *with acc.;* propter *with acc.;* on account of this *or* on this account, propterea.
accuse, accūsō, -āre; (*of crime*) crīminor, -ārī.
acquit, absolvō, -ere.
across, trāns *with acc.*
add to, addō, -ere; be added to, accēdō, -ere.
admit, admittō, -ere.
address, adloquor, -ī.
administer, administrō, -āre.
adorn, ōrnō, -āre; is adorned, ōrnātur; are adorned, ōrnantur.
advance, (*increase*) augeō, -ēre; (*go forth*) prōcēdō, -ere.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
advise, moneō, -ēre.
Aeneas, Aenēās, -ae, m.
affair, rēs, reī, f.; affairs of state, rēs pūblica.
affection, cāritās, -ātis, f.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.
Africanus, Āfricānus, -ī, m.
after, post *with acc.*, ex *with abl.;* after this, posthāc.
afterwards, posteā.
again, rūrsus, iterum.
against, adversus *with acc.;* in *with acc.; dat. case.*
age (old age), senectūs, -ūtis, f.; (life-time) aetās, -ātis, f.
agreeable, grātus, -a, -um.
agreement, foedus, -eris, n.; societās, -ātis, f.
Alba, Alba, -ae, f.
Alba Longa, Alba Longa, -ae, f.
Albans, Albānī, -ōrum, m.
all, omnis, -e; quisque *with superlative;* all things, omnia, -ium.
alliance, societās, -ātis, f.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f.
also, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, f.
although, cum *with subj.*
am, sum, esse.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
America, America, -ae, f.
among, apud *with acc.;* in *with acc.*
Amulius, Amūlius, -ī, m.
an, *omitted in Latin.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
Ancus, Ancus, -ī, m.
and, et, atque, ac, -que; **both . . . and,** et . . . et, cum . . . tum.
anew, dē integrō, dē novō.
angry, īrātus, -a, -um.
announce, indīcō, -ere.
another, alius, alia, aliud.
answer, respondeō, -ēre.
anxiety, cūra, -ae, f.
any one, any, anything, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod); (*emphatic*) quisquam, quidquam.
appoint, (*give*), dō, dare.
approach, appropinquō, -āre.
April, Aprīlis, -is, m.
Apulia, Apūlia, -ae, f.
are, (*they are*), sunt; **are they?** suntne? **are they not,** nōnne sunt?
arena, arēna, -ae, f.
arm, armō, -āre.
armed, armātus, -a, -um.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
arouse, incitō, -āre; stimulō, -āre.
arrange, (*prepare*) parō, -āre; (*contrive*) compōnō, -ere; **arrange with,** agō, -ere *with* cum.
arrive, adveniō, -īre.
arrogantly, īnsolenter.
art, ars, artis, f.
as (*conj.*), ut; (*rel. pro.*) quī; **as possible,** quam *with superlative, with appositive or predicate noun, no separate Latin word.*
Ascanius, Ascānius, -ī, m.
Asia, Āsia, -ae, f.
ask, (*ask for*) petō, -ere; rogō, -āre; (*question*) interrogō, -āre; (*inquire*) percontor, -ārī.
at (*place where*), in *with abl.; loc. of names of cities.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f.; **in Athens,** Athēnīs.
attack, impetus, -ūs, m.
attempt, cōnor, -ārī.
attention, opera, -ae, f.
Attus, Attus, -ī, m.
audacious, audāx, -ācis.
augur, augur, -uris, m.
augury, augurium, -ī, n.; **by augury,** auspicātō.
authority, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
Aventine, Aventīnus, -ī, m.
away, be away, absum, -esse; **is away,** abest.
axe, secūris, -is, f.

B

bacon, lārdum, -ī, n.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
ball, pila, -ae, f.
battle, proelium, -ī, n.
be, sum, esse; **be over** (*rule*), praesum, -esse.
bear (*noun*), ursa, -ae, f.
bear (*verb*), ferō, ferre; gerō, -ere.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod; **because of,** propter *with acc.; abl. of cause.*
become, fīō, fierī.
before, ante *with acc.;* (*in front of*) prae; **just before,** sub *with acc.*

beg, ōrō, -āre.
begin, coepī, coepisse; **begin battle**, proelium committō, -ere.
beginning, prīncipium, -ī, n.
believe, crēdō, -ere.
bereft, orbus, -a, -um.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
betrothed, spōnsus, -ī, m.
better (*adj.*), melior, -ius; (*adv.*), melius; **much better**, multō melius.
between, inter *with acc.*
bidding, mandātum, -ī, n.
bird, avis, -is, f.
bit (*morsel*), frūstum, -ī, n.
blame, culpō, -āre.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
book, liber, librī, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
both, ambō, ambae, ambō; **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
boundaries, fīnēs, -ium, m.
boy, puer, -erī, m.
bracelet, armilla, -ae, f.
branch, rāmus, -ī, m.
brave, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
break off, dirimō, -ere; abrumpō, -ere; **break down**, interrumpō, -ere.
breath, spīritus, -ūs, m.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bright, clārus, -a, -um.
bring, portō, -āre; **brings**, portat; **they bring**, portant; (*bear*) ferō, ferre; **bring back**, reportō, -āre; **bring through**, perferō, -ferre; **bring across**, trādūcō, -ere; **bring up**, ēducō, -āre.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, m.
build, aedificō, -āre; **build around**, circumdō, -are.
building, aedificium, -ī, n.
burn up, deūrō, -ere.
bury, obruō, -ere.
but, sed.
buy, emō, -ere.
by, ā or ab *with abl.*; per *with acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
call, vocō, -āre; (*name*) appellō, -āre; nōmino, -āre; **call upon**, invocō, -āre; **call to witness**, testor, -ārī, obtestor, -ārī; **call out**, clāmō, -āre; (*summon*) advocō, -āre.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n.
can (*be able*), possum, posse.
cap, pilleus, -ī, m.
capital, caput, -itis, n.
captive, captīvus, -ī, m.
capture, capiō, -ere.
car, currus, -ūs, m.
care for, cūrō, -āre, (*like*) amō, -āre.
carry, portō, -āre; **carry on war**, bellum, gerō, -ere.
Carthage, Carthāgo, -inis, f.
Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m.
Cassius, Cassius, -ī, m.
catch, accipiō, -ere.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, eques, -itis, m. (*generally in pl.*).
celebrated, inclitus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.
century, centuria, -ae, f.
Ceres, Cerēs, Cereris, f.

certain, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).
change, mūtō, -āre.
changed, mūtātus, -a, -um.
chief, prīnceps, -ipis, m.
children, līberī, ōrum, m. and f.
choice, optiō, -ōnis, f.
choose, dēligō, -ere; legō, -ere.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, cīvis, -is, m. and f.
city, urbs, urbis, f.; **in the city**, in urbe; (*objective*) urbem.
city (*belonging to the city*), urbānus, -a, -um.
claim, vindicō, -āre; adrogō, -āre.
clash, increpō, -āre.
clear, clārus, -a, -um.
cloak, palūdāmentum, -ī, n.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.; **storm-cloud**, nimbus, -ī, m.
Clusium, of, belonging to, Clūsīnus, -a, -um.
cold, gelidus, -a, -um.
column, columna, -ae, f.
come, veniō, īre; **he came**, vēnit.
command, imperō, -āre; iubeō, -ēre; **be in command of**, praesum, -esse *with dat.*
commanded, iussus, -a, -um.
committed, be (*of crime*), fīō, fierī.
common, commūnis, -e.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, f.
companion, socius, -ī, m.; comes, -itis, m.
complain of, culpō, -āre; queror, -ī.
conceal, cēlō, -āre; (*disguise*) dissimulō, -āre.
concerning, dē *with abl.*
condemn, condemnō, -āre.
condition, (*lot*) sors, sortis, f.; (*terms*) condiciō, -ōnis, f.; lēx, lēgis, f.
conduct (*escort*), dēdūcō, -ere; (*carry on*) gerō, -ere; agō, -ere.
connect, coniungō, -ere; adiungō, -ere.
conquer, vincō, -ere.
conquered, victus, -a, -um.
consent, without the consent of, iniussū.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
consult, cōnsulō, -ere.
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, f.; (*contrasted with city*) agrī, agrōrum, m.; rūs, rūris, n.; **in the country**, rūrī.
country (*adj.*), agrestis, -e; rūsticus, -a, -um.
cover, operiō, -īre; vēlō, -āre.
cowardly, imbellis, -e.
crazy, be, dēlīrō, -āre.
crime, facinus, -oris, n.
cross over, superō, -āre.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e; atrōx, -ōcis.
cry out, vōciferor, -ārī; **cry out against**, obstrepō, -ere.
Cures, Curēs, -ium, m.
Curiatius, Cūriātius, -ī, m.
custody, cūstōdia, -ae, f.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, secō, -āre; **cut down**, caedō, -ere.
Cybele, Cybela, -ae, f.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
daring, audāx, -ācis; ferōx, -ōcis.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.
dawn, prīma lūx.
day, diēs, diēī, m. and f.; **by day**, diē.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.
dear, cārus, -a, -um; dearer, cārior, -ōris.
death, mors, mortis, f.
declare, indīcō, -ere.
deed, factum, -ī, n.; wicked deed, facinus, -oris, n.
defeat, superō, -āre; vincō, -ere, fundō, -ere.
defend, dēfendō, -ere.
defraud, fraudō, -āre.
demand, exposcō, -ere.
depend upon, *pass. of* pōnō, -ere.
descend, *pass. of* dēmittō, -ere.
descending, dēlāpsus, -a, -um.
desire, cupīdō, -inis, f.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre; (*break up*) interrumpō, -ere.
destroyed, dēlētus, -a, -um.
detain, retineō, -ēre.
Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.
Dido, Dīdō, Dīdōnis, f.
die, morior, morī; dēfungor, -ī.
different, dissimilis, -e; alius, alia, aliud.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
discharge (*pay*), persolvō, -ere.
discord, discordia, -ae, f.
disease, morbus, -ī, m.
dishevelled, passus, -a, -um.
disturb, turbō, -āre.
disturbance, make, tumultuor, -ārī.
divide, dīvidō, -ere.
divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um.
do, faciō, -ere; agō, -ere; how do you do? quid agitur? do not, nōlī *with infin.*; *in questions*, nōnne?
dog, canis, -is, m.
doors, out of, forās.
draw, trahō, -ere.
dreadful, foedus, -a, -um.
drive off, pellō, -ere.
duty, officium, -ī, n.
dwelling, domicilium, -ī, n.

E

each, (*of two*) uterque, utraque, utrumque; (*every*) quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque); each . . . other, alter . . . alter.
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
earth, of, terrestris, -e.
easy, facilis, -e.
elect, creō, -āre.
else (*other*), alius, alia, aliud.
employ, adhibeō, -ēre.
enemy, (*public*) hostis, -is, m.; (*private*) inimīcus, -ī, m.
enjoy, fruor, -ī.
enroll, cōnscrībō, -ere; scrībō, -ere.
enter, introeō, -īre; ingredior, -ī.
entrance, vēstibulum, -ī, n.
entreat, ōrō, -āre.
entreaty, prex, precis, f.
equal, pār, paris.
Etruria, Etrūria, -ae, f.
even, etiam; even if, etsī.
every, omnis, -e; everything, omnia, -ium.
excellent, ēgregius, -a, -um.
except, nisi.
exchange, permūtō, -āre.
exile, exsul, -ulis, m.
expedient, ūtilis, -e.
extend, prōferō, -ferre.

F

fall (*downfall*), ruīna, -ae, f.
fall, cadō, -ere; fall into, incidō, -ere.
famous, clārus, -a, -um; inclitus, a, -um.
far, longē; very far, longissimē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
Faustulus, Faustulus, -ī, m.
fear, metus, -ūs, m.; terror, -ōris, m.; timor, -ōris, m.
fear, timeō, -ēre; (*he, she*) fears, timet; (*he, she, it*) is feared, timētur; (*they*) fear, timent.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fierce, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.
fight, pugna, -ae, f.
fight, contendō, -ere; pugnō, -āre; a fight took place, pugnātum est.
fighting, pugnāns, -ntis; fighting-men, pugnantēs, -ium, m.
fill, expleō, -ēre; compleō, ēre.
finally, dēnique.
find, inveniō, -īre.
finger, digitus, -ī, m.
finish, fīniō, -īre.
first, prīmus, -a, -um; at first, prīmō.
five, quīnque.
Flaccus, Flaccus, -ī, m.
flash, micō, -āre.
flee, fugiō, -ere.
flow into, īnfluō, -ere.
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
follow, sequor, -ī.
food, cibus, -ī, m.; daps, dapis, f.
for, ad *with acc.;* prō *with abl.;* dē *with abl.; dat. case;* (*conj.*), nam, namque; *abl. of price.*
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget, oblīvīscor, -ī.
former, superior, -ōris; the former . . . the latter, ille . . . hic.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forty-three, quadrāgintā trēs.
forum, forum, -ī, n.
found, condō, -ere.
free, līber, -era, -erum; free from, expers, -tis.
freedom, lībertās, -ātis, f.
freeman, līber, līberī, m.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
frightened, pavidus, -a, -um.
from, ā *or* ab *with abl.;* (*out of*) ē *or* ex *with abl.;* down from, dē *with abl.*
Fufetius, Fūfetius, -ī, m.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
fury, impetus, -ūs, m.

G

game, lūdus, -ī, m.
garden, hortus, -ī, m.
garland, corōna, -ae, f.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
gentle, mītis, -e.
gift, dōnum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare; (*he*) gives, dat.; (*they*) give, dant; give back, reddō -ere.
glad, laetus, -a, -um.
gladly, libenter.
gleam, fulgeō, -ēre.
glory, glōria, -ae, f.
go, eō, -īre; veniō, -īre; proficīscor, -ī; go forth, exeō, -īre; go

to, adeō, -īre; go to fetch, petō, -ere.
god, deus, -ī, m.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
gold, aurum, -ī, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um; good men, bonī, -ōrum, m.; good things, bona, -ōrum, n.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.
grandfather, avus, -ī, m.
grandson, nepōs, -ōtis, m.
great, magnus, -a, -um; greater, maior, -ius; greatest, maximus, -a, -um; so great, tantus, -a, -um.
greedy, avidus, -a, -um.
Greeks, Graecī, -ōrum, m.
grow (*increase*), crēscō, -ere; grow to manhood, adolēscō, -ere.
guard, cūstōs, -ōdis, m.
guardian, tūtor, -ōris, m.

H

hair, crīnis, -is, m.
hand, manus, -ūs, f.; right hand, dextra, -ae, f.; left hand, laeva, -ae, f.; sinistra, -ae, f.
happy, beātus, -a, -um; laetus, -a, -um.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, difficilis, -e.
have, habeō, -ēre; (*he*) has, habet; (*they*) have, habent; (*he*) had, habēbat.
head, caput, -itis, n.
healthy, salūbris, -e; validus, -a, -um.
hear, audiō, -īre.
heat, calor, -ōris, m.
heavenly (*of heaven*), caelestis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, f.
here, hīc.
high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um; higher, altior, altius; highest, altissimus, -a, -um.
himself, ipse; (*reflex.*) suī.
hinder, impediō, -īre.
hole, cavum, -ī, n.
home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī; homeward, domum; from home, domō.
honor, honor, -ōris, m.
hope (*noun*), spēs, speī, f.
hope (*verb*), spērō, -āre.
Horace, Horātius, -ī, m.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, m.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
host, hospes, -itis, m.
hostile, īnfestus, -a, -um.
Hostilius, Hostīlius, -ī, m.
Hostius, Hostius, -ī, m.
house, *pl. of* aedēs, -is, f.; domus, -ūs, f.
how, quid, quam; how great, how much, quantus, -a, -um; how many, quot.
human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
humble, pauper, -eris; humilis, -e.
hundred, centum.
hunt, vēnor, -ārī.
hurry away, rapiō, -ere.
husband, vir, virī, m.

I

I, ego, meī.
if, sī; even if, etsī.
image, imāgō, -inis, f.
imitation, aemulātiō, -ōnis, f.
immediately, statim.
immortal, immortālis, -e.

in, in *with abl; locative case of names of towns.*
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. and f.
injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
into, in *with acc.*
invade, incursiōnem faciō, -ere.
invasion, incursiō, -ōnis, f.
is, est; is? estne? is not? nōnne est? is away, ab-est.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, f.

J

Janiculum, Iāniculum, -ī, n.
join, cōnserō, -ere; iungō, -ere; coniungō, -ere.
judge, iūdex, -icis, m.
Juno, Iūnō, -ōnis, f.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
justice, aequitās, -ātis, f.; iūs, iūris, n.; iūstitia, -ae, f.

K

keep, teneō, -ēre; habeō, -ēre; cōnservō, -āre; keep away, arceō, -ēre.
kill, caedō, -ere; interficiō, -ere; occīdō, -ere.
kind, genus, -eris, n.
kind (*what kind of*), quālis, -e.
kindly, benignē.
kindness, beneficium, -ī, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.
knight, eques, -itis, m.
know, sciō, -īre; intellegō, -ere; not to know, nesciō, -īre.

L

labor, labōrō, -āre.
lack, be lacking, dēsum, -esse.
land, terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
Larentia, Lārentia, -ae, f.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
larger, maior, maius.
largest, maximus, -a, -um.
Lars, Lārs, Lārtis, m.
last, proximus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um; in Latin, Latīnē; the Latins, Latīnī, -ōrum, m.
Latinus, Latīnus, -ī, m.
laugh at, inrīdeō, -ēre.
Lavinia, Lāvīnia, -ae, f.
law, lēx, lēgis, f.; iūs, iūris, n.
lay down, dēpōnō, -ere.
lead, dūcō, -ere.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leap down, dēsiliō, -īre.
learn, discō, -ere.
learned, cōnsultus, -a, -um; very learned, cōnsultissimus, -a, -um.
leave, relinquō, -ere.
let, *subj. mood.*
letter, epistula, -ae, f.
life, vīta, -ae, f.; life-time, aetās, -ātis, f.; for life, in perpetuum.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.
light up, illūstrō, -āre.
like, amō, -āre; do you like? amāsne? does he like? amatne?
lingering, longinquus, -a, -um.
lion, leō, -ōnis, m.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vīvō, -ere; (*dwell*) habitō, -āre; (*pass life*) aetātem agō, -ere.
Livy, Līvius, -ī, m.
lizzard, lacerta, -ae, f.

long, longus, -a, -um; long time, diū, multum; longer, diūtius; longest, diūtissimē.
look at, spectō, -āre.
lose, āmittō, -ere.
love (*noun*), amor, -ōris, m.
love (*verb*), amō, -āre; (*he, she*) loves, amat; (*they*) love, amant; (*he, she, it*) is loved, amātur; (*they*) are loved, amantur; do they love? amantne?
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, m.

M

maiden, virgō, -inis, f.
make, faciō, -ere; cōnficiō, -ere; (*by joining*) iungō, -ere; (*a treaty*) īcō, -ere; (*elect*) creō, -āre.
man, (*human being*) homō, -inis, m.; (*hero*) vir, virī, m.; old man, senex, senis, m.; young man, iuvenis, -is, m.
manage, administrō, -āre.
manner, modus, -ī, m.
many, multī, -ae, -a; how many, quot; very many, plūrimī, -ae, -a.
March, Mārtius, -ī, m.
Marcius, Mārcius, -ī, m.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, m.
master, (*of slaves*) dominus, -ī, m.; (*teacher*) magister, -trī, m.
may, *expressed by pres. subj.*; may there be, sit.
me, mē; to me, mihi.
meet, sē obviam ferre.
men, (*people*) hominēs, -um, m.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.
midnight, media nox; at midnight, mediā nocte.
might, (*verb*) *expressed by imperf. subj.*; (*he, she, it*) might be, esset.
mile, mīlle passūs; *pl.*, mīlia passuum.
military service, mīlitia, -ae, f.
mind, mēns, mentis, f.; animus, -ī, m.
mindful, memor, -oris.
mine, meus, -a, -um.
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, f.
mock, ēlūdō, -ere.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
morals, *pl. of* mōs, mōris, m.
more, magis; plūrēs, plūra; *comparative degree.*
most, maximē; *superlative degree.*
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mount, mountain, mōns, montis, m.
mouse, mūs, mūris, m.
mouth, ōs, ōris, n.
move, moveō, -ēre.
movement, mōtus, -ūs, m.
much, multum; by much, multō; very much, maximē; too much, nimis; how much, quantus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.
murder, obtruncō, -āre; interficiō, -ere; (*assassinate*) cōnfodiō, -ere.
my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
native country, or city, patria, -ae, f.

nature, (*disposition*) ingenium, -ī, n.
near, imminēns, -ntis; proximus, -a, -um.
near, be, adsum, -esse.
neighboring, vīcīnus, -a, -um; fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m.
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum; **neither side,** neutrī, -trae, -tra; **neither . . . nor,** neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, f.; **at night,** noctū; **by night,** noctū.
no, nūllus, -a, -um; **no less,** nihilō minus.
not, nōn, haud; (*with imper. and subj. of desire*) nē; (*in questions*) nōnne.
not to wish, nōlō, nōlle.
nothing, nihil; nihilum, -ī, n.
now, (*at this time*) nunc; (*already*) iam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
number, numerus, -ī, m.
Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, m.

O

O that, utinam.
oath, iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandī, n.
obey, pareō, -ēre.
obligation, iūs, iūris, n.
obtain, petō, -ere; potior, -īrī.
occasion, māteria, -ae, f.
of, *gen. case;* ex *with abl.*
often, saepe.
old, vetus, -eris.
omen (*bird*), avis, -is, f.
on, in *with abl.;* (*of time*) *abl. case;* **on this side . . . on that,** hinc . . . hinc.
once, quondam, ōlim; **at once,** statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; (*of two*) alter, -era, -erum; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter; **one . . . another,** alius . . . alius; **on one side . . . on the other,** hinc . . . hinc.
oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, n.
order, iubeō, -ēre.
orphan, orbus, -a, -um.
Ostia, Ōstia, -ae, f.
other, alius, alia, aliud; (*of two*) alter -era, -erum; (*remaining*) reliquus, -a, -um.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ē *or* ex *with abl.*
outside, extrā *with acc.*
over, super *with acc.*
own (*his, her, its*), suus, -a, -um.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.
palace, rēgia, -ae, f.
Palatine, Palātium, -ī, n.
panic-stricken, cōnsternātus, -a, -um.
parent, parēns, -ntis, m.
part, pars, partis, f.
pass, (*time or life*), aetātem agō, -ere.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -ī, m.; hominēs, -um, m.; **common people,** plēbs, plēbis, f.
perform, fungor, -ī.

permit, sinō, -ere; patior, -ī.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre.
pestilence, pestilentia, -ae, f.
picture, pictūra, -ae, f.
piety, religiō, -ōnis, f.
place, condō, -ere; pōnō, -ere; repōnō, -ere; place before, praepōnō, -ere.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
play, lūdō, -ere.
please, dēlectō, -āre; be pleasing, placeō, -ēre; if you please, sī vīs.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, f.
Pluto, Plūtō, -ōnis, m.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
Pompilius, Pompilius, -ī, m.
poor, imbecillus, -a, -um.
Porsena, Porsena, -ae, m.
portent, prōdigium, -ī, n.
power, ops, opis, f.; royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.; supreme power, imperium, -ī, n.
powerful, potēns, -ntis.
praise, laudō, -āre; (*he, she*) praises, laudat; (*they*) praise, laudant; (*he, she, it*) is praised, laudātur; (*they*) are praised, laudantur.
prayer, prex, precis, f.; vōtum, -ī, n.
prepare, parō, -āre.
prevail, valeō, -ēre.
prey, praeda, -ae, f.
price, pretium, -ī, n.
priests, quīndecimvirī, -ōrum, m.
prison, carcer, -eris, m.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.
Proca, Proca, -ae, m.
Proculus, Proculus, -ī, m.
promise, polliceor, -ērī.
propitious, be, addīcō, -ere.
Proserpine, Proserpina, -ae, f.
protect, cūrō, -āre; tueor, -ērī.
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
Publius, Pūblius, -ī, m.
punishment, supplicium, -ī, n., poena, -ae, f.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
put, dō, dare; put away, dirimō, -ere.

Q

quarrel, discordia, -ae, f.
questions, *introduced by* -ne, nōnne, num.
quickly, celeriter; very quickly, celerrimē.

R

raise, tollō, -ere.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, n.
rather . . . than, magis . . . quam.
razor, novācula, -ae, f.
read, legō, -ere.
recall, revocō, -āre
receive, accipiō, -ere.
recognize, agnōscō, -ere.
recover, repetō, -ere.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
reign (*noun*), rēgnum, -ī, n.
reign (*verb*), rēgnō, -āre.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre.
release, līberō, -āre.
released, līberātus, -a, -um.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remember, meminī, meminisse; (*be mindful of*) memor sum, esse.

remove, (*go*) commigrō, -āre; (*take off*) auferō, -ferre.
Remus, Remus, -ī, m.
renew, redintegrō, -āre.
renown, glōria, -ae, f.
renowned, inclitus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.
reply, respondeō, -ēre.
report (*noun*), fāma, -ae, f.
report (*verb*), nūntiō, -āre.
resist, resistō, -ere.
resolve, cōnstituō, -ere.
rest, quiēs, -ētis, f.
retreat, fuga, -ae, f.
return, redeō, -īre; revertō, -ere; revertor, -ī.
reward, pretium, -ī, n.; mūnus, -eris, n.
rich, dīves, -itis; locuplēs, -ētis.
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, f.
right, iūs, iūris, n.
ring, ānulus, -ī, m.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
robber, praedātor, -ōris, m.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, m.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f; **in Rome,** Rōmae; **to Rome,** Rōmam.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.
rule (*noun*), imperium, -ī, n.; rēgnum, -ī, n.
rule (*verb*), regō, -ere; **rule over,** imperō, -āre.
rush together, concurrō, -ere.

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, m.; **Sabine women,** Sabīnae, -ārum, f.
sacred place, sacrārium, -ī, n.
sad, trīstis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
salute, salūtō, -āre.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre.
saw, *imperf. or perf. of* videō, -ēre.
say, dīcō, -ere; **he says, said** (*direct quotations*), inquit; **it is said,** fertur; **say not** (*deny*), negō, -āre.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
see, videō, -ēre; (*he, she*) **sees,** videt; (*they*) **see,** vident; (*he, she, it*) **is seen,** vidētur; (*they*) **are seen,** videntur.
seek, quaerō, -ere; petō, -ere.
seem, *passive of* videō, -ēre.
seize, rapiō, -ere.
seized, raptus, -a, -um.
select, legō, -ere; ēligō, -ere.
self (himself, herself, itself), ipse, ipsa, ipsum; suī.
sell, vēndō, -ere.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
senate-house, cūria, -ae, f.
senator, senātor, -ōris, m.
send, mittō, -ere; **send down,** dēmittō, -ere; **send greeting,** salūtem dīcō, -ere.
Servius, Servius, -ī, m.
set, pōnō, -ere; **set forth,** expōnō, -ere; **set free,** līberō, -āre.
setting, occāsus, -ūs, m.
seven, septem.
shameful, foedus, -a, -um.
sheep, ovis, -is, f.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, m.
shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
shore, ōra, -ae, f.

shoulder, umerus, -ī, m.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show, mōnstrō, -āre.
Sibylline, Sibyllīnus, -a, -um.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
side, (**on the side of**) ab; **on one side . . . on the other**, ab . . . ab; hinc . . . hinc.
signal, signum, -ī, n.
silence, silentium, -ī, n.
silver, argentum, -ī, n.
Silvia, Silvia, -ae, f.
since (*because*), cum *with subj.*
sing, canō, -ere.
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
six, sex.
sky, caelum, -ī, n.; **in the sky**, in caelō.
slave, servus, -ī, m.
slay, caedō, -ere; obtruncō, -āre; interficiō, -ere.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, ita; **so that**, ut; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, -itis, m.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī; **some . . . the others**, alterī . . . alterī.
some one, something, aliquis, aliquid (aliquod).
somewhat, aliquantus, -a, -um.
son, fīlius, -ī, m.
song, carmen, -inis, n.
soon, mox; **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.
space, spatium, -ī, n.
speak, dīcō, -ere; loquor, -ī.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
spectacle, spectāculum, -ī, n.
spectators, spectantēs, -ium, m.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; (*voice*) vōx, vōcis, f.
spirit, animus, -ī, m.
spoil, spolium, -ī, n.
sport, lūdus, -ī, m.
star, stella, -ae, f.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.; **affairs of state**, rēs pūblica.
statue, statua, -ae, f.
stop, sistō, -ere.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
street, via, viae, f.
strength, vīs, vis, f.
strengthen, fīrmō, -āre; tūtor, -ārī.
strong, validus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō.
suitable, aptus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
summon, ēvocō, -āre.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m; **sunset**, occāsus sōlis.
Superbus, Superbus, -ī, m.
supremacy, imperium, -ī, n.
survive, supersum, -esse.
swim across, trānō, -āre.
sword, gladius, -ī, m.; ferrum, -ī, n.

T

take, capiō, -ere; sūmō, -ere; **take away**, dēmō, -ere; **take place**, accidō, -ere; **take up**, subeō, -īre; tollō, -ere; **take off**, auferō, -ferre.
Tanaquil, Tanaquil, -īlis, f.
Tarpeia, Tarpēia, -ae, f.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, m.
Tatius, Tatius, -ī, m.
teacher, magister, -trī, m.
tear, lacrima, -ae, f.

tell, dīcō, -ere; nārrō, -āre; memorō, -āre; (*order*) iubeō, -ēre.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, m.; ager, agrī, m.
than, quam; *abl. case.*
that, is, ea, id; **that of yours,** iste, ista, istud; **that yonder,** ille, illa, illud.
that, ut; (*with verbs of fearing*) nē.
that not, nē; (*with verbs of fearing*) ut.
that . . . there, quō.
that, O that, utinam.
the, *omitted in Latin.*
their, eōrum; suus, -a, -um.
then, tum.
there, ibi, eō; **from there,** unde.
there is, est; **there are,** sunt.
therefore, itaque.
they, m., iī, illī; f., eae, illae; n., ea, illa.
thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.
thing, rēs, reī, f.
think, arbitror, -ārī; exīstimō, -āre; putō, -āre; reor, rērī.
thirty, trīgintā; **thirty-one,** trīgintā ūnus; **thirty-two,** trīgintā duō; **thirty-seven,** septem et trīgintā, trīgintā septem.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id; **on this side. . . on that,** hinc . . . hinc.
those, m., iī, illī; f., eae, illae; n., ea, illa.
thousand, mīlle; **thousands,** mīlia, -ium, n.
three, trēs, tria; **three brothers,** trigeminī, -ōrum, m.; **three on a side,** ternī, -ae, -a.
throw, mittō, -ere; iaciō, -ere; (*hurl*) dēiciō, -ere.
thus, sīc.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, m.
time, tempus, -oris, n.; **long time,** diū.
to, ad *with acc.*; *indirect object; dat. case;* (*denoting purpose*) ut *with subj.; acc. of supine.*
today, hodiē.
tomorrow, crās.
top of, summus, -a, -um.
touch, tangō, -ere.
towards, ad *or* in *with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
transfer, trānsferō, -ferre; trādūcō, -ere.
treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.
treaty, foedus, -eris, n.; societās, -ātis, f.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
trial (*in law*), iūs, iūris, n.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.
true, vērus, -a, -um; **haud falsus,** -a, -um.
try, cōnor, -ārī.
Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.
Tullius, Tullius, -ī, m.
Tullus, Tullus, -ī, m.
turn, convertō, -ere.
turn, in turn, in vicem.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
twin sons, geminī, -ōrum, m.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

undertake, sūmō, -ere.
unfaithful, perfidus, -a, -um.
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um.

unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unharmed, intāctus, -a, -um; incolumis, -e.
uninjured, integer, -gra, -grum.
unjust, iniūstus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
upbraid, increpō, -āre.
urge, īnstō, -āre.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
Vergil, Vergilius, -ī, m.
very, maximē; *expressed by the superlative;* **very far,** longissimē; **very different,** longē aliud.
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
violence, vīs, vis, f.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.
vow, voveō, -ēre.
voyage, nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f.
vulture, vultur, -uris, m.

W

wage (*war*), gerō, -ere.
wall, mūrus, -ī, m.
wandering, error, -ōris, m.
want, volō, velle.
war, bellum, -ī, n.; arma, -ōrum, n.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um; ferōx, -ōcis.
was, *imperf. or perf. of* sum; **he was,** erat, fuit.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way, via, -ae, f.; (*manner*) modus, -ī, m.
we, nōs, nostrum (nostrī).
weak, fessus, -a, -um; imbecillus, -a, -um.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
weep, fleō, -ēre; lacrimō, -āre.
welcome, accipiō, -ere.
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
well, bene, rēctē.
were, *imperf. or perf. of* sum; **they were,** erant, fuērunt.
what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).
when, ubi, cum.
whence, unde.
where, ubi, quō.
whether, num.
whetstone, cōs, cōtis, f.
which, see **who.**
while, dum.
who, which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; *acc. sing.*, quem, quam, quod; *nom. pl.*, quī, quae, quae; *acc. pl.*, quōs, quās, quae.
who (*interrog.*), quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).
why, cūr, quid.
wickedness, scelus, -eris, n.
widow, vidua, -ae, f.
wife, coniūnx, -iugis, f.; uxor, -ōris, f.
wild beast, bēstia, -ae, f.; fera, -ae, f.
win over, conciliō, -āre.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wish, volō, velle; (*he*) **wishes,** vult; (*he*) **wished,** volēbat; (*they*) **wished,** volēbant; **not to wish,** nōlō, nōlle.
with, cum *with abl.; abl. without prep.*

without, sine *with abl.;* **without consent,** iniussū.
withstand, resistō, -ere; sustineō, -ēre.
wolf, lupus, -ī, m.; **she-wolf,** lupa, -ae, f.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.; **old woman,** anus, -ūs, f.
wooden, ligneus, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, f.
work, labōrō, -āre.
world, orbis terrārum.
worse, peior, -ius.
worst, pessimus, -a, -um.
wound, vulnerō, -āre.
wrath, īra, -ae, f.
wreath, corōna, -ae, f.
write, scrībo, -ere.
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, m.
written, scrīptus, -a, -um.
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
yesterday, herī.
you, tū, tuī; *acc. sing.,* tē; *nom. and acc. pl.,* vōs.
young man, iuvenis, -is, m.
your, yours, *sing.,* tuus, -a, -um; *pl.,* vester, -tra, -trum.
youth, iuvenis, -is, m.; adolēscēns, -ntis, m.

INDEX

References are to section numbers.

ā or **ab** with ablative denoting agent, 151.

Ablative case, 25; absolute, 476, 488; accompaniment, 177; agent, 151; cause, 376; comparatives, 549; degree of difference, 550; deponent verbs, 614; manner, 513; means or instrument, 30; origin, 758; place in which, 164; place from which, 165; price, 770; quality, 771; separation, 551; specification, 526; supine, 602, (2); time, 176.

-ābus, ending in dative and ablative plural, 25; 51, *b*.

Accent, 9, 829; genitive of nouns in **-ium**, 84, *b;* genitive and vocative of nouns in **-ius**, 74, *b*.

Accompaniment denoted by the ablative with **cum**, 177.

Accusative case, 14; direct object, 20; duration of time, 457; extent in space, 350; place to which, 163; subject of infinitive, 311; indirect discourse, 767; supine, 602; two accusatives, 188.

ācer, declension, 328, 838.

Active voice, 210; personal endings, 58.

Adjectives, agreement, 103; as nouns, 440; comparison, 542, 547, 839; declension: first and second declensions, 97, 100, 101, 102, 836; genitive in **-īus**, 339, 349; third declension, 316, 327, 328, 838; denoting a part, 574; English derivatives, 427; formation, 426; position, 50; with dative, 104.

Adverbs, 579; comparison, 579, 584, 841; formation, 579, 583, 841; use, 585.

Aenēās, declension, 835.

Agent denoted by ablative with passive verbs, 151; denoted by dative with passive periphrastic conjugation, 745.

Agreement, adjectives, 103; appositives, 118; demonstrative pronouns, 456; predicate nouns and adjectives, 75; relative pronouns, 471; verbs, 62.

aliquis, (aliquī), declension, 848; meaning, 751.

alius, 339; declension, 349, *b;* **alius . . . alius, aliī . . . aliī**, 339.

Alphabet, 3, 4, 823.

altē, formation and comparison, 841.

alter, declension, 349, 837; **alter . . . alter, alterī . . . alterī**, 339.

altior, declension, 548, 840.

altus, comparison, 547, 839.

amāns, declension, 329, 838.

ambō, declension, 347, *a*.

amīcus, declension, 74, 831.

amō, conjugation, 852–854.

Answers to questions, 537, *a*. (3)

antīquus, comparison, 547.

Apposition, 118.

Article, lacking, 3.
Arrangement of words, 50.
Attraction, verb in clause depending upon a subjunctive, 791.
audācter, formation and comparison, 584, 841.
audāx, declension, 327, 838.
audeō, semi-deponent, 612, *b*.
audiō, conjugation, 852–854.

Base and stem, 51, *a*.
bene, formation and comparison, 579, 841.
bonus, comparison, 573, 839; declension, 100, 836.

capiō, conjugation, 856.
caput, declension, 162, 832.
Cardinal numerals, 339, 842.
Case, 13; nominative and accusative, 14; genitive and ablative, 25; dative and vocative, 35; locative, 46.
Case-endings, first declension, 14, 51; second, 74, 84; third, 156, 162; fourth, 493, 498; fifth, 518, 525.
Causal clauses with **cum**, 693.
Cause, ablative of, 376.
celeriter, formation and comparison, 841.
clārus, comparison, 547.
Commands, expressed by the imperative, 333; by the subjunctive, 702; negative commands, 623.
Comparative, ablative with, 549; declension, 548, 840; meaning *too* or *rather*, 563; **quam** with the comparative, 542, 549, *a*.
Comparison of adjectives, 542, 839; regular, 547; irregular, 568; **magis** and **maximē**, 547, *a*; superlatives in **-limus** and **-rimus**, 556, 562.
Comparison of adverbs, 579, 584, 841.
Completed action, tenses denoting, 355, 634, (1).
Compound words, formation, 797.
Concessive clauses with **cum**, 693.
Conditional sentences, 708; first class, 714; second class, 715; third class, 716.
Conjugation, characteristics of the four conjugations, 124; regular verbs, 852–854; irregular verbs, 857, 858; **capiō**, 856; **sum**, 849; **possum**, 857; **vocō**, 850, 851; deponents, 859. See also the names of the tenses.
Conjunctions, 281.
cōnor, deponent verb, 859.
Consecutive clauses with the subjunctive, 657.
Consonants, sounds of, 826.
cōnsul, declension, 175, 832.
cornū, declension, 498, 833.
cum, conjunction, 685; causal and concessive clauses, 693; temporal clauses, 691, 692.
cum, preposition with ablative, 177; enclitic with personal pronouns, 436, *c*; enclitic with relative pronoun, 469, *a*.

Dative case, 35; agent with passive periphrastic conjugation, 745; indirect object, 39; possession, 377; purpose, [illegible], with adjectives, 104; with compound verbs, 266; with verbs meaning believe, help,

please, etc., 717; with verbs of separation, 334.
dea, ending in -ābus in dative and ablative plural, 25, 51, *b*.
Declension of adjectives, first and second declensions, 100–102, 836; irregular adjectives, 339, 349, 837; third declension, 316, 327, 328, 838; declension of the comparative, 548, 840.
Declension of nouns, 14, 830–835; five declensions, 45; first declension, 14, 25, 35, 45, 830; second declension, 67, 80, 84, 831; third declension, 156, 162, 170, 175, 182, 187, 216, 221, 227, 231, 236, 832; fourth declension, 493, 498, 833; fifth declension, 518, 525, 834; special nouns, 835.
Declension of participles, present, 317, 329; future active, 590, 596; perfect passive, 476; future passive, 722.
Declension of pronouns, demonstrative, 455, 469, 845; indefinite, 848; interrogative, 536, 847; personal, 436, 844; relative, 469, 846.
Defective verbs, 812.
Degree of difference denoted by the ablative, 550.
Demonstrative pronouns, 447, 462; declension, 845; use, 456.
Deponent verbs, 607, 859; ablative with certain deponents, 614; active forms, 612, *a*; semi-deponent verbs, 612, *b*.
Derivation of English words from Latin, 114, 115; from adjectives, 426, 427; from compound words, 797, *a*; from nouns, 242, 244, 424, 425; from participles, 802; from verbs, 632, 633; word-formation and derivation, 785, 788.
Description denoted by the ablative, 771.
deus, declension, 835.
dīc, imperative of dīcō, 330, *b*.
diēs, declension, 525, 834.
difficilis, comparison of, 562, 839.
dissimilis, comparison of, 562, 839.
Diphthongs, sound of, 825.
diū, comparison, 841.
dō, conjugation, present indicative active, 61, *b*; imperfect, 92; future, 252; perfect, 359; quantity of **a**, 61, *b*; 92, *b*; 252, *b*.
domus, declension, 498, *c*, 835; gender, 498, *b*; locative, 74, *c*, 164; place from which, 165; place to which, 163.
dūc, imperative of dūcō, 330, *b*.
duo, declension, 347, 843.
Duration of time denoted by the accusative, 457.

ego, declension, 436, 844; use in genitive, 437, *a*; omission, 58.
Enclitics, 281, *b*; **cum**, 436, *c*; 469, *b*; **-que**, 281, *a*.
English-Latin vocabulary, 862.
English words derived from Latin, see Derivation.
eō, 622; conjugation, 858.
Extent in space denoted by the accusative, 350.

Fābulae Facilēs, 821, 822.
fac, imperative of faciō, 330, *b*.

facile, formation and comparison, 584, 841.
facilis, comparison of, 562, 839.
faciō, a weakened to i in compounds, 291, *b;* fīō as passive, 622, *a*, 3.
Fearing, meaning of nē and ut with verbs of, 781.
fer, imperative of ferō, 330, *b*.
ferō, 622; conjugation, 858.
ferōx, comparison of, 547, 839.
Fifth declension, 518, 834.
fīlia, -**ābus** in the dative and ablative plural, 25; 51, *b*.
fīlius, declension, 74, 831; ending in genitive and vocative singular, 67, 74, *b*.
Final clauses with the subjunctive, 651, *a;* 640, 651.
fīō, 622; conjugation, 858; passive of **faciō**, 622, *a*, 3.
First conjugation, characteristic of, 124. See also **amō**, **dō**, **vocō**, and the names of the tenses.
First declension, nouns, 14, 25, 35, 45, 830; nominative and accusative cases, 14; dative and vocative, 35; genitive and ablative, 25; locative, 46, 51, *c;* gender, 49, 423, (1); typical noun, 51; **dea** and **fīlia**, 51, *b;* adjectives of the first and second declensions, 97.
flōs, declension, 221, 832.
flūmen, declension, 187, 832.
Fourth conjugation, characteristic of, 124. See also **audiō** and the names of the tenses.
Fourth declension, 493, 498, 833.
fruor, ablative with, 614.
fungor, ablative with, 614.
Future indicative, 247; four conjugations, active, 258, 265; passive, 271, 280; sum and dō, 252; tense-sign, 247, 252, *a;* 258; use, 253.
Future infinitive, active, 590, 597; passive, 590, 599; time denoted, 601.
Future participle, active, 596; use, 600; passive, 722, 729; use, 731.
Future perfect, active, 395, 401; passive; 504, 511; use, 402.

gaudeō, semi-deponent, 612, *b*.
Gender of nouns, 420, 423; first declension, 49, 423, (1); second declension, 73, 423, (2); third declension, 423, (3); fourth declension, 498, *b;* fifth declension, 525, *b*.
Genitive case, 25; objective, 441; partitive, 442; possession, 29, *a;* qualifying a noun, 29; quality, 222; subjective, 746; whole, 442; with impersonal verbs of feeling, 782.
genus, declension, 221, 832.
gerund, definition, 722; form, 730; use, 732.
gerundive, definition, 722; form, 729; use, 731.
gracilis, comparison, 562, 839.

hic, declension, 455, 845; meaning, 447; **ille . . . hic**, 456, *a*.
Historical present, 130; as a secondary tense, 635, *a*.
hostis, declension, 231, 832.
humilis, comparison, 562, 839.

i-stems in the third declension, 227.

īdem, 751; declension, 845.
Idioms, 613.
ille, declension, 455, 845; meaning, 447; **ille . . . hic**, 456, *a*.
imāgō, declension, 187, 832.
Imperative, present active, 318; conjugation, 330; use of the imperative, 333.
Imperfect indicative, 90; conjugation of **sum** and **dō**, 92; four conjugations, active, 193, 198; passive, 204, 209; tense-sign, 90, 193; use, 199; used to denote incomplete action, 634, (1).
Imperfect subjunctive, 642; conditional sentences, 716; dependent clauses, 652; optative, 703; sequence, 679.
Impersonal verbs, 512; accusative and genitive with, 782.
Incomplete action, tenses denoting, 634, (1).
Indefinite pronouns, 751; declension, 848; use, 757; **quis** and **quī** after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, 757, *a*.
Independent clauses with the subjunctive, 698.
Indirect discourse, 763; main verbs, 767; questions, 769; verbs in dependent clauses, 768.
Indirect object, 39; with special verbs meaning *believe*, *help*, *please*, etc., 717.
Indirect questions, 670; examples, 677, *a*; subjunctive in, 677.
īnferus, comparison, 573, 839.
Infinitive, present active, 296; passive, 297; time denoted, 310; perfect active, 407; perfect passive, 595; time denoted, 415; future active, 597; future passive, 599; time denoted by tenses, 636; accusative as subject of infinitive, 311; complementary infinitive, 307; infinitive as object, 309; as subject, 308; following verbs of saying, 414; main verbs in indirect discourse, 767.
Instrument and means denoted by the ablative, 30.
Intensive pronoun, 447.
Interrogative pronouns, 531, 847.
Interrogative words, 537, *a*.
Intransitive and transitive verbs, 211.
-iō verbs of the third conjugation, 286.
ipse, declension, 455, *a*; meaning, 447; use, 456.
Irregular verbs, 619; conjugation, 622, 857, 858.
is, 462; declension, 469, 845; use, 470.
iste, declension, 455, *a*; meaning, 447; use, 456.
iter, declension, 835.
Iuppiter, declension, 835.

Latin-English vocabulary, 861.
leō, declension, 187, 832.
liber, declension, 74, 831.
-limus, ending of the superlative, 556, 562.
Locative case, 46, 51, *c*; use, 52.

magis, comparison, 584, 841.
magis, use in comparison of adjectives, 547, *a*.

magnus, comparison, 573, 839.
male, formation and comparison, 841.
mālō, 622; conjugation, 858.
malus, comparison, 573, 839.
Manner denoted by the ablative, 513.
mare, declension, 231, 832.
maximē, use in comparison of adjectives, 547, *a*.
Means and instrument denoted by the ablative, 30.
Metrical reading, 818.
mīles, declension, 162, 832.
mīlia, declension, 348, 843; use, 348, *a*.
mīlle, 348, *a*.
miser, comparison, 562, 839; declension, 101, 836.
miserē, formation and comparison, 841.
mittō, conjugation, 852–854.
Mood, distinction between indicative and subjunctive, 640.
multī, comparison, 573, 839.
multum, formation and comparison, 841.
multus, comparison, 573, 839.

nāvis, declension, 231, 832.
nē, in final clauses, 651; in negative commands, 702; with verbs of fearing, 781.
-ne, in questions, 537, *a*, (3).
Negative commands, 623.
nōlī and nōlīte in negative commands, 623.
nōlō, 622; conjugation, 858.
Nominative case, predicate noun or adjective, 75; subject of finite verb, 19.
nōnne, in questions, 537, *a*, (3).
nostrī as objective genitive, 437, *a*.
Nouns, declension, 45; declension of typical nouns, 830–834; first declension, 51; second declension, 74, 84; third declension, 162, 175, 187, 221, 231; fourth declension, 498; fifth declension, 525; special nouns, 835; English words derived from Latin nouns, 242, 244, 424, 425; formation, 424; gender, 420; 423, 498, *b*; 525, *b*. See also names of the cases.
nūllus, declension, 349, *b*.
num, in questions, 537, *a*, (3).
Numerals, 339; list, 842; declension, 837, 843.

Object of verb, direct, 20; indirect, 39.
Objective genitive, 441.
omnis, declension, 327, 838.
Optative subjunctive, 703.
Order of words, 50.
Ordinal numbers, 842.
Origin, ablative of, 758.

paenitet with genitive, 782.
Participles, present, 317, 329; 332, *a*; future active, 596, 600; future passive, 722, 729, 731; perfect passive, 476; time denoted, 636; use, 332, 487, 488, *b*; English words derived from Latin participles, 802.
Partitive genitive, 442, *a*.
parvus, comparison, 573, 839.
parum, formation and comparison, 584, 841.

Passive voice, 210; personal endings, 144.
Past perfect indicative, active, 382, 389; passive, 504, 510; use, 390.
Past perfect subjunctive, 669, 676; use, 678; conditional sentences, 716; optative, 703; sequence, 679.
pāstor, declension, 175, 832.
pater, declension, 175, 832.
patior, deponent verb, 859.
Perfect indicative, active, 355, 364; conjugation of sum and dō, 359; four conjugations, 373; personal endings, 355; stem, 371; passive, 504, 509; perfect definite, 374; perfect indefinite, 375; perfect definite as primary tense, 635, *b*.
Perfect infinitive, active, 407, 413; passive, 595; time denoted, 415.
Perfect passive participle, 476; stem, 486, *d;* time denoted, 487; translation, 487, *a*.
Perfect stem, 371.
Perfect subjunctive, 669, 676; use, 678.
Periphrastic conjugations, definition, 737; active, 743; passive, 744; dative of agent, 737, 745.
Personal endings, active, 58; passive, 144; perfect tense, 355.
Personal pronouns, 431; declension, 436, 844; is as substitute for pronoun of third person, 437, *b;* nominative omitted, 58; use, 437.
Place from which, 165; in which, 164; to which, 163.
polliceor, deponent verb, 859.
portus, declension, 498, 833.
Possession denoted by the dative, 377, by the genitive, 29, *a*.
Possessive pronouns, declension, 436, *b;* use, 439.
possum, 298; conjugation, present, imperfect, and future, 306; entire conjugation, 857.
Potential subjunctive, 704.
potior, deponent verb, 859; ablative with, 614.
Predicate noun or adjective, 75.
Prefixes. 789.
Present indicative, active, 58, 124; passive, 144; use, 130; historical present, 130, (3), 635, *a*.
Present participle, 317; declension, 329; time denoted, 332, *a*.
Present stem, 139.
Present subjunctive, 642; conditional sentences, 715; dependent clauses, 652; optative, 703; sequence, 679.
Price denoted by the ablative, 770.
Primary tenses, 635.
Principal parts of verbs, 372, 485; typical verbs, 486.
prīnceps, declension, 162, 832.
prior, comparison, 573, 839.
Pronouns, personal reflexive, and possessive, 431; personal, 844; demonstrative, 447, 462, 751, 845; indefinite, 751, 848; interrogative, 531, 847; relative, 462, 846.
Pronunciation, 2, 6–9, 823–829.
Prōsum, 857, *a*.
puer, declension, 74, 831.
pulcher, declension, 102, 836; comparison, 562, 839.

Purpose, expressed by accusative of the supine, 602, (1); by the dative, 499; by the future active participle, 600, *a;* by the gerundive with **ad**, 731, *a;* by the gerund with **ad**, 732, *a;* by a final clause with the subjunctive, 651.

Quality denoted by the ablative, 771; by the genitive, 222.
quam with comparatives, 549, *a.*
Quantity of vowels, 7, 828; syllables, 8, 828.
-que, enclitic, 281, *b.*
Questions, answers to, 537, *b;* indirect, 670, 677; in indirect discourse, 769; interrogative pronouns, 531; interrogative words, 537, *a.*
quī, indefinite, 751; after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**, 757, *a.*
quī, interrogative, 531; declension, 536, *a;* 847, *a;* use, 537.
quī, relative, 462; declension, 469, 846; agreement, 471; with subjunctive denoting purpose, 651.
quīdam, 751; declension, 848.
quīn, with subjunctive after expressions of doubt, 664, *b;* with verbs of hindering, 664, *c.*
quis, indefinite, 751; after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**, 757, *a.*
quis, interrogative, 531; declension, 536, 847; use, 537.
quisquam, 751, declension, 848; use, 757, *b.*
quisque, 751; declension, 848.
quō, with subjunctive in clauses of purpose, 651.
quot, 537, *a*, (2).

Reflexive pronoun, declension, 436, 844; use, 438.
Relative clauses of purpose, 651.
Relative pronoun, 462, 469, 846.
rēs, declension, 525, 834.
Result expressed by the subjunctive, 664.
Reviews, first and second declensions, 110; third declension, 236; nouns of the first, second, and third declensions, 420; verbs in the indicative, 628; forms and syntax, 776; indirect discourse, 794; participles, 800; general review, 805.
rēx, declension, 162, 832.
-rimus, ending of the superlative, 556, 562.
Roman numerals, 842.
Roots of verbs, 632, (1).

saepe, comparison, 841.
Second conjugation, characteristic of, 124. See also the names of the tenses.
Second declension, 67, 80, 831; case-endings, 74, 84; ending of stem, 74, *a;* gender, 73, 83; genitive and vocative of **fīlius** and nouns in **-ius**, 67, 74, *b;* genitive of nouns in **-ium**, 84, *b;* masculine nouns, 67; neuter nouns, 80; adjectives of the first and second declensions, 97, 100–102, 836.
Secondary tenses, 635.
senex, declension, 835.
Semi-deponent verbs, 859, *c.*
Separation denoted by the ablative, 551; dative with verbs of separation, 334.

Sequence of tenses, 679.
sequor, deponent verb, 859.
similis, comparison, 562, 839.
soleō, semi-deponent verb, 612, *b*.
sōlus, declension, 349, *b*.
Specification, ablative of, 526.
stella, declension, 51, 830.
Stem and base, 51, *a*.
Stems of nouns, first declension, 51, *a;* second declension, 74, *a;* third declension, consonant stems, 162, *b;* i-stems, 227, 231, *g;* fourth declension, 498, *a;* fifth declension, 525, *c*.
Stems of verbs, present, 139, 486, *b;* perfect, 371; 486, *c;* supine, 590, 486, *d*.
Subject of finite verb, 19, of infinitive, 311; when omitted, 58, 437.
Subjective genitive, 746.
Subjunctive mood, conjugation of sum, 849; four conjugations, 853, 854; irregular verbs, 857, 858; general meaning, 640; general uses: dependent clauses, 641; independent clauses, 698; present and imperfect, 642, 652; perfect and past perfect, 669, 676, 678; sequence of tenses, 679; translation, 649; uses: attraction, 791, conditional sentences, first class, 714; second class, 715; third class, 716; consecutive clauses, 657, 664; dependent clauses of indirect discourse, 768; final clauses, 641, 651; optative, 703; potential, 704; questions in indirect discourse, 769; volitive, 702.
Substantive clauses, 680.
suī, declension, 436, 844; use, 438.
sum, conjugation, 849; present indicative, 61; imperfect, 92; future, 252; perfect, 359.
Superlative degree, declension, 548, *a;* ending in -limus and -rimus, 556, 839; meaning *very*, 563. See also Comparison.
superus, comparison, 573, 839.
Supine, 590; form, 598; use, purpose, 602, (1); specification, 602, (2); supine stem, 590.
Syllables, 6, 827; quantity of, 7, 828.
Syntax, 18; references to rules, 860.

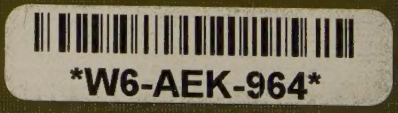
Tables of declension, conjugation, etc., 830.
templum, declension, 84, 831.
Temporal clauses with cum, indicative, 691; subjunctive, 692.
tempus, declension, 221, 832.
Tenses, classification, 634; sequence of, 679. See also the names of the tenses.
Tense-signs, indicative imperfect, 90, 193, future, 247, 258; past perfect, 382; future perfect, 395; subjunctive imperfect, 642; perfect, 669; past perfect, 669.
Third conjugation, characteristic, 124. See also the names of the tenses.
Third declension of adjectives, 316.
Third declension of nouns, 156, 170, 182, 216, 227, 236, 832; classification of nouns, 241;

gender, 423, (3); stem, how found, 162, *b;* English nouns derived from Latin nouns of the third declension, 242, 244.
Time, duration of, denoted by the accusative, 457; time when denoted by the ablative, 176; time denoted by the tenses of the infinitive and participle, 636; time denoted by the present and imperfect subjunctive, 652.
tōtus, declension, 349, *b.*
Towns, accusative and ablative to denote place, 163, 165.
Transitive and intransitive verbs, 211.
trēs, declension, 348, 843.
trīstis, comparison, 547, 839.
tū, declension, 436, 844; when omitted, 58.

ūllus, declension, 349, *b.*
ūnus, declension, 346, 837.
urbs, declension, 231, 832.
ut, with subjunctive in clauses of purpose, 651; in clauses of result, 664; omission of, 790; with verbs of fearing, 781.
uter, declension, 349, *b.*
ūtor, with the ablative, 614.

Verbs, active and passive voice, 210; characteristics of the four conjugations, 124; conjugation: sum, 849; vocō, 850, 851; typical verbs of the four conjugations, 852–854; verbs in -iō, 856; irregular verbs, 619, 857, 858; possum, 857; deponent verbs, 607, 859; formation, 632; impersonal use, 512; periphrastic conjugations, 737, 855; personal endings, active, 58; passive, 144; perfect, 355; principal parts, 372, 485; stems, present, 124, 139; 486, *b;* perfect, 371, 486, *c;* supine, 590; 486, *d;* transitive and intransitive, 211; agreement with subject, 62; genitive case with verbs of feeling, 782; infinitive with verbs of saying, 414; quīn with verbs of hindering, 664, *c;* ut and nē with verbs of fearing, 781; English words derived from Latin verbs, 632, 633; review, 628. See also infinitive, names of the tenses, participle, subjunctive.
vēscor, ablative with, 614.
vestrī as objective genitive, 437, *a.*
vetus, declension, 327, *b.*
videō, conjugation, 852–854.
vīs, declension, 835.
Vocative case, 35; person addressed, 40.
vocō, conjugation with translation, 850, 851.
Voice, 210.
Volitive subjunctive, 702.
volō, 622; conjugation, 858.
Vowels, sounds of, 7, 824; quantity, 7, 828.

Whole, genitive of, 442.
Words, arrangement, 50.
Word-formation, 243, 785, 788.


W6-AEK-964